



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

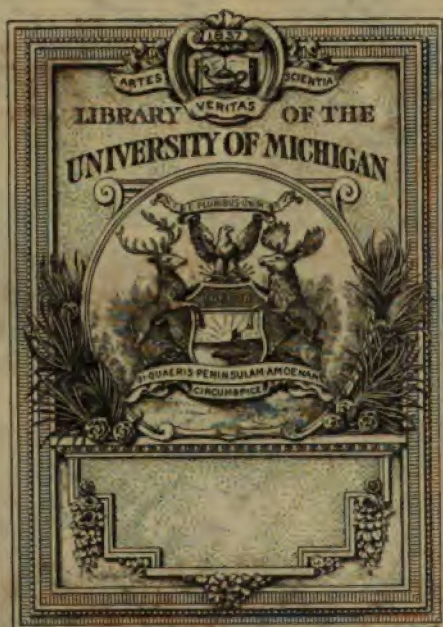
- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>









DA  
195  
.P16  
1857

THE  
HISTORY OF NORMANDY  
AND OF  
ENGLAND,

BY  
SIR FRANCIS PALGRAVE, K.H.  
THE DEPUTY KEEPER OF HER MAJESTY'S  
PUBLIC RECORDS.

---

VOLUME II.

THE THREE FIRST DUKES OF NORMANDY;—ROLLO,  
GUILLAUME-LONGUE-ÉPÉE, AND RICHARD-SANS-  
PEUR—THE CARLOVINGIAN LINE SUPPLANTED  
BY THE CAPETS.

---

*Narratione autem historica (ait Augustinus) cum præterita etiam hominum  
instituta narrantur, non inter humana instituta ipsa historia numeranda  
est; quia jam quæ transierunt, nec infecta fieri possunt, in ordine  
temporum habenda sunt, quorum est conditor et administrator Deus.*

---

LONDON:  
JOHN W. PARKER AND SON,  
WEST STRAND.

---

M.DCCCLVII.





## ADVERTISEMENT.

---

IN consequence of the bulk which this volume has attained, occasioned partly by the employment of historical evidences hitherto cast aside, and partly by feeling as I proceeded, the increasing necessity of elucidating the intimate connection between German History, and the History of Normandy and France, I am deterred from adding any notes or references or illustrative extracts. They are reserved for the third volume.

The full account appended of the principal authorities upon which the text is founded, will enable any reader to compare my narrative with the sources. Moreover in the third volume I purpose to resume the essays elucidating the general relations of the mediæval period, continuing the series prefixed to the first. The subjects next discussed will probably be—the Episcopate;—the influences of Christianity upon the Fine Arts;—also upon the cultivation of profane literature; all of which are in forwardness, having been draughted many years since, as well as the main

history, the latter more or less completely, until Edward III.

Domestic calamities and afflictions greatly retarded me in the progress of the present volume. But, with the papers before me, I hope I may be permitted to accomplish the completion of the third and fourth during the current and the ensuing year.

In concluding these prefatory remarks, I must testify my gratitude to that old friend—a friend whom I have known during the greater part of my authorial life, and now the senior partner in the firm by which this book is brought out,—for his unwearied kindness in submitting to the loss and inconvenience which, in a commercial point of view, his House has sustained by the undue protraction of the publication.

F. P.

*February 6, 1857.*

# CONTENTS.

---

## BOOK I.—PART II.

### CARLOVINGIAN NORMANDY (*Continued*).

---

#### CHAPTER I.

CHARLES-LE-SIMPLE, ROBERT, AND RAOUL IN FRANCE.—ROLLO AND  
GUILLAUME-LONGUE-ÉPÉE IN NORMANDY.

912—927.

A.D.		PAGE
912	Charles-le-Simple,—his reputation destroyed by the historical epithet . . . . .	1-3
—	His honesty and openness . . . . .	3-5
—	Scanty resources . . . . .	5-7
—	He nevertheless avails himself ably of the prerogatives remaining to him . . . . .	7, 8
—	He ignores the reign of Eudes . . . . .	8
—	Alliances between the daughters of Edward the Elder and the Continental Sovereigns . . . . .	9, 10
—	Charles takes Eadgiva or Ogiva . . . . .	10
—	He courts the Danes . . . . .	10, 11
—	He distrusts his Nobles, placing his confidence in the plebeian, Hagano . . . . .	11, 12
910—911	Disturbed state of Germany . . . . .	12, 13
911—912	Conrad of Franconia, elected King . . . . .	13, 14
—	The Lotharingians adhere to the Carolingian interest . . . . .	14, 15
911—916	Charles acquires Lotharingia by the assistance of Rainier-Long-Col . . . . .	16-18
—	Gilbert, Duke Rainier's son,—his achievements as a swimmer . . . . .	17
919—920	Conspiracy formed against Charles, by Robert, Duke of France and Count of Paris . . . . .	18
—	Robert's character and alliance . . . . .	19
—	Herbert of Vermandois coalesces with Robert . . . . .	20, 21
918	Accession of Henry the Fowler . . . . .	21



A.D.		PAGE
918	Henry the Fowler's children . . . . .	22, 23
—	Revolt of the French Nobles, directed personally against Hagano, the King's favourite . . . . .	23, 24
—	Gilbert begins the insurrection in Lorraine, Charles marches against him, and besieges him at Harburgh . . . . .	24
—	Gilbert's varied fortunes . . . . .	24, 25
—	Marries Gerberga, King Henry's daughter . . . . .	25
—	Gilbert is favoured by Charles-le-Simple, who par- dons him . . . . .	25
920—923	The Nobles require Charles to discard Hagano . . . . .	26
920	They renounce their allegiance to Charles . . . . .	26
—	The undoing of fealty or <i>diffidation</i> . . . . .	29
921—922	Charles retains his authority nevertheless . . . . .	30, 31
—	Regnald from Northumbria enters the Loire . . . . .	31
907—926	The Danes in Armorica . . . . .	32-34
—	The Armoricans abandon their country . . . . .	32, 33
—	Mathuedoi received by Edward the Elder . . . . .	33
921—922	Danish operations favourable to Charles . . . . .	31, 32
922—923	Renewal of the war between Charles and the Capetians . . . . .	34
922	Charles retreats beyond the Meuse . . . . .	35
—	Herbert of Vermandois,—his treachery . . . . .	35
—	Laón taken by the Capetians . . . . .	36
—	Charles defeated before Rheims . . . . .	36
—	Duke Robert crowned there as King . . . . .	36
—	Death of Hervé, Archbishop of Rheims . . . . .	37
—	Seulph nominated as his successor by King Robert . . . . .	37
923	Charles continues the war actively . . . . .	37
—	He is assisted by Rollo . . . . .	38, 39
—	Truce between the rival Kings, Charles and Robert . . . . .	39
—	Charles musters his army, and resumes hostilities . . . . .	39, 40
—	Battle of Soissons, great carnage,—King Robert slain, but the Carolingians compelled to retreat . . . . .	40-42
—	Penances imposed by the Church upon both parties . . . . .	42
—	Raoul of Burgundy invited by the Capetians . . . . .	43
—	Crown offered to Hugh-le-Grand, and refused by him . . . . .	44, 45
—	Raoul of Burgundy elected King of France and crowned at Senlis . . . . .	45
—	Charles retreats to Lotharingia . . . . .	45, 46
—	Treachery of Herbert of Vermandois . . . . .	46, 47
—	Charles entrapped and imprisoned . . . . .	48
—	Ogiva escapes to England with the child Louis . . . . .	48, 49
—	Tranquility of Normandy under Rollo . . . . .	49
—	He establishes his supremacy in Armorica . . . . .	50

# CONTENTS.

vii

A.D.	PAGE
923 Regnald the Dane comes over again . . . .	50, 51
— The French invade Normandy . . . . .	52
923—924 But are compelled to sue for peace . . . .	52
— The Bessin and other territories occupied by the Normans . . . . .	52-54
925 Battle of Mont-Chalus, between the Burgundians and the Danes . . . . .	54, 55
925—926 The Danes or Northmen re-enter France . .	55
— Origin of the County of Ponthieu . . . . .	56, 57
— Eu garrisoned by Rollo . . . . .	58
— Captured by the French after a desperate resistance	59, 60
— The Danish war continues to rage . . . . .	59, 60
— Rollo resigns in favour of his son Guillaume . .	61, 62
— Rollo's grave and tomb . . . . .	62, 63

## CHAPTER II.

RAOUL AND LOUIS-D'OUTREMER.—GUILLAUME-LONGUE-ÉPÉE.

### 927—942.

925—926 Adulatory tenderness lavished upon the dead .	64-67
— Guillaume-Longue-Épée's talents and failings . .	68, 69
— Antagonistic parties of Normandy, the Romanised Northmen and the Heathens . . . . .	69-71
— Riulph at the head of the Danish party . . . .	72-74
— The neutral party . . . . .	75
923—927 Political situation of France . . . . .	75, 76
— Raoul not acknowledged as King by the Aquitanians	76
— Hugh-le-Grand's influence . . . . .	77, 78
— Connection between the antagonistic parties by intermarriages . . . . .	78, 79
— Influence of Normandy in the politics of France . .	79, 80
— Infringement of the liberty of Episcopal elections by Sovereigns . . . . .	81, 82
925 Seulp, Archbishop of Rheims, poisoned . . . .	83
— Herbert of Vermandois appoints his little boy Hugh (or the Parvulus) to the Archbishoprick . . . .	83-85
927—928 Increasing jealousies between Herbert of Ver- mandois and King Raoul . . . . .	85-87
— King Charles released from prison by Herbert of Vermandois . . . . .	88

A. D.	PAGE
927—928 Herbert plays King Charles off against Raoul .	88, 89
927 Guillaume-Longue-Epée performs homage to King Charles . . . . .	88, 89
— Hugh-le-Grand mediates . . . . .	90, 91
928—929 Charles cast into prison again . . . . .	91
— He suddenly re-appears at liberty,—and then again in custody . . . . .	92, 93
— Charles meets with his death by foul means at Peronne . . . . .	93, 94
— Further invasions of the Danes . . . . .	94, 95
— Disturbances in Burgundy.—Queen Emma's bravery . . . . .	95, 96
— Quarrel between Hugh-le-Grand and Herbert of Vermandois . . . . .	96, 97
— Artaldus appointed Archbishop of Rheims by King Raoul . . . . .	97, 98
930—931 The great revolt of the Bretons . . . . .	98-100
932 Guillaume-Longue-Epée summons the Bretons to return to their allegiance . . . . .	101, 102
931—932 Guillaume invades Armorica . . . . .	103
— Subjugation of the Bretons . . . . .	103
— Juhel Berenger performs homage to Guillaume . . . . .	103
— Alain-Barbe-Torte takes refuge in England . . . . .	103, 104
— The Avranchin and Cotentin, &c., heretofore Armorican, become Norman . . . . .	103, 104
— The Channel Islands, also . . . . .	104, 105
— Guillaume-Longue-Epée and Espriota . . . . .	106
— He marries Espriota according to Pagan rites . . . . .	106-108
— King Raoul's successes . . . . .	108, 109
— Hugh-le-Grand joins him, and they reduce the Vermandois territory . . . . .	108, 109
— The Aquitanian Princes submit to Raoul . . . . .	109, 110
— Social and political position of Guillaume-Longue-Epée . . . . .	110, 111
— Principal Towns on the Channel coast of Normandy, —their comparatively modern origin . . . . .	111
— Dieppe,—Caen,—Fécamp . . . . .	111, 112
— Guillaume's Palace at Fécamp . . . . .	112
— He undertakes to build a Church at Fécamp and does not . . . . .	113
— National spirit in Carlovingian France . . . . .	113, 114
— Guillaume's tergiversation . . . . .	114, 115
— Discontent of the Danish party . . . . .	115
— Their rebellion under Count Riulph . . . . .	116, 117
— Guillaume-Longue-Epée's terror . . . . .	117, 118

# CONTENTS.

ix

A.D.	PAGE
931—932 He attempts to treat with the insurgents . . . . .	118, 119
— They refuse his terms and station themselves before Rouen . . . . .	119, 120
— Guillaume offers to resign the greater portion of the Terra Normannorum to them . . . . .	120
— The insurgents demand his abdication . . . . .	120
— Indignation of the Danish party against Guillaume . . . . .	120, 121
— Guillaume recovers heart . . . . .	122
— Insurgents defeated; cruel treatment sustained by Riulph . . . . .	122
— Riulph's sons and kinsmen pledge themselves to avenge his death . . . . .	122, 123
933 Birth, at Fécamp, of Richard, afterwards called "Sans-peur" . . . . .	122, 123
— Ambiguous position of Guillaume towards the French . . . . .	123, 124
— Guillaume becomes Raoul's liegeman and receives investiture of Normandy . . . . .	125, 126
— Guillaume identifies himself with the French . . . . .	126
— Forests surrounding Rouen . . . . .	126, 129
— The famous "Forest of Lions" . . . . .	128, 129
— Clearings of the forest . . . . .	128, 129
— Bourgade of "Lions la Foret" . . . . .	128, 129
(1130) Foundation of the abbey of Morte-mer . . . . .	129
934 The hunting-meet in the Forest lodge . . . . .	130, 135
— French nobles invited to the sport. Hugh-le-Grand; Herbert of Vermandois; Arnoul, Count of Flanders . . . . .	130-133
— Guillaume-Tête-d'Etoupe, Count of Poitiers . . . . .	131
— Tête-d'Etoupe sues for Gerloc, Guillaume's sister . . . . .	133
— Guillaume's refuses arrogantly, but ultimately assents . . . . .	134, 135
— Marriage of Tête-d'Etoupe and Gerloc . . . . .	135
— Gerloc assumes the name of Adela . . . . .	135
— Piety ascribed to Guillaume-Longue-Epée in consequence of his enjoyment of the world's good things . . . . .	136, 137
— For the purpose of conciliating the French, Guillaume repudiates Espriota . . . . .	137-139
— He marries Liutgarda of Vermandois . . . . .	138
— This marriage childless . . . . .	139
— Death of Queen Emma . . . . .	141
— Great Magyar invasion . . . . .	141
935 King Raoul's troubles;—invasion of the Northmen . . . . .	141, 142
935—936 Raoul's illness and death . . . . .	142, 143
— State of public feeling . . . . .	144
— Adherence of the French to Monarchy as a principle . . . . .	145, 146



A.D.	PAGE
935—936 Late employment of the name of France, as applied to the Kingdom at large . . . . .	146, 147
— Tripartite division of the Gauls . . . . .	148, 149
— The three Nations or Electorates . . . . .	148-150
1484 Etats Généraux of Tours; France then divided into six Nations . . . . .	150
— Analogous division into Nations, adopted in the Council of Constance,—the military Orders—and the Universities of Paris and Glasgow . . . . .	151
936 The Estates convened in consequence of Raoul's death . . . . .	151
— Celtic and Aquitanian Gaul vote for Hugh-le-Grand	152, 153
— Young Louis supported by the Belgic Gauls, but op- posed by the Vermandois party . . . . .	153, 154
— Louis educated under Athelstan's protection . . . . .	154-156
— Athelstan's negotiations for the restoration of Louis	157
— He gains the aid of Hugh-le-Grand . . . . .	157-159
— Guillaume-Longue-Epée also . . . . .	159
— Convention of the French nobles at Sens . . . . .	160
— Hugh-le-Grand elected President . . . . .	161
— Hugh-le-Grand advocates the restoration of Louis upon constitutional principles . . . . .	160, 161
— Unavailing opposition of the Vermandois party . . . . .	161, 162
— Embassy despatched to England, inviting Louis; the Archbishop of Sens chief of the legation . . . . .	162, 163
— Athelstan's cautious conduct . . . . .	163, 164
— Athelstan and Louis at Dover . . . . .	164
— Athelstan's continued caution; he despatches the Bishop of Sherborne to obtain information . . . . .	164, 165
— Hugh-le-Grand demands that Louis shall obey his counsel . . . . .	165, 166
— Landing of Louis at Boulogne . . . . .	166
— Louis crowned at Laón by the Archbishop of Sens, the right being counter-claimed by the Archbishop of Rheims . . . . .	168
(1106) Coronation of Louis-le-Gros by the Archbishop of Sens, according to this precedent . . . . .	168, 169

## CHAPTER III.

LOUIS-D'OUTREMER—GUILLAUME-LONGUE-ÉPÉE AND RICHARD HIS SON.  
 FROM THE COMMENCEMENT OF THE REIGN OF LOUIS-D'OUTREMER  
 TO THE DEATH OF GUILLAUME-LONGUE-ÉPÉE, AND THE RECOG-  
 NITION OF HIS SON RICHARD-SANS-PEUR.

936—942.

A.D.	PAGE
936—942 Hugh-le-Grand's political character . . .	170-172
— Hugh-le-Grand's Protectorate; enormous power given to him thereby . . . . .	172-174
— Conjectures as to the causes inducing Athelstan, Ogiva, and Louis to assent . . . . .	174-176
936—943 Affairs of Brittany . . . . .	177-182
— Alain-Barbe-Torte returns under Athelstan's protec- tion . . . . .	176, 177
— Guillaume-Longue-Épée restores Vannes to Alain .	177
— Cornouaille annexed to Normandy under the name of the Cotentin . . . . .	177, 178
— The Bretons rally round Alain, and an English fleet bears him over . . . . .	178
— The Northmen in Armorica resist the Bretons .	178, 179
— The Danish bridal at Dol . . . . .	179
— They are there defeated by the Bretons, and at Saint Brieux also . . . . .	179, 180
— The Northmen concentrate their forces about Nantes, then a ruined city . . . . .	180
— They are thoroughly defeated by the Bretons .	180
— Nantes re-founded by Alain-Barbe-Torte . . .	181
943 Guillaume-Tête-d'Etope cedes to Alain-Barbe-Torte, Clisson and other Poitevin territories . . . .	182
— Alain-Barbe-Torte's claims upon Anjou settled by his marriage with the daughter of Foulgues-le-Roux .	182
936 Hugh-le-Grand acquires a portion of Burgundy . .	182, 183
— Difficulty of defining the rights of the Burgundian princes . . . . .	183
— Rival Counts of Burgundy at the era of Raoul's death, Hugh-le-Noir, Gilbert, and Hugh-le-Grand . .	183, 184
936 Hugh-le-Grand, supported by Louis, acquires Langres	184, 185

A.D.	PAGE
986—987 Vigour of the young King's government . . .	185, 186
— Royal prerogatives, their subsisting importance . . .	186-188
987 Louis releases himself from Hugh-le-Grand's protectorate . . . . .	188, 189
— Ogiva recalled from England . . . . .	189
— Louis entrusts the command of Laôn to her . . . . .	189
987—988 Hugh-le-Grand's designs against the King . . . . .	190
— Hugh allies himself with Herbert of Vermandois . . . . .	190, 191
— Herbert of Vermandois seizes the Château Galliot, an outwork of Laôn . . . . .	191
— Herbert commences offensive operations . . . . .	191
— Surprises Château Thierry, and occupies Troyes, thereby founding the County of Champagne . . . . .	192, 193
987 The great Magyar invasion . . . . .	194
987—988 Louis, the Magyars having retired, brings the Realm into good order . . . . .	194-196
— Defection of Guillaume-Longue-Epée, who joins Hugh-le-Grand and Herbert of Vermandois . . . . .	196, 197
— Bernard of Senlis, first Count of Couci, supports the Capetians . . . . .	197, 198
— Arnoul of Flanders takes the French side . . . . .	198
— Calais then appertaining to Flanders . . . . .	198, 199
— Witsand, importance of the position . . . . .	199, 200
— Louis captures the fort occupied by Herbert opposite Laôn . . . . .	200-202
— County of Guisnes founded by Siegfried the Dane . . . . .	202, 203
— Arnoul of Flanders patronizes Riulph the rebel . . . . .	204
— Guillaume-Longue-Epée ravages Flanders . . . . .	204
— Affairs of Ponthieu . . . . .	205-207
— Herlouin of Ponthieu . . . . .	206
— Dissensions between him and Arnoul . . . . .	206, 207
— Arnoul takes Montreuil by stratagem . . . . .	207
— Montreuil re-captured by Guillaume-Longue-Epée on Herlouin's behalf . . . . .	208
— Henry the Fowler's three sons;—Thankmar claims the throne as the eldest . . . . .	209, 210
— Henry the youngest, as Porphyrogenitus . . . . .	209
— Otho the middle-most, by his father's will . . . . .	210
986 Accession of Otho upon his father's death;—his solemn coronation at Aix-la-Chapelle . . . . .	211, 212
— Otho's queen, Editha, sister of Ogiva . . . . .	212, 213
986—987 Influence of Germany in France . . . . .	213
— Otho courts Hugh-le-Grand and his party, including Guillaume-Longue-Epée . . . . .	213, 214

# CONTENTS.

xiii

A.D.	PAGE
936—939 Hugh-le-Grand marries Hadwisa, Otho's sister .	214, 215
— Otho's difficulties . . . . .	215
— Thankmar's revolt against his brother; his death .	215, 216
— Discontents amongst the Germans . . . . .	217
— Insurrection of Henry the Porphyrogenitus . . . .	218
— Political situation of Lotharingia . . . . .	218
— Pre-eminence of the family of Rainier-au-Long-Col .	218
— Gilbert the Bold Swimmer—Duke of Lorraine, by the appointment of King Charles . . . . .	218-220
— Sympathy of the Lotharingians with the Carolingian dynasty . . . . .	221
— Affection of the Lotharingians for France . . . .	221, 222
— The Lotharingians invite Louis to assume the government . . . . .	223
— He is received as King of Lotharingia . . . . .	224-226
— Athelstan aids Louis by his fleet:—the first inter- vention of England in foreign affairs . . . . .	224
939—940 Great defection of the French Nobles; Hugh-le- Grand; Herbert of Vermandois; Arnoul of Fland- ers and Guillaume-Longue-Épée transfer their allegiance to Otho . . . . .	226, 227
— Gilbert, the Bold Swimmer, unites with the Porphy- rogenitus against Otho . . . . .	227, 228
— Gilbert advances towards the Rhine . . . . .	227
— Leaves his wife, Gerberga, in the command of Chevremont . . . . .	227, 228
— Gilbert defeated—drowned in attempting to cross the Rhine . . . . .	227, 228
— Through Gerberga's intervention, peace restored be- tween Otho and the Porphyrogenitus . . . . .	229
— Louis visits Chevremont for the purpose of condoling with the Widow Gerberga . . . . .	230
— They marry; Gerberga crowned at Laón . . . . .	
— Guillaume-Longue-Épée; his fickleness and want of fidelity . . . . .	230, 231
— He falls off from Otho . . . . .	230
— And re-connects himself with France, for the purpose of strengthening his own title . . . . .	232, 233
940 Guillaume performs homage to Louis at Amiens, and superadds his declarations of friendship . . . . .	234, 235
— The <i>Dux Piratarum</i> hated by the French . . . . .	235, 236
— Guillaume returns to his allegiance, being ready to change sides again . . . . .	231



A.D.		PAGE
940	Position of Herbert of Vermandois; his plans upon Laôn and Rheims . . . . .	237-239
—	Hugh-le-Grand allies himself with Herbert . . . . .	239
—	Guillaume-Longue-Épée re-unites himself to the Germans and the Capetians . . . . .	240
—	They besiege Rheims . . . . .	240
—	Great exasperation between the parties . . . . .	240
—	Rheims surrenders. Archbishop Artaldus expelled and the Parvulus re-instated . . . . .	240, 241
—	Great mischief ensuing to Louis by Guillaume-Longue-Épée's defection . . . . .	241
—	The confederates march against Laôn . . . . .	241, 242
—	Laôn, defended by Gerberga, holds out . . . . .	241, 243
—	Otho enters France; he is met by Hugh and Herbert and occupies Attigny . . . . .	243
—	The French Nobles perform homage to Otho at Attigny, and acknowledge him as King . . . . .	243, 244
—	Guillaume-Longue-Épée detaches himself from his confederates . . . . .	244, 245
—	Hugh-le-Grand and Count Herbert again advance to Laôn . . . . .	246
—	Battle between the confederates and Louis: he is compelled to fly, but accomplishes his safe return to Laôn and Gerberga . . . . .	246
—	Pope Stephen IX.; his energy . . . . .	246, 247
—	Admonishes the French to return to their allegiance . . . . .	247, 248
—	Continuous insurrections—siege of Laôn, still defended by Gerberga . . . . .	247, 248
—	The siegeraised; Guillaume-Longue-Épée's intrigues; he passes over to the royal party, being his fifth defection . . . . .	248, 249
941	Birth of Lothaire, eldest child of Louis and Gerberga . . . . .	249
—	Importance of this event in a political point of view . . . . .	249-251
—	Guillaume-Longue-Épée becomes Sponsor to the royal infant . . . . .	251, 252
—	Guillaume-Longue-Épée's profuse professions of loyalty . . . . .	251
—	His triumphant entry into Rouen . . . . .	252
942	Louis, at Guillaume-Longue-Épée's invitation, visits him . . . . .	253
—	Political importance of this visit . . . . .	254, 255
—	Tête-d'Etope and Barbe-Torte, promise to aid Louis . . . . .	254, 255
—	Confused account of Guillaume-Longue-Épée having visited Otho in Lorraine . . . . .	255, 256

# CONTENTS.

XV

A.D.	PAGE
941—942 Negotiations between Louis and Otho . . .	256
— Guillaume-Longue-Epée an absolute Sovereign . . .	257
— Extinction of Scandinavian customs . . .	257, 258
— Subjugation of the Church to the Duke's authority . . .	258
— No States-General or Parliaments in Normandy under the Dukes . . .	258, 259
— Guillaume-Longue-Epée's sound administration of justice . . .	259, 260
— His deficiency of religious principle . . .	260
— Poverty and degradation of the Norman Church . . .	260-264
— Destruction of monastic establishments by the Danes . . .	261, 262
— Utility of monastic establishments during the middle ages . . .	262, 263
— Desolation of Jumièges . . .	264
— Two Anchorites from the Cambresis settle there . . .	264, 265
— Guillaume-Longue-Epée encounters them when hunting;—his rudeness and their kindness . . .	265
— He re-establishes Jumièges, but stintedly . . .	266
— The Abbey colonised from the Abbey of Saint Cyprian, at Poitiers; Martin the first Abbot. . .	266
— Abbot Martin a deep theologian; Guillaume-Longue-Epée takes to him . . .	267
— Guillaume-Longue-Epée's troubles of mind . . .	267
— His <i>juste milieu</i> policy . . .	268
— Failure thereof, inasmuch as he equally alienates the French and Danish parties . . .	267-269
— Hugh-le-Grand's views upon the Evreçin . . .	269
— Guillaume-Longue-Epée forfeits his character by his vacillations; courted, hated and despised by the French . . .	270-273
— Difficulties of Dudo de St. Quentin's narrative . . .	273, 274
— Guillaume determines to govern through the Danish or anti-Christian party; results of this determination . . .	274-275
— Strength of the Danish party, and the Bessin . . .	276, 277
— Harold Blaastand, "Over King" of Denmark, possesses himself of the Cotentin . . .	277
— Guillaume's perplexity as to the position of his son Richard . . .	278
— Guillaume-Longue-Epée fancies he will become a monk . . .	279
— Commences his discussion with Abbot Martin . . .	281
— Self-examination . . .	282
— The "Three Alls," or orders of Society in the middle ages . . .	282, 284

A.D.	PAGE
941—942 Guillaume declares his intention of professing at Jumièges . . . . .	285
— The Abbot refuses him on the ground that he was deserting the calling in which he must abide . . . . .	285, 286
— Guillaume-Longue-Épée's anger at the Abbot's refusal . . . . .	286, 287
— The Abbot, to pacify him, gives him a frock and cowl . . . . .	287, 288
— Guillaume deposits the garments in a shrine, but keeps the key about his person . . . . .	288
— Guillaume's dangerous illness . . . . .	288, 289
— He retires to Chevilly . . . . .	289
— Sends for his son Richard . . . . .	289
— The boy brought to him by Botho, Oslac, and Bernard the Dane . . . . .	290
— They, on behalf of the Normans, accept the boy as their Duke, and perform fealty to him . . . . .	290
— Guillaume-Longue-Épée, distrusting the clergy, directs that Richard should be educated by Botho . . . . .	290, 291
— Richard removed to Bayeux in order that he may be trained in the Danish Vernacular . . . . .	291, 292
942 Richard inaugurated at Bayeux . . . . .	292, 293
— Seven Nobles, on behalf of the Community, perform fealty to him . . . . .	293
— Guillaume-Longue-Épée's mental distresses . . . . .	294
— Scope of Guillaume-Longue-Épée's plan of education, Christianity being neglected . . . . .	294-297
— Guillaume-Longue-Épée attaches himself to the Danes . . . . .	294
— Offence taken by the French . . . . .	294, 295
— Council of Attigny; Guillaume summoned thereto . . . . .	298, 299
— Appearance and "Essoign" . . . . .	300
— Guillaume-Longue-Épée attends, but not till the Session of the Council had commenced . . . . .	300
— Whether by accident or design he is excluded from the Council . . . . .	300, 301
— He breaks the door open and compels King Otho to rise . . . . .	300
— The French determine to rid themselves of Guillaume by summary vengeance . . . . .	301-303
— Otho proposes the summary infliction of capital punishment;—Louis and Otho concur;—Arnoul undertakes to carry the sentence into execution . . . . .	302-304
— Arnoul invites Guillaume-Longue-Épée to a conference on the Island of Picquigny . . . . .	304, 305
— Guillaume accedes to the proposal . . . . .	305
— Rejects the advice of his Norman counsellors . . . . .	306

# CONTENTS.

xvii

A.D.		PAGE
942	Arnoul's deceit . . . . .	306-309
—	Arnoul separates Guillaume from his escort . . . . .	308, 309
—	The meeting on the island . . . . .	306-309
—	The four conspirators—Balzo, the nephew of Riulph, their leader . . . . .	306.
—	Guillaume murdered by Balzo . . . . .	309, 310
—	His corpse removed to Rouen; the key of the silver shrine found fastened to his girdle . . . . .	310
—	State of affairs in Normandy immediately after Guillaume's death . . . . .	310-322
	Bernard the Dane . . . . .	311
—	Botho;—Osmond-de-Cent-Villes;—Raoul Torta . . . . .	312
—	Ivo, the "Normannus Normanorum" . . . . .	312
—	Ivo, founder of the families of Belesme, Ponthieu, Perche, Alençon and Montgomery . . . . .	313
—	Liutgarda espouses Thibaut-le-Tricheur, Count of Blois . . . . .	313
—	Espriota accepts Sperling the rich miller . . . . .	313
—	Divine right of Kings; how construed during the mediæval period . . . . .	314
—	Saul viewed by the mediæval Church as the type of royalty . . . . .	315
—	Hereditary right, requiring the people's ratification on each mutation of authority . . . . .	316
—	Guillaume-Longue-Épée interred in Rouen Cathedral —his tomb . . . . .	317
—	Richard recognized as his father's heir, upon Juhel Berenger's proposition . . . . .	319
—	Richard's solemn inauguration . . . . .	320
—	Loyalty of the Normans towards Richard . . . . .	321
—	Guillaume-Longue-Épée's memory dear to the people . . . . .	322
—	Normandy, one and indivisible . . . . .	322

## CHAPTER IV.—PART I.

LOUIS-D'OUTREMER; LOTHAIRE-AND LOUIS-LE-FAINÉANT; RICHARD-  
SANS-PEUR; ACCESSION OF THE CAPETS.

942—987.

942	The last era of the Carolingian dynasty comes in prospect . . . . .	323
—	Decline of the Dynasty though the Monarchical principle increases in strength . . . . .	323, 324

b

A.D.		PAGE
942	Spirit of Louis-d'Outremer's government . . .	325
—	Influence of his mother Ogiva . . . . .	325
—	Ogiva superseded, after his marriage, by the influence of Gerberga . . . . .	326
—	Ogiva, lay abbess of Notre Dame de Laën . . . .	326
—	Spirit and energy of Louis well matched by Ger- berga . . . . .	327
943	Herbert of Vermandois, various traditions concern- ing his death . . . . .	329
—	Partition of Count Herbert's dominions amongst his sons . . . . .	330
—	Apparent but unreal gain to Louis upon Herbert's death . . . . .	331
—	Birth of Hugh Capet . . . . .	332
—	Hugh-le-Grand's ambitious designs become more de- finite . . . . .	332, 333
—	Louis plans the subjugation of Normandy . . . .	334
—	Probabilities of his success diminished by the affec- tion of the Normans for Richard . . . . .	336
—	Hugh-le-Grand's territorial command of Normandy .	337
—	Hatred entertained by Louis against Hugh-le- Grand . . . . .	338
—	Normandy's adversaries . . . . .	339, 340
—	Normandy enfeebled by the antipathies between the Danish and Christian parties . . . . .	341, 342
941—942	Danes and Christians provoked against each other by Guillaume-Longue-Epée's vacillations .	342
—	Nevertheless Bernard the Dane heads the Christian party . . . . .	342
—	Their present preponderance . . . . .	343
942—943	Movement of the Danishry . . . . .	344
—	Thormod renounces Christianity . . . . .	344
—	Pagans and Christians equally loyal to Richard . .	345
—	Bernard the Dane and the Christian party present Richard to Louis at his palace . . . . .	346
—	Investiture of Normandy granted to Richard though he is stigmatised by the French as a bastard . . .	347
—	The Normans of the French party perform homage to Louis as King of France . . . . .	348
—	Other Normans become the men of Hugh-le-Grand .	349
—	Danish invasion King Sithric and Thormod join their forces . . . . .	350, 351
—	Thormod obtains possession of the person of young Richard and converts the child to Paganism . .	350
—	Concealment of this perversion by the Norman his- torians . . . . .	351

# CONTENTS.

xix

A.D.	PAGE
942—943 Hugh-le-Grand's energy against the Danes . . . . .	352
— He establishes himself in the Evreçin . . . . .	352
— Vigour displayed by Louis . . . . .	352
— The "Battle of the rescue;" Danes defeated by Louis; Thormod and Sithric slain . . . . .	353
— Importance of this battle . . . . .	354, 355
— Louis pursues his plans for obtaining the superiority of Normandy . . . . .	355, 358
943 Louis enters Rouen as a conqueror . . . . .	358-360
— Injudicious concessions made by the Regency . . . . .	361
— Simulated cordiality of the reception of Louis at Rouen . . . . .	363
— Louis obtains possession of the young Richard's person . . . . .	363
— General insurrection of the Rouen population against Louis . . . . .	364
— His duplicity and terror . . . . .	365
— He surrenders the child to the Regency . . . . .	366
— Nevertheless the Normans detain him as a prisoner in his palace . . . . .	367
— Conference between Louis and the Regents . . . . .	367, 368
— Peace concluded upon the principle of mutuality . . . . .	368
— Normandy regranted by Louis to Richard, who per- forms homage . . . . .	368
— But, the King and the Duke of Normandy to be deemed equals, saving the King's regal dignity . . . . .	368
— Louis obtains the charge of Richard's education . . . . .	369
— Louis makes his circuit through Normandy with Richard as his Ward . . . . .	370, 371
— Double dealing of Louis . . . . .	371, 372
— He pledges himself to avenge Guillaume-Longue- Epée's death . . . . .	372
— Louis convenes the Normans; explains the plans of his intended campaign against Flanders . . . . .	372, 373
— Louis proposes to remove Richard to Laôn . . . . .	374
— The Regents give their assent . . . . .	375
— Probability that they were influenced by the prospect of placing Richard out of the power of the Danishry . . . . .	376
— Louis proceeds to Laôn with Richard . . . . .	377
— The latter accompanied by Ivo-de-Creil and Osmond- de-Cent-Villes . . . . .	377
— Louis, superseding the Norman authorities, appoints- Count Herlouin Governor of Rouen . . . . .	378
— Encreasing distrust between Louis and Hugh-le-Grand . . . . .	379

A.D.	PAGE
943—944 Partition of the Vermandois inheritance . .	380-382
— Simulated reconciliation between Louis and Hugh-le-Grand . . . . .	383
— Medical practice divided between the Clergy and the Jews . . . . .	384
— Deroldus, Bishop of Amiens, the King's body physician . . . . .	384
— Gerberga patronizes a Neapolitan practitioner . .	385
— Pharmaceutical duel between the Neapolitan and the Bishop . . . . .	386
— The three Dukes of Burgundy . . . . .	387
— Hugh-le-Blanc, or le-Grand, Hugh-le-Noir, and Gilbert . . . . .	388
— Concord of the Burgundian Dukes . . . . .	388-390
— Simulated friendship between Louis and Hugh-le-Grand . . . . .	388-390
— Hugh, sponsor to the King's infant daughter . .	390
— Louis grants further powers to Hugh in his Duchy of France . . . . .	390
— Cedes all Burgundy to him . . . . .	390, 391
— Imperfect obedience of the Aquitanian princes . .	391, 392
— Louis moves towards the South, and enforces his supremacy . . . . .	393
— The Aquitanian Princes and Nobles surrender their Fiefs and accept new grants thereof . . . .	394
944—945 Plans formed by Louis for extending his dominion in Flanders . . . . .	395
— Montigny and Amiens surrender to him . . . .	396
— Battle between the Flemings and the French;—Arnoul defeated, Balzo slain . . . . .	396
— Hugh-le-Grand's consistent maintenance of his views upon France . . . . .	396, 397
— Proposition for the partition of France between the King and the Duke . . . . .	397, 398
— Hugh's intrigues amongst the Normans . . . .	398, 399
— Renewed quarrel between Otho King of Germany and Louis . . . . .	399, 400
— King Otho grants Lorraine to Conrad the Red . .	400
— Louis and Hugh-le-Grand compete for Otho's alliance . . . . .	401
— Richard in the Tower of Laón, with Osmond his tutor . . . . .	402, 403
— Arnoul excites Louis against Richard . . . .	403

# CONTENTS.

xxi

A.D.	PAGE
944—945 Arnoul proposes an alliance between France and Flanders against the Normans . . . . .	403, 404
— Louis places Osmond and Richard under arrest . . . . .	404, 405
— Which arrest they break . . . . .	406
— The King's burst of passion discloses his enmity; he threatens to mutilate Richard . . . . .	407, 408
— Affliction of the Normans; prayers offered for the young Duke's deliverance from his enemies . . . . .	408-410
— Richard declines in health . . . . .	410, 411
— Richard continues sinking; delight of Louis and Gerberga . . . . .	411, 412
— Richard being apparently on his death-bed, Louis and Gerberga give a grand banquet in the Castle . . . . .	413
— Richard's escape by the advice and aid of Osmond-de-Cent-Villes . . . . .	413, 414
— Richard safely conducted to Couci . . . . .	414
— Osmond hastens to Bernard-de-Senlis, who takes Richard under his protection . . . . .	414, 415
— Negotiations between Osmond and Bernard-de-Senlis, on Richard's behalf . . . . .	415, 416
— Bernard places Richard under Hugh-le-Grand's protection . . . . .	416, 417
— Hugh-le-Grand refuses to distrain Bernard-de-Senlis to surrender Richard to Louis, and defies the King . . . . .	418
— Conferences between Louis and Count Arnoul: partition of Normandy proposed . . . . .	418, 419
— Hugh-le-Grand summoned to appear before the King . . . . .	419, 420
— Hugh assents to a meeting between himself and the King at Bourg de la Croix . . . . .	420
— Hugh refuses to enforce the surrender of Richard . . . . .	420
— But he is bought over by Louis, who promises to divide Normandy with him . . . . .	421
— Bernard-de-Senlis and Bernard the Dane agree upon a scheme for setting Hugh-le-Grand and Louis at variance . . . . .	422
— The Normans ally themselves to Thibaut-le-Tricheur and Harold Blaatand . . . . .	423, 424
— Civil wars in Armorica . . . . .	425-426
— Invasion of the Danes . . . . .	426
— Great alarm excited thereby . . . . .	427
— The French and the Flemings invade Normandy: successes of Arnoul and Louis . . . . .	428, 429



A.D.		PAGE
944	Hugh-le-Grand besieges Bayeux . . . . .	429, 430
—	Bernard the Dane's plot for enticing Louis into Rouen, offering an unconditional surrender . . . .	432-433
—	The Normans, upon the secret information given by Bernard, do not oppose any obstacle . . . . .	434
—	Louis enters Rouen and takes possession of the palace . . . .	434-437
—	The drunken carouse in the palace on the eve of his entry . . . . .	438
—	Want of truth on all sides . . . . .	439
—	Bernard, assisting at the feast, encourages the King . . . .	439-441
944-945	He also takes the opportunity of setting Louis and Hugh-le-Grand at variance . . . . .	442, 443
—	The Normans taunt Louis with his imprudence in acceding to the partition of Normandy with Hugh- le-Grand . . . . .	444
—	They oppose the measure as detrimental to the gene- ral interests of the country . . . . .	445
—	Louis revokes the grant . . . . .	446
—	Hugh's indignation . . . . .	447
—	Simulated submission of the Normans . . . . .	448, 449
—	Apparent prosperity of Louis in Normandy . . . .	450
—	Raoul Torta, the King's prime minister . . . . .	451
—	Absence of information concerning the early Nor- man laws and customs . . . . .	451
—	Probability that the peasantry were better off under Richard's reign than in the next generation . . . .	451, 452
—	Their enjoyment of common or unappropriated lands . . . .	452
—	Heavy taxes imposed by Raoul Torta . . . . .	452, 453
—	Ecclesiastical buildings demolished by him . . . .	453
—	Jumièges partially redeemed . . . . .	453, 454
—	Insolence of the French soldiery . . . . .	454, 455
—	The French claim the Norman lands . . . . .	455, 456
—	Bernard the Dane "begged" of the King . . . . .	457, 458
—	Rumour that the King would grant the Norman wo- men as well as the Norman lands . . . . .	459
—	Old Bernard's young wife pointed at in particular . . . .	459, 460
—	The Normans prepare for insurrection . . . . .	461
—	Bernard organises his plans for opposing Louis . . . .	461, 462
—	Hugh-le-Grand also plans to play the Danes off against Louis . . . . .	462
—	Louis not inobservant of these machinations . . . .	461, 462
—	Another son born to Louis at Laon, Carloman . . . .	462
—	Hugh-le-Grand openly joins Bernard-de-Senlis . . . .	463
—	They invade the Rhemois . . . . .	463

# CONTENTS.

xxiii

A.D.		PAGE
945	They burn and plunder Montigny and Compiègne; the latter twice . . . . .	463
—	Artaldus expelled . . . . .	464
—	Harold Blaataand begins the war of deliverance . . . . .	465
—	Blaataand's head quarters at Cherbourg . . . . .	464, 465
—	Great alterations on this coast . . . . .	465, 466
—	Harold musters his army near the Salt Marshes of Corbon . . . . .	466, 467
—	General rising of the Basse-Normandie against the French . . . . .	466
—	They join Harold's army . . . . .	466, 467
—	Bernard the Dane feigns warm loyalty towards Louis . . . . .	466, 467
—	The lost Latin Chronicle, quoted by Benoit . . . . .	468
—	Pride and energy of the French . . . . .	468
—	Louis marches against Harold . . . . .	469, 470
—	The French encamp on the banks of the Dive . . . . .	470, 471
—	Splendour of the French camp . . . . .	470, 471
—	Contrasted with the sober aspect of the Danish camp . . . . .	471
—	Danes take their position near the Salt Marshes of Corbon . . . . .	471
—	Conference between the Danes and the French . . . . .	471, 472
—	Harold and Louis scold at each other . . . . .	472
—	French negligence . . . . .	472
—	Danish vigilance . . . . .	473
—	The Danes cross the Dive before day-break and sur- prise the French . . . . .	473, 474
—	The Cotentin Knight reproaches Herluin as the cause of the war . . . . .	473
—	Scuffle with the Danes; Herluin slain . . . . .	475, 476
—	French army totally routed . . . . .	476, 477
—	Single combat between Harold Blaataand and Louis . . . . .	476
—	Louis taken prisoner by Blaataand . . . . .	476
—	Louis escapes . . . . .	477, 478
—	His pitiful adventures . . . . .	478, 479
—	He is harboured by a Rouen knight . . . . .	478, 479
—	But tracked and captured by Bernard the Dane . . . . .	479, 480
—	Louis imprisoned at Rouen . . . . .	480, 481
—	Harold Blaataand's magnanimity . . . . .	482
—	He restores Richard's authority and returns to Den- mark . . . . .	482
—	Bernard and the Normans determine to detain Louis in prison . . . . .	483

A.D.		PAGE
945	Nor to be released till he has renounced all his pretensions upon Normandy . . . . .	483, 484
—	Hugh-le-Grand seeks to secure the whole royal family . . . . .	484, 485
—	Gerberga sues for mercy . . . . .	485
—	Hugh-le-Grand presents himself as a mediator . . .	485
—	Normans demand that all the King's male children should be surrendered to them as hostages . . .	485
—	Gerberga resolutely refuses to give up the lad Lothaire .	486
—	But consents that the Normans should have the baby Carloman . . . . .	486
—	Normans insist that the Bishops of Soissons and Beauvais and others should be also added as hostages . . . . .	486
—	Louis shifted from jail to jail . . . . .	486
—	Gerberga solicits the aid of England and Germany .	486, 487
—	Ogiva does not make any exertion . . . . .	487
—	Edmund the Magnificent, assuming an arrogant tone, demands the liberation of Louis . . . . .	488
—	A naval invasion threatened from England . . .	488
—	Hugh-le-Grand and the French retaliate by bullying .	488
—	Gerberga seeks Otho's help . . . . .	489
—	Otho unable to assist . . . . .	490
—	Death of the babe Carloman . . . . .	491
—	Hugh the Grand encreases the rigour of the King's captivity . . . . .	491, 492
—	Steadfastness of Louis . . . . .	492
—	He is placed under the charge of Thibant-le-Tricheur .	492
—	Louis agrees to surrender Laën . . . . .	492, 493
—	And is released . . . . .	493
—	Hugh-le-Grand "renovates" the royal authority . .	493, 494
—	He settles the political relations between Normandy and France . . . . .	494
—	Richard, saving his homage, declared independent of France . . . . .	495
—	William the Conqueror encourages his troops at Hastings by appealing to this humiliation of the French . . . . .	495, 496
—	Richard returns to Rouen a ducal Monarch . . .	496
—	Founders of States, their special providence . . .	497
—	Richard-sans-Peur, not Rollo, Normandy's real Founder . . . . .	497, 498
—	National character of Normandy under Richard-sans-Peur . . . . .	499

# CONTENTS.

XXV

A.D.		PAGE
945	Richard's triumphant entry into Rouen . . . . .	500
—	Theory of the majority of Sovereigns . . . . .	500-502
—	Early development produced by circumstances . . . . .	502
—	Richard's mental gifts and education . . . . .	503, 504
—	Careful education of children, the family tradition of the Norman Dukes . . . . .	504
—	Richard's court and household . . . . .	504, 505
—	Commences extravagantly . . . . .	505, 506
—	Richard's favourites and friends . . . . .	506
—	Raoul Torta;—the steward his master's master . . . . .	506-508
—	Richard's vigour . . . . .	508
—	Richard impeaches Raoul Torta . . . . .	508
—	Raoul Torta banished by a <i>coup de main</i> . . . . .	509
—	Popular epithets of Sovereigns . . . . .	509, 510
—	Richard, why called Sans Peur: legends concerning him . . . . .	510, 511
—	Richard's triumphant position . . . . .	511, 512
—	Normandy a Monarchy, Richard governs as King . . . . .	513-514
—	Predilection of the Normans for the Monarchical principle. . . . .	514
—	Alain Barbe Torte and the Bretons . . . . .	514, 515
—	Their obedience to Richard . . . . .	514, 515
—	Hugh-le-Grand; extent of his dominions . . . . .	514-517
—	Louis; his spirit undaunted by his misfortunes . . . . .	517
—	Hugh-le-Grand; his political situation, how affected by Normandy . . . . .	518
—	Hugh-le-Grand's family. Hugh Capet and Emma . . . . .	519
—	Importance of Normandy to Hugh-le-Grand . . . . .	519-521
—	Dangers from Flanders, France, and Germany; im- pending over Richard . . . . .	521
—	Odium attached to Richard on account of his Danish ancestry . . . . .	522
—	"Commendation" . . . . .	522, 523
—	Richard isolated in the Carolingian commonwealth . . . . .	523, 524
—	Tenure, Mésalliance, and Caste . . . . .	524, 525
—	Principle of Mésalliance not acknowledged by law, though gaining ground in public opinion . . . . .	525, 526
—	The two Bernards, the Bernard of Senlis and Bernard the Dane, summoned to Paris . . . . .	526
—	Hugh-le-Grand's anxiety to make up a match be- tween his daughter Emma and Richard . . . . .	526
—	Hugh-le-Grand cleverly gives the hint to Richard's friends . . . . .	527
—	They take the hint . . . . .	527

A.D.		PAGE
945	Hugh-le-Grand assents, stipulating that Richard should perform "commendation" . . . . .	528, 529
—	Bernard-de-Senlis accepts the proposition on behalf of Richard and the Normans . . . . .	528, 529
—	Betrothal of Richard and Emma . . . . .	529, 530
—	Richard knighted by Hugh-le-Grand . . . . .	530, 531
—	Probability that Hugh-le-Grand followed the example of Anglo-Saxon Albion . . . . .	532, 533
—	Feudal dependence of Normandy upon France under the Capetians . . . . .	533
—	Such dependence the result of Richard's commendation to Hugh-le-Grand . . . . .	533, 534
—	Richard founds the Norman Baronage . . . . .	534, 535
—	The three premier Barons of Normandy . . . . .	535
—	Osmond-de-Cent-Villes . . . . .	535
—	Bernard the Dane . . . . .	535, 536
—	Ivo-de-Belesme . . . . .	535, 536
—	Development of tenure . . . . .	536
—	Apprehensions excited by the alliance between Richard and Hugh-le-Grand . . . . .	536, 537
—	Otho and Louis; their enduring enmity against Richard . . . . .	537
—	Arnoul of Flanders; his unmitigated antipathy against Richard . . . . .	537, 538
—	He excites Louis and Otho to combine for Richard's ruin . . . . .	538, 539
—	Otho's family troubles . . . . .	539
—	Liudolph, Otho's son by Edith, appointed his successor . . . . .	539
946—947	Grudgings between Otho and Louis concerning Lorraine . . . . .	540, 541
—	Arnoul's exertions to effect the coalition between Otho and Louis . . . . .	541, 542
—	Otho determines upon war . . . . .	542, 543
—	Otho musters his troops at Cambray . . . . .	543
—	Prominence given to Otho's nephew the Edeling . . . . .	543
—	Magnitude of the army assembled by Otho . . . . .	543, 544
—	Equipment of Otho's army; their straw hats . . . . .	544, 545
—	Learned Disquisitions thereon . . . . .	545, 546
—	Otho's arrogance . . . . .	546
—	Reciprocated by Hugh le Grand . . . . .	546
—	Hugh-le-Grand prepares for defence . . . . .	547
—	Otho and Conrad of Burgundy cross the French border . . . . .	547
—	Otho and Louis attempt Laon but unsuccessfully . . . . .	548

# CONTENTS.

xxvii

A.D.		PAGE
946	Siege of Rheims . . . . .	548, 549
—	Archbishop Hugh abandons the city, which surrenders . . . . .	550
—	Adalbero, Archbishop Hugh's rival, restored, but uncanonically . . . . .	550
—	Gerberga takes the command of Rheims . . . . .	550
—	The allied Kings advance into Hugh-le-Grand's territories . . . . .	550
—	They march towards Paris . . . . .	551
—	Hugh-le-Grand retreats to Orleans . . . . .	551, 552
—	The German army before Paris . . . . .	553
—	The Edeling's chivalry . . . . .	553
—	The Germans supported by the Flemish battalions under Arnoul . . . . .	553
—	Also by Louis and the French . . . . .	553
—	Difficulties of crossing the Seine . . . . .	553
—	Device whereby the German troops effect the transit . . . . .	554
—	Hugh-le-Grand's possessions ravaged by the enemy . . . . .	554, 555
—	Arnoul excites Otho to enter Normandy, promising the co-operation of the Normans . . . . .	555, 556
—	The Normans quiescent . . . . .	557
—	The Germans advance as far as the Andelle . . . . .	557
—	Otho's uneasiness . . . . .	558
—	He suspects Arnoul's sincerity . . . . .	558, 559
—	Mutual hatred between the Danes and the Germans . . . . .	559, 560
—	Exemplification thereof in the murder of Godfrey by Charles-le-Gros and the Archbishop of Cologne . . . . .	560, 561
—	Preparations made by Richard for defending Rouen . . . . .	562
—	Order of march of the allied armies . . . . .	562, 563
—	Situations and defences of Rouen . . . . .	563
—	Otho's bitterness against the Normans . . . . .	563, 564
—	The Edeling challenges them . . . . .	565
—	The Norman sortie, headed by Richard . . . . .	565
—	They are attacked by the Germans; the Edeling leading them on . . . . .	566-568
—	The Edeling slain . . . . .	566, 567
—	Richard has the credit of giving the mortal wound . . . . .	567
—	The Germans completely defeated . . . . .	567
—	Richard's triumphant re-entry . . . . .	568
—	Rejoicings in Rouen . . . . .	568
—	Germans recover the Edeling's corpse . . . . .	568, 569
—	The Edeling's obsequies; Otho's mourning . . . . .	569
—	Germans throw the blame of the defeat upon Arnoul . . . . .	570

A.D.		PAGE
946	The allies station themselves before Rouen . . .	570
—	The German sally . . . . .	571
—	The Normans headed by Richard . . . . .	571
—	The French continue in the field . . . . .	571
—	The German camp; the Edeling's obsequies . . .	572
—	Otho rallies and surveys the vicinities of the city .	573
—	He proposes to establish a blockade . . . . .	574
—	The German leaders dissent from the scheme . . .	574, 575
—	Otho solicits a truce . . . . .	575
—	He and his Nobles are permitted to lodge in the Abbey of Saint Ouen . . . . .	575, 576
—	Otho's "Parliament" at Saint Ouen . . . . .	576
—	All his princes and captains included, save Arnoul .	577
—	Arnoul accused of treachery . . . . .	577
—	Otho proposes that Arnoul should be surrendered to Richard, and suffer condign punishment . . . .	577
—	The Germans refuse, and resolve to raise the siege .	578
—	Otho abandons Rouen . . . . .	578
—	Arnoul alarmed, determines to move off during the night . . . . .	578, 579
—	Simultaneous panic of the French and Germans .	580, 581
—	Conflagration in the German camp . . . . .	581
—	Strange panic within Rouen; the inhabitants appre- hend a dreadful assault . . . . .	582
—	Rejoicings of the inhabitants when they ascertain the departure of the enemy . . . . .	582, 583
—	Flemings and French retreat in safety . . . . .	583, 584
—	The Germans plunge into the forests . . . . .	584
—	Rising of the peasants against the enemy . . . .	584
—	Fight between the Germans and the peasants at Bihorel . . . . .	584
—	Another conflict between the Germans and the peasants at Maromme . . . . .	585
—	Ambuscade of the Normans, further on . . . . .	585
—	Germans completely defeated . . . . .	586
—	They are pursued by the Normans as far as the neighbourhood of Amiens . . . . .	586
—	The Rougemare . . . . .	586
—	Triumphal entry of Richard into Rouen . . . . .	586
—	History, a series of epics . . . . .	587
—	Undaunted spirit of Louis . . . . .	588
—	Otho's influence over France . . . . .	588
947—948	Louis needs Otho's support against Hugh-le-Grand	590

# CONTENTS.

xxix

A. D.	PAGE
947 Importance of Rheims . . . . .	590
— Diocese of Rheims—the only territory faithful to Louis . . . . .	590
— Hugh-le-Grand, Thibaut-le-Tricheur, and Hugh the Parvulus, all labour for the expulsion of Artaldus . . . . .	591
— Five ecclesiastical Councils held for the purpose of discussing the claims of the rival Archbishops . . . . .	591
— Placitum or mixed Council, held in the royal camp, on the banks of the Cher . . . . .	592
— Hugh-le-Grand refuses to appear in person, but sends his Proctor, Sigibaldus . . . . .	592
— Document tendered by the Proctor, purporting to be the resignation of Artaldus . . . . .	592, 593
948 Synod of Verdun; the Archbishop of Treves presiding . . . . .	593
— Israel Scotigena from Ireland . . . . .	593
— Synod of Monzon, to which the Parvulus is cited . . . . .	594
— He makes a feint of appearing, but does not enter the Synod . . . . .	594
— The Proctor propounds a forged Bull on his Principal's behalf . . . . .	594
— Frequency of such forgeries . . . . .	595
— Artaldus excommunicated until he should clear himself before a general Council of the Gauls . . . . .	595
— Moral vigour of Louis . . . . .	596
— Union between Louis and Otho . . . . .	596
— Pope Agapet . . . . .	597
— Council at Ingleheim, under the presidency of Marinus, the Papal legate . . . . .	597
— Mixed character of this Council . . . . .	597
— Otho and Louis introduced . . . . .	597
— Louis, appealing to the Council, narrates his misfortunes from his birth . . . . .	598
— He notices how his life was saved by Ogiva . . . . .	598
— He impeaches Hugh-le-Grand, and challenges Hugh to submit to the judgment of the Synod, or clear himself by the battle-trial . . . . .	599
— No one answers on Hugh's behalf . . . . .	599
— But Sigibaldus re-appears, and asserts the rights of the Parvulus . . . . .	599
— Hugh-le-Grand censured, and summoned to obey the decree of the Synod . . . . .	600
— Adjourned Sessions of the Council at Laën and at Treves . . . . .	601



A.D.	PAGE
948 In the last, Hugh-le-Grand provisionally excommunicated . . . . .	601
— Hugh takes the lead in the Council . . . . .	602
— Sources of information for this portion of history . . . . .	602
— Artaldus, Frodoardus, and Raoul the father of Richerius . . . . .	608
— Alacrity of Louis increases, while Hugh's popularity diminishes . . . . .	604
948—949 Military support given by Normandy to Hugh-le-Grand . . . . .	604
— Louis insults Soissons, but is beat off—he then ravages the Rhemois . . . . .	604
— Escape of the Parvulus from the troops of Louis . . . . .	604, 605
— Montaigne taken by Louis, who also invests Laón . . . . .	605
949—950 Another child born to Louis . . . . .	606
949 Gerberga visits Otho . . . . .	606
— Otho's splendid Court, held during the Paschal feast, at Aix-la-Chapelle . . . . .	606-608
— Raoul, the father of Richer, devises a stratagem for surprising Laón . . . . .	608
— The device succeeds . . . . .	610
— Louis fails before Senlis . . . . .	610
— And Hugh, equally, in endeavouring to recover Laón . . . . .	611
— Hugh-le-Grand, excommunicated by Pope Agapet, unless he should submit to his King . . . . .	612
— Conference on the banks of the Marne . . . . .	612, 613
— Pacification then concluded between Louis and Hugh . . . . .	612
— Hugh-le-Grand becomes the King's homager . . . . .	613
— Triumphant advance of Louis . . . . .	613
951 Louis confined by illness during more than a year . . . . .	613, 614
— Louis causes his son Lothaire, to be designated as King . . . . .	614
— Progress of Louis into Aquitaine . . . . .	615
— Submission of the Aquitanian and Burgundian princes . . . . .	616
— Louis falls ill again . . . . .	616
951—952 He is nursed at Besançon by Count Leutaldus . . . . .	616
— Troubles in Lorraine . . . . .	616
— Bar-le-duc founded by Count Frederick . . . . .	617
— Disturbances in the Vermandois . . . . .	617, 618
— Ogiva elopes with Herbert the Handsome, Count of Troyes . . . . .	619
— Louis deprives his mother of her preferment, but Herbert grants her the Abbey of Saint Medard as a dowry . . . . .	619

# CONTENTS.

xxxi

A.D.	PAGE
953—954 The Magyars, instigated by Conrad, devastate Germany, France, Burgundy, and Italy . . .	619, 620
— They introduce the small-pox into western Europe . . .	620
— Revolts in the Vermandois ; Hugh-le-Grand joins the revolters. Gerberga mediates . . .	620, 621
— Twin sons born to Louis by Gerberga ; Charles, afterwards the Pretender, and Henry. Early death of the latter . . .	621, 622
954—Louis prepares vigorously for the restoration of his authority . . .	622
— He is strangely thrown from his horse, and receives some great internal injury . . .	622
951—954 His death occasioned by a disease, apparently unconnected with the accident . . .	622, 623
— Louis buried at Saint Remi,—his tomb and epitaph . . .	622, 623

## CHAPTER IV. PART II.

LOUIS AND LOTHAIRE. OTHO AND HIS SONS. RICHARD-SANS-PEUR.

951—987.

The Roman Empire, or Fourth Monarchy, prophetically symbolized in the Holy Scriptures by the Eagle . . .	624-626
Intimate connexion between ancient Rome and modern civilization . . .	625
951—962 Otho, the organizer of the Holy Roman Empire . . .	626
— Intimate connexion during Otho's life, between Germany, Italy, and France . . .	626
— Individuality of the Human soul ; the foundation of history . . .	627, 628
— Otho's tendency to knight-errantry . . .	628, 629
— Chivalry said to have arisen under Henry the Fowler, his father . . .	629, 630
— The famous "Turnier-buch ;" opinions as to its evidence . . .	630, 631
— Peculiar character of German heraldry . . .	631, 632
— Battle ordeal, discouraged by the Church . . .	632
— Otho's predilection for chivalrous enterprize . . .	632

A.D.	PAGE
951	Duel, commanded by Otho for the purpose of deciding the principles of representation . . . . . 633, 634
—	Liutgarda of the Silver Distaff, Otho's daughter, married to Conrad of Lorraine . . . . . 634
—	Accused of adultery, Otho compels her to clear herself by the battle trial . . . . . 634, 635
—	The Emperor viewed as the Head and defender of the Church, and of Christianity . . . . . 635, 636
—	Emperors in Italy, subsequent to the dismemberment of the Carolingian empire . . . . . 637
—	Henry the Fowler " <i>Advocatus Romanorum</i> ," but not Emperor . . . . . 638
—	Otho seeks to obtain the supremacy over the whole Carolingian empire . . . . . 638, 639
—	Political divisions of Italy—Lombardy—Rome—Apulia . . . . . 639-641
—	Berenger, Marquis of Ivrea, and Lothaire, Count of Provence, joint Kings of Lombardy . . . . . 641
—	Persecution of Adelaide, Lothaire's widow, by Berenger and his wife, Guilla . . . . . 642
—	Adelaide's imprisonment and hazardous escape . . . . . 642, 643
—	Albert Azzo, Count of Modena, protects her . . . . . 643-645
—	Otho determines to conquer Italy and win Adelaide . . . . . 645
—	He enters Lombardy . . . . . 645, 646
—	His triumphant occupation of Milan . . . . . 646
—	The " <i>Ottelini</i> ," his coinage . . . . . 647
—	Berenger retreats . . . . . 647
—	Otho enters Pavia,—assumes the titles of <i>Rex Francorum et Longobardorum</i> . . . . . 647, 648
—	Otho marries Adelaide . . . . . 648
—	Liudolph's jealousy and rebellion . . . . . 648, 649
952	Discontent excited in Germany, by Otho's Italian marriage . . . . . 650
—	Berenger appeals to Otho's mercy . . . . . 650
—	The great Diet of Augsburg—Berenger performs homage to Otho—fall of the great aerolithe . . . . . 651, 652
952—953	Otho's children by Adelaide—Liudolph's jealousy of them . . . . . 653, 654
—	Otho's family confederate against him . . . . . 655, 656
—	Conrad and Liudolph invite the Magyars . . . . . 656
954—955	Suppression of the family revolt; pacification of Arnsdadt . . . . . 657
—	Liudolph's humiliation and Conrad's repentance . . . . . 657

# CONTENTS.

xxxiii

A.D.	PAGE
954 Cunning conduct of the Magyars . . . . .	658
— Their dreadful invasion of Germany . . . . .	659
— Otho rallies his comparatively scanty forces . . . . .	660
— The Magyars having attacked Augsburg, advance towards the Lech-feld . . . . .	660
— Otho occupies the opposite bank . . . . .	660, 661
— Saint Michael's banner,—the winged warrior a symbol identical with Saint George . . . . .	661, 662
— Sudden attack of the German army by the Magyars, who are driven back by Conrad . . . . .	663
— The eve and morn of the general battle . . . . .	665, 666
— The great battle of the Lech-feld; Conrad slain; Magyars completely defeated; cruelty of the German victors . . . . .	664, 665
— Otho saluted "Imperator" by his troops on the field of battle . . . . .	665
— Importance of this victory to Christendom . . . . .	666
— Conversion of the Magyars . . . . .	666
— Conversion of King Stephen . . . . .	666
955—956 Italian affairs resumed . . . . .	666, 667
— Berenger attacks Albert Azzo . . . . .	667
— Berenger and his Queen retreat to the Castle of San Giulio, in the Lago d'Orta . . . . .	666, 667
— He surrenders to Liudolph, who, unfaithful to his father, releases Berenger . . . . .	668
— Liudolph's mysterious death . . . . .	668 669
960 Berenger recovers authority in Lombardy, but tyrannizes over his subjects . . . . .	669
— Otho invited by the Lombards as their deliverer . . . . .	669
— Otho the Younger (afterwards Otho II.) accepted as King by the Germans,—crowned at Aix-la-Chapelle . . . . .	670
— The German army nominally headed by the young Otho, enters Lombardy . . . . .	670, 671
— Berenger and Guilla resist; but they are ultimately compelled to yield . . . . .	671
— Adventures of their son, Adalbert . . . . .	671, 672
961—962 The elder Otho, King of Italy, crowned at Milan . . . . .	672
962 Otho and Adelaide enter Rome, and are lodged in the Palace of the Cæsars . . . . .	673
— Otho accepted as Emperor by the Roman Republic, and crowned by Pope John XII. . . . .	673
— The Pontiff and the Roman people take the oath of fealty . . . . .	673, 674

c

A.D.		PAGE
962	Otho reciprocates by re-granting to the Papal see all the endowments bestowed by Pepin, Charlemagne, and Louis-le-Débonnaire . . . . .	674
—	But only the usufruct is granted to the Pope, and the Emperor reserves the imperial supremacy . . . . .	674, 675
964	French affairs resumed—Death of Louis—Gerberga claims the aid of her brothers, Otho and Bruno . . . . .	675-676
—	Otho despatches Archbishop Bruno to France as his Lieutenant, accompanied by the Lotharingian nobles . . . . .	677, 678
—	The Nations of the Gauls assemble for the purpose of electing the King; Gerberga presiding . . . . .	678, 679
—	Unprecedented introduction of the Lotharingian nation as an electoral college . . . . .	680
—	Elective character of the French monarchy; rights of legitimacy defeasible by an heir's incompetence . . . . .	681, 682
—	Lothaire accepted as King, and crowned at Rheims by Archbishop Artaldus . . . . .	682
964-965	The royal family at Laon; Gerberga, Lothaire, and the young Charles . . . . .	682
—	Hugh's cautious conduct as Protector . . . . .	682, 683
—	Hugh proposes to Gerberga, that Lothaire should make his <i>joyeuse entrée</i> in the principal Cities of his realm . . . . .	683, 684
—	Lothaire, accompanied by Hugh, repairs to Paris . . . . .	684
—	Lothaire receives Thibaut's homage at Chartres; their common hatred against Richard, being a bond of mutual union . . . . .	684, 685
—	Tête-d'Etope refuses submission . . . . .	685
—	Lothaire and Hugh-le-Grand invest Poitiers . . . . .	686
—	Stout defence of the City—Monastery of Saint Radegund burnt . . . . .	686
—	The French suspend operations; Tête-d'Etope becomes the assailant, but is defeated . . . . .	687
—	Second investment of Poitiers by the French . . . . .	687
—	The weather exceedingly sultry . . . . .	687
—	Hugh's pavilion rent by a whirlwind;—disease in the French army;—Hugh advises the raising of the siege . . . . .	688
966	Hugh's depression of spirits; he retires to his palace at Dordogne . . . . .	689, 690
—	Delay of the marriage between the betrothed Richard and Emma . . . . .	690, 691

# CONTENTS.

XXXV

A.D.	PAGE
956 Hugh, on his death-bed, urges the marriage; and requests that Richard should administer the inheritance . . . . .	691
— Hugh's death and burial . . . . .	691
— Richard, by means of Hugh's directions, ousts Lothaire from the wardship . . . . .	692
960 Richard still delays completing his marriage: but at length the espousals are concluded . . . . .	693
958 Affairs of Flanders resumed;—Arnoul-le-Vieux resigns in favour of his son, Baudouin-le-Jeune . . . . .	694, 695
— Baudouin-le-Jeune's promising character; he dies of the small-pox . . . . .	696
961 Arnoul-le-Jeune accepted as Count of Flanders, under his grandfather's tutelage . . . . .	696
965 Death of Arnoul-le-Vieux, and full accession of Arnoul-le-Jeune . . . . .	697
956 French affairs resumed;—Gerberga deprived of her dotal domains by Reinier, her brother-in-law . . . . .	697, 698
— Mons or Bergen entrusted to Alice, Countess of Hainault, by Reinier her husband . . . . .	698
— Stratagem whereby Raoul, the father of Richerius, gains possession of Mons . . . . .	698, 699
— The Countess and her children captured;—Archbishop Bruno compels Reinier to restore Gerberga's domains . . . . .	699
— Historical geography of Lorraine;—medieval and modern duchies, &c., composing the same . . . . .	700, 701
— Extent of Archbishop Bruno's duchy . . . . .	701, 702
— Bruno's constant apprehension of the Danes . . . . .	702, 703
959 Meeting between Gerberga and Bruno at Aix-la-Chapelle . . . . .	703, 704
959 Plans and pretensions of Herbert the Handsome . . . . .	704
— Robert, Count of Troyes, rebels against the King; he gains Dijon by the treachery of the commander . . . . .	704, 705
— Lothaire supported by Bruno's forces, regains the city, and beheads the traitor . . . . .	705
— Norman affairs resumed;—Richard increases in authority and influence . . . . .	705
— Thibaut excites Gerberga and Lothaire against Richard . . . . .	706
— Richard's principal supporters in Normandy, including some old veterans of his father's time . . . . .	706, 707
— The young generation rising up;—Gautier-le-Veneur . . . . .	707

A.D.		PAGE
959	Lothaire's accession ignored by Richard . . .	708
—	Hugh-le-Grand acknowledges himself a vassal of the Crown . . .	708
—	Legal necessity of such acknowledgment . . .	708, 709
—	Hugh-le-Grand's sons;—contraventions of the royal prerogative . . .	709
—	Lothaire asserts his rights, and divides Hugh-le-Grand's dominions between his sons . . .	710
—	Duchy of France, and superiority of Poitou, granted to Hugh Capet . . .	710, 711
—	Burgundy to Eudes; but in consequence of his early death, the fief survives to Hugh . . .	711
—	Richard's clever move;—he performs homage to the Capet as Hugh-le-Grand's heir, and becomes his vassal . . .	712
—	Richard, classed by mediæval physiologists as appetizing to the "sanguine temperament" . . .	718
—	His moral and physical portraiture anticipated in the precepts of the school of Salerno . . .	714
—	Inveteracy of Richard's enemies . . .	714
—	Intolerance,—the principle of all mankind . . .	715, 716
—	Apparent but intelligible inconsistencies of Gerberga's character . . .	716
—	Baudouin-le-Jeune of Flanders; his hereditary antipathy against Richard strengthened by his fear of the Danes . . .	717
—	Archbishop Bruno; his reason also for dreading their power . . .	717
—	Geoffrey-Grisgonnelle, Count of Anjou; he also Richard's enemy . . .	717, 718
—	Thibaut of Chartres and Liutgarda; their continued hatred against Richard . . .	718, 719
—	Thibaut's particular views upon the Evreçin . . .	719
—	Mutual hatred between the French and Normans . . .	719, 720
—	Magnanimity—a lost virtue . . .	720, 721
—	Richard and Lothaire interchangeably ridiculed by the French and the Normans, by reason of the ambiguous colour of their hair . . .	721 - 723
960—961	Thibaut provokes Lothaire and Gerberga against Richard . . .	723, 724
—	Richard's enemies seek assistance from Archbishop Bruno against him . . .	724
—	Confederacy between Lothaire, Gerberga, Otho, Thibaut, and Archbishop Bruno, to effect Richard's imprisonment or death . . .	724, 725

# CONTENTS.

xxxvii

A.D.	PAGE
960—961 Bruno invites Richard to a conference at Amiens	725
— Mysterious warning given to Richard of his danger	725, 726
— He accepts the warning, and returns to Rouen . . .	726, 727
— Discredit brought upon Bruno by this transaction . . .	727
— Mischief resulting from the annexation of temporal sovereignty to ecclesiastical dignity . . . . .	728
— German chroniclers gloss over Bruno's interference in Norman affairs . . . . .	728
— Thibaut persists in exciting Richard's enemies . . .	729
— Lothaire prepares for action . . . . .	729, 730
961 He holds a military muster and Great Council at Soissons . . . . .	729, 730
— Richard attacks Soissons and fails; a fact concealed by Norman historians . . . . .	730, 731
— Richard summoned by Lothaire to perform homage . . .	731
— Lothaire proposes a conference between Richard and himself, to be held within the Norman territory . . .	731, 732
— Alterations in the maritime and littoral geography of the French and Belgian channel coast, and the coasts of the North Sea . . . . .	732, 733
— Rivers intersecting the Norman littoral, from the Bresle to the Seine . . . . .	733, 734
— Lothaire appoints the conference to be held on the banks of the Eaulne . . . . .	734
— The three bad neighbours of Normandy,—Baudouin of Flanders,—Geoffrey of Anjou—and Thibaut-le-Tricheur . . . . .	734, 735
— Lothaire heads their advance . . . . .	735
— Richard prepares for a merry banquet . . . . .	735
— Scouts sent out by him; he is warned of the approach of the French . . . . .	736
— Lothaire's troops cross the Eaulne . . . . .	737
— The Normans fall back upon the Dieppe-water . . .	737
— The battle of the Fords . . . . .	737, 738
— Desperate fight made by Richard and by Gautier-le-Veneur . . . . .	738
— Lothaire's flight . . . . .	738, 739
— Richard's triumphal return to Rouen . . . . .	739
962 Thibaut excites Lothaire to assert his rights . . .	740
— The Cour plénière summoned by Lothaire at Laën. He impeaches Richard as a felon . . . . .	741
— The war resumed; Lothaire and Thibaut reduce Evreux . . . . .	742



A.D.	PAGE
962 Richard's reprisals; he invades and ravages the Pays Chartrain, and then disbands his troops . . . . .	742
— Thibaut takes his turn, and invades Normandy . . . . .	742, 743
— Richardet sent forth as a spy; his narrow escape . . . . .	743
— Rapid advance of Thibaut's forces; they encamp at Hermondeville . . . . .	743, 744
— Site of Thibaut's encampment, fixed by continued tradition . . . . .	744, 745
— Thibaut's troops in camp and bivouac . . . . .	745
— Their speed and cleverness . . . . .	746
— Richard's preparations for offensive and defensive operations . . . . .	745, 746
— The Norman troops cross the Seine by moonlight . . . . .	747
— Total rout of the Chartrain army . . . . .	747, 748
— Richard's humanity towards the vanquished . . . . .	748
— Thibaut's accumulated misfortunes . . . . .	749
— Perseverance of the French, and of Richard's ene- mies generally . . . . .	749
— Annoyance given by the "three bad neighbours" . . . . .	750
— Steadiness of the Bretons and Normans . . . . .	750
— Richard's soldiery, <i>i. e.</i> troops serving for hire . . . . .	750
— Richard's dangers fully appreciated by him . . . . .	751
— Social excommunication of Richard by the French and Germans . . . . .	751
— Richard therefore determines to throw himself upon the Danes . . . . .	752
— Harold Blaataud's prosperity . . . . .	753
— Richard invokes his aid . . . . .	753
— Harold assents; fits out a fleet, which enters the Seine . . . . .	754
— As advised by Richard, they ascend the river, and station themselves at the Fosse Givolde . . . . .	754
— Advantages of the position . . . . .	755
— Terror excited amongst the French by this invasion . . . . .	755
— Richard meets the Danes at the Fosse Givolde . . . . .	755
— Devastations committed by the Danes, but particu- larly in the Pays Chartrain . . . . .	756
— Panic of the French . . . . .	757
— Great councils held by Lothaire at Melun and Laon . . . . .	757, 758
— Wolfaldus, Bishop of Chartres, accepts the office of mediator; Richard consents to treat . . . . .	758, 759
— Thibaut seeks to negotiate with Richard inde- pendently . . . . .	760
— Thibaut visits Richard secretly at Rouen; pacifica- tion concluded; Evreux restored . . . . .	761

# CONTENTS.

xxxix

A.D.	PAGE
962 Splendid preparations made by Richard, for the reception of the French at the Fosse Givolde . . . . .	762
— They implore Richard's intervention, promising to secure the Regnum Northmannicum to him . . . . .	763
— Richard perplexed by his Danish friends . . . . .	764
— They reject his proposition of peace . . . . .	764
— Unless he goes with them, they will win France for themselves . . . . .	765
— Richard craves time to deliberate, and contrives to delay his answer for sixteen days . . . . .	765
— He explains his conduct to the French Bishops, and nobles . . . . .	765
— Richard meets the Danish Chiefs secretly late in the night . . . . .	766
— Richard preaches a sermon to the Danes, inviting them to accept Christianity . . . . .	767
— The Danish Chieftains advocate peace . . . . .	767
— The soldiers refuse the proposition indignantly . . . . .	768
— Violent disputes amongst the Danes, during which Richard keeps away . . . . .	768
— The Danes accept a compromise; some profess Christianity, and settle in Normandy . . . . .	768, 769
— The Heathens, upon Richard's suggestions, consent to depart for Spain . . . . .	769
— Connection of this expedition, with the future extension of Norman power . . . . .	770
— A fleet fitted out for the Danes in the Cotentin . . . . .	769, 770
— They invade Galicia, storm Compostella, and ravage the country . . . . .	770
— Danish occupation of Galicia during nearly two years . . . . .	771
— They are utterly expelled by Gonzalo Sanchez . . . . .	771, 772
— Lothaire makes peace with the Normans . . . . .	772
— And guarantees the Regnum Northmannicum to Richard and his descendants . . . . .	772
— Emma's death; time unknown . . . . .	773
— Feudal relations between Normandy and the Capets, before the accession of the latter to the French crown . . . . .	773
— Accession of the Capets an integral portion of Norman history . . . . .	774
— The last Carlovingians despised, because unfortunate . . . . .	774
— Normans not fully brought into the Christian commonwealth, till the subversion of the second dynasty . . . . .	775

A.D.		PAGE
775	Human societies and individuals governed by a special and particular Providence . . . .	775-777
—	Influence of women in the affairs of France . . .	777, 778
—	Capetian dynasty ruined by the same moral causes as the Carlovingian . . . . .	777, 778
966	Death of Frodoardus,—falling off of historical information . . . . .	779
—	Richerius; his singular importance as the only historian at the close of the Carlovingian era . . .	780, 781
—	Gerbert, when Archbishop of Rheims, requests Richer to compose a complete history of France .	781
—	Richerius declines the task, wishing to confine himself to his own times . . . . .	782
—	Gerbert supplies Richerius with materials . . . .	782
—	Autograph and holograph manuscript of Richerius	782, 783
—	Richerius' personal character disclosed by his corrections, &c. . . . .	783-785
—	Need of grouping the historical personages . . .	785
961—962	Death of Artaldus . . . . .	785
—	Hugh, the old Parvulus, claims the See; is disappointed; and dies of vexation . . . . .	786
962	Odalric promoted by Archbishop Bruno's influence .	786
—	Right of election at Rheims . . . . .	787
—	Thibaut-le-Tricheur disappears from history . . .	787
970	Adalbero obtains the vacant See of Rheims upon the death of Odalricus . . . . .	788
—	Adalbero's knowledge of French history and constitutional law . . . . .	789
—	Asceline, otherwise Adalbero, Bishop of Laon; his acquirements and depravity . . . . .	790
—	Gerbert of Aurillac; his career, till he obtains the Popedom . . . . .	790-793
—	Transitional stage of feudality under the last Carlovingians . . . . .	793
—	Increased stringency of feudality . . . . .	794
—	Position of vassals and incidents of tenure, more strictly defined . . . . .	795
—	Allodiality decaying under the influence of Hugh-le-Grand's doctrine of "commendation." . . . .	795, 796
965	Upon the decease of Arnoul-le-Vieux, Lothaire demands Arnoul-le-Jeune's homage . . . . .	796, 797
—	Richard of Normandy mediates; Arnoul renders the homage . . . . .	797

# CONTENTS.

xli

A.D.		PAGE
965	The suppressed chapter in Lothaire's history . . .	798
—	He marries a Lotharingian lady, by whom he has one son, Arnulph or Arnoul, stigmatized as a bastard . . .	798
—	The lady separated from Lothaire, marries Theobald-de-Montecuto . . . . .	798, 799
—	Imperial history resumed ;—state of Italy under Otho . . . . .	799
—	He returns to Germany . . . . .	799
—	The famous festival at Cologne, attended by all Otho's near relations, and all the great feudatories of the empire . . . . .	800
—	Otho's inward disquietudes . . . . .	800
—	Otho accompanies his mother to Nordhausen ; their pathetic and final parting . . . . .	801
—	Archbishop Bruno's early death . . . . .	802
—	Principle of <i>Ebenbürtigkeit</i> ; not known in early times . . . . .	802, 803
—	Lothaire repudiates the Lotharingian lady . . . . .	804, 805
—	The Othonian biographies . . . . .	805, 806
966	Match made up between Lothaire and Emma, Adelaide's daughter ; and their marriage . . . . .	806
—	Louis and Otho, Lothaire's children by Emma ; obscurity of their history . . . . .	806, 807
—	Gerberga retires from the court with Charles ;—her disappointment ;—sorrows ;—death . . . . .	807-809
966—972	German and Italian affairs resumed ;—Otho's residence during seven years in Italy . . . . .	809
—	Wisdom of Otho's government . . . . .	810
—	Italy consolidated with the Teutonic empire . . . . .	810
—	Depravity of Pope John XII. ; troubles at Rome . . . . .	811
—	Abuses at Rome remedied by Otho . . . . .	812
967	The younger Otho holds his Court at Verona ; he is subsequently crowned at Rome by the Pope . . . . .	813
—	Otho seeks that the younger Otho should espouse a daughter of Byzantium . . . . .	813
—	Theophania thrice empress ; Constantine Porphyrogenitus poisoned by her . . . . .	813
968—967	Summary of Byzantine history . . . . .	813
—	Theophania married to Romanus, the son of Constantine ; poisons him . . . . .	814
—	Nicephorus Phocas married to Theophania ; she instigates John Zimiskes to assassinate him . . . . .	815, 816
—	John Zimiskes emperor . . . . .	816
—	Opinions of the Greeks as to their superiority over the western Barbarians . . . . .	816

A.D.		PAGE
953	Otho invites Nicephorus to grant the younger Theophania to his son, Otho II. . . . .	817
—	Otho attacks the Greek possessions in Apulia. Overtures for peace made by the Byzantine court . . . . .	818
—	Liutprand, Bishop of Cremona; his character . . . . .	818
968	Liutprand's embassy to Constantinople . . . . .	818
—	He is dispatched for the purpose of obtaining Theophania . . . . .	819
—	Liutprand's report of his legation . . . . .	820
—	Nicephorus refuses his consent . . . . .	820
—	After the accession of Zimiskes, Otho renews the proposition, and with success . . . . .	820, 821
972	Marriage between Otho II. and Theophania . . . . .	821, 822
973	Otho attains the culminating point of his prosperity; returns to Germany . . . . .	822
—	His splendid Court of Quedlinburg . . . . .	822
—	Sadness of Otho's heart, Adelaide having died whilst he was hastening to meet her . . . . .	822
—	The feast broken off by the sudden death of Herman the Saxon . . . . .	822
—	Otho's dying day at Memleben . . . . .	823, 824
—	Accession of the second Otho as Emperor and King . . . . .	824, 825
—	Changes in the German Court, consequent upon Otho's death . . . . .	825
—	Detriment resulting to the French interest from such changes . . . . .	825, 826
—	Jealousies between Adelaide and Theophania; and between Theophania and Emma . . . . .	826, 827
—	Gerbert of Aurillac patronized by Otho II. . . . .	827
—	Gerbert's influence in the French and German Courts . . . . .	827, 828
969—970	French history resumed;—Adalbero promoted to the see of Rheims, and Asceline to Laón . . . . .	828
970—973	Marriage of Hugh Capet and Adela, daughter or grand-daughter of Tête-d'Etoupe . . . . .	829, 830
—	Unhappy position of Charles, Lothaire's brother . . . . .	830, 831
—	Charles unfairly depreciated . . . . .	831, 832
—	Emma's harshness towards Charles;—He quits the palace . . . . .	831
—	Partisans assemble round Charles;—the times favourable to the Adventurer . . . . .	832, 833
—	Plans of Charles to settle himself in Lorraine . . . . .	833
—	He obtains a grant from Otho of Basse-Lorraine as a fief of the empire . . . . .	833, 834
—	Charles marries Bona, supposed to be daughter of Godfrey the Elder, Count of the Ardennes . . . . .	834

# CONTENTS.

xliii

A.D.	PAGE
977 Bishop Asceline and Emma accused of adultery by common fame . . . . .	834, 835
— Provincial Synod appointed at Fismes, to be held under Archbishop Adalbero to try the accusation . . . . .	835
— Result unknown, Richerius having suppressed the record by cutting out the page . . . . .	835
— Ill-will between the cousins, Otho II. and Lothaire . . . . .	835, 836
— Lothaire determines upon hostilities and allies himself with Hugh Capet . . . . .	836
— Large army raised by Lothaire . . . . .	836
978 Lothaire's raid against Aix-la-Chapelle; flight of Otho and Theophania . . . . .	837
— Lothaire plunders the Pfaltz, which he abandons forthwith . . . . .	837
— Supposed insult given to the French by Charlemagne's eagle;—their revenge . . . . .	837, 838
— Otho challenges Lothaire after the fashion of chivalry . . . . .	839
— Otho invades France; Lothaire retreats beyond the Seine . . . . .	839, 840
— Hugh Capet shuts himself up in Paris . . . . .	840
— The garrison of Paris challenged by a German knight . . . . .	841
— Ivo accepts the challenge and slays the German . . . . .	841, 842
— The Hallelujah of Mont Martre—Otho's prelude to the abandonment of the siege . . . . .	842, 843
— Lothaire marches against the retreating enemy . . . . .	843
— The passage of the Aisne . . . . .	843
— Otho challenges Lothaire to single combat . . . . .	843, 844
— Tepidity of Geoffrey of Anjou contrasted with Godfrey of Verdun's chivalry.—The duel goes off . . . . .	843, 844
— The Sovereigns respectively return to their own dominions . . . . .	844, 845
— Anticipations of the Capetian revolution . . . . .	845
— Hugh Capet's numerous partisans . . . . .	845
— Archbishop Adalbero and Richard of Normandy the most influential . . . . .	846
980 Lothaire endeavours to obtain Otho's co-operation . . . . .	847
— Conference between Lothaire and Otho at la Marlée . . . . .	847
— Lothaire cedes to Otho all his rights over Lorraine . . . . .	847, 848
— Otho and Theophania at Nimeguen . . . . .	848
— Birth of the third and last Otho, the second Otho's only child . . . . .	848
— Otho repairs to Rome and continues four years in Italy . . . . .	848

A.D.	PAGE
981—983 Agitation in France; Hugh Capet assembles his vassals; Richard of Normandy their chief . . .	849
— They advise him to detach Otho from Lothaire . . .	850
— Hugh Capet repairs to Rome . . . . .	851
— Arnoul, Archbishop of Orleans . . . . .	851
— Remarkable interview between Otho and Hugh in the Imperial Palace . . . . .	852
— Otho consents to become Hugh's ally against Lothaire . . . . .	852
— Hugh Capet commences his homeward journey through the Alpine passes . . . . .	852
— Emma and Lothaire invite King Conrad to intercept the Capet . . . . .	853
— Emma's remarkable letter to Conrad containing the Capet's "signalement" . . . . .	853
— Hugh Capet, apprehending danger, disguises himself as a groom . . . . .	854
— The inn-keeper's impertinent curiosity punished . . . . .	855
— Hugh arrives safely in France . . . . .	855
— Great disturbances consequent upon Hugh's return; —the whole country in confusion . . . . .	856
— Lothaire proposes that the succession should be secured to Louis . . . . .	856
— Louis is proclaimed, Adalbero officiating . . . . .	857
— Court intrigues . . . . .	857
— Louis consents to marry the dowager Countess of Toulouse, Constance Adela . . . . .	857, 858
— Great political advantages promised by this matrimonial alliance . . . . .	858
— Lothaire accompanies his son to Brioude where the marriage is celebrated . . . . .	858
— Imprudent conduct of Louis; quarrels between him and his Queen . . . . .	859
— They separate after a short cohabitation . . . . .	859, 860
— Lothaire advances to Aquitaine and brings Louis home to Compiègne . . . . .	860
— Constance takes a third husband . . . . .	860
— Otho's fortune turns; he is defeated before Squillace, and loses the Slavonian marches . . . . .	860
983 His death and burial at Rome . . . . .	861
983—985 Accession of the third Otho, a child . . . . .	861, 862
— Troubles in Germany; Henry the Quarreller Regent . . . . .	861
— Lothaire's unsuccessful attempt to reign in Lorraine . . . . .	862
— Encreasing ill-fame of Emma and Bishop Asceline . . . . .	862

# CONTENTS.

xliv

A.D.	PAGE
983—985 Lothaire vigorously renews the war in Lorraine; captures Verdun . . . . .	863
986 His strange illness and death; attributed to poison . . . . .	863, 864
— Lothaire buried at Rheims;—magnificent funeral procession . . . . .	864
— Louis and Emma both absent;—Louis according to the advice which his father had given . . . . .	864, 865
987 Louis universally recognised as his father's successor . . . . .	865
— But the two parties, the Legitimists and the Revolutionists, give discordant advice . . . . .	865
— The latter advise that Louis should accept Hugh Capet's tutelage . . . . .	866
— Louis throws off Hugh's protectorate, and charges Archbishop Adalbero with high treason . . . . .	866
— The Capet and his party remonstrate, but dare not disobey . . . . .	866
— Adalbero's contumacy; Louis besieges Rheims . . . . .	866
— Adalbero submits, and gives bail to appear to answer the charge . . . . .	866, 867
— Day appointed for his trial at Senlis; the King and Nobles assemble there accordingly . . . . .	867
— The trial being close at hand, Louis dies—mysterious report . . . . .	866
— Universal supposition that his death was occasioned by poison . . . . .	866, 867
— Contrary to his directions he is hastily interred at Compiègne . . . . .	868
— Hugh Capet taking the lead, Adalbero is put <i>pro forma</i> upon his trial . . . . .	868, 869
— No appellant appearing, Adalbero is discharged from accusation, and takes his seat as President of the Estates . . . . .	869
— Upon his proposition the Convention is adjourned . . . . .	869
— Nevertheless an oath is taken by the Prelates and Nobles to Hugh Capet and Adalbero . . . . .	870
— Charles appears before Adalbero and prefers his claim . . . . .	871
— Adalbero's insolence; Charles retires to Lorraine . . . . .	871
— The Estates assemble at Senlis; Richard of Normandy pre-eminent in the assembly . . . . .	871
— Archbishop Adalbero's argument in favour of the rights of the people . . . . .	872
— He concludes by diverting the argument in favour of the Capet, who is accepted by acclamation . . . . .	872



A.D.		PAGE
987	A great council convened at Noyon; Hugh Capet crowned by the Archbishop . . . . .	873
—	Hugh requires that the succession should be secured to Robert, his son . . . . .	874
—	The Archbishop raises the objection that two Kings cannot be crowned in the same year . . . . .	874
—	The objection being overruled, Robert is proclaimed and crowned . . . . .	874
—	" <i>Hic defecerunt Reges de stirpe Karoli</i> " . . . . .	874
—	Charles rallies the Carlovingian party, which becomes numerous . . . . .	875
—	Asceline (Emma cohabiting with him openly) in possession of Lañn . . . . .	875
—	Charles surprises Lañn . . . . .	875
—	Asceline escapes by dropping from the walls, but is caught and put in confinement . . . . .	876
—	Emma, treated sternly by Charles . . . . .	878
—	She disappears from history . . . . .	877
—	Ineffectual negotiation between Charles and the Capets . . . . .	877
—	Hugh Capet and his son Robert invest Lañn . . . . .	877, 878
—	The Capetian campaign terminates discreditably . . . . .	878
—	Charles makes preparations for defence, but Asceline escapes through his window . . . . .	880
989	Hugh and Robert open the second campaign . . . . .	880
—	The famous battering-ram constructed by the Capet's directions . . . . .	881
—	The machine proves useless in consequence of its enormous weight . . . . .	880
—	Capetian blockade prosecuted sluggishly . . . . .	880
—	Sortie made by the citizens and soldiers . . . . .	881
—	Blockade raised: Charles encreases in prosperity . . . . .	881
—	Adalbero's illness and death . . . . .	882
—	Rights of election at Rheims, as vested in the clergy, knights, and citizens . . . . .	883
—	Rival candidates;—Gerbert of Aurillac and Arnoul, Lothaire's son . . . . .	883
—	Hugh Capet perplexed . . . . .	882
—	Gerbert supported by the prelates and clergy . . . . .	884
—	Also by the knights or Curiales . . . . .	884
—	Hugh Capet's cautious proceedings; he grants a congé d'élire to the citizens . . . . .	884
—	Hugh submits the whole question to the citizens . . . . .	885
—	Their cautious answer . . . . .	884
—	Hugh submits the question to them again; their answer again ambiguous . . . . .	885
—	Hugh consults his Nobles . . . . .	885

# CONTENTS.

xlvii

A.D.		PAGE
989	They advise that Arnoul should enter into a special covenant of allegiance . . . . .	886
—	Decree of election by the bishops and clergy . . . . .	886
—	Arnoul receives the Sacrament of the Altar in confirmation of his engagement . . . . .	887
—	Arnoul installed and obtains the Pallium from the Pope . . . . .	887
—	Arnoul's treachery, he seeking the restoration of his uncle Charles all the while . . . . .	887
—	Complicated plot whereby he puts Charles in possession of Rheims . . . . .	887, 888
—	Hugh besieges Laón for the third time, but ineffectually . . . . .	889
—	Charles's triumphant position ;—decrease of the Capetian interest . . . . .	890
—	Archbishop Arnoul and Bishop Asceline offer themselves as mediators . . . . .	890
—	But with the intention of betraying Charles into the Capet's power . . . . .	890
—	Asceline returns to Laón, where Charles receives him with great favour . . . . .	891
—	18th of April, Asceline takes the oath of fealty and is created Count of Laón . . . . .	891
—	Asceline submits to a singular adjuration . . . . .	892
—	Charles entrapped by Asceline's treachery . . . . .	892
—	Charles, together with his wife and children, surrendered to Hugh Capet . . . . .	893
—	Hugh Capet consults with his Nobles as to the disposal of Charles . . . . .	893
—	Charles's wife and children prisoners at Orleans . . . . .	892, 894
1001	Death of Charles . . . . .	894
—	Establishment of his children . . . . .	894
991	Council of Saint Basoul ; Arnoul's deposition in which Gerbert is the prime agent . . . . .	896
—	Gerbert, Archbishop of Rheims, then of Ravenna, and ultimately Pope (Sylvester II.) . . . . .	897
—	Asceline's prosperous career till his death . . . . .	897, 898
—	Death of Theophania and of Adelaide . . . . .	898
—	Otho III., his aspirations and troubles . . . . .	899
—	He opens Charlemagne's tomb . . . . .	899
1002	Death of Otho III., extinction of the Saxon line . . . . .	900
996	Death of King Hugh Capet . . . . .	900
—	Richard's quiet life at Rouen . . . . .	901
—	Dudo-de-Saint-Quentin . . . . .	902
—	Richard dies of apoplexy . . . . .	902

#### ERRATA AND CORRECTIONS.

---

Page 10, *for* Charles himself had found a home in England, *read* Charles himself had found in England a partner to his home.

— 328, *for* Louis-le-Fainéant, *read* Louis the Fifth.

# BOOK I. PART II.

## CARLOVINGIAN NORMANDY

(CONTINUED.)

### CHAPTER I.

CHARLES-LE-SIMPLE, ROBERT AND RAOUL IN FRANCE—ROLLO  
AND GUILLAUME LONGUE-ÉPÉE IN NORMANDY.

912—927.

§ 1. INGENIOUS allegories and fables have been devised, exemplifying the humiliating discrepancies between open speech and secret thought—Palaces of Truth, for instance, where the surprised coquette declares, with downcast eyes, how long she has been carefully lying in wait for the unexpected admirer in the bower. Language elucidates these deceits more forcibly than any such allegory or fable; enabling us to discover, through the veil of words, the inward tendencies of the heart: the agreeable cheat we pass upon ourselves by euphemizing sins, or rendering crimes glorious by glorious sounds. Amongst moralists, this self-delusion has become a threadbare theme; but less attention has been paid to the more subtle temptation, dictating the mental artifices whereby we annex the ideas of

912—927  
Charles-le-Simple, his reputation destroyed by the epithet.

912—927 { ridicule or contempt to the sanctity and the self-denial against which our hearts revolt, without having the honest courage of avowing the rebellion.

An *Innocent*, in Shakesperian vocabulary, signifies an Idiot; whilst the absence of common sense implied by the term *idiot*, bespeaks the popular judgment passed upon the lowly-minded retiring man, not troubling himself for fame or wealth, but living contentedly where his lot is cast.—The *Selig*, or “blessed one,” is the *Silly* one—The *Beneit*, of the antient Romane language—that is to say the *Benedictus*—is the *Benét* or dolt of modern French.—It is slighting to say such an one is a “mere child;” and our slight displays our scorn for those who become as little children by humility. No sarcasm is more cutting than to be designated as “poor-spirited.” Would you bear it for the promised beatitude?—*Beati pauperes spiritu, quoniam ipsorum est Regnum cœlorum.*—*Beati Pauperes, quia vestrum est Regnum Dei.*—*Pauperes enim semper habetis vobiscum; me autem non semper habetis.*—Pregnant is the comment appended to all these texts by the legislation, the policy, the opulence and the prosperity which have incorporated and naturalized the epithet *Pauper* in our mother-tongue as the vilest and foulest, most loathed, most debased and degraded that opinion can bestow.—

Charles, Louis-le-Bégué's posthumous son, like 912-927  
Charles-le-Gras, is the victim of an epithet—stupidity imputed, and therefore taken for granted; and the slur once admitted has never been investigated or denied. Possibly the sobriquet was first bestowed in some satirical song or ribald minstrel ballad. How many a vaudeville has influenced the fate of France, and contributed an essential element to French history! Modern Historians, when speaking of Charles, vie with each other in ringing the changes of contemptuous depreciation—"ce roi si imbecille,"—"ce roi hébété,"—"d'un esprit si obtus"—and so on. From the highest and most philosophical writer to the pragmatic "*Précis*" and the conceited "*Manuel*," they are all consentient in this view.

*Carolus simplex*, or *Carolus stultus*, as the old Capet chroniclers call him, was, however, as Honesty and openness of Charles-le-Simple.  
appears from the very facts related by his detractors, right-minded, clever, active, full of expedients, profiting by experience, excepting that he never acquired the Statesman's indispensable qualification,—he lacked the power of maintaining constant vigilance, or, in other words, constant distrust. He was wary, yet not suspicious, unable to defeat craft by cunning. He proceeded too openly, never attempting to circumvent the factions against whom he had to contend, by machinations like their own. In a worldly sense honesty is not always the best policy,—frequently

912—927

Difficulties  
of Charles-  
le-Simple's  
situation.

quite the contrary. Charles was honestly simple: this simplicity was folly before the world. Many and grievous faults had Charles to answer for; but the contumely cast upon him as *Charles-le-Simple*, is his highest praise.

§ 2. The traditionary depreciation of his character so implicitly adopted, denaturalizes the history of this crisis, by attributing to the monarch's alleged incapacity the misfortunes he sustained. We must rehabilitate his reputation, not for his sake, but for our instruction. Unless Charles be properly estimated, we shall have to wonder (as his gainsayers confess they do) at the successes obtained by him,—successes which, according to the popular historical assumption, become unaccountable. Considering the extreme adversity of the times, Charles had been eminently prosperous. A miraculous regeneration of moral principle amongst the Franks, could alone have sustained the expiring monarchy.

Review his career:—an Orphan in a far country, the prepossessions which the Boy had inspired suggested his recal to his father's throne. Opposed to Eudes, the valiant soldier, the exalted chieftain, the experienced statesman,—abandoned by his lieges during his conflict with that Soldier, Chieftain and Statesman, Charles made head against calamity, and regained his authority. Whilst his nobles turned the country's misfortunes to their profit, Charles maintained his post, and

concluded that settlement with the Northmen, <sup>912—927</sup> which, so long as he reigned, procured security for the Realm. Peace was purchased by Charles at a very high price, yet not so dear as that which Alfred paid : those who enlarge upon the cession made to Rollo as a proof of Charles-le-Simple's weakness, must, in fairness, extend the like, or a heavier censure, to our Anglo-Saxon King. The creation of the English Danelaghe, the dominion legalized by Alfred to the Danes in East Anglia and Northumbria, was a fatal dismemberment, which worked the ruin of Anglo-Saxon England.

King Charles had but small capital of any kind, <sup>Scanty resources of Charles.</sup> political or financial—no revenue, according to the proper sense of the term. A Danegeld might be levied, because the Pagans aided the Collector : the people paid the money to ransom themselves. But except indirectly, and by aiding him to keep the common enemy at bay, these contributions did not raise a sol for the wants of the King. Whether pecuniary, or rendered in the form of stock or kind, his resources for duly maintaining his state and household arose only from the very few royal domains as yet unalienated from the crown,—Laôn the chiefest :—perhaps occasionally a vacant abbey, which, after farming awhile, he would then be compelled to cede to the prayer of a needy favourite, or to some growling discontented leader of the opposition



912—927 party. No army—If the king of the Franks summoned the *arrière-ban*, those who answered the summons were purely volunteers, serving with an eye to booty : no discipline could retain the troops under their standard, no proclamation assemble the lieges who chose to keep away.

Weakness  
of Charles'  
position as  
a restored  
monarch.

§ 3. Charlemagne's heir had been recalled : the true Carlovingian monarch was re-instated upon the throne of his ancestors. But the restoration of a Monarch is royalty's defeat disguised as a royal victory. The successful experiment of expulsion is permanently cogent ;—the precedent of restoration implies a power of defeasance. The King does not come in again by *descent*, but by *purchase*, by a new title ; he is not really re-mitted to the old title. The Thanksgiving on the twenty-ninth of May for the Stuart's return, is consistently followed by the commemoration of the Stuart's exclusion on the fifth of November—consistently, for the very act of Restoration bears testimony to the popular power of rejection, and tells the nation, that, when they like, they may do it again.

Powers of  
govern-  
ment re-  
maining to  
Charles.

Yet, however dilapidated were the means belonging to Charles, he employed them wisely, availing himself of all that could avail, carefully avoiding any conduct which might be construed as an indication of timidity. The royal domains, though narrow, were compact. Proudly, in the midst of the old Soissonnais, rose the Celtic Lau-

dunum, *Clach-duin*, the lofty rock of Laôn, <sup>912—927</sup> crowned by Laôn's lofty tower. Some valuable prerogatives, whether usurped or lawful, continued undiminished. Competitors might quarrel with one another for the donative abbeys, yet, when vacant, the presentation could only be obtained from king Charles. Vastly more influence than properly belonged to him, did king Charles also enjoy in the nomination of bishops: when his political power was nigh zero, we find him interfering in elections, or rather effectually superseding them. With respect to the Crown Benefices,—the lay Benefices or Fiefs—the right reverting to the Sovereign upon the death of the ancestor might be merely nominal, nevertheless the vassal could not obtain a valid admission otherwise than through the Senior's instrumentality. Benefices or Fiefs: necessity of applying to the Sovereign for grants thereof. The necessity of owning a superior as the channel of conveyance was a legal doctrine so firmly established, that, abstractedly from all other reasons, the nation could not dispense with a king. Almost all the secular muniments of this period have perished, but the few royal documents of this class that exist are principally precepts of *saisine*, evidencing how the king's writs *ran* (according to the English legal phrase) into the most remote parts of the Gauls.

Lastly, the prestige of antient authority and ancestry subsisted undisputed: great respect was still commanded by the person of the anointed King, his purple robe, and golden buskins, and

912—927 arched crown. Charlemagne's memory inspired encreasing reverence: men marvelled at his legendary magnificence. Poetry and romance now began to adorn his name. Nine feet in height, his gallantry and wisdom corresponding, invincible in love and war, was the mythic Charlemagne, sung in the Minstrel's lay. The poverty of Charles as a king compelled him to economize the material resources of government, and to support himself as much as possible by sentiment. He was consistent in his monarchical theory, and under more favourable circumstances, his consistency might have been rewarded by success. He repudiated such a doctrine of national election as had been so prominently brought forward upon his father's accession. King by right, he treated the hereditary principle as indefeasibly acknowledged by the Constitution. Whenever Duke Robert obtained an additional abbey or a further benefice, the parchment grant warned him that his brother had been a usurper. In every Charter, Charles declared by his regnal date that the death of Eudes had "re-integrated" the suspended authority of the Carlovingian Sovereign, whose laurelled effigy was embossed upon the seal.—Charles claimed all his ancestor's powers, as rights which might be rebelliously resisted, but never denied.

Charles  
endeavours  
to govern  
by senti-  
ment.

Juncture  
when  
Charles  
was with-  
out an heir.

§ 4. Who was to succeed the now childless Charles in the troubled monarchy?—Beyond him, a blank:—the uncertain future encreased the

irksomeness of present anxiety. After his death, <sup>912—927</sup> unless King Bernard's progeny—the disinherited branch of Lombardy-Vermandois supplied the want,—there would not be any lawful representative of the Carlovingian race. Urged by his Proceres, he had espoused Frederuna for the purpose of perpetuating the Carlovingian succession—that hope was disappointed; and how numerous were those aspirants to the throne who would not wait until his death for the realization of chance or claim!—Therefore Charles determined to take a third wife and Queen, and sought her in that country then so celebrated on the Continent for richness and splendour, the realm of England.

Five Continental Princes or Sovereigns became the husbands of five daughters of Edward the Elder, five grand-daughters of King Alfred, five sisters of Athelstane, whether attracted by the personal or mental gifts of these Princesses, or seeking to honour themselves by an alliance with Alfred's name, with Alfred's son, or with the triumphant Basileus of Britain.—Louis of Provence, as has been already noticed, had won an Eadgiva.—The perplexing similarity of the names or epithets bestowed upon the English Athelizas extremely confuses their identities; but another Eadgiva, called Ogiva in France, became the Queen of King Charles, at no distant time after the pacification with Rollo.—Subsequently, Eadhilda was married to Hugh-le-Grand.—A

Alliances between the daughters of King Edward and the continental sovereigns.

(See Vol. I. p. 632).

912—927

third Eadgiva, or Elgiva, whose name was transmuted in the Romane dialect to Emiliana or Adela or Aliana, espoused Ebles of Poitou, Ebles the Mamzer, whom we last met at the battle of Chartres;—but Eadgitha or Editha, most illustrious amongst Edward's daughters, was given to Otho the Great. The damsel had been selected by his father, Henry the Fowler, who by his splendid embassy invited her from her insular home.

These marriages, connecting England with the continental empire, are clearly to be reckoned amongst the many influences subsequently contributing to attract William the Conqueror. Probably owing to the troubles and disturbances of court and country, we are deprived of any notices concerning the marriage of Charles and Ogiva; she does not even appear in history till we behold her fleeing from her dethroned husband's realm. The Empress Editha's beauty, virtue, talents, excited Germany's admiration and loyal love: the amatory disposition of Charles justifies the supposition that his Ogiva shared her younger sister's beauty. Adversity enabled Ogiva to give full evidence of her talent and energy. Charles himself had found a home in England. He knew the perils of his station. When wooing the fair Ogiva, the thought perhaps flitted before his mind, that his child, if one were granted, might also need a safe asylum *outré mer*, a sanctuary beyond the sea.

§ 5. The friendly relations with the Danes,

Marriage  
between  
Charles  
and the  
English  
Eadgiva  
or Ogiva.

as the means of availing himself of their fresher energy,—the political device adopted from the early era of his reign,—continued to be diligently cultivated by Charles. The pacification with Rollo answered all reasonable expectations. If any coldness had arisen on account of Rollo's conduct to Gisella, the grudges were forgotten after her death. Charles could confidently rely upon the ready assistance to be rendered by the Northmen of Rouen. The Danish expeditions and settlements in England diverted their attention from the Gauls: nevertheless they observed the coasts. Powerful fleets of Pagan Danes hovered in the Loire, and fed the Danish colonies in the adjoining countries. These Danes generally united with Rollo, and might, if peril arose, assist King Charles, old Rollo's friend.

912—927

Charles continues to cultivate the friendship of the Northmen.

Upon his own people, Charles could not reckon. Charles shewed a cheerful countenance towards his nobles, pleasant and debonnair. Charles never bore malice, yet he could not help knowing that they were all Luegenfelders, the best of them with one foot ever standing upon Luegenfeldland. Their irremediable inconstancy compelled him to look elsewhere for friends. Charles-le-Chauve, his grandfather, under the like feeling of anxiety, innovated by raising the brave new men to secular honour and power; but in the second generation, the descendants of the plebeians ripened into an aristocracy, proud as if their dignities of

Charles distrusts his nobles —places his confidence in Hagano a plebeian.

912—927 the day before yesterday had dated from Charles Martel.

Charles pursued his grandsire's policy, or rather went beyond it. Prelates and nobles crowded the presence-chamber, but no one was admitted into his secret cabinet except his confidant and friend, Hagano.—The individual so perilously distinguished, a soldier of mean birth, was appointed by Charles to be his Secretary or Notary, honoured moreover by the title of Count.

Hagano the  
favourite.

Prime favourite and prime minister, much reviled was this Count Hagano; but, judging by the aspect of affairs, and still more by the odium which he excited, able and energetic; a trusty counsellor, and presenting a solitary example of unshaken fidelity.

910—911  
State of  
Germany  
upon the  
extinction  
of the spu-  
rious Car-  
lovingian  
line.

§ 6. Arnolph and *Ludwig das Kind*—spurious Carlovingsians—*unächte Karolinger*, as the Germans call them,—had reigned, however questionably, upon their irregular hereditary right. Like Lancaster and Braganza, national sentiment or political partizanship ignored their illegitimacy.

Charles, the true Carlovingsian heir, should, upon the death of *Ludwig das Kind*, have therefore been unquestionably called to the Imperial supremacy; but the Germans now finally renounced the antient family. Very little is known with certainty concerning this *gran' rifiuto*. The Saxon Chroniclers, Witikind and the Monk of

Corbey and the noble Dithmar of Waldeck, Bishop of Merseburgh, who flourished two or three generations after the event, give a few details, not improbable, yet supposed to have been preserved only by tradition, sung perhaps, as some critics think, in popular ballads. The coeval memorials are of the briefest, such as the line jotted down by the Monk of Weissenburgh upon the sheet of parchment—"Ludovicus rex obiit, cui Conradus successit." Without doubt, this paucity of information was occasioned by the confusions of the country; and the distresses of the times are graphically illustrated by that very same Chronicle. A line or two lower we read, "Ungarii vastando venerunt usque Fuldam;"—

912—927

910—911

(See Vol. i.  
p. 720.)

and then,—a blank for three years, the scared monks much too harassed to have a thought of writing.

The German nations were distracted by internal feuds and external enemies—Magyars driving in—Baioaria, Thuringia and Saxony covered by their hordes. This was the juncture when the Hungarians were most dreadful, their savagery inspiring the traditionary horrors perpetuated by the *Hünengrab*.

Germany had irretrievably separated herself from France, and the wise Franconian Duke, Conrad, was called to the throne by the absolute need of some leader who could in any wise impart an acting unity to the Teutonic populations, so

911, 912.

Conrad of  
Franconia  
elected by  
the Ger-  
manic na-  
tions (see  
Vol. i. p.  
710.)



912—927

{  
 {

911, 912

mutually antagonistic that danger alone induced them to combine for any common object or end. The principle of hereditary succession was for the nonce completely repudiated in Germany.—Blood stands for nothing.—Conrad was purely an elective king;—powerful, honoured, yet only the head of an anomalous, immatured and discordant confederacy.

911, 912

The Lothar-  
 ingians  
 adhere to  
 the Carlo-  
 vingian in-  
 terest.

§ 7. Lotharingia refused concurrence: here nobles and people held to the old imperial dynasty. In Lotharingia, Charlemagne's institutions had not degenerated into mere administrative forms, but still retained a certain degree of vitality. Opinions, customs, traditions, still rendered the Lotharingians mainly members of Romanized Gaul. They severed themselves from the Germans beyond the Rhine, separated by influences more powerful than the stream. But ultra-Rhenane Germany continued purely Teutonic. Amidst her vast forests, the Romans never introduced their institutions. Camps there were and military stations, where the sepulchral stones are oft dug up, bearing the conventional symbol of the ruling race, the mounted Legionary riding over the half-clad dishevelled barbarian, Gaul, Briton or Teuton, who agonizingly contends against his panoplied foe. No Roman colonization had however been effected, no cities were founded. Charlemagne attempted to establish civic communities; yet, anterior to the ex-

tinction of the Carolingian dynasty, the *Stadt* 912—927  
 cannot be said to have existed. But Lotharingia 911, 912  
 gloried in her antient Roman municipalities, im- Lotharin-  
gia, preva-  
lence of  
Roman  
institu-  
tions.  
 perial Cologne and her Capitol,—Italian Trèves,  
 —Metz, exulting in her ancestry,—meet sisters  
 of the flourishing cities of the Gauls, deducing  
 their common parentage through the Empire.

The Romane language prevailed extensively,  
 and still prevails in Lotharingia; and every observ-  
 ant traveller is struck by the interspersions of the  
 Walloon or French-speaking populations, amongst  
 the districts retaining the German tongue. Long  
 before the mutation of the Empire, Roman juris-  
 prudence had tintured the dooms and institutions  
 of the Ripuarian Franks, which in many cases were  
 retained as customary laws. Sentiment operated  
 forcibly in favour of Charles: the Lotharingians  
 were drawn to Charlemagne's lineage by the  
 honour and affection rendered to the great Em-  
 peror's name. Material and moral memorials of  
 Charlemagne abounded. Aix-la-Chapelle was his  
 city, a holy city,—endeared by misfortune,—even  
 now, his Imperial Eagle with outstretched wings,  
 crowned his splendid palace rendered more in-  
 teresting by decay—here was the sepulchre of the  
 hero-saint; and in Lotharingia were composed  
 those national poems, so vast in their influence,  
 the *chansons-de-geste*, each distinct, yet all com-  
 bining themselves as they arose into that epic of  
 epics, the Carolingian cycle of romantic fable.

912—927



911—912

Charles by  
the assist-  
ance of  
Rainier-au-  
long-Col  
acquires  
Lotharin-  
gia.

Amongst the Lotharingian Counts none was so prominent as Count Rainier, Rainier-au-long-Col, Count of Hainault, Mansuaria and Hasbey, ruling also the districts subsequently erected into the Duchies of Lorraine and Bar. Genealogists try to provide a father for him, but in truth Rainier-au-long-Col must be honoured amongst those whose distinction resulted from their merit, a new man, promoted by Charles-le-Chauve. Rainier, aided by his bold and sagacious consort Alberada, had fought valiantly against Rollo, in the earliest part of his career, when the Northmen pestered the North Sea shores. Rainier was strongly affected in favour of the only-surviving Carolingian monarch; and he, taking the lead amongst the willing nobles and people, decided them to accept Charles as their King. Twice did King Conrad attempt to win Lotharingia and reunite the Rhine-kingdom to the German realm: he succeeded in obtaining Alsace, but the remainder was resolutely retained by Charles.

The acquisition of Lotharingia was a great event: Charles commemorated his accession by adopting it as the third era of his reign. Henceforward his charters bore a triple regnal date—the years thrice reckoned—from his Coronation, from his Restoration after the death of Eudes, and from his recovery of the more ample inheritance, as we may read for this very year. *Anno decimo nono regnante Karolo Rege gloriosissimo, redin-*

*tegrante decimo quarto, largiore verò indepta hereditate primo*—a significant declaration, implying that he had not resigned his claims to the residue of his inheritance in Charlemagne's Empire. Some short time after that Rainier had succeeded in promoting the prosperity of Charles, he died. Charles thereupon granted the Duchy of Lorraine to Gilbert, Rainier's eldest son, the proud, the ambitious, restless Gilbert, the faithless Gilbert, who became a most effective agent in the revolutions which ensued.

912—927  
912—914

916  
Death of Duke Rainier,—Lorraine granted to his son Gilbert.

Lotharingia thus added to his dominions, rendered Charles a German Sovereign, opening the other German territories to his power. The times were exceedingly evil, the Magyars overspreading Germany and threatening the Gauls. Fierce contests prevailed between King Conrad and Henry the Fowler, Duke of the Saxons, the illustrious Otho's son. Impatiently did the Saxons endure the supremacy of Franconia, and bitterly were the Franconians incensed against the Saxon race. Old Hatto, Archbishop of Mayence, was a strenuous partizan of King Conrad: a story was in circulation that he had made a chain of gold for the purpose of hanging Duke Henry, and the Saxons believed it. These emergencies tended to encrease the importance of Charles, furnishing occasions which enabled him to display his vigour. Henry was in danger of being overpowered by the Franco-

Contests between Conrad and Henry Duke of Saxony. Charles assists the latter.

912—927  
 919—920  
 nians, and he appears in the character of a suitor to Charles, perhaps a liegeman. Charles crossed the Rhine into the real Saxon land: fortresses and strongholds had been gained by Conrad: these possessions Charles reconquered: he restored them generously, and, without exacting any conditions from Henry, returned to his own realm.

919—920  
 Conspiracy formed against Charles.  
 § 8. Whilst Charles laboured to exercise his powers of government, usefully and efficaciously, a venomous opposition was festering against him,—a small and compact party, by whom all the previous revolutions had been occasioned, and who now resumed their schemes with condensed energy.

Pre-eminent, and the acknowledged leader, scarcely concealing the extent of his designs, stood Robert Duke of France, or of Celtic Gaul, as the Germans called him. Other titles were accumulated upon him, whether by intrusion or by right: Robert-le-Fort's vast ecclesiastical preferments also descended to his son. Practically they had now become inheritable, like any other benefices. "Robert Count of Paris" could scarcely have sustained his courtly splendour, but for the revenues enjoyed by "Robert Abbot of Saint-Denis" and "Robert Abbot of Saint-Germain."—

Increasing importance of Robert Duke of France.  
 At Tours, the dignity of the Duke of France was absolutely obscured by the importance annexed to the Prelatical station usurped by the Military Chieftain,—Robert, to the grief of all right-think-

ing men,—Primatial Abbot of the Gauls,—Robert, <sup>912—927</sup>  
by royal grace and favour, Abbot of Saint-Martin. <sup>919—920</sup>

Age gained rapidly upon Duke Robert : his long-streaming beard was grizzled gray ; but the son of Robert-le-Fort wielded his father's sword with his father's might, fully equal to that father in astuteness and pertinacity. Robert had delayed in performing homage to Charles : he had submitted insincerely and grudgingly ; ill-contented was he in his high station ;—he claimed the Crown which had belonged to Eudes—Neustrian France could alone satisfy him. Robert in all his enterprizes was supported by the talent, vigour, and the moderation of Hugh-l'Abbé, Hugh-le-Blanc, Hugh-le-Grand, his son, who in all contingencies appears so distinguished by prudence, vigour, and talent. The alliance contracted through his daughter, the noble Emma, with the House of Burgundy, added worthily to the family dignity ;—Hildebranda her sister, was scarcely less illustrious as Countess of Vermandois.

Richard-le-Justicier Count of Burgundy, his son Raoul married to Emma daughter of Duke Robert. (Vol. i. p. 406.)

Richard-le-Justicier, King Boso's brother, was at this era a most influential potentate : historical criticism seeks to shew that he held his Principality by a revocable grant ; his contemporaries, his rivals, and his subjects knew and felt that he was a Sovereign. The epithet which distinguishes Richard, had been well earned by his stern administration of the law :—and in his

912—927 own political conduct he was rigidly consistent,  
 perhaps the only one amongst the French princes  
 919—920 who never swerved from his fidelity. But these  
 sentiments were not inherited by Raoul his son.  
 Married, and happily, to Emma, Raoul entered  
 heartily into the league against King Charles, his  
 wife influencing his course and encouraging his  
 ambition. Affectionate and spirited, Emma, like  
 the matron Hermengarda, retraces in her cha-  
 racter the Bradamante of ideal chivalry.

Herbert of Vermandois coalesced with Robert  
 of France his father-in-law. Herbert's authority  
 was encreasing, but his appetite was unsatisfied.  
 If you look at the historical map of Vermandois,  
 you will see how numerous are the white dis-  
 tricts, the enclavures left uncoloured, as not being  
 subjected to Herbert. He had no map to look  
 at, hanging against his walls; but these white  
 spaces were mentally eye-sores, and he was  
 working to colour the whole with the Verman-  
 dois colour: most particularly did he covet  
 lofty Laôn and hallowed Rheims. The military  
 tenants of the See mustered and moved under  
 Herbert's command, and the clergy were equally  
 docile; he was gaining the advowson of the  
 Archbishoprick; yet his dominion was not so  
 complete as he wished. His talents and influ-  
 ence were counterbalanced by the universal dis-  
 like which his fraudulence inspired.—“Amongst  
 the Franks,”—said those who were no better

Herbert of  
 Verman-  
 dois coales-  
 ces with  
 the Capet  
 party.

than he,—“none is so wicked as Herbert of Vermandois.” Yet, provoked by the traditions of his House, Herbert, humanly speaking, was not entirely without excuse. The recollections of injustice teach evil to the injured; and the memory of the blinded Bernard might excite his descendants to retaliation or revenge.

Gilbert, son of Duke Rainier, that trusty friend of Charles, so lately promoted by the King’s kindness, had conceived a spiteful enmity against his benefactor. Aspiring, versatile, handsome, active, athletic, he was preparing to gain the sovereignty of Romane Lotharingia: Gilbert even entertained some designs upon the throne of France, whilst Henry the Fowler, now King of Germany, machinated for the recovery of the *whole* Lotharingian kingdom.

The dying Conrad had surrendered Germany to his prosperous rival by transmitting to him the insignia of the royal dignity. The East Franks, the old Franks of the Franconian land, honoured as the chiefest amongst the Teutonic populations, united with the Saxons and Thuringians in accepting the Monarch. Henry joyfully ascended the throne, but he repudiated the rites of consecration bestowed by the Church, nor would he allow the diadem to be placed upon his brows by priestly hands. He was unworthy, as he professed, of such sacred honours. But the humble language he employed does not harmo-

912—927  
918

See Vol. i.  
p. 710.

918  
Accession  
of Henry  
the Fowler.



912—927 nize with his lofty and ambitious bearing; and it  
 919—920 has been conjectured that his desire was to cast  
 off all subjection to spiritual authority. Thus  
 did the great restorer, or rather the founder of  
 the German Empire in the proper sense of the  
 term, commence his reign, unanointed, unblest,  
 uncrowned, but ruling discreetly and sagely.

All Henry's progeny occupy an important,  
 some a splendid, position in history.—Hathburga,  
 the only daughter of Count Erwin, noble, opulent,  
 lovely, upon the death of an unnamed husband,—  
 probably her first love, and young as herself,—  
 had, rashly yielding to the first bitter paroxysm  
 of grief, entered a monastery. Henry then Duke  
 of the Saxons, in the full bloom and vigour of  
 adolescence, easily persuaded her to elope. The  
 scandal of the transaction was not diminished by a  
 marriage, nor did that marriage ensure durability  
 to the union. Hathburga gave her noble lover  
 one son, the bold Thankmar; but Henry's affec-  
 tion for the mother declined. He was attracted  
 by the charms and also by the virtues of Matilda,  
 —a lovely damsel of the right old Saxon line,  
 a daughter of the heroic Wittikind. Ecclesias-  
 tical censures satisfied Henry's conscience that  
 his connexion with Hathburga was null, and he  
 solemnly espoused Matilda.—Otho, who received  
 the name of his illustrious grandsire, was their  
 first-born—and after Duke Henry had obtained  
 the German kingdom, four other children fol-

lowed,—Henry and Bruno, sons—Gerburga and Hadwisa, daughters.

§ 9. A great object sought by the Opposition was Hagano's ruin. Always in their way, the butt of general obloquy, everybody pelted Hagano.—Hagano, on his part, unquestionably provoked personal dislike. Deficient in that discretion which might have enabled him to temper the obloquy, so inevitably heaped upon the talented parvenu, Hagano profited by the King's bounty, and grew richer and more odious.—The King's great Tower, which crowned the rock of Laôn, was an affront in the landscape to all who believed that the walls protected Hagano's treasures.

Hagano obtained the monastery of Chelles, an appointment ludicrously scandalous; but shewing how currently the manse of a religious house was treated as secular property. This appointment occasioned great discontent, not on account of its impropriety, but because Duke Robert wanted it. Duke Robert was himself an Abbess, at least he occupied the station of an Abbess, by holding the manse of Morienvall in the Valois, founded by Charlemagne, a distinguished and well-endowed nunnery.

The only tangible charge preferred against Hagano, resulted from the privilege least profitable to the favourite, but which renders him the most obnoxious to the multitude, unre-

912—927

919—920

The proceedings of the revolutionists.

Hatred excited by Hagano.

912—927 strained companionship with the King. Charles gave Hagano the higher room, a courtesy which the kings of France yielded to those whom they wished to honour. Sometimes Hagano would lift the King's cap off the King's royal head, and drop it on his own. The real gravamen, however, appears to have been Hagano's affectionate though rough fidelity. Affronts were taken where none were meant; and, as was so often unhappily the case, the solemn festivals of the Church became the seasons of angry discord. Charles held his Court at Aix-la-Chapelle. Henry the Fowler and Duke Robert were not readily admitted into the royal presence. The strutting usher delayed opening the door. The noble Visitors introduced, they saw Hagano and Charles sitting on the same couch, Hagano above the King. The embittered Henry scolded the French Monarch. "You, King Charles, must stand or fall with Hagano."—"Hagano must reign with King Charles, or King Charles must descend from the throne with Hagano"—Duke Robert threatened, if the King did not rid himself of Hagano, he, Robert, would hang him.

Hagano's  
indiscre-  
tion.

The affront  
taken at  
Aix-la-  
Chapelle.

Gilbert  
begins the  
insurrec-  
tion in Lor-  
raine.

All were preparing to execute their plans; but, if the chronology adopted by the best informed historian of Lorraine be correct, Gilbert began the Revolution. Usurping the supreme authority in that country, he bestowed land and fee most liberally. Some nobles deserted to

the intruder; yet the majority of the Lotharingians were stanch. Charles took the field, and the Loyalists rallied round the Eagle-standard. Charles promised an amnesty, and more—he would confirm the grants of Crown-lands which Gilbert had pretended to make—Charles marched against the rebel, besieged him in the strong hold of Harburgh, precipitously situated between the Meuse and an influent rivulet, the Goul, and protected on the third side, by a deep ravine choked with bramble and brier—the real *gueule* or gully. Gilbert dropped down the walls and down the rock, swam across the Meuse, and fled to Henry the Fowler, who received him kindly, and supported the cause of the revolter, on whom he afterwards bestowed in marriage the proud and energetic Gerberga his favourite daughter. Charles, much to his damage, pardoned his old friend Rainier's son, restored to him many of his fiefs, amongst others Utrecht,—a noticeable place, as marking the extent of the Lotharingian Duchy. A fine domain was thus obtained, giving ample verge to Gilbert for gratifying his rancour against the King.

912—927

920—923

Gilbert's varied fortunes.

§ 10. During these transactions, the Magyar hordes scattered themselves over Lorraine far and wide. Gilbert and his adherents were raising the country for the profit of the Tartars. The Scythians swept the population from off the land. France was fearfully threatened, Charles, unas-

920—923

Progress of the Civil Wars.

912—927  
 920—928  
 sisted as he was, had erected excellent fortifications on the Seine, which might have been useful had the Magyars crossed the border; but no exertions, no merit of his could mitigate the rancour which assailed him.

Fierce disputes, all previous kindnesses forgotten, arose between Charles, the Carlovingian King, and the Teutonic Henry. Henry interfered in French affairs, and made strenuous exertions to regain the Lotharingian Kingdom. Gilbert increased the dissensions, urging Robert Capet to action. Robert did not immediately march with banners displayed, but the threatening attitude of the Duke of France and Count of Paris, the brother of King Eudes and the son of the heroic Robert-le-Fort, was equivalent to the hostility of a rival Sovereign. King Henry and Duke Robert came to a mutual understanding: Charles, guarding himself against both, entered Soissons, whilst a great council was proclaimed to be held in the antient Merovingian capital.

920  
 Charles required by his nobles to discard Hagano. On his refusal, they defy him.

Their plans fully matured, the confederates gladly obeyed the summons:—Charles thereby gave them the very opportunity they wanted. One and all, they peremptorily required him to discard his minion Hagano. Charles replied as they had hoped, peremptorily refusing the demand, nor, mischievous as the consequences became to him, can it be said that he resisted unwisely,—for a Sovereign acceding to any such demands

divides the nerve of his power,—and they forth- 912—927  
with *dishonoured* him, casting him off as their             
Senior. 920—923

They had counted the cost and the gain.—  
In what manner could they most satisfactorily  
to themselves, and most conclusively before the  
nation, completely extinguish the rights of the  
insulted Sovereign?

A king defeated in battle might again col-  
lect his forces and retaliate upon his enemies—  
A king compelled to abdicate might reclaim  
his crown—A king dethroned by the Prelates  
might be recalled by the Prelates:—an im-  
prisoned king might escape:—the blood of a  
murdered king would draw down vengeance.  
But there was an ancient privilege, common to  
all the barbaric nations, existing in full vigour,  
yet most rarely exercised, and therefore the  
more solemnly impressive, a tradition which the  
youngest had heard from the oldest, the franchise  
they inherited from their forefathers, a mystic  
rite whereby they could annul his authority,—  
with the very root of his power.

According to modern principles, the Subject's *Diffida-*  
allegiance is indefeasible, sailing with him across *tion, or*  
the ocean, binding him from cradle to grave; but *right of re-*  
the primeval legislation of the Teutons permitted *nouncing*  
to the vassal or liegeman the right of *allegiance*  
—he might undo his faith; and, to employ the *or fealty.*  
technical expression, which in modern language

912—927 has swerved from its original signification, they  
 920—923 *defied* him.

§ 11. It is a marvellous portion of the human constitution, that our belief in objective existence can only be obtained absolutely through the grossest and least spiritual of our senses. Seeing does not bring such conviction as feeling: we cannot always trust our eyes, the touch is never distrusted. We bear the strongest testimony to this law of our nature by our analogical language. In our judgments of the human character, *insight* does not afford us a sufficient practical guidance, unless the rare faculty, figuratively denominated *tact*, accompanies our powers of social knowledge—intellectual vision is not adequate unless perfected by intellectual feeling. No description of a Lisbon *auto da fé*, no narrative of the sufferer burnt alive at the Smithfield stake, enables you to realize the horror of the execution so palpably as the roughness of the Forfar witch-collar, calcined and scaled away by the oft-repeated fire. No charm of verse or eloquence of prose can teach you to appreciate the devotion of Kilmarnock and Balmerino, so intimately as the pressure beneath your own neck of the block at the Tower.

Confirma-  
 tion of  
 legal acts  
 by material  
 symbols.

Hence amongst the Teutons, nay indeed amongst all the antient nations, the universal custom of effecting legal acts by the agency of specific, material and tangible symbols, which,

accompanying the spoken formulæ, possessed a sacramental power. Words were essential, writing an adjunct, a useful record of the transaction, employed to aid the memory; but the ratification was given by the hand.

When the simplification of our English modes of conveyancing was discussed, men least disposed to resist innovation out of reverence for antiquity, objected to abolish the ceremony which requires the grantor to confirm the writing by word and action, placing his finger upon the seal—"This is my act and deed."—The delivery of the turf conveyed the land: net and cobble passed the fishery: the house-key, the house; and the pulling of the bell-rope still invests the incumbent; but no symbol was of such universal application amongst antient nations as the *stipula*, the *festuca*, the *culm*, the *hawm*.—Thrice was the hawm to be cast, when the Teuton bequeathed his land to the stranger in blood.—Thrice was the hawm to be flung down before the Sovereign when the lieges refused their assent to the doom;—and once was the hawm to be cast up in the air before that Senior whom his lieges rejected and spurned away. To this usage, therefore, the sternly indignant Frankish Proceres resorted, proclaiming that they cast off their faith, and with one act in the open field, the field of council, did they cast the hawm—they, no longer Charles's lieges; Charles, no longer their Senior or king.

Act of  
*Diffidation*  
 how per-  
 formed.



912—927

921—922

The revolution continues in abeyance.

§ 12. Had Charles any intimation of their intentions, could he avoid discerning the extreme danger impending? Ceasing to be his subjects, his lieges became his masters—whenever they chose, they might make security doubly sure—the cell at St Médard, where Louis-le-Débonnaire had groaned, was ready to receive his descendant. They surrounded him in his palace, made him prisoner, and prepared to march him away.—But he was rescued. There is such a whirlabout amongst the parties in these transactions, always changing sides, that it is impossible to account for their movements, or to explain their intentions. Archbishop Hervé entered Soissons, accompanied by a large body of troops. Charles sheltered himself under the protection of the good but vacillating prelate: he afterwards returned to Tongres, and an interval of seven months ensued, the Gauls continuing in an anomalous state of partial interregnum. The revolutionists had only obtained an imperfect success. The diffidation released none but the chieftains who personally performed the act, and those populations whom they represented.—The Aquitanians had not defied their King,—the Northmen of the Seine had not defied him;—and, more potently competent to aid their sovereign than any others, the Lotharingian people, as a body, had not defied him. Moreover during these disasters, Ogiva gave birth to a son. Could it be said that

the infant heir had lost his right? The father re-appears, reinstated, surrounded by his loyal lieges, with courage unbroken, spirit undepressed, and, scanty as his court might be, assuming full royal state and exercising full royal power.

§ 13. A new persecutor now came over; Regnald from Northumbria, who, having submitted to Edward the Elder, grew weary of England, fitted out a fleet, and sailed to France, emulous of Rollo's good fortune. Regnald first attacked the oft-devastated banks of the Loire; but we have few correspondents, so to speak, in the South of France, and we obtain only an extremely imperfect notion of events, scarcely discernible on the clouded verge of our narrow historical horizon. The Northmen, already extensively settled in the Loire country, are frequently confounded with the Norman Northmen, and they must have consented to acknowledge Rollo's supremacy. Otherwise we cannot understand how Poitou should have been rendered tributary to the Patriarch of Rouen, the geld continuing payable by the Counts, till Guillaume-Longue-épée's free favour released the burthen. Gerlo, Rollo's kinsman, probably still held Blois. The Palace, now so bright in the renovated elegancies of the *renaissance*, stands on the site of the Danish Burgh. Regnald campaigned in all the adjoining country, and became a threatening and annoying enemy to Duke Robert.

912—927  
 907—923

921—923  
 Regnald in  
 the Loire.  
 Operations  
 of the  
 Northmen  
 favourable  
 to the cause  
 of Charles.

912—927

907—926

The Danes  
in Armo-  
rica.Death of  
Alain-le-  
Grand.  
Misfor-  
tunes of the  
Bretons—  
They aban-  
don the  
country.

The Danes had been gaining ground exceedingly in Armorica—all the Provinces to the North of the Loire were on the point of becoming Danish territory. Distracted by internal dissensions, the feeble authority of the native Sovereigns quite precluded the Bretons from availing themselves of any advantages which they had won under Alain-le-Grand, or opposing the inroads of the indomitable enemy. Alain-le-Grand left several children, some of whom obtained appanages, but others did not. Gurmhallion, Count of Cornouaille, descended from the great Conan Meriadec, acquired the Sovereignty. He disappears in the turmoil; and, as we are told, the illusory honour of the Breyzad supremacy devolved upon Mathuedoi, Count of Pohér, who married Alain's daughter.

This was an era of peculiar misfortune to the ever-persecuted Celtic family. Whilst the Anglo-Saxons were consuming the Cymri on the Mercian borders, and Edward establishing his supremacy over all the Celtic Sovereigns, even so were the Breyzad failing before the Pagan hosts, those Danes who in Britain were as inimical to the cognate English, as to the antagonistic race. The native population of Armorica was almost wholly hunted out or scared away, the land left waste and unoccupied. The Clergy dispersed themselves in Romane France, and the relics of Breton Saints, enshrined in the French churches and monas-

teries, recorded the national dispersion. Many of the nobles crossed the Channel, and were cordially welcomed in their day of distress by the Anglo-Saxons who had dispossessed their ancestors. Mathuedoi was honourably received, and with his compeers, Hoel and Cledauc and Idwall, and the other Celtic Reguli of East Wales and West Wales and South Wales and Strath Clyde, graced the Anglo-Saxon Court; and Mathuedoi obtained equal protection for his young son, Alain, in age of manhood called "Barbe-torte"—Alain, the worthy descendant of Alain-le-Grand, who companied at the English Court with Edward's heir and successor, glorious Athelstan.

912—927  
 907—912

Mathuedoi  
 and his son  
 Alain re-  
 ceived in  
 England by  
 King Ed-  
 ward.

The desolations and conquests inflicted or obtained by the Northmen effected a powerful diversion in favour of King Charles. Duke Robert, quitting his own country, proceeded against them. Robert presented himself before the Danish foe, whom he dared not assail: after protracted operations, a territorial cession ensued. Duke Robert granted to the Danes "Britanny," and also Nantes and the Nantois Marchlands. Upon his persuasion, or as a condition of the treaty, or of their own good will, the Pagans became Christians; but many contests ensued before they were pacified. These perplexed but important transactions confirmed that supremacy of the Northmen over Armorica, which ultimately

921  
 Cession of  
 Brittany  
 made by  
 Duke Ro-  
 bert to the  
 Danes.

912—927 concurred in rendering Brittany the *arrière fief* of the French Crown.

922—923  
Renewal of  
the war  
between  
Charles  
and the  
Capetians.

§ 14. A year elapsed, distinguished by the cessation of hostilities,—a pause enforced upon both parties by debility. The Capetians desisted from attacking King Charles, and he remained at Laôn, not merely unmolested, but fully exercising his Royal authority and always relying upon the help he could obtain from the “*Terra Normannorum*,” whenever Rollo should be required to aid. Rollo fully justified his honesty of character. Despite of the spiritual affinity, *Rollo-Robert* had no further concern with his rebellious Godfather. He kept entirely true to his father-in-law, and renounced all connection with the Duke of France. But Gilbert rekindled the war in Lotharingia, again seduced some of the nobles, again pretended to the Dukedom, and kept up the continuity of revolt. The loyalists opposed him; and he revenged himself by ravaging the country, burning, plundering. No holy-tide was honoured, Lent brought no respite, and Charles marched to suppress the rebellion, Hagano faithfully adhering to his royal master. Some might say that the pledge for Hagano’s fidelity was his treasure in the tower of Laôn :—as for Herbert of Vermandois who had joined king Charles, he only waited an opportunity to display his treachery.

Dangers of  
the King’s  
position.

Charles, now in the Laonnois, occupied a very

disadvantageous military position, notwithstanding the importance of the capital city which he retained. The Isle-de-France proper, surrounded by Seine, Marne and Oise,—a tract as nearly as possible deserving the insular name,—was filled with forces commanded by Hugh-le-Grand. On the South, Raoul and the Burgundians threatened the King's troops. Rollo and the Northmen, the King's surest allies, and with whom he communicated by his messengers, were separated by the enemies' country. Charles crossed the Meuse into Lorraine. Gilbert avoided battle, and effected a junction with the Capetians. Rapid movements and crossings ensued. Herbert of Vermandois abandoned Charles, and with the fullest determination to do the worst for him. Raoul and the dreaded Burgundians joined Hugh-le-Grand. Count Robert, Duke Robert, Robert Abbot of Saint Martin, came up. Charles, nothing daunted amidst his adversities, assembled a large force, attracted by personal affection—what other motive could have brought them?—and then boldly reentered and spoiled the Vermandois, taking his station in the Soissonnais, between Marne and Aisne.

912—927

922

Charles retreats beyond the Meuse.

Charles re-enters the Vermandois.

Encamped within three miles of the King, the Capetians dared not attack him. It was expedient to gain time, and conferences were held between the Chieftains of the respective armies. All the great men were consulted save

912—927

922

Laón taken  
by the Capetians.

June 9.

Charles is  
beaten off  
from  
Rheims.922  
June 29.Robert,  
the second  
Capetian  
King,  
crowned at  
Rheims.

two,—Charles and Hagano;—but at the end of this tampering truce, hostilities were resumed. Duke Robert surprized Laón, and plundered the tall Tower, rejoicing in the spoil,—what spoil so grateful as Hagano's treasure? Charles desired to reduce Rheims: he encamped before the walls on the morrow of the Ascension. Pentecost was drawing nigh, but all Church-observances were neglected, the work must be done; and he celebrated the Feast of Pentecost by attempting to storm the city. He was beaten off discreditably. The royal forces melted away; even the Lotharingians returned home. Charles, wholly unapprised of the capture of Laón, determined to fall back upon the city, marched thither, and found the gates closed. Thus shut out from his last stronghold, Charles retreated to Tongres, yet boldly preparing to renew the conflict.

Hitherto the Franks hesitated to follow up their *defiance*. They had not treated the throne as vacant. Possibly they might not be unanimous, but Robert now vindicated his family's glory; the Proceres assembled at Rheims, and Robert the brother of Eudes was proclaimed King. The Prelates were reluctant: Hervé dreaded the responsibility; but some of the Bishops were bullied, others cajoled, and the second monarch representing the new dynasty was crowned and anointed before the altar, at Rheims, by Walter Archbishop of Sens.

Three days afterwards Archbishop Hervé <sup>912-927</sup>  
 died—opportunistically for the Capet party. As else- <sup>922-923</sup>  
 where, according to the universal Canon-law, <sup>922</sup>  
 occasionally modified by local usages, clergy and <sup>July 2.</sup>  
 citizens concurred in choosing the Archbishop; <sup>Death of</sup>  
 but power, influence, and corruption, sorely in- <sup>Abb. Her-</sup>  
 fringed the liberty of election. Herbert of Ver- <sup>vé.</sup>  
 mandois was working to obtain the patronage.  
 If the House of Vermandois could make a Ver-  
 mandois Archbishop, the Vermandois Archbishop  
 might make a Vermandois King. Such a project  
 might be remote—Herbert's nearer and more  
 feasible object was the promotion of his son  
 Hugh; but inasmuch as little Hugh could but  
 just walk alone—he was about two years old,—  
 Seulph was created by King Robert, a wise and  
 learned clerk, and if he had come in rightfully,  
 the appointment would have been unobjection-  
 able. But it was one of the numberless mischiefs  
 of this corrupt system that good men, when  
*bishopped*, could scarcely avoid tricks and in-  
 trigues: the making spoiled them.

Seulph became immediately involved in trou-  
 bles. Hervé had granted certain possessions of  
 the See to Eudes his brother, and to a namesake,  
 another Hervé his nephew. Upon the accession of  
 the new Archbishop the grantees withdrew their  
 fealty: they would neither wage battle nor answer  
 in judgment. Robert and Herbert assisted Seulph  
 strenuously. The Count apprehended the spolia-



912—927 tors and brought them before the King, and they  
 were kept in custody till Robert's death released  
 922—923 them. Seulph reciprocated—he testified his gra-  
 titude by sanctioning some obscure and repre-  
 hensible arrangements intended to secure the  
 reversion of the See for the boy. No vacancy  
 however could occur until after Seulph's death;  
 translations had not as yet ever been practised  
 in the Church. And we cannot conjecture that  
 there was any mode of forwarding Herbert's  
 designs, otherwise than by appointing the child  
 to the station of Chor-Episcopus or coadjutor in  
 the See, thus nursed for him by Seulph. These  
 abuses were not to be rebuked until the raising  
 up of that Pontiff who united the soldier's heart  
 to the martyr's faith and fortitude.

923  
 Charles  
 continues  
 the war  
 actively.

Rollo and  
 the Danes  
 prepare to  
 assist  
 Charles.

§ 15. Charles continued unflinchingly in the field, vigorously employing himself in offensive and defensive measures. He took no cognizance of his dethronement. We have a charter sealed by him as King during the hurry of the march,—and the instrument is attested by Hagano,—two days previous to his arrival before Rheims. He besieged the ungrateful Gilbert in his strong castle of Chevremont, and continued corresponding with his son-in-law, the aged Patrician of Rouen. Rollo prepared to set a large body of troops in motion. Other Danish forces under Regnald were joining the Rouen levies, and marching onwards. Besides their operations in the Loire

country, these Danes invaded Auvergne. They were checked, or, as it was said, defeated, by William of Auvergne and Raimond of Toulouse—twelve thousand slain. But the blow hit by the Frenchman rarely left a mark upon the Dane; and after their alleged discomfiture we behold them as powerful as ever. King Robert was equally active. He advanced into Lotharingia, met Henry the Fowler, and the two Sovereigns entered into an alliance. Yet King Charles would not bate a jot of his regal dignity, and the King *de jure* concluded a truce with the King *de facto*, to last until the following October.

912—927

922—923

Truce concluded between the two Kings.

This respite Charles diligently improved: he consulted with the few who were faithful, exhorted them, encouraged them, declared he would encounter any danger,—he would die rather than yield the Crown. The Lotharingians flocked round the Carlovingian Eagle: picked men, chosen men, the flower of the country. War broke out again furiously. Charles directed the route of his army towards the Aisne. Mustering at royal Attigny, he marched onwards towards ill-omened Soissons, where King Robert encamped in the plain without the city.

Charles had marshalled about ten thousand men, six thousand were Lotharingians, the remainder of his army having been probably collected from districts where loyalty still lingered—such as the Soissonnais, or Aquitaine, whose

Charles resumes the war.

912—927 nobles steadily refused to acknowledge the Capet.

922—923 These were speedily increased by a very important reinforcement—four thousand Northmen

under the conduct of Harold the Dane. Count Fulbert, bearing the Carlovingian standard, commanded the vanguard, Harold the Dane the rear. The Capetian forces were much larger: the warriors engaged on either side were chiefly the ancestors of the first Crusade's heroes—forefathers of those who desolated the Holy Land.

The Capetians surprised in their camp.

So sudden and well-contrived were the military movements of Charles, that the Capetian troops, estimated at twenty thousand, continued unwarned of his approach till their camp was stormed. It was Sunday, and they were dining; but they were all fully armed—up and to horse—and the fight began with malignant fury.

923  
June 15.  
Battle of  
Soissons.

Amongst the Capetians one warrior dealt his blows with desperate valour.—Is this the usurper Robert!—was the Carlovingian outcry. An instant response was given. King Robert waving his royal standard, drew out from beneath his hawberk his long-flowing grey-grizzled beard. Instantly surrounded, Count Fulbert charged at the Capet, and thrust him through; but Robert, mortally wounded, gave a mortal wound, and struck Fulbert down. The assailants thronged round the dying King: seven spears transfixed him; one, whose trenchant iron clove through tongue, palate and brain, was claimed by the

King Robert slain.

Carlovingians as the weapon of King Charles. 912—927  
 The legitimate monarch enjoyed the renown of giving the traitor the finishing blow. 922—928

But the second Capetian King gained a post-humous victory. Whilst groaning in mortal agony, under the bloody shafts which pinned him to the ground, Hugh-le-Grand and Count Herbert rallied their troops, and drove the Carlovingians off the field. Yet they dared not pursue the fugitives. Where was their leader?—their King had fallen.—Soissons field enjoys the miserable honour of humbly emulating the carnage of Fontenay. Eleven thousand nine hundred and sixty-nine Capetians were killed,—seven thousand one hundred and eighteen Carlovingians: more than the half of each army. Therefore, though the loss was numerically greater on the Capetian side, the proportion of the forces continued nearly as before; and, under such circumstances, the smaller residue is much more crippled than the larger. The Lotharingians were dispirited, and dispersing themselves, returned home, whilst Charles appears reinstated in Laôn.

But the Carlovingians are compelled to retreat.

The Capetians had gained a dull funereal triumph. In the preceding generation, the calamity of Brise-sur-Sarthe,—the death of Robert-le-Fort inflicted by the Norman shaft, had been construed as the vengeance incurred by sacrilege. An undefined horror attended the fate of King Robert his son. If we enquire where

912—927 Robert was interred, all the usual sources of  
 922—923 information are silent: no chronicler designates  
 King Robert's sepulchre: no monastic necrology  
 records his death: no charter testifies the endow-  
 ment offered for the good of his soul:—we are  
 not even certain that Robert received Christian  
 burial.

Penances  
 imposed by  
 the Church  
 upon the  
 combat-  
 ants.

All the regular constitutional assemblies of the realm had ceased—for the tumultuous conventions which had been held were partial, irregular, and revolutionary. But the ecclesiastical legislature was in full activity. A Synod was shortly afterwards held at Soissons, hard by the field of slaughter; and the Church, mourning for the crimes and miseries of the nation, bore Her testimony against war. All who had engaged in the conflict were condemned,—all who had fought, the vanquished or the victors—were alike blood-guilty, and must submit to the discipline which the Church imposed. No combatant was permitted to enter the walls of the sacred edifice until canonically reconciled; and during three years were the penances to be continued, public testimonies of contrition before God and man.

Whilst the Capetian masters of the field were joyless, the expelled monarch abounded in expectation and alacrity.—Charlemagne's descendant, the rightful King, will not own to his authority being a whit impaired, let Fortune frown as she may.—His allies the Northmen gathered

in the Amiennois, the Beauvoisin, throughout all  
 Picardy, all preparing to assist king Charles—  
 old Rollo sending up his troops from Rouen, and  
 grim Regnald marching from the Loire for the  
 occupation of the Vermandois.—Charles peremp-  
 torily required Hugh-le-Grand and Count Her-  
 bert and Archbishop Seulp and the other  
 revoltors, to return to their allegiance; but all  
 bonds between them and Charles were irrepara-  
 bly dissolved; submission was impossible; more  
 strength was urgently needed; and they invited  
 the Burgundian Raoul, the son of Richard-le-  
 Justicier, Robert Capet's favoured son-in-law,  
 brother-in-law of Hugh-le-Grand.

912—927

922—923

923

 The Danes  
support  
Charles.

 The Capetians invite  
Raoul of  
Burgundy.

Raoul advanced rapidly, heading a powerful  
 force, and with him his wife Emma, beautiful  
 as she was ambitious and bold. Emma longed  
 to encrease her husband's renown: she did her  
 part as a true helpmate, prepared and ready,  
 should exigencies require, to take the command  
 of a garrison, stand a siege, and defend a city  
 against an enemy. Had the Normans reached  
 Laôn, the Capetians would have been hard  
 pressed: reinforced, however, by the Burgun-  
 dians, their combined forces took their station  
 on the Oise, cutting off the communication be-  
 tween King Charles and the Northmen.

 See Vol. I.  
pp. 237,  
406, and  
634.

The energetic few who now directed the des-  
 tinies of France proceeded to choose a king.  
 Without a King, no law, no State, no political

 The crown  
offered to  
Hugh-le-  
Grand,

912—927 existence.—Parentage, power, prowess, designated  
 Hugh-le-Grand as the successor of his father.

922—923 The Duchy of France and all its appurtenances,  
 the Abbey of Saint-Denis and the Abbey of  
 Saint-Germain, and the Abbey of Saint-Martin  
 of Tours, now virtually his inheritance, would be  
 united to the Crown. Wise, vigorous and opulent,  
 who could wield the sword and the sceptre with  
 equal might and equal splendour? But when  
 the Frankish chieftains unanimously offered to  
 and refused  
 by him. raise Duke Hugh to his father's kingdom, he  
 refused; not Cromwell's faltering nay-say, nor  
 Cæsar's affected disdain, but with the firm resolve  
 of repudiating the diadem.

Such a phenomenon as the voluntary rejection of wealth, station or honour, is a moral problem perplexing the world, and for which the world anxiously seeks a plausible solution. Hugh, as many believed, was deterred by the judgment which had fallen on his father; yet, if so, his scruples were not sufficient to induce him to make restitution: that which King Robert had Duke Hugh as firmly held; Hugh kept all his father's Abbeys, and more besides, to the day of his death. Possibly Hugh's sagacity and prudence prevailed over ambition; he dreaded, may be, the distressing insecurity of the throne. Emma had been yearning to obtain the Crown for her husband; the phrase popularly imputed to her,—she would rather kiss her Husband's knees than

the knees of her Brother,—seems to have been a true expression of her sentiments. In after times Hugh was designated as a king's son, a king's nephew, a king's brother-in-law, a king's son-in-law, a king's father, but not a king himself; but as yet he was childless, no son to call his heir, and so he was contented to be a subject greater than a king.

912—927  
922—923

The Southern Counts and Dukes, those beyond the Loire, severed themselves from the Capet party, and for the present continued neutral. None next to Hugh could be so competent to resist the Danes, now threatening further conquests, as the Burgundian Raoul; and Raoul the husband of Emma was accepted, proclaimed and crowned at Soissons by his own metropolitan, Walter, Archbishop of Sens. Why not at Rheims, and by Archbishop Seulph? Possibly some jealousy on the part of Vermandois prevented this most solemn inauguration. King Charles had retreated beyond the Meuse, still in safety; but henceforth we lose sight of Hagano, until years afterwards, when we meet him again in Mitre and Cope,—Hagano Bishop of Chartres.

923  
July 11.  
Raoul of  
Burgundy  
elected  
King of  
France,  
and crown-  
ed at Sens.

§ 16. Notwithstanding the success of the Capetians, they did not yet venture to assail the legitimate King. Charles had lost France, but he was King in Lotharingia,—King in the Aquitanian Gauls, which had neither recognized Robert nor Raoul,—King and Senior over the

Authority  
yet remain-  
ing to  
Charles.



912—927 Rouen Northmen. All these disturbances and  
 922—923 revolutions very much enhanced the influence  
 of the Danes: from their first touching upon the  
 Frankish shores every national trouble told to their  
 advantage. Rollo's Northmen were gathering  
 valiantly, pouring in from Rouen where they had  
 mustered, and joined by the Danish armies from  
 the Loire, Regnald's men, all trusty and hearty.  
 The situation of Charles was not more desperate  
 than under former contingencies; and had he  
 been as clear-sighted as he was warm-hearted,  
 he might have regained his authority; but he  
 fell into the toils spread for him by the most  
 crafty of deceivers.

Herbert of Vermandois, who had so lately  
 concurred in Raoul's elevation, now declared  
 himself the enemy of the Burgundian King. Not  
 merely did Herbert ostensibly abandon Raoul,  
 but he proclaimed that the usurpation was a  
 crime, and he opened a negotiation with Charles,  
 expressing an earnest desire of restoring him to  
 his rights.—If King Charles would be pleased to  
 place himself under the protection of Herbert,  
 the Count of Vermandois would speedily take  
 counsel for the King's restoration. For the  
 avoidance of dissensions, it would be prudent  
 that the King's attendants should be few. Ber-  
 nard de Senlis, Rollo's friend and their common  
 friend, conveyed this proposal; and if the King  
 required any security, it would be given by the

pledge and oath of Bernard.—Such was the import of the communication ; Bernard de Senlis, the unconscious instrument of fraud, executed his commission successfully. Charles assented ; he had none to counsel with ; yet there was no palpable imprudence, certainly no folly.

912—927  
922—928  
Herbert of Vermandois : his plan for deceiving Charles.

§ 17. Had Herbert of Vermandois been an honest man, and the counter-revolution accomplished through his intervention, Charles, instead of being sneered at for his weakness or stupidity, would have been praised for his bold and generous confidence. Those who blame a drowning man for catching at a straw, have never themselves been in danger of drowning. Charles acted upon reasonable grounds. His very conviction of Herbert's ambition and unworthiness would make him give credence the more readily.—That a Frankish noble should desert his own party, and pass over to the other side, was entirely consistent with the moral standard of the times—the seeking of profit by political treachery, equally so ; and that Herbert would demand, as the requital for his good services, some tempting enclavure, marring the integrity of the Vermandois territory, would be possibly anticipated by the King. But Charles did not fathom the depth of Herbert's cunning,—nor was the treachery a sudden thought prompted by opportunity. Ere the battle of Soissons had been waged, before Robert had fallen, the Capet, confident in success,

Charles gives trust to the proposals made by Herbert.

912—927 had demanded from Herbert that Charles should  
 sustain perpetual captivity.

923—924

Herbert however really required no incitement. The plot was deliberately matured, and the artifice which Herbert meditated, might be extenuated to his conscience, by the recollection of the fraud practised upon his progenitor the murdered Bernard. Twelve were the confederates, Herbert the chiefest, who had pledged themselves to accomplish the King's destruction.

Charles imprisoned by Herbert.

Herbert was merely seeking to get him into his grip for the purpose of playing him off against King Raoul. Oaths were given, and oaths were taken. Charles advanced to Saint-Quentin on the Somme: he was there respectfully received by the Count, and carefully and hospitably entertained; but the honourable arrest soon assumed the aspect of irretrievable captivity. The royal prisoner was removed to Château-Thierry, and then transferred to Perronne, which ultimately became his dungeon and place of sepulture.—And now for the first time Ogiva appears before us with her child, the little Louis, despairing of her Husband's rescue, fearing even for the life of the boy.—How she escaped is not exactly known; yet certainly she did not accomplish her evasion otherwise than with great difficulty. Louis himself relates the homely device adopted for his safety, he was concealed in a truss of forage. She reached the coast, and fled to England: the

Ogiva and the child Louis escape to England.

glorious Athelstan received his luckless sister 912—927  
 kindly and royally;—Ogiva and Louis are ‘*outr-* mer,  
 rescued from the enemy, far beyond the sea. 922

§ 18. During the period intervening between the pacification of Clair-sur-Epte and the fatal crisis when Charles-le-Simple’s calamities became so urgent, whoever resorted to the Norman Court found old Rollo growing older and older: mostly Internal tranquillity enjoyed by Normandy. employing himself rightly and wisely in works of peace. Norman traditions affectionately exhibit the antient warrior administering the law, improving his Capital, draining and embanking, encouraging the building of churches, and surveying the rising walls of palace and castle: or disporting himself in the chase, whether in the game-abounding “*Foresta de Leonibus*”—that favourite and remarkable hunting ground,—or in the woods surrounding the fabled Roumare, or in the forest-park of Quevilly, between the Roumare and Rouen.

Tall in stature, gentle in manner, Guillaume, Rollo’s only son, was encreasing in general favour. Amongst the mournful hope-disappointing promises of youth, the blossoms blooming only for the blight, Guillaume displayed much early piety, and a childish inclination towards retirement and solitude; but the advantages of birth and station tempted him to indulgence, and designated him for power. Rollo was about fourscore; and there were many amongst the chieftains

912—927 who began to deliberate whether it would not be  
 expedient that the Octogenarian should retire  
 922 from the functions of government, and resign the  
 authority to his son;—but Rollo had no such  
 mind. The deposition of his father-in-law, King  
 Charles, disturbed his tranquillity, and excited the  
 very natural desire of profiting by the convulsions  
 which France sustained: he would fain enlarge  
 his dominions before he should die, and render  
 Normandy tight and round.

Rollo's su-  
 premacy  
 established  
 in Armo-  
 rica.

It is a moot point among topographical ar-  
 chæologists, whether Rollo had or had not yet  
 gained the *Lieuvin* or Lisieux territory. The  
 young Alain, Matheudoï's son, having returned  
 to Armorica, was accepted as Count of Vannes,  
 whilst Juhel-Berenger, the son of Judicail, appears  
 enjoying the County of Rennes. These Chief-  
 tains, though attached to the French, a people  
 more congenial to them than the rougher North-  
 men, fully acknowledged Rollo's supremacy, re-  
 cognizing Rollo as their common sovereign; and,  
 by such submission, the two great Breton Counties  
 were in a manner united to Normandy. Never-  
 theless the authority of Rollo was fluctuating;—  
 and though many districts yielded obedience, his  
 pretensions and possessions were uncertain be-  
 yond the Dive.

923  
 Renewal of  
 the Danish  
 ravages.

The Danish war now burst out afresh with  
 all the pristine Vikingar fury. From Loire to  
 Seine, all France was in confusion: Regnald

came up, and Rollo's Rouen troops combined <sup>912—927</sup>  
 with him: the banks of the Oise were no longer <sup>922—923</sup>  
 defended, the Danes occupied the Vermandois,  
 which they plagued as in days of old. Obstinate  
 conflicts ensued, fought point to point, blade to  
 blade. Count Hubert beat the invaders, and  
 released a thousand prisoners. The Amiennois  
 was in fire and flame. Aldeilm Count of Arras <sup>Vicissitudes of the Danish war.</sup>  
 gave the Danes battle and defeated them, and  
 they immediately started up in more strength  
 than before. The Beauvoisin was burning, further  
 help was needed: King Raoul himself advanced  
 in all haste from Burgundy, and affairs assumed  
 a new aspect. The Franks now determined to  
 act upon the offensive.—Whatever treaties might  
 have been concluded with the Danes, the national  
 conscience of the French ignored these solemn  
 compacts: the Danish occupation was not legi-  
 timated by opinion or sentiment.—Baptism did  
 not entitle a Dane to be dealt with as a fellow-  
 Christian. Settled in the land, the Danes were  
 still abominated as the outlawed freebooters. The  
 political cordiality originally grounded upon the  
 personal friendship between Charles and Gisella's  
 consort was dissolved, and the Franks determined  
 to resume the territories, which, when under the  
 terror of Rollo, the "Dux Piratarum," they had  
 urged their sovereign to cede.

King Raoul, and Duke Hugh, and Count  
 Herbert, with Archbishop Seulph, summoned and

912—927 united all their forces. Normandy, well governed,  
 { tranquil, and flourishing, was as tempting to the  
 923 Christian Franks as France had been to the  
 The Franks Pagan Danes. Much therefore was to be gained  
 cross the —Raoul and the Frankish chieftains crossed the  
 Epte and invade Normandy. Epte, and overspread the “Terra Normannorum,”  
 which they wasted with fire and sword.

923  
 The Franks  
 sue for  
 peace.

Rollo  
 demands  
 a further  
 cession of  
 territory.

But they won no profit by waging this warfare against the irrepressible Northmen. The conjoined armies of Rollo and fierce Regnald, the latter long since set in movement at the bidding of Charles, crossed the Oise, ranging and foraging. Raoul prepared for the coronation of bold Queen Emma; but when the inauguration was celebrated at Rheims, the Frankish squadrons were stationed all around the confines, lest these most unwelcome visitors should disturb the solemn ceremony. The French earnestly solicited peace, and Rollo consented upon the usual basis, the Frank to pay and the Dane to receive. Rollo demanded land and money, a large additional expansion of the “Terra Normannorum” beyond the Seine, and a copious Danegelt. The first proposition was reserved for future discussion, the second immediately conceded: hostages were required to secure a due performance of the conditions. None but individuals of the highest rank would be accepted by the Danes. Eudes, afterwards Count of Amiens, son of Herbert of Vermandois, being therefore delivered

to Rollo, was held in pledge by the Northmen during five years and more.

Some pacification, some breathing-time, was indeed earnestly needed for France: the Franks were in a great strait; the Mogors again doing exceeding mischief in the Alpine passes and in Italy, swarming also into the Gauls. The Northmen had become ravenous, Regnald in particular. He had plundered and ravaged sufficiently in France, but he had not obtained his heart's desire; he had not gained any compensation for his abandonment of his Northumbrian kingdom. Regnald and his Danes had not acquired any landed settlement; and he was preparing to create a "Terra Normannorum" in Burgundy, often touched and often wounded, but never permanently held by the enemy.

King Raoul was unwillingly compelled to march from "France" towards his own country. Hugh-le-Grand, Count Herbert, and Archbishop Seulp, remained in the Vermandois as his Lieutenants. The Danegelt was collected throughout France, and the Regents agreed with Rollo for a considerable encrease of territory, the whole *Pagus Baiocacensis*, as it should seem: probably also various portions of the Armorican marches, and the noble County, or rather Commonwealth, of Maine. This obscure transaction indicates important political doctrines. The great respect still commanded by the Carlovingian Crown is evidenced

912—927

923—924

Regnald in  
Burgundy.

924

The Bessin  
and Maine  
ceded to  
the North-  
men.



912—927 thereby. Otherwise than through the assent of the  
 King of France no constitutional title was im-  
 924—925 parted by mere possession or conquest. All these  
 territories had been more than once occupied by  
 the Northmen. Maine also was locally included  
 in Hugh's "Duchy of France," yet the Cænomanni  
 enjoyed great independence, and recalcitrated  
 vigorously against the supremacy claimed by the  
 race of Rollo. Nevertheless, Rollo's anxiety to  
 obtain a formal or diplomatic cession, and the  
 tardiness displayed by the Franks in giving their  
 assent, must be considered as testifying that the  
 veteran had made a very important acquisition for  
 his descendants.—These surrenders, so extorted  
 from the French, added more than a third to the  
 "Terra Normannorum."

925  
 May 6.  
 Battle of  
 Mont-Cha-  
 lus.

§ 19. Regnald continued ravaging Burgundy. A fierce battle took place at Mont-Chalus, in the rocky Avallon range, about four leagues from Vezelay. Ansegius, Bishop of Troyes, was wounded, Warner, Count of Sens, killed; but large numbers of the Northmen were slaughtered. King Raoul marched up with another unhappy fighting bishop, Abbo, Bishop of Soissons. Raoul was the Northman's active opponent. Regnald retired from Burgundy, but the war spread to Paris; and the Danes, after entrenching themselves on the borders of the Seine, returned to the Loire. The campaign against them was negligently pursued. The narratives transmitted by

the French writers concerning Regnald's devastating career appear to have been embellished by vague reports and exaggerated rumours. Regnald was a dreadful tormentor to the monks of Fleury, and their terror did not spare his memory. An ugly face, grinning in stone, and inserted in the Abbey-wall, was long afterwards pointed out as a memorial of Regnald's wretched death. Unquestionably this mask was merely one of the usual Romanesque freaks of the chisel; but there is an innate propensity in us, which renders us dissatisfied with the *meaningless*,—therefore the erudite and the ignorant are equally prone to bestow significations upon things which have none.—“*I do not know*,” is an answer which is not to be given without some exertion of moral courage. We do not like to confess we are beaten, even by an amphigouri nonsense verse.

912—927  
 925—928

§ 20. Rollo suddenly proclaimed that the truce between the Patrician of Rouen and the Frankish rulers was at an end. Though the Dane-gelt had been rigidly levied, yet the money-bags halted on their way, the instalments were unpaid. Rollo ordered his Northmen to march beyond their border. Too feeble to lead, the withered warrior animated them by his spirit. The Beauvoisin, the Amiennois, the Artois, suffered dreadfully,—Amiens and Arras partly burned, the suburbs of Noyon burned, and all the sea-board countries harassed and wasted.

925—928  
 The Northmen re-enter France.

912—927

791—926  
Origin of  
the county  
of Pon-  
thieu.

In their hostility against France, the Danes included Flanders unsparingly. Arnoul, the son of Baudouin-le-Chauve, and grandson of Baudouin Bras-de-fer and Madame Judith, now at the commencement of his lengthened reign, and who dreaded and hated the Danes, was organizing resistance and revenge. Arnoul was well-supported by Helgaud the Second, under whose government the antient country of the Maritime Franks, whilome held by his ancestors the famous Lay-abbots of Centulla, and now formed into a distinct dominion, entirely separated from the Monastery.

The Lay-  
abbots of  
Centulla  
or Saint  
Riquier.

Since the reign of Charlemagne, the employment of that great Foundation had furnished an exquisite example of irregularity. Charlemagne began by bestowing the Abbey as the dowry of his daughter Bertha, upon Angelbert, Count Nithard's father, who married her. But when she died, Angelbert entered the cloister as a shaven monk, and the establishment became a most distinguished school of learning and piety. Count Helgaud's grandfather, dynastically reckoned "Helgaud the First," who is supposed to have been Count Nithard's son, erected the abbatial territory, afterwards Ponthieu, into an hereditary temporal sovereignty, acting much in the manner of the Teutonic Grand Masters at the era of the Reformation.—Without justifying the abuse in any instance, it must be confessed that except

for the scandal, less practical harm ensued from these Centulla transactions than might have been anticipated;—the Lay-abbots appointed Priors, under whom the house was excellently well managed, pre-eminent in discipline. The fact is, that Centulla was rich enough for two, or more; and the proportion remaining to the Church was vastly more liberal than would be allowed in analogous cases amongst us by a Lay-rector,—a Lay-abbot's cater-cousin,—at the present day.

Centulla of the hundred towers had been, according to antient traditions, one of the chief cities of Belgic Gaul; but the hundred towers were decaying and falling, Centulla was reduced to comparative insignificance, and the Counts of Ponthieu created a new capital. At the mouth of the river Conches, a small and antient monastery, dedicated to Saint Sever, standing upon a steep and rugged hill, whose base adjoined the sea-coast, had become the nucleus of a hamlet. Here, equally for the purposes of government as for defence against the Danes, Helgaud built a palatial castle, around whose protecting battlements a town arose. The spreading tidal estuary of the stream constituted an excellent haven; and the port, after the decline of Quantovick, became a considerable emporium. Such was the origin of "*Monasteriolum ad mare*," Montreuil-sur-Mer, now separated from the sea by six leagues breadth of alluvial soil, in which the

912—927  
791—926

Montreuil-  
sur-Mer—  
its origin.

912—927 mingled bones of extinct and existing animals  
 perplex even the accommodating chronology of  
 925—926 geology.

Eu garri-  
 soned by  
 Rollo.

Much jealousy existed between Ponthieu and Normandy; and Arnoul's alliance with this new principality was a great check upon the Danes. —Decrepit Rollo, though his subjects compassionated him as more than half imbecile, retained his clear-sighted acuteness and vigilance. Eu on the Bresle, the river dividing Normandy from Ponthieu, was the key of the country on that side. Here Rollo placed a numerous garrison, a thousand valiant Kempers, men of the right sort from Rouen. Besides the fortifications of Eu, an island opposite to the town, now obliterated, offered an additional point of defence. The Franks, on their part, were provoked into unusual vigour: the people of the Beauvoisin rose against the Normans. Hugh-le-Grand collected forces from Paris, they took the offensive, crossed the Epte, invaded the Rouennois, and rejoiced, as Northmen ravaging France would have done, in the abundant booty. Helgaud and the Ponthieu men herried the fertile Norman borders. King Raoul, now in Burgundy, returned hastily to France, summoned the *arrière-ban*, and strenuously recommenced the war.

925—926  
 Eu taken  
 by storm.

§ 21. Eu must be considered as the barrier-fortress of Normandy on the North: could Eu be taken, Normandy would be at the mercy of

France and Flanders. Arnoul and Herbert of Vermandois, the Knights of the Archbishoprick of Rheims obeying Herbert's orders, joined the French and Burgundians. Eu was stubbornly defended, and valiantly stormed. Infuriated by resistance and enmity, the victors inflicted an indiscriminate slaughter. No quarter was given or asked on either side—Rollo's Northmen fought in the fosses, fought on the ramparts, fought in the streets. A remnant of the garrison escaped to the island, not seeking safety, but courting the opportunity of self-sacrifice. The desperate combat on the holm lasted longer than the conflict in the town. The primeval spirit of the Bersekers flamed out again—death and Walhalla. When resistance became utterly unavailing, the last surviving Danes slew themselves with their own swords.

The French army and their Flemish confederates were permitted by their commanders to disperse after the siege, but they reassembled in the course of the following year. King Raoul opened the campaign: though he had triumphed at Eu, the victory gained against the Normans counted for nought in the reckoning, and they infested the Artois and beyond, fierce as ever. Raoul chased a large detachment of Normans, and pent them up in a wood. Evening drew on, and the French forces, thus far successful, became a corps of observation, encamping round the fugitives.

912—927  
925—926

War resumed throughout the Artois, &c.

912—927

927

But the Normans watched, while those who ought to have watched were sleeping: they sallied forth during the night, wounded King Raoul, and killed Count Helgaud. It is possible that the young Guillaume may have here first fleshed his maiden sword. According to the French accounts, the Danes sustained considerable loss, eleven hundred and upwards; but the advantage, if it were one, could not be improved. The Mogors had crossed the Rhine; and, when merely the distant roar of the monsters' approach was faintly heard at Rheims, such terror was excited, that shrines and relics were hurried away. The Northmen were urgent and threatening. Rollo obtained an instalment of his subsidy, the Danegelt was levied in France and Burgundy; and the peace between the Northmen and the Franks was ratified and celebrated, as a joyful event, throughout the kingdom.

Rollo resigns in favour of Guillaume.

§ 22. Rollo's incapacity for the labours and toils of government became painfully obvious to every one except himself: he was now past fourscore, broken by age and infirmity, but he still held on,—he would not be brought to acknowledge that his time for giving up his work had arrived. His mind began to fail, and he was therefore but the more obstinate. The honour, respect and affection which he had inspired, far from diminishing, had encreased among his people: his fear was still upon them; they could not cast it off.

Raised to the supreme authority by the consent of his chieftains, any one amongst them might have been tempted to seek the same power, but none thought of striving for the sovereignty. Loyalty prevailed: the sovereignty belonged to Rollo and to Rollo's progeny. The majority also amongst the influential classes sought to include the Terra Normannorum permanently within the sphere of Romane civilization; so that Normandy should continue a member of the French monarchy, whereby they would be placed on a level with the other states. As Northmen they might be condemned; but no sovereign was more calculated to maintain their national dignity than Guillaume—qualified by education, language and parentage—a kinsman of Vermandois, imperial Charlemagne's descendant.

The Counts and Chieftains, Northmen and Bretons, having therefore finally determined, presented themselves to the old man, humbly and gently urging him to appoint a successor. Let Rollo select a fitting Duke and Patrician for the government of Normandy, and they would yield faithful obedience. There could be no doubt whom Rollo would nominate, but they made the proposition delicately, avoiding to present the son as the rival of his father: it was prudent not to excite the old man's morbid irritability. Though Rollo was still reluctant, yet he could not resist any longer, and he presented



912—927

---



---

927

Guillaume  
accepted  
as Duke  
and Patri-  
cian of  
Normans  
and Bre-  
tons.

to the assembly his son Guillaume as their future sovereign, and besought them to accept that son as their Patrician and Count, Duke and Defender; "Yet he is more inclined," said his father, "for a life of contemplation and seclusion."—But the chieftains would not allow their prospect to be clouded: they rejoiced in accepting the domination of the finely proportioned, robust, bright-haired, winning youth. Northmen and Bretons, Juhel-Berenger and Alain, Count Botho and Count Bernard, all took the oath of fealty; and placing their hands in Guillaume's hands, became his men, they his vassals, he their hereditary Duke and Patrician.

981—982  
Circum-  
stances of  
Rollo's  
death and  
interment.

This submission was in a manner dictated at Clair-sur-Epte, a corollary to the treaty, for in that compact there was no one point so explicitly and plainly expressed, or so solemnly confirmed, as that Rollo should hold the land, to him and his descendants from heir to heir for ever. Henceforward Rollo disappears from history. The exact time of his decease is uncertain: probably he survived his resignation about five years. When at the point of death, the awful rendering up of life's recollections became manifest in him,—the shadows of terrene existence rising and passing by in dim succession, preparatory to the soul's departure. In his case the reminiscences of the wandering mind were horrible—he beheld an hundred human victims slaughtered

to appease the anger of Thor and Odin.—But he recovered from his waking trance, bestowed additional donations upon Church and Poor, and his body was deposited in the Metropolitan Basilica, Notre Dame of Rouen.

Rollo's grave was dug in the Sacristy, but when Archbishop Maurilius reconstructed the dilapidated Cathedral, the remains were translated by him to the Chapel of Saint Romanus, on the northern or right-hand side of the Nave as you go down from the Choir, in a line with Saint Romanus' tower. The recumbent statue which represents the Danish Jarl, clad in ducal robe, may date from the reign of Saint Louis. The sculptor has happily succeeded in embodying the notion conveyed by tradition and history—the once mighty man of war, thoroughly worn out,—the sunken lips,—the furrowed brow,—the strength of four-score years come to labour and sorrow.

## CHAPTER II.

RAOUL AND LOUIS D'OUTREMER. GUILLAUME LONGUE-ÉPÉE.

927—942.

927—942

§ 1. HAGIOLOGY, in this our “age of progress”—of progress certainly, yet whither tending?—is an unpopular theme; at best but tolerated.—It goes against the grain of our fancy. Popular writers most favourable to the “Acta Sanctorum” treat their glorious company, their goodly fellowship, their noble army—in a patronizing tone, hesitatingly, half ashamed,—making the most of their recommendable qualities or talents, asking excuses for their simplicities, queernesses and superstitions.—Gregory the Great kindly patted on the back by the Essayist,—or Bernard of Clairvaux encouraged to come forward by the Historian, rather afraid of losing caste in the intellectual circles through his owning to such an acquaintance—somewhat after the manner of a fashionable chaperon, introducing a *protégée* of dubious connexions or questionable style.

The term “Hagiology,” however, though none more appropriate can be substituted in its stead, is a mistake, a source of misconception. Turn which way we will, in any mental enquiry, we are confounded by the fallacy of human language. We may be certain that those whose lives and

actions are included under that category, would 927—942  
 mourn the epithet bestowed upon them. The biography of Saints is but the biography of Sinners; amongst whom, each would contend he was the chiefest. It is the exaggeration of human perfectibility which destroys the edification that such narratives of patience, piety, self-devotion, charity, humility, and fortitude, would otherwise impart. Nothing like this glozing view of human frailty has been taught to us. No veil has been cast upon the prevarication, the lust, the untruth, the blood-guiltiness, the denial, the anger, the incredulity,—the weaknesses, failings, transgressions, iniquities and sins of those who have been loved, chosen, called. All these things have been written for our edification, in order to refuse us any excuse for feigning that the holiest servants of God are exempted from the original corruption. We flatly contradict His holy word, if we exhibit the Just as never falling. No miracle fancied in the Golden Legend, could be so utterly incredible as the undeviating perseverance ascribed to Humanity.—

The false tenderness of Hagiography has become catholic in the worst sense,—as nearly as may be universal: in secular literature it runs riot. Posthumous biography, posthumous memorials, in every variety, guise and form, are pervaded by this debilitating, deluding, and mischievous influence.—To lie like a pedigree might

927—942 be a proverb, to lie like an epitaph is so. Could we imagine the disembodied spirit grieving over the profane adulation bestowed by man upon man, how deep would be the affliction, how poignant the sorrow, sustained by the most humble and lowly-minded amongst Philosophers, becoming cognizant of the inscription upon his tomb :

“Nature and nature's laws lay hid in night:  
God said, Let Newton be, and all was light.”—

Every concealment of a blemish detracts from the living verity of the portraiture. No truthful representation of any popular hero can approach the fine ideal of popular fame. The heroic Protector was in the right when he directed courtly Lely to delineate him with every roughness, every pimple, every blemish, every scar : he knew the picture would not be himself without them. Rare, indeed, are the sitters gifted with a Cromwell's contempt of favour-seeking ; and the unburthened easel of the artist who should work according to the spirit of his rough injunctions, would testify to their unpalatableness. It is the clever dissimilitude which renders the likeness agreeable. We depreciate the Heliograph because it is honest as the sun.

But the historian need not place himself under such coercion, he is not compelled to paint for a patron's pleasure : his primary vocation is to instruct ; nor should he blench at the risk of displeasing. Let him not fawn either upon the

living or the departed.—He will be thanked in the long run.—Let him bide his time.—He is in no wise responsible for the defects of his personages, still less is their vindication obligatory upon him. This conventional etiquette of extenuation mars the utility of historical biography by concealing the compensations so mercifully granted in love, and the admonitions given by vengeance. Why suppress the lesson afforded by the depravity of the “greatest, wisest, meanest of mankind”—he whose defilements teach us that the most transcendent intellectuality is consistent with the deepest turpitude? The labours of the panegyrist come, after all, to naught.—You are trying to fill a broken cistern.—You may cut a hole in the stuff, but you cannot wash out the stain.—Forget the worse than meaningless phrase, which represents the stiffened corpse as standing at the bar, and appealing to the “tribunal of posterity.” It is not before the judgment-seat of man that the dead will have to plead.—

§ 2. Guillaume Longue-épée is one of the stereotyped heroes of French history; nay, he is included, though unauthorizedly, in a national martyrology. When Rollo said that his son was better fitted in spirit for a monastery than a sovereignty, the old father's judgment was as nearly correct, as any which could be prospectively pronounced concerning the young prince's character. Charity, devotional taste,

927—942

Character  
of Guill-  
laume  
Longue-  
épée.

927—942 candid acceptance of reproof, a yearning for quietness and seclusion, are all attributes of Guillaume. Succeeding to an absolute authority—for the “Senior” and “Patrician” of the Rouen Northmen was unfettered by any restraint except his own discretion—Guillaume never sought, in governing, to exercise his self-will. The “Senior” “Patrician” or “Duke” of Normandy might have written himself King: his subjects boasted that Normandy was a “Monarchy.” Sole legislator, chief military commander, paramount administrator of justice, Guillaume never desired to rule by force, or otherwise than through the law’s supremacy: his sword was the symbol of order, the sword of peace. When borne aloft, the golden-hilted, long, glittering blade awed the beholders into tranquillity. Unstained by blood, the protecting weapon commanded obedience wherever displayed.

Guil-  
laume's  
talents and  
defects.

Guillaume was amply endowed with mental and bodily talents, but great disadvantages were the correlatives of these natural advantages—the compensation by which our pride is judicially confounded. Athletic and graceful, Guillaume possessed extraordinary vigour. His stroke, as the minstrel sung, was that of a giant: his features beautiful, his complexion bright as a maiden's. Gracious in manner, spirited and cheerful, having an eye for splendour, well spoken to all, Guillaume could quote a text to the priest,

listen respectfully to the wise saws of the old, talk <sup>927—942</sup> merrily with his young companions about chess and tables, discuss the flight of the falcon, and the fleetness of the hound. Sober men were fain to think that Guillaume was weaning himself from the world's vanities; and yet that same world well knew, how fully Guillaume enjoyed all the world's delights and pleasures. In short, he was one of those who (when not put out) are sure to have every man's good word—and every woman's also. Was it probable that Guillaume would live discreetly and wisely? He never could hold fast either to the good or to the evil; always wrestling with himself and failing; inwardly warned, yet disobeying the warning; ardently affectionate, yet destitute of fidelity; seeking to do right, yet backsliding,—unstable in all his ways. Human life is a continued warfare, but in Guillaume's case the strife was more than usually disclosed.—Peculiarly ill calculated therefore was Guillaume Longue-épée to cope with the difficulties of his political situation, for whose due regimen, clear views, firmness, decision and consistency, were pre-eminently required.

§ 3. Duke of Normandy—we give him that familiar title, though not formally assumed till the third generation,—it was needful that he should adjust his course between two rival interests grounded upon antagonistic principles; and mutually unsusceptible of any satisfactory

The antagonistic parties of Normandy.



927—942

The Roman-  
ized or  
Christian  
Northmen.

compromise. These two parties were the Romanized or Christian Northmen, and the Pagan Northmen, whose coexistence constantly threatened the stability of the rising commonwealth. The Norsk never appears to have been retained by the clergy as the medium of Christian instruction: hence the "gentile language" was worn out or wearing out before the spread of Christianity; whilst the Romane dialect was cultivated so successfully, that Normandy was the earliest of the French provinces in whose idiom the peculiar or special characteristics of the French language, properly so called, were distinctly evolved.

Partly the descendants of the earlier Danish colonizations, and partly consisting of those who, like Rollo and his contemporaries, had been habituated to France during the greater part of their lives, the Romanized Northmen constituted the ostensible nationality of the State. Their acceptance of Christianity was the condition upon which the French government and nation had sanctioned their settlement in the land; and they had conformed to the condition. Some were sincere: but a sluggish indifference seems more generally to have characterized these converts: all were good friends, however, with the Priesthood and the Archbishop of Rouen. Opulent and influential, the powers of government were chiefly vested in the members of this party, who were placed about the person of the "Senior," to whom

they rendered a patriarchal reverence, loving him for his father's sake as much or more than his own. 927—942

Guillaume was the natural head of the French party: born to be so. French was the first language the boy heard upon his mother's knee; and, through that mother, Guillaume claimed to be a branch of the noblest family in the monarchy. This species of ancestral dignity had been a weighty recommendation in his favour when the chieftains' voluntary submission called him to the succession of the dominion which Rollo won. Guillaume Longue-épée had few natural connexions, the pleasing Gerloc his bright sister, the only near relative. Our knowledge of his paternal kinsmen is very limited; Gerlo and Malahulch merely flit before us; we can hardly recognise them distinctly, and we never hear of them consorting either with Rollo or with Guillaume. They were probably envious and inimical; whilst his mother's Vermandois kinsmen were Guillaume's most assured friends. They were probably only of the half-blood, not very nearly related,—inclination, however, combining with interest, makes much out of little in such cases. In the practical table of affinities, the agreeable are texted in gilt and illuminated characters, the disagreeable blurred away. These French connexions were congenial to Guillaume, they really and truly deserved his confidence: and none loved him more dearly than his uncle Bernard de

Duke Guillaume the natural head of the French party.

927—942 Senlis, to whom Guillaume, and Guillaume's son after him, turned in those days of peril, when home-help seemed to fail.

Guillaume's  
French  
education.

Guillaume's education, carefully and systematically pursued, had rendered him familiar with the manners of France, and imbued him with the opinions of the Christian Commonwealth. Botho, the sapient and courteous antient warrior, selected by Rollo as his son's governor and guardian, who had so faithfully executed his trust, was indeed a Dane by birth, but he, so accustomed to the ways of the country, so intimate with the people, that all his influence tended to maintain the Christian party.

The Danish  
or Heathen  
party.

§ 4. In the same manner as the Romane had become the symbol of Christian nationality, so did the Norsk continue the emphatic token which distinguished the Pagan Danes, who adhered to the conversation of their ethnic progenitors. The Heathen party came less into evidence than the Romanized or Christian party; they are not always discoverable with equal distinctness, nevertheless they were widely dispersed and thickly disseminated, even in Rouen within the sound of Notre-Dame's bells; not the less powerful from their partial concealment. We well know how frequently the East Anglian and Northumbrian Danes relapsed into idolatry:—witness the laws of Canute,—the repeated endeavours of Synods and Councils to extinguish the latent heathendom. In Normandy, the traces of Scandinavian

belief are exceedingly faint: the respective masses of semi-christianized as well as unconverted Northmen probably included more freethinkers than idolaters, yet in such cases, the enmity towards an antagonistic creed supplies the place of religious zeal amongst slack professors of their own. Christianity languished: having oftentimes been introduced merely by treaty and bargain:—monastic establishments, the fortresses of piety, universally broken up,—discipline shamefully relaxed,—the succession of bishops interrupted,—the priesthood few in number and degenerate, and inveterately concubinary.—But the antipathies mutually entertained between the Christians and the Pagans were selfish and political. Hatred against a common enemy is a stronger bond of union, than love amongst brethren.

In Evreux and the Evreçin, probably also throughout the Seine country, districts in which the Danes had been so long hiving and swarming, they were very generally christianized: perhaps also in the Armorican Marches, where the Roman language had supplanted the Breton at an early era; but the parties or nationalities were intermixed, dispersed, and straggling. The Danish element was strongest in the Bessin, the province which had first received a Teutonic or Scandinavian colonization, subsequently nourished by fresh supplies. Ample immigrations had arrived from the North, such as Ragnald and his

927—942

Geographical distribution of the Christian and Heathen populations.

927-942 followers, Pagans fresh from Northumbria, these accessions of Danish population were reiterated throughout the reign of Guillaume Longue-épée; and, notwithstanding all checks and vicissitudes, the Baltic ports and the Norwegian fiords were in familiar relation with Normandy.

Romanized or even French chieftains encouraged this Danish party; Riulph, for example, who, either from Rollo or from Guillaume, obtained a County in the Breton border, Riulph also held possessions in the Evreçin, where Danish Christianity was the strongest. On the other hand, Bernard the Dane adhered to the French party; Bernard was, as his name imports, a native Northman: he loved his own people, he had not repudiated Scandinavia, his antient fatherland: nevertheless he was a sincere and affectionate supporter of the Romanized Guillaume Longue-épée, as he had been of Rollo before him, and entirely cordial to the ethos adopted by Guillaume. Such amalgamations and anomalies are found in all similar cases: the theoretic homogeneousness of national parties is never completely realized, nor are the best of men logically consistent in their politics or their faith, their affections, or sentiments. Sons do not take after their fathers: conscience, caprice, a purse of gold or a gold-stick, guide, lead, or tempt us in spite of every connexion or tie which religion, birth, blood, or kindred, may impose. We have seen an O'Neale

the Grandmaster of the dire Orange confederacy: 927—942  
 —the gentle and high-minded Geraldine perishing in defence of Shamrock and Harp.

Botho, the kind and wise director of Guillaume's youthful education, and Oslac, his chief counselor, appear as the representatives of a neutral party. All the prudence of the Statesman was required for the adjustment of these rivalities: no parliamentary leader compelled by hard fate to govern through an opposition could have a more anxious task than Guillaume. If zealous for religion, zeal might be abused, and degenerate into grasping persecution. And, if he sought to be moderate, the Duke's short-comings were equally liable to produce mischief,—a toleration grounded upon indifference, might allow the Church to sink deeper into degraded apathy. So also in Guillaume's social converse—favour to this or that set of kinsmen, or neglect of them—his predilection for his mother's family or a quarrel with his father's—a contention for the higher place at the Christmas festival—a squabble at a hunting party,—an involuntary frown or an inconvenient smile might disengage the conflicting elements, and generate a destructive civil war.

§ 5. Guillaume Longue-épée's external relations were replete with scabrous difficulties—the Patrician of Rouen claimed to be a vassal of France; and, under any contingency, the freshly implanted Norman Duchy would be involved in

923—927  
 Political  
 situation of  
 France.

927—942 the Kingdom's fortunes. The drooping and the  
 springing dynasties, Second race and Third, were,  
 923—927 at this juncture, equally in abeyance. Raoul, a  
 rootless trunk, was thrust in between them, but his  
 authority was limited and contested. Crowned at  
 Sens, Count in Burgundy and King in "France,"  
 or, as some were then wont to call the region,  
 "Belgic Gaul," the remaining provinces knew him  
 not. Powerful Aquitaine refused to acknowledge  
 Raoul: the Aquitanians wholly denied the validity  
 of the imprisoned King's deposition, and protested  
 against the intruder. In all their solemn instru-  
 ments of State,—Precept, Deed or Charter,—the  
 Princes of those regions recorded their dissent:  
 they reckoned the date from the year when the  
 unfaithful Franks had disgraced their King—  
*anno tertio quo Karolus rex per infidos Francos*  
*dehonestatus est*,—or they viewed the throne as  
 wholly vacant, nay, as never having received the  
 intruder. *Christo regnante, sed Rege expectante*,  
 was the impressive declaration of their feeling.  
 Thus they testified their inherent conviction that  
 the State would not subsist otherwise than as a  
 Kingdom.—"We will have a King over us, that  
 we also may be like all the nations," is the ac-  
 knowledgment ultimately enforced from human  
 society.—The Aquitanians rejected the spurious  
 monarch: they could not prognosticate who  
 would follow, yet they themselves would wait  
 patiently till the problem should be solved.

Raoul not  
 acknow-  
 ledged by  
 the Aquita-  
 nians: they  
 protest a-  
 gainst him  
 in their pub-  
 lic docu-  
 ments.

The recall of the banished dynasty was confidently contemplated by their partizans. We, <sup>927—942</sup>  
 who look back upon the past, can clearly discern, <sup>928—927</sup>  
 that, admitting the possibility of a temporary Carlovingian restoration, the ultimate accession of the Capets was inevitable. Raoul the Burgundian, though powerful by opulence, character and influence, was only maintained in his royal dignity by a mightier potentate, more distinguished as the supporter of the State than as its Sovereign, Hugh-le-Grand,—Hugh who might have ruled there had he chosen, who could rule whenever he would. It was therefore a truthful expression of his influence and position that he should be accredited throughout Britain as the *Rex Francorum*, the French King.

Hugh was childless when he received the offer <sup>926</sup>  
 of the Crown.—How far the absence of an heir <sup>Hugh-le-Grand, his vast influence. His marriage with Editha.</sup>  
 may have dictated his negative must be left to conjecture; but, if so, he soon afterwards determined to give himself the chance of a son. A splendid legation was dispatched to the Court of Athelstan, bearing with them such treasures as England never yet had seen;—the precious onyx vase embossed by Grecian art, exciting the marvel of the beholders, who declared that the corn seemed waving, the tendrils growing, the figures instinct with life:—brilliant gems, amongst which the emerald shone resplendent:—caskets filled with the richest spices,—and, rarer than any gem,



927—942

926

those antient historic relics, honoured and hallowed by tradition and faith—the sword of Constantine the Great, on which you read his name, the hilt containing a nail of the true Cross:—Charlemagne's spear, which, brandishing when he assailed the Saracens, he never returned from battle except as a victor:—the banner of Saint Maurice, chief and chieftain of the martyred Theban legion,—and, highest revered, the particle of the Crown of Thorns. Long after the Conquest, the Malmesbury monks, though they dared not assert, were willing to believe that the relic preserved their Abbey from calamities and misfortunes. The Chief ambassador, Adolph Count of Boulogne, and Lay-abbot or Impropriator of Saint-Bertin, besought, on behalf of Hugh, the hand of Eadhilda, Ogiva's sister. Gladly did the damsel and her royal brother yield their assent: the alliance greatly encreased the honour of King Robert's son and heir; but the second marriage disappointed Hugh's expectations, even like the first. The bed of this Anglo-Saxon Adeliza was barren—Eadhilda never gave Hugh a child.

Connexions between the leading heads of parties by reason of intermarriage.

As in all the former revolutions of France, the heads and *meneurs*, including the sovereigns, belonged to a constellation of families located in the northern regions of the Gauls, connected by consanguinity or marriage. Duke Guillaume Longue-épée reckoned himself with Vermandois. The King and the Duke of France, and the Count,

Raoul and Hugh-le-Grand and Herbert, were brothers-in-law, whilst Hugh-le-Grand, Eadhilda's husband, was also brother-in-law to Queen Ogiva, and uncle to Louis beyond the sea. As this history advances, we shall find such connexions multiply, so as to invest their members with the aspect of a chosen caste, to whom the powers of government appertained: alliances, however, of discord, not of harmony. It was always more than an even chance, whether any two brothers-in-law were not two enemies.

§ 6. Normandy was becoming highly influential in the politics of France: Rollo always stood true to King Charles, never acknowledging Raoul as his Senior; if Guillaume Longue-épée thought fit, he might instigate a Carlovingian restoration. A friendly intercourse subsisted between the opposite coasts of the Channel: the *Terra Normannorum* welcomed the emigrations from the Anglo-Saxon Danelagh, and Athelstan, the banished Prince's kind uncle, sought to be reckoned as Guillaume's ally. France, if she offended Guillaume, might suffer severely from his hostility. Let him but be provoked to make the venture; and he might at any time summon a sufficient Danish force to threaten, perhaps to expel, the Burgundian sovereign. But Guillaume on his part might profit through wary management. By adhering to Raoul, who much required his aid, he had the opportunity of further consoli-

927—942 } dating his own power. Herbert of Vermandois,  
 924—928 } improving all the contingencies of the times for  
 his own advantage, was preparing to obtain the  
 countenance of Guillaume. Herbert had a right  
 to seek his kinsman's friendship, but the Count  
 had a great deal upon his hands.

It is extremely difficult to trace this consummate intriguer through the doubles and dodges of his tortuous course; but we may observe that, as long as he lived, a primary object was the acquisition of Rheims. Herbert's dealings in this matter, which we must briefly notice as a key to his subsequent proceedings, also constitute an interesting paragraph in the history of the Western Church: we shall find the import of these Rheims transactions in our own English history.

Sovereigns  
 of Latin  
 Europe:  
 their de-  
 spotic em-  
 ployment  
 of preroga-  
 tive against  
 the liberty  
 of Episco-  
 pal elec-  
 tions.

The Sovereigns and Princes of the Gauls, Germany and Italy, Emperors and Kings, Counts or Dukes, discrepant as they might otherwise be in their views, were labouring with one consent to extinguish the freedom of episcopal election; the object sought being the conversion of all ecclesiastical dignities, from the Popedom downwards, into absolute donatives. In Germany, where the bishopricks were approximating to that station which they afterwards unhappily assumed in the Germanic Empire—Prince-Prelates, whose temporal panoplies almost stifled the spiritual authority—the exertions of the State were now most strenuous. Henry the Fowler, he

who had, upon his high appointment, rejected the consecration imparted by the Clergy—Henry, the unanointed and uncrowned king,—enforced his claims with stern prepotence. At Metz, entirely against the people's will, he intruded the anchorite Benno into the See. Metz, proud of her liberty, proud of her antiquity, deeply resented the injustice. The provoked citizens opposed the Sovereign's illegal act by a villanous crime. They conspired against the Prelate, mutilated him shamefully, and put out his eyes.

927—942  
 924—926.  
 Metz—re-  
 sistance of  
 the citizens  
 to the no-  
 mination of  
 Bishop  
 Benno by  
 Henry the  
 Fowler.

Benno was a faithful and holy man:—a better choice perhaps than the citizens would have made, had they been left to themselves;—but the selection of a proper individual did not diminish the inherent evils of the system. A competent prelate, owing his dignity to a prerogative nomination, was only a happy accident. In the ordinary course of affairs, the qualifications or disqualifications of the Bishop-designate were slurred over, or wholly disregarded, by the royal or princely patron. Direct and unmistakable simony was not unfrequent, money or money's worth: yet, from its very grossness, this most vulgar form was the least injurious to the Church, whose interests received far more damage when the preferments were dictated by the temptations which, tripping in, velvet-shod, do not startle the slumbering conscience,—policy, convenience, or family aggrandisement.

Simony and  
 other cor-  
 rupt mo-  
 tives actu-  
 ating the  
 patrons.

924—942

924—925

Mere  
children  
appointed  
to bishop-  
ricks.

Occasionally, the prerogative appointees were men of secular or disreputable lives,—bowling Bishops, sporting Bishops, drunken Bishops, campaigning Bishops; but even when they were of an average character, decent and tolerable, the preferments were vitiated in public opinion by the certainty that the proportion of good was a chance, and that the patronage was exercised solely for patronage sake; of which the most flagrant examples were such as that which Herbert of Vermandois now so anxiously sought to afford. In the cases belonging to this class—and they had become matters of common occurrence—the absurdity was even more revolting than the scandal. An ordinary man, decorously lukewarm, smatteringly-learned, moderately dull, or cleverly worldly, might be useful in the See, but to instal a little fellow, bigger than a baby, yet hardly grown up into a boy, was an outrageous mockery of the Christian community. The ceremony was equally sorrowful and ludicrous: the child, taught to repeat the responses, or to spell them if he could not get them by heart, usually behaved pitifully. Sometimes the terrified urchin would whimper, not in fear of losing the bishoprick,—a loss which he could nowise appreciate,—but lest, as a dunce, he should receive the accustomed chastisement for not knowing his lesson. The bystanders laughed—some cried shame. Such is the naïve description given by a contemporary,

who had too often witnessed and deplored these grievous spectacles, Hatto, Bishop of Vercelli. They were amongst the heavy abuses and tribulations of the Church which Hatto records: not to be mitigated until the age of reform,—the age of Hildebrand.

924—942

924—925

§ 7. According to the most plausible hypothesis concerning the obscure arrangement entered into with the view of securing Hugonet's promotion, Herbert proposed, according to the modern mode of transacting analogous kinds of business, to run Seulp's life against the life of the child. Seulp's age was not such as to promise a speedy vacancy: nevertheless his health was closely watched by those in the Vermandois interest, and equally so by their adversaries; Frodoardus, our faithful historical guide, from whom we derive great part of our story, and who had himself received good preferment from Seulp, being included in the latter party.

Seulp's years, months, and days, were carefully counted; and when Seulp, according to the reckoning of Frodoardus, had held his primatial see during three years and five days, he suddenly died. Poison had been poured into his cup: Frodoardus implies, in very intelligible terms, that Count Herbert's familiars had enjoyed access to the Archbishop's butlery. Count Herbert, though exercising a most powerful influence in and over Rheims, electors and non-electors, clergy,

Death of  
Archbishop  
Seulp—  
Count Her-  
bert pro-  
cures the  
election of  
his little  
son Hugh.

924—942 citizens, soldiery, was not yet absolutely master :  
 it was expedient that he should deal considerably  
 925—927 with the constituency, persuade, and manage them  
 gently and agreeably. He repaired to Rheims.—  
 Able advocates, Abbo, bishop of Soissons, and  
 Bovo, bishop of Châlons, Queen Frederuna's brother,  
 assisted Herbert in his canvass. Moreover,  
 he was energetically counselled and supported by  
 his brother-in-law, King Raoul.

Upon little Hugh's nomination, no opposition  
 was manifested, because such of the clergy as  
 were not of Herbert's colour dared not shew their  
 faces : Frodoardus—who was afterwards imprisoned  
 by Count Herbert—being one of the number. The  
 Vermandois candidate, five years old, was duly  
 elected, and placed under the care of Guido, Bishop  
 of Auxerre, who superintended his education, and  
 a Chorepiscopus was appointed to do the duty,  
 Odalricus, the Bishop of Acques, who had been  
 ejected from his see by the Saracens.

Custody of  
 the temporalities of  
 Rheims  
 granted to  
 Herbert,

King Raoul, the transactions thus far completed,  
 granted the custody of the temporalities to Count  
 Herbert during his son's minority. Wife and children,  
 dogs and horses were immediately housed and stabled  
 by Herbert in the Archevêché or Palace, close under  
 the wing of the Cathedral. Moreover, Herbert appropriated  
 to himself the fine Archiepiscopal domain of Couci,  
 which never afterwards reverted to the see, but became  
 the proudest Baronial seignory in the kingdom. These most

unseemly proceedings were the commencement of troubles which lasted during the joint lives of Hugh and of Artaldus, who speedily arose as Hugh's competitor. Count Herbert rode through the Church—so to speak—booted and spurred. The recusant clergy, our faithful witness Frodoardus included, sustained the deprivation of their benefices; and a violent quarrel having broken out among the Cathedral canons, military force was employed as a sedative;—a deacon and sub-deacon were killed in the cloister by Count Herbert's soldiery.

924—928  
927—928

Disputes  
and dissen-  
sions occa-  
sioned by  
these pro-  
ceedings.

§ 8. Mutual assistance in those times always implied mutual suspicion. Each man distrusted his neighbour, even as his neighbour distrusted him. Those who drank out of the same cup had to pledge each other that they would not use the dagger : your friend was always the man against whom you were bound to guard yourself—if a connexion or relation, most of all. Herbert had co-operated efficiently with Raoul, and Raoul had abundantly reciprocated. By Raoul's aid, "Hugo parvulus" (as Frodoardus calls him) had obtained the Archbishoprick, of which Herbert was now in possession; and Herbert repaid Raoul by keeping King Charles safely in Peronne dungeon. Yet notwithstanding this apparently cordial partnership, the brothers-in-law were incurably jealous of each other.—May we not reasonably suspect that their sister-wives helped to foment the

Jealousies  
arising be-  
tween Her-  
bert of Ver-  
mandois  
and King  
Raoul.



924—949

927—928

Herbert  
demands  
Laôn for  
his son  
Eudes.

dissension,—Hildebranda the Countess rivalling Emma the Queen?

In Burgundy, Raoul was a rich man, a powerful Prince, his domains wide and extensive; but, as King in France, he had no more than King Charles before him—no revenue,—no army,—no city save the *Clachduin*, the rock, palace, burgh and tower of Laôn. This only possession, Herbert now endeavoured to wrest from him. Herbert had five sons, Eudes (the hostage at Rouen),—Albert,—Robert,—a namesake Herbert,—and the boy Archbishop, Hugh. This youngest enjoyed an excellent provision, but Count Herbert was very anxious to gain a firm footing for the eldest, and he insisted that King Raoul should grant to the young man the County of the City. Urgently as Raoul had felt the need of conciliating his brother-in-law, he would not yield.—Upon this point he was impracticable—the concealed grudges exploded, Herbert revolted, and attempted to surprise the rock. Laôn's garrison repulsed him; and he adopted a course, which in any one but Herbert of Vermandois, would have seemed inconceivable. A greater humiliation than dethronement now befel the unhappy Charles: he, the descendant of Charlemagne, to be bandied about as a puppet between contending tricksters and parties.

If Charles had not been betrayed into captivity, Raoul could scarcely have maintained himself

upon the throne.—Were Charles brought forward again, might not Raoul be in the greatest danger of losing that royal authority—his delight and Emma's pride? Aquitaine denounced the Burgundian as an usurper: Lotharingia's loyalty was unsubdued: the Northmen, sturdy allies of Charles to the last, had shewn themselves Raoul's determined and desperate enemies. Herbert immediately calculated upon employing these hostile elements as the means of intimidation, and he forthwith commenced negotiations for the restoration of the legitimate king, treating with that very Pope John the Tenth, to whom the Normans owed their conversion.

The mysterious history of the Popedom abounds in awful and painful contrasts between the Supreme's Pontiff's sacerdotal efficacy, discretion, and wisdom, and the weaknesses or crimes by which the man was disgraced and condemned. Such a Pope was John the Tenth—so earnest and sound in his endeavours to implant Christianity amongst the Danes.—The handsome Clerkling (whom the Cenci claim as belonging to their family) originally earned his promotion by the influence of the lovely Theodora, the sister of Marozia, and emulating that sister in profligacy and beauty: yet, in St. Peter's chair, his conduct was blameless and edifying. From this Pope John, Herbert of Vermandois solicited spiritual support, calling upon him to excommunicate the

924—942

927—928

Herbert's  
machina-  
tions; he  
seeks to  
play King  
Charles off  
against  
King Ra-  
oul.

Herbert  
negotiates  
with Pope  
John X.

914—928

Promotion  
and ponti-  
ficate of  
John X.

924—942 rebels who deposed their sovereign. The Princes  
 and Prelates of Lotharingia and Germany were  
 927—928 invited to aid. Henry the Fowler himself, sympathising with a fellow-monarch, promised co-operation; but most important was it for Herbert to secure the assistance of the young Guillaume Longue-épée. Eudes of Vermandois, for whose sake Herbert his father had besieged Laôn, continued in Guillaume's power, still kept under arrest at Rouen, a pledge until the remaining instalments of the weary Danegeld due from France, should be fully discharged: unless Eudes was released, how could he receive investiture of his County? The preliminary measures accomplished, life was suddenly given to Herbert's schemes by the appearance, in bright day, of one who had been forgotten as a dead man in the grave. The captive Charles was brought forth from Peronne, and produced to the public as King at St. Quentin. Raoul hastily retreated to Burgundy: he must abandon Laôn. There was but one to whom he could confide his city, heroic Emma, whom he placed in command there.

King  
 Charles re-  
 leased from  
 prison, and  
 produced  
 as King by  
 Count Her-  
 bert—  
 Raoul re-  
 retreats to  
 Burgundy.

§ 9. The way was opening rapidly for the Restoration. Guillaume Longue-épée unhesitatingly adhered to the resuscitated monarch. The obligation contracted by his father Rollo had descended to him: it ran with the land. Through Rollo, he owed his dominion to Charles, and he prepared to afford hearty and uncoerced assist-

ance. Charles, carefully escorted by Herbert, <sup>924—942</sup> crossed the Norman frontier, and took up his <sup>927—928</sup> residence at Eu. Here a conference was held with the Duke and Patrician of Rouen. Guillaume <sup>927</sup> performed solemn homage to King Charles as his <sup>Guillaume Longue-épée per-</sup> lawful sovereign, placing his hands between King <sup>forms ho-</sup> Charles's hands, and becoming his liegeman, even <sup>mage to</sup> as Rollo had done at Clair-sur-Epte. Words and <sup>King</sup> actions—*la bouche et les mains*—testified that <sup>Charles at</sup> Guillaume had entered into the service of his <sup>Eu.</sup> father's liege lord earnestly and sincerely; and, concurrently with this submission to the legitimate King, he concluded an alliance with the Count of Vermandois. Guillaume confided implicitly in his uncle Bernard de Senlis, or Senlis-Vermandois; and possibly, Bernard's intervention brought the young nephew more readily into the confederacy.

Thus countenanced, thus supported, Her- <sup>King</sup> bert proceeded actively in the good cause. The <sup>Raoul re-</sup> country was everywhere disturbed, dangers threat- <sup>turns to</sup> ening from without. Rumours filled France— <sup>France.</sup> the Magyars are coming!—and the terrified inha- <sup>Hugh-le-</sup> bitants prepared to abandon the country, so as <sup>Grand me-</sup> to escape even the chance of encountering these <sup>diates.</sup> hideous enemies:—the Northmen alone seem never to have heeded them. The report was premature: the Magyars did not come this time, but the Saracens were near at hand, advancing through the Alpine passes, now so familiarly known to

924—942

}

927

the sons of the Desert. Raoul stationed himself in Burgundy, unquestionably for the purpose of defence: had the Mahometan forces once descended the Jura, France would have been lost. But Herbert's hostility compelled him to quit his position; and during the Christmas festival he marched northwards, towards and into the Vermandois, wasting and destroying as he proceeded. —King Charles must be considered as a nullity, and Hugh-le-Grand offered himself as a mediator, far more inclined to favour Herbert's pretensions than those of Raoul. The terms imposed upon Raoul pinched him very hard—he must surrender Laôn unconditionally. But Queen Emma stoutly refused to comply with the extortion: she would not give up the royal fortress; and Raoul, having vainly endeavoured to induce his wife to open the gates, returned to Burgundy. However, after an interval, the heroine was content to yield, and Herbert possessed himself of the much-coveted city.

Coolness  
between  
Guillaume  
and Her-  
bert.

§ 10. In the meanwhile, the friendship between the Norman Patrician and Herbert of Vermandois cooled: the cause of the disunion is uncertain; perhaps Guillaume Longue-épée, being at this juncture earnest for the restoration of King Charles, or supposing himself to be so, distrusted Herbert, and therefore withdrew from him. Hugh-le-Grand intervened, again quelled the dissension, and the dissidents pledged themselves

to peace; but, in order to ensure Herbert's support for King Charles, Count Guillaume stipulated that Herbert, as well as the other counts and bishops of his party, should commend themselves to the King and perform homage. Until Herbert complied with this condition, Guillaume continued to detain the son of Herbert, Eudes, the expectant Count of Laôn, at Rouen.

924—942  
927  
Guillaume supports Charles, and insists that Herbert should do homage.

Strange that any validity should be ascribed to forms and pledges and promises so utterly futile—which those who demanded them knew to be valueless: for there was no prophylactic against the Luegenfeld contagion. The inveterate practice of contracting illusory obligations had rendered men thoroughly insensible to the existence of truth.—How forcibly contrasting with the French character, as displayed when we behold the golden *fleur-de-lys* shining in the azure shield,—the period when the principles of Honour were evolved,—the most exalted of worldly sentiments, so nearly analogous to Christian duties as often to prove their most fatal bane.

Yet, after all, nothing has been gained. There is no extirpation of any human failing. Diseases may wear out: the leprosy of the body has disappeared from the catalogue of human afflictions, but there is no eradicating any leprosy of the soul. Our age juggles with moral responsibility by swamping individual conscience in the delinquencies of the aggregate community. My Lord

924—942  
 927—929

Coke was legally correct when he pronounced the famous dictum that corporations cannot be excommunicated, because they have no souls: but he forgot that souls compose the corporation. Faithlessness continues to be the esoteric doctrine of all nations; and the well-known member of Parliament who put on the Journals his notice of an address to the Crown,—that, in future, no treaties be concluded with foreign powers, inasmuch as they are never observed—conveyed a true lesson, though a useless one, by his somewhat ponderous drollery.

Henry the Fowler made the best of his opportunities: he crossed the Rhine, encamped upon the Meuse, and proceeded to establish himself in Lotharingia. Lands were liberally distributed, oaths and promises given and taken, and a settlement of affairs concluded between the King of Germany and the leading Lotharingians. No further use could be made by Herbert of the unhappy Charles. Whatever influence he expected to obtain through Papal authority soon vanished. Old battered Marozia, and her husband, Guido Marquis of Tuscany and then also Lord and master of Rome, determined to rid themselves of Pope John. Their soldiers surprized the unhappy Pontiff in the Lateran: cast him into prison, and smothered him under a pillow. Hugh-le-Grand and Herbert held a conference with King Henry, settled—for the time—their course of action, and

928  
 Reconciliation between Raoul and Herbert. Charles imprisoned again.

repaired to Raoul. The King and the great <sup>924—942</sup>  
 Vermandois were reconciled. Herbert had ac- <sup>928—929</sup>  
 complished his ends: Laôn, castle, rock, city,  
 and tower, were won. He commended himself  
 again to Raoul, and King Charles descended again  
 into his dungeon.

§ 11. Herbert marched with King Raoul to  
 Burgundy. Vienne was granted to the Count  
 of Vermandois—the bargain did not hold. But  
 a most astounding event next ensued, unaccom- <sup>Unac-</sup>  
 panied by any note of preparation. We meet <sup>countable</sup>  
 King Raoul at Rheims. Without any warning, <sup>reappear-</sup>  
 the prison-doors are opened, and we behold King <sup>ance of</sup>  
 Charles honoured as a king by Raoul, and rein- <sup>King</sup>  
 stated in the royal domain of Pontyon and the <sup>Charles at</sup>  
 palace of Attigny.—Another sudden change, and, <sup>liberty.</sup>  
 as by the wand of a magician, Charles is replaced  
 in the hard custody of Herbert of Vermandois.  
 These marvellous mutations imply a maze of in-  
 trigues, now wholly inexplicable; but they were  
 effected smoothly and silently. Amongst these  
 kings and princes all pacts and promises were  
 lies; and nothing so easy as lying.

Never was Charles seen again alive beyond  
 his prison-walls. He was lingering in his dungeon,  
 bound in fetters. About a year afterwards, his  
 corpse was carried out—he was buried at Pe-  
 ronne, "*Peronna Scottorum*," in the church dedi-  
 cated to famous Saint Fursæus, the anchorite of  
 Burgh Castle. Many believed that Herbert had



924—942

929—930

Oct. 7, 929.  
Death of  
King  
Charles at  
Peronne.

930  
The Danes  
beyond the  
Loire—de-  
feated by  
Raoul at  
Limoges.

caused the sinews of his legs to be divided : a horrible device occasionally adopted by those, who, unable to tread out the last glimmering spark of conscientious compunction, sought, without inflicting death, to render the sufferer impotent and helpless. This report however, was probably an exaggeration : the cruelty would have been needless, otherwise than as a vindictive retribution for the death of the blinded Bernard. Herbert had no need to employ violence : he might safely trust to grief, close confinement, heavy irons, stinted diet, and foul air. Herbert's Physicians, well read in Constantinus Africanus, discreetly pronounced that the complaint of which the prisoner died was a "*macronosia*,"—that is to say,—a decline produced by malignant humours and natural causes. Charles was very patient during all his sufferings : after his decease he was secretly honoured as a martyr ; and the imperial line of Charlemagne was now reduced to one individual, the child Louis beyond the sea.

§ 12. Guillaume Longue-épée avoided, for the present, any direct intervention in French affairs. But the Danish Northmen, acting independently, and possibly reinforced from Northumbria, were raging south of the Loire, punishing the country as in the darkest times of their invasions. Raoul issued a general summons. The King was obeyed by the French with extraordinary alacrity. It was indeed for their own in-

terest that they should exert themselves heartily in repelling the marauders from their own confines. Twelve legions were assembled : it is difficult to conjecture the number of troops implied by this expression, yet we may construe the awkwardly employed classical phraseology into the fact, that Raoul commanded a strong and well-marshalled army. He advanced to Limoges. A single battle ensued, which ended this Danish war : the Danes were defeated, and the greater part slain. Rarely indeed had the prowess of the Franks been rewarded by such a decisive victory. The splendid triumph gained at Limoges by Raoul over the Pagans, accomplished another conquest, but pacific. Raoul won the fealty of many amongst the Aquitanians : he had relieved them from their enemies, and their obedience testified their gratitude ; it was well to have such a helpful king. But Burgundy was troubled, and required his presence : the Saracens blocked the Alpine passes ; and Queen Emma, whom Raoul had stationed as his lieutenant, acting over-much as a virago, had provoked a family rebellion.

Gilbert, married to Hermengarda, Richard-le-Justicier's daughter, and therefore Raoul's brother-in-law, was Count, or, perhaps, Governor of great part of Burgundy, including the Dijonnais, under Raoul's supremacy. It seems as if it were impossible that any relatives in those times could live without a quarrel : quarrelling was meat

924—942

930—931

Queen  
Emma.  
Disturb-  
ances in  
Burgundy.

924—942 and drink to them. For some unknown, but per-  
 931—983 haps justifiable cause, Queen Emma mustered her  
 troops, and boldly expelled the husband of her  
 husband's sister from his favourite stronghold—  
 dark mountainous Avalon. Gilbert retaliated :  
 Raoul came to the help of his wife, checked Gil-  
 bert's progress, and the brothers-in-law thence-  
 forth really became and continued friends,—a  
 social phenomenon. Emma's unrecorded achieve-  
 ments and exertions were probably far more  
 numerous than those whereof the history is  
 preserved. Very meagre and obscure are the  
 memorials of Burgundy.

Feud be-  
 tween  
 Hugh-le-  
 Grand and  
 Herbert of  
 Vermandois.

§ 13. Raoul now hastened to France—  
 France in utter confusion. A bitter feud was  
 raging between the original confederates, Hugh-  
 le-Grand and Herbert of Vermandois, dating  
 from the year when King Charles died at Pe-  
 ronne, and possibly connected with that event.  
 Raoul had made great exertions to pacify them—  
 worked hard as a mediator;—but, after every  
 truce, the bickering, impatient rivals, resumed  
 their strife with renewed pertinacity. This feud  
 must be considered as a running accompaniment  
 of discord to all the incidents of Raoul's reign until  
 its conclusion. The dissensions between Hugh  
 and Herbert became perplexedly complicated  
 with the virulent contest carried on between  
 King Raoul and Count Herbert for the Arch-  
 bishoprick of Rheims. Raoul, who previously had

worked so strenuously with Herbert for the purpose of accomplishing little Hugh's promotion, now laboured just as strenuously, or more so, to undo his own work, and to place Artaldus, a monk of Saint Remi, in the See. Artaldus was a good man and wise, but tainted by the miserable politics of his time; a political deserter also, who, having abandoned Herbert, had become the retainer of Hugh-le-Grand.

924—942  
931—933

Raoul issued his precept to the clergy and citizens, commanding them to elect Artaldus, a command which they consistently refused to obey—Hugonet was their Archbishop—their election was made. Raoul, aided by Hugh-le-Grand, brought them to reason. After a siege of three weeks they opened their gates, and Artaldus was consecrated and enthroned: Raoul did not condescend to go through the form of an election. These hostilities between the King, the Duke, and the Count, intermixed with numerous incidental feuds,—of which I omit many and abridge all,—however petty they appear, are, in truth, of the highest importance. At this period, they constitute the history of France, and, in a set history of France, should be given with minuteness of detail: for they dispel the various brilliant theories which represent the contests between Charlemagne's descendants and the descendants of Robert-le-Fort as disclosing the deeply-rooted sentiments resulting from race or

Raoul abandons the party of Herbert. Artaldus appointed Archbishop of Rheims.

927—942  
 930—931  
 nationality. Except in the case of the Lotharingians, and amongst them, not purely, we discern no other motives save the private, mean, sordid, ambitious or angry passions of the contending parties.

Henry the  
 Fowler  
 interferes.

Henry the Fowler, a bystander, but not indifferent, was waiting to assail France. There was a lurking ambition in the German king, and in his son Otho after him, to acquire all Charlemagne's Empire westward of the Rhine. Was it not theirs—did not the German people retain the golden eagle, Charlemagne's Pfaltz and Charlemagne's tomb?—Reckless Herbert, reckoning upon this yearning, now abandoned Raoul wholly, and performed homage to King Henry, who crossed the great Rhine. Raoul, equally alert, and acting in conjunction with Hugh, invaded Herbert's territories, and cleverly overreached him for the nonce. If he could not separate Herbert from King Henry, he might separate King Henry from Herbert. Hugh-le-Grand negotiated, and King Henry was content to retreat beyond that great Rhine, leaving Herbert to settle his accounts with King Raoul.

930—931  
 The great  
 revolt of the  
 Bretons.

Perplexity  
 of the po-  
 litical state  
 of Armo-  
 rica.

§ 14. A heavy tide of troubles was rolling towards Normandy. Armorica wasted, harassed, and depopulated, was preparing for insurrection. The political state of that miserable country was extremely perplexed : an aggregate of Provinces, Territories, and Marchlands, diverse in their in-

terests, divided by their rivalries, and only occasionally united by their enmity against the Normans and the Northmen. Juhel-Berenger, who seems to have been thoroughly a Frenchman, had, as we have seen, been the strenuous supporter of Guillaume Longue-épée. Alain had concurred with Berenger in acknowledging Rollo's authority, but they construed this acknowledgment simply as an honourable relation, in which temporary dependence and alliance were blended. The four Counts, of Nantes, of Goello, of Léon, and of Cornouaille, had never performed homage to the Patrician. Many parts of Brittany were occupied by bands or garrisons of Northmen, who, though not inimical to Rollo or to Guillaume, did not depend upon the Senior of Rouen. But, far more formidable to the Bretons than any direct hostility, was the Danish or Norman colonization, insulting the Celts, and rendering them aliens in their own native land. Many of the Northmen, both Romanized and Pagan, had settled themselves in Cornouaille and the Nantois, domineering amongst the Bretons—an occupation exceedingly annoying. The Norman Count or Chieftain who commanded in Cornouaille is called "Felican," a name evidently given incorrectly, but so unsusceptible of emendation, that we cannot attempt to rectify it.

The law of nations, clear and consistent when expounded by grape-shot and shrapnell-shell,

927—942

930—931

Sept. 29.

931.

The evil  
Michael-  
mas-day.

927—942 }  
 981—982 }  
 congreve-rocket or colt-revolver, furnishes irrefragable arguments in support of any right claimed by power and prosperity, and an irrefutable vindication of any wrong inflicted upon weakness or misfortune. This code, so comprehensively elastic, declares that resistance against usurped authority becomes justifiable, when there is a reasonable prospect of succeeding:—the correctness or the erroneousness of the calculations made by the oppressed, decides whether their attempt shall be honoured as patriotism, or punished as rebellion. The Bretons attempted to cast off the grievous yoke. On the Feast of Saint Michael, and during the very hour that the mass was sung, they rose simultaneously against the Northmen, inflicting a general slaughter.

The insurrection spread throughout Armorica: Rollo was dead; the battle of Limoges had given courage to the Bretons—a proof was afforded that the Northmen were not invincible. Felican's forces were numerous and sturdy, but the Bretons,—excellent archers,—shot them down. Armorican traditions extol Juhel-Berenger as the champion of national liberty, the first who had raised the war-cry; but the Normans bestowed that honour upon Alain Barbe-torte, whom they vituperated as the chief rebel. The accusation may be very true; for Alain emulated the glory of his namesake and grandsire.

The  
 Bretons  
 summoned  
 by Guillaume  
 Longue-  
 épée to  
 their alliance.

Guillaume Longue-épée forthwith enjoined

the Breton Counts to present themselves at Rouen, renew their allegiance, and submit themselves to their Senior's mercy.—They girt their loins for the battle and faced the danger—Their reply is imperfectly known from the report preserved by the Norman historians, yet the main purport of the Armorican protestation may be also collected from the reminiscences of history.—A King they had, the King who sat on the throne of Charlemagne : the King of the French sufficed for them : they needed no Norman Duke, no Patrician of Rouen. Cornouaille had long since been granted by Charles-le-Chauve to Pasquитай and Solomon. The Senior had no power to transfer the vassal's allegiance without the vassal's consent. Admit that portions of Armorica had been ceded to Rollo by the Crown of France, to be held by him during his life, for the better support of his newly-created dignity ; yet, with Rollo's life, the bond expired. Friends the Breton chiefs would be to Guillaume, his peers and equals ; but to no land except the land of France would service be rendered by Armorica. This declaration scarcely agreed with their own personal acts, if those acts have been fairly represented. Alain and Berenger had been foremost in acknowledging Guillaume as Rollo's successor while Rollo still lived ; and they had repeated that voluntary acknowledgment, when, after his father's decease, Guillaume assumed his Ducal power.

927—942

981—982

They refuse, denying the validity of his claim.



927—942

981—982

Proceed-  
ings of  
Guillaume  
Longue-  
épée. He  
asks the  
opinion of  
his counts  
and coun-  
sellors;

Guillaume disclaimed the responsibility of pronouncing judgment in his own cause, and he therefore refrained from hostilities, until, as he professed, he could examine into the validity of the Breton pleadings. He convened his Court, his Counts and Counsellors, and claimed their opinion; but it does not appear that the defendants had any opportunity of reply.

Bernard  
and Botho,  
their "re-  
cord" of  
the Nor-  
man right.

Bernard the Dane, and Botho, Count of Bayeux, stood up equally as advisers and as witnesses. They had been present at the famous conferences on the island of the Epte, they rehearsed the discussions which had ensued, and the stipulations concluded between the parties:—in the terms of Anglo-Norman jurisprudence they "made record" of the compact. The undeniable successes obtained by the Northmen constituted the staple of their argument. Had not the Northmen oft and oft chastised the audacious disobedience of the mean Breton race? Had not Rollo subjugated the land the Bretons lived in? Had he not enforced the submission of the Bretons? Would not the Normans be disgraced, were they now to allow such insolence to prevail?—The statement thus made by Bernard and Botho was grateful to the hearers, and if, as may have been the case with old men, their recollection failed upon certain points which might have tended to support the Breton claims of exemption, there was no one present by whom the correction could be made.

Anyhow, the argument was irresistible:—*mic-* 927—942  
*kle will aye have more.*—Guillaume unfurled his }  
 standard and summoned his lieges. The North- 981—982  
 men, notwithstanding their recent disasters, were } Guillaume  
 still very powerful in Brittany. A commander, } invades  
 “Imicon,” of whom we have only confused notices, } Armorica.  
 wasted the country. Crossing the river Coesnon, } Subjuga-  
 Guillaume penetrated into the very centre of Ar- } tion of the  
 morica, burning and ravaging: the Bretons dis- } Bretons.  
 persed themselves before him, and Guillaume  
 returned triumphantly to Rouen. But the Brey-  
 zad spirit was not yet broken. Relieved from  
 the Duke’s immediate presence, they rallied,  
 repossessed themselves of Cornouaille, and in-  
 sulted Danish Bayeux.—Another bloody foray.—  
 Guillaume and the Normans again entered the  
 Celtic territory, which they devastated ferociously.  
 Famine and misery compelled the Bretons to  
 implore the victor’s mercy. Juhel-Berenger  
 purchased his pardon by renewing his homage,  
 and regained his Suzerain’s favour. Well settled  
 in his County of Rennes, Juhel-Berenger’s lineage,  
 subsisting during four generations, will become  
 very noticeable in our Norman history. Alain  
 Barbe-torte did not experience the like forbear-  
 ance; the embittered Guillaume would not hear  
 of pardon. Armorica could not protect Alain,  
 France denied safety. As a child, Alain’s father  
 had found a home for him in Britain beyond the  
 sea; and again he fled to that island of refuge,

Juhel-  
 Berenger  
 pardoned  
 on con-  
 dition of  
 performing  
 homage.  
 Alain  
 Barbe-torte  
 takes re-  
 fuge in  
 England.

927—942 sheltering himself beneath the shield of friendly  
 and glorious Athelstan.

931—932  
 Counties  
 of the  
 Avranchin  
 and Côtentiu.

Guillaume Longue-épée's successes determined the Duchy's South-western frontier. All the territory North East of the Coesnon, henceforward the boundary separating Brittany from Normandy, became the "Avranchin" and the "Côtentiu." Riulph, sagacious, eloquent and bold, but who soon appears so rebelliously conspicuous, acquired a County, subsequently denominated the "Bocage Normand," nigh the Vire.

The  
 Channel  
 Islands.

The Channel Islands, rich orchards of the sea, appendages of the Côtentiu, shared the political destiny of their mainland. No portion of the Ducal dominions became more thoroughly Normanized; and here the antient Norman jurisprudence flourishes at the present day. The judgment of forfeiture pronounced against John Lackland did not disturb their allegiance. Faithfully have the people adhered to England—or, as they are reported to say, England appertains to them, it was their Duke who conquered England. They may adduce grave authority for the indulgence of their pretensions.—My Lord Coke lays down as law, that the possession of these islands is good seizin for the rest of the Duchy. During all vicissitudes, and notwithstanding all mutations of religion and policy, it is in the right of the Norman Coronal—and displaying the Leopards of Normandy on her Ducal

seal,—that this remnant of Rollo's dominion is ruled by the Sovereign of the British Empire. 927—942

§ 15. Guillaume Longue-épée acquired great renown by these Armorican exploits, equally conducive to the interests of the Normans, and gratifying to their pride:—he flourished in glory and apparent prosperity. Nevertheless his chieftains began to be anxious concerning the future destiny of the State. How could Normandy exist as Normandy, should the race of Rollo fail? In the same manner as the French, even the most lawless, could not conceive a Commonwealth otherwise than under a King's supremacy, so did the Northmen connect the very existence of their Domination with the individuality of their Ruler. An opinion prevailed that the young Duke was inclining to adopt a life of celibacy, perhaps profess in some monastery. Should Guillaume Longue-épée die heirless, childless, would not the rising State be doomed to anarchy or extinction? His counsellors therefore urged him to marry—a hint is given that the pressure of solicitation may have proceeded from the French or Romanized party. Guillaume made his own choice,—perhaps had already made it—yet one satisfactory to his advisers—the fair Espriota, a gentle, wise, and affectionate damsel, distinguished by her amiability and beauty. 981—992  
Guillaume  
Longue-  
épée and  
Espriota.

The happy ambiguity of the term *nobilissima*, enables the family historian to avoid any confes-

927—942 } sion that Espriota was destitute of that ancestry  
 931—932 } which would surely have been extolled, had she  
 possessed the honours of distinguished lineage. Dudon, who addresses her son's son, either assumed that any particulars concerning Espriota were needless, or felt that it was more prudent to avoid them. We know nothing whatever concerning Espriota's station or origin, save that an expression employed by those who despised her, gives us some reason to conjecture (though without much confidence) that she was born in the Breton Marchlands—possibly the daughter of some Romanized Frankish soldier, yet certainly altogether French in manners; inasmuch as the French was the language which alone came natural to her children.

They are married according to the Danish or Pagan usages.

Guillaume Longue-épée having pleased himself in the selection of his consort, became a husband, following his father's example, and his own wilful way. He would not bring the bride to Church—why should he disgrace his mother's memory? had *her* union with Rollo received the benediction of the priest before the altar? Therefore Guillaume took the maiden to be his "Hustrue," *more Danico*, pursuant to the antient Gentile usages of the North. Guided by a deliberate and carefully considered determination, Guillaume refused to wed his true-love otherwise than in conformity to the ethnic Danish custom:—exhorted to espouse her as beseemed a Christian, the advice was peremptorily refused.

Icele ama moult e tint chere ;  
 Mais à la Danesche manere  
 La vould avoir, non autrement  
 Ce dist l'estorie, qui ne ment.

927—942

981—982

When the French vituperated Espriota's son, they called his parent a concubine—or even applied a more disgraceful appellation to her. This accusation belongs to the numerous class of judgments which are, in a measure, both true and untrue. The Teutonic nations in general, had been slack in comprehending the difference between the civil and the ecclesiastical marriage; and however strongly a marriage contracted according to the traditional secular or Gentile rites, might be reprobated by the Church, it was binding according to popular opinion. The English Church wisely incorporated the civil *sponsio* in her ordinal; and amidst prayer and benediction she yet preserves the substance of the original *wedding*, the alliterative verses echoed from primeval ages, softened and sanctified. In Normandy, both modes continued equally common, so that in the following century it was still needful, when speaking of a marriage, to state whether the matrimony had been concluded *more Danico* or *more Christiano*,—the mere notice of the fact did not raise any presumption for or against the Danishry or the Christianity of the ceremony.

In the tenth century, France and Germany

Pagan and  
 Christian  
 marriages.

927—949  
 931—939

had begun to exhibit more decency of morals than during the earlier periods; and such scandals as those occasioned by Charlemagne's licentious liberty were comparatively rare. Example therefore did not encourage Guillaume Longue-épée, and if he, well taught, well knowing his duty, adopted the before-mentioned course for the purpose of conciliating the Pagan or Danish party, the compliance was an unworthy concession.—If he acted with the intention that thereby he might reserve to himself the liberty of discarding his companion, when he might think fit to rid himself of her, he would deserve a far heavier censure. Anyhow, he could not conceal from himself, that, according to the principles he professed, he was doing wrong.

Raoul's  
 successes.

Successes  
 gained by  
 Raoul and  
 Hugh in  
 the Ver-  
 mandois  
 territory.

§ 16. Whilst Guillaume Longue-épée was consolidating his dominions by the reduction of Armorica, King Raoul was also gaining ground, strenuously supported by Hugh-le-Grand. They prosecuted the war against Herbert of Vermandois, pertinaciously and successfully: castle after castle, city after city, town after town, were wrested from their wily rival, though every position was obstinately disputed. After two months' siege, Saint Quentin surrendered. Saint Médard, the citadel of Soissons, though defended by a strong garrison, also surrendered; Hamme and Arras capitulated; Château Thierry was besieged by Raoul during six weeks: he was then called

off, but Queen Emma beleaguered the fortress, until Gualo the commander came out and laid the keys at the feet of the valiant lady.

927—942  
931—932

Hildebranda fully vied with her royal sister in martial prowess. Count Herbert had erected additional fortifications at Laôn, rendering the place very defensible. There, as his representative, he had left his Countess with her two daughters, Alicia or the Adela, and Luitgarda. Alicia had been betrothed to Arnoul of Flanders since she was a child; and ere long we shall meet both damsels crowned with bridal garlands, but now they had to sustain the duress of a siege. Raoul assembled a large army, eight thousand men. Having with this overwhelming force captured the city, he blockaded the citadel. Hildebranda held out nearly a quarter of a year, when she was compelled to offer a surrender, and Raoul allowed his sister-in-law to depart with the honours of war. Almost all these places were taken and again retaken. Each success or loss created further conflicts; mischiefs bounding and rebounding.

South of the Loire, Raoul's influence extended rapidly. The Princes of Aquitanian Gaul, hitherto shy or inimical, became friendly. The Count of Vermandois they detested: but though alienated from the King as an intruder, they did not entertain any personal antipathy against him. Vienne, which had resisted Raoul's authority, surrendered. Raymond Count of Toulouse, and

Submission  
of the Ac-  
quitanian  
Princes.



927—949 Hermengaud of Rhodéz, the Counts of Septimania,  
 who also ruled Albi and Cahors, came forward.

981—982 With them appeared Lopé Aznar, a Gascon Duke,  
 accompanied by his famous steed, a hundred years  
 old, as men believed, and sound in wind and limb  
 —the horse as celebrated throughout Gaul as his  
 master. These very powerful chieftains, meeting  
 King Raoul on the banks of the Loire, became  
 his vassals or liegemen, placing their hands in  
 his hands, heartily promising to aid him in carry-  
 ing on his war: they honoured Raoul because he  
 was vindicating the pretensions of his royal Crown.

Social and  
 and politi-  
 cal situa-  
 tion of  
 Guillaume  
 Longue-  
 épée in the  
 period im-  
 mediately  
 succeeding  
 to the con-  
 quest of  
 Armorica.

§ 17. We have reached the happiest era of  
 Guillaume's chequered reign.—Honours fresh—  
 an easy conscience as a sovereign—his Court joy-  
 ful and splendid, the loving husband of Espritia,  
 in her own mind an honest woman, though a  
 wife we can hardly dare to call her.—Guillaume  
 Longue-épée, like his father, employed himself in  
 improving the country; but Rollo's palaces suf-  
 ficed not for his son; and seeking his own plea-  
 sure, Guillaume constructed a palace nigh the sea-  
 shore, a situation which the mediæval princes of  
 Gaul rather avoided. But Guillaume dreaded not  
 his kindred Danes, and the Normans courted com-  
 merce with rich and amicable England.—Rollo  
 had been aided and distinguished by Athelstan's  
 friendship; and the Anglo-Saxon Basileus ex-  
 tended the same countenance and courtesy to  
 Rollo's son.

At this period Normandy's Northern coasts,

her channel-shores, possessed but a small proportion of those towns by which the Province was subsequently protected or adorned. Havre-de-Grace did not exist :—the banks on which Havre stands were, in Guillaume Longue-épée's time, a fathom below the neap-tide level of the Seine. That magnificent commercial mart is, comparatively, a creation of yesterday, dating—saving the presence of learned Cellarius, who identifies the locality with the *Corocotinum* of the *Itinerarium Antonini*—from the discovery of the New World.—In the chronological table of French trade and commerce, the date of Havre's foundation ranges even with the planting of the *drapeau blanc* on the shores of the Saint Lawrence.

On the banks of the Dieppe,—the *deep-water*, —nought could be found except the germ of the flourishing sea-port and town to which the name of the river has been transferred, and that germ might have escaped the glance of the well-mounted knight, or even been passed unnoticed by the weary pilgrim—the hovels of a few fishermen, dependent upon the Castle of Hasdans, afterwards the lofty bulwarked Arques.

Caen, as a city, had not been formed—Poetical imagination, or popular tradition, when Caen became the seat of the Ducal Court, ascribed *Ca-thom*, *Cadun*, *Chaem*, *Kame*, *Kane*, *Kan* (Caen bears a score of names in antient documents), to

927—942

931—932

Comparatively modern origin of the principal towns on the channel-coast of Normandy.

927—942 *Caius*, King Arthur's seneschal; but we can  
 981—992 scarcely affirm that there was such a bourgade,  
 till we reach the time of Guillaume Longue-  
 épée's grandson. And when Guillaume Longue-  
 épée began his reign, the desolate ruins in the  
 Campus Fiscanni,—the wide field watered by the  
 river Fécan,—alone indicated the site where Duke  
 Ansegisus had, in the Merovingian age, founded  
 the monastery which had been utterly desolated  
 by the Northmen's fury.

Fécamp: a  
 palace built  
 there by  
 Guillaume  
 Longue-  
 épée.

Vast surrounding woods extended southward  
 and westward to the winding Seine; and it was  
 probably whilst hunting in the country that the  
 amenity of the vicinity, and the convenience of  
 the haven, suggested to Guillaume the idea of  
 providing himself with a Palace there. Huge,  
 skilfully planned and lofty, a portion of the  
 edifice existed about an hundred years ago.  
 The precious fragment is now demolished, nor  
 has any representation been preserved; but the  
 name the structure bore, "the Tower of Babel,"  
 conveys some notion of its altitude and design.  
 But, that a chapel should be included in the  
 scheme of the splendid residence, was an idea  
 which never entered Guillaume's thoughts.  
 During the progress of the building, the work-  
 men, exploring the neighbourhood, discovered  
 certain ruins which offered hewn stone applicable  
 to the new constructions—the remains of Saint  
 Eulalia's dilapidated Basilica.

The dread of profanation restrained the labourers from such a use of the consecrated materials. When the circumstances became known to their noble employer, he lamented the abandonment of the antient fane : and, having expressed great contrition for the negligence which left his palace without an altar, Guillaume (casting all the blame upon the architect) directed that an oratory should be built on the hallowed ground. But the devotion which warmed him in the first instance, suddenly cooled : an endowment could not be spared ; and the expenditure, lavished on his own house, was withheld from the House of God. “ Let it be such as may remind me or my successors,” quoth Guillaume, “ to do something better.” Guillaume kept his word—he made the memorandum according to his promise, but he had promised nothing save the memorandum, and he gave nothing more. The scattered fragments and worthless rubbish were employed in raising a small mean chapel, over which his Ducal palace frowned. From this settlement originated the town of Fécamp, where the Abbey, testifying the piety of Guillaume’s son and grandson, who compensated for their ancestor’s neglect, became afterwards so conspicuous in the civil and ecclesiastical annals of the Duchy.

927—942  
931—932

Guillaume’s conduct with respect to the chapel he promised to build.

§ 18. Socially, morally and politically, Guillaume Longue-épée now connected himself more intimately with the Frenchmen and with France,

Guillaume Longue-épée connects himself more closely with the French party.

927—942 adopting the terms “Frenchmen” and “France”  
 according to their widest modern meaning. The  
 982—983 difference of languages and the severance of the  
 dynasties had estranged Germany :—Italy, always  
 least congenial, despised the Tramontanes, herself  
 despised by them :—the antient unity which once  
 pervaded the Carlovingian Empire was feebly  
 recognized :—yet all Carlovingian France was  
 animated by a consentaneousness of feeling, of  
 sentiment, and of nationality, in the aggregate,  
 however chequered in the detail. Counties and  
 Duchies and Populations, and Counts and Dukes  
 and People, quarrelled amongst themselves. Gibes  
 and taunts were exchanged : they waged mutual  
 wars, and wars against the Sovereign ; yet no  
 one absolutely repudiated the other as an alien.  
 Guillaume Longue-épée acknowledged this prin-  
 ciple of comprehension to the fullest extent : he  
 opened his dominions to all who sought him.  
 Gracious to his inferiors and cultivating the  
 acquaintance of his compeers—he was peculiarly  
 proud of his alliance with Hugh-le-Grand, though  
 he equally courted the friendship of Count Her-  
 bert, Hugh-le-Grand’s formidable rival. Was not  
 Count Herbert Guillaume’s kinsman ? Did not  
 Guillaume also belong to Herbert’s illustrious  
 lineage, noble, royal, imperial Vermandois ?

Favour  
 shewn by  
 Guillaume  
 to the Ro-  
 mane or  
 French  
 party.

Guillaume’s views, thus far, were prudent and  
 sagacious : what statesman could have judged  
 otherwise ? That the Northmen should assimilate

themselves to the French was essential for their prosperity. Moreover this mode of action was prompted by his taste; and here lurked the danger. Sorely are we seduced to imprudence, error, or iniquity, when any line of conduct, being in itself justifiable—nay, meritorious—is also conformable to our natural inclinations, agreeable to our imagination, attractive to our fancy, and above all, conducive to our own worldly interests. We are mastered by the united impulses, and hurried on to danger or destruction.

Guillaume Longue-épée's policy was wise, but he overdid it. He seemed bewitched by the French, gave so much encouragement to those of the Romane tongue, was so profusely bountiful to his mother's kinsmen and connexions, that the Danish party were provoked to exceeding jealousy.—French ascendancy would surely engender Danish subjugation: their Duke, becoming more and more uncongenial and alienated, would oust them from power and deprive them of their lands.—These apprehensions spread widely amongst all who set themselves against the French, all who were Danish Northmen, or were allied to them, all who, though not of Danish blood, were attracted to the Danish party. Such was Count Riulph, who suddenly appears as the leader of the anti-Gallican insurrection. Some scanty scattered particulars may be recovered concerning this Count of the Côtentin border, just sufficient to

927—942  
932—933

Discontent  
of the Da-  
nish party.  
Riulph,  
leader of  
the insur-  
rection.

927—942 enable us to guess his position in the Frankish  
 932—933 community. His son, "Anquetil-le-Preux," accompanied him in the fatal war. Riulph's nephew, who afterwards obtained direful celebrity, is variously named or described as "Balzo," "Bauces," "Fauces," "Balduinus," or "Balduinus Curtus," and is said to have been the son of a Count of Cambrai. Therefore Riulph was either the brother-in-law, or the brother of that Count: but Balzo, as we ascertain from the most incontestable evidence, a royal charter, was related in blood equally to the family of Charles-le-Simple and to Arnoul, Count of Flanders, in whose household he held the office of Chamberlain, so that Riulph, Balzo's father, must have been connected with both of them. The consequences resulting from the insurrection are so deeply important, that even these imperfect notices are very valuable, as tending to elucidate future portions of Norman history, as obscure as they are momentous.

Riulph's  
 insurrection.

Convening the discontented Captains and Nobles of the Danishry, Riulph expatiated upon their approaching peril.—What rescue could be found?—Unity of purpose and suddenness of action;—nothing else could save them from spoliation, nay, absolute servitude. Guillaume Longue-épée's maternal ancestry, his relationship with noble Vermandois, his intimacy with France, his Romane cultivation, manners and fluent

speech, the results of Rollo's care, the reasons <sup>927-942</sup> which had operated so forcibly in his favour <sup>932-933</sup> when he was called to the succession, now afforded the arguments for his rejection. All his advantages told against him. Guillaume ruled as a Frenchman: and therefore the insurgents declared that his authority must, in the first instance, be maimed by compelling him to cede the whole *Terra Normannorum* westward of the river Risle. If he agreed, military service would be rendered to him,—if he refused—war. This was the tenor of the threatening message conveyed to him. The conditions propounded would have created an independent Norman State, probably under Count Riulph. The territory required by the insurgents constituted two-thirds (or more) of Guillaume's dominions. Had the Confederates effected this dismemberment, they would soon have obtained the remainder: indeed, it was the expectation of attaining this result which prompted their demand.

Guillaume Longue-épée was unable to meet this exigency. Like his bold father before the walls of Chartres, he was suddenly stricken by panic fear. Palsied by terror, his powers of judgment seemed wholly lost—his faculties sustained a thorough collapse; he acted as if resistance were impossible. The Insurgents were yet distant, beyond the Seine. His Capital was skilfully fortified, walls and towers tall and strong. His

Guillaume's  
terror.



927—942 three most influential chieftains, Oslac, courteous  
 Botho Count of Bayeux, and Bernard the grey-  
 932—933 bearded Dane, continued faithful; good men and  
 true were they, trusty, affectionate and sage.  
 Moreover, a chosen body of soldiery, three hun-  
 dred of the élite, held to him loyally; thus sup-  
 ported, he might surely have defied the enemy.—  
 But he persisted in his bewilderment; no pre-  
 cautions were adopted to obstruct or impede the  
 advance of the Insurgents, no outposts stationed,  
 no council held, no means of defence employed.  
 Upon one object only could Guillaume collect his  
 thoughts. Espriota great with child—Espriota's  
 safety.—The burthened consort was sent by her  
 anxious and affectionate husband to the newly-  
 erected Palace of Fécamp, so that she might  
 speedily cross over to England, and dwell there  
 with the royal exiles, the young Louis and Ogiva,  
 sheltered by magnanimous Athelstane's friendship  
 and hospitality.—His own Norman sovereignty  
 Guillaume deemed to be lost.

Offers  
 made by  
 Guillaume  
 to the in-  
 surgents.

§ 19. Guillaume Longue-épée retreated into Rouen with his adherents, and, offering terms, vainly attempted to effect a pacification.—Territory he could not consent to surrender; but his treasure and stores, his armoury's contents, should all be theirs; baldricks and bracelets, helms and hauberks, battle-axes and swords, decked and adorned with gems and gold. His opponents should enjoy his highest confidence and exclusive

favour. Whatever they, his perpetual Councillors, <sup>927—942</sup> enjoined, he would obey: raise up or cast down <sup>932—933</sup> according to their desire: their advice should govern the country; and his authority be in all respects subordinate to theirs—Normandy would become a Commonwealth, in which the Duke might enjoy an honorary precedence, but their power would be pre-excellent above his own.

Again, Guillaume Longue-épée, if sincere—and could he be sincere?—did overmuch. Instead of inspiring gratitude, the extravagant liberality of this constitutional charter excited vehement suspicion. The Insurgents could not believe him—a French device to cheat us, said they.—He wishes to gain time, and then he will come down upon us with all the power of his French friends and French allies.—No impediment was offered. Onwards the revolted marched, the people joining them. They crossed the broad and flowing Seine; and, directing their route along the Northern bank, stationed themselves opposite Rollo's castle, Guillaume's palace, the citadel of Rouen. <sup>The insurgents march to Rouen, and station themselves before the City.</sup> The position they occupied was then an open mead, now covered with avenues, buildings and gardens.

The actual presence of the Insurgents increased Guillaume's dismay. Another despairing attempt was made by the trembling Sovereign—they should have all they asked—all the country as far as the Rîle, and more—all the territory

927—942 between the Risle and the Seine to be theirs also.

Nothing would remain to him except the rem-

932—933 nant between Seine and Epte,—that is to say—

the Pays de Caux, portions of the Vexin and the Rouennois, and his city of Rouen.—The suspi-

cions, the distrust, and also the boldness of the Insurgents, encreased in proportion to the widen-

Further concessions proposed by Guillaume, which are also refused.

ing extent of Guillaume's concessions. If not despised as an artifice, his proposition must be construed as amounting to a virtual abdication.

The land he offers to give us, said they, is not his to give—we have got it,—he is a stranger to us, our natural enemy, he shall no longer rule over us in anywise,—let him, if he thinks fit, take refuge amongst his French kinsmen and French friends, the sooner the better: we will have none of him.—Guillaume Longue-épée might be permitted to evacuate the city. Thus far they would respect the son of Rollo. But if he rejected the offer, no further amnesty would be granted to him—the City stormed, and he and all his adherents put to the sword.

Guillaume proposes to abandon Normandy.

Distracted Guillaume assembled his Chieftains and soldiery, and sallied forth from Rouen, marshalling his troops upon a rising ground, the *Mont Riboudet*, whence he could observe the enemy's forces. His sight confused by terror, the insurgent Host appeared to him overwhelming: he would make any sacrifice by which he might purchase a respite from the impending danger.

Addressing Bernard the Dane, he declared his determination of abandoning Normandy, and taking refuge with his good uncle Bernard de Senlis, now, thanks to Count Herbert, Lord of Coucy—he would dwell under his uncle's protection until, through that powerful kinsman's help and advice, he could obtain the assistance of the French armies, and exterminate the rebels.

§ 20. To Bernard the Dane, though so faithful and affectionate, this craven cowardice was intolerable. The proud and antient warrior spurned the allegiance he had rendered to the degenerate son of Rollo: he bitterly upbraided Guillaume—his intention was equally disgraceful and perilous—if Guillaume the refugee, and any who adhered to him, entered France, they would assuredly be cut off by the inimical people, still smarting from the Danish ravages; mourning over the extorted Dane-geld.

927—942  
932—933  
Bernard  
the Dane's  
indigna-  
tion.

As far as the Epte, he, Bernard, and the soldiery would escort Guillaume, and then, destitute of Leader and Chieftain, embark in a body for Denmark their distant fatherland, and abandon Normandy for ever. These stinging reproaches aroused Guillaume Longue-épée as from a trance. His courage rose as suddenly as it had sunk—he himself would at once lead his forces on to battle, —literally lead them, foremost in the charge, the bearer of the Standard. His three hundred good men, trusty and true, came forward, swore they

927—942 would live or die with their Duke, and, according  
 to the most antient Teutonic usage, the con-  
 932—933 current clashes of battle-axes and swords, the  
*barditus*, the *wappentak*, testified their solemn  
 determination.

Defeat of  
 the insur-  
 gents. The  
 "Pré de la  
 bataille."

The insurgents were completely routed. We lose sight of Riulph in the woods, whither he fled, and, in the first instance, escaped the pursuit of the infuriated soldiery; but he afterwards fell into Guillaume's hands, and perished miserably. It is most probable that Riulph, blinded by Guillaume's orders, died under the horrible operation; for his death excited among his kinsmen an implacable hatred of the instigator of the deed.—One, at least, never rested till Riulph's blood was avenged. His son Anquetil the brave was reported to have been slain, not fairly, but by device or fraud? Brave Guillaume had been unmanned by fear,—fear instigated the gracious-mannered Guillaume to cruelty: and Dudo, the family eulogist, rejoices in recording the punishment and destruction of the enemy.

Long afterwards was the triumph celebrated by Norman minstrelsy.

Li pré de la bataille, fu li lieux apelé  
 Encor dure li nom, ne fu puiz remuez.

The Poet of the Plantagenets lays much emphasis upon the continuance of the traditional name until his own time, but he did not anticipate the long endurance which would be possessed by the

appellation commemorating a conflict, a memorial 927—942  
 equally of Guillaume Longue-épée's faint-hearted-  
 ness and valour. The *Pré de la Bataille* existed 982—983  
 as a green field within recollection. The natural  
 features of the site have been partially obliterated  
 by the structures which encircle the antient Nor-  
 man capital. Yet the locality, though more than  
 nine centuries have elapsed, is still recognizable,  
 and the antient designation well-known; and this  
 is one of the examples of an unbroken tra-  
 dition confirming an almost legendary event in  
 history.

Joy upon joy: very shortly afterwards, a  
 knight galloping through the Porte Cauchoise  
 rode into the Castle of Rouen,—Fulcard, the jolly  
 messenger from Fécamp. On the very day when 933  
 the battle was fought and won, Espriota had been Birth of  
 safely delivered of a male child, a noble babe, Richard  
 an heir and successor. Guillaume Longue-épée "Sans-  
 peur."  
 was filled with delight, and he immediately des-  
 patched the faithful Botho to take charge of the  
 Ducal household at Fécamp. Henry, Bishop of  
 Bayeux, accompanied the Count of Bayeux; and  
 the child, Botho being sponsor, was baptized  
 "Richard;" a name unsuggested by any known  
 family or social connexion, and to which tradition  
 afterwards added the epithet, "*Sans-peur*."

§ 21. The suppression of this desperate re-  
 bellion decided—for the present—the great ques-  
 tion whether Normandy should exist as Normandy,  
 or become extinct as a State. No Danish conquest  
 Consequences re-  
 sulting  
 from the  
 suppression  
 of the re-  
 bellion.

927—942 in the Gauls had acquired stability so long as the  
 { Northmen preserved their national identity; and  
 982—988 the *terra Normannorum*, its occupants being  
 unable to maintain their ground, as a people,  
 would have merged in Hugh-le-Grand's Duchy.  
 The son of Duke Robert maintained a dormant,  
 but unrenounced claim, to the territory usurped  
 by Rollo-Robert; and, that the Norman State  
 should be organized as a member of Carolingian  
 France, was the condition of her vitality—the  
 Normans must live as Frenchmen or disappear.  
 Guillaume, fully feeling this necessity, now de-  
 termined to remove, as far as was practicable,  
 the ambiguity of his political position. Do all  
 he would, the French had not really acknowledged  
 him as a Frenchman. In their hearts, they did  
 not own him, however fluently he spake the  
 language of France, however gay his garb, however  
 splendid his array, or whatever may have been  
 the civility he displayed. They grudged at the  
 son of Rollo, they were accustomed to call him  
 the *Dux piratarum*—an expression much more  
 than contemptuous, inasmuch as the idea which  
 the denomination conveyed, absolutely excluded  
 the marked man from the social community.  
 Every Christian was entitled to retaliate upon  
 the cut-throat Pirate.

Guillaume Longue-épée had, however, become  
 the homager of King Charles, the dethroned  
 King, the deceased King. Death had dissolved  
 the bond; and Guillaume holding himself free,

had stood aloof from any further recognition of the French Crown; but Raoul would be glad enough to have him. He therefore spontaneously imitated the example then so recently afforded by the Princes of Aquitaine, thus again connecting his dominion with the venerated monarchy. Uncoerced, unsolicited, unassailed, Guillaume repaired to King Raoul, placed his hands between the King's hands, and became his liegeman.

927—942

982—989

Raoul not merely accepted the homage, but extended the advantages resulting from the compact. Guillaume had subdued the Armoricans, yet it might be doubted whether his dominion was legalized until the acquisition was confirmed by the successor of Charlemagne, the protection of whose name had been so confidently invoked by the vanquished? The question was now set at rest. Raoul granted to the Duke of Normandy those provinces of "Maritime Brittany" which his prowess had conquered,—provinces never afterwards severed from the Duchy, or entitled to deny that the Duke of Normandy was their immediate Suzerain. This transaction was very advantageous to both parties. Raoul, acknowledged as Seigneur by the "Patrician of Rouen," was more truly King of France than he had been during any antecedent period of his reign; and, although Guillaume Longue-épée cannot in strictness be styled the premier Peer of France, yet he possessed an equivalent rank in station, honour, and power.

Guillaume Longue-épée becomes the Liegeman of Raoul, and receives investiture.



927—942

933—934

The Danish party being apparently broken up, the affection entertained by Guillaume Longue-épée to the French glowed even more ardently than before. He encouraged the French in every way, cultivating every opportunity of drawing closer to the French princes and nobles, identifying himself with their interests and feelings. They equally courted his advances, anxious to avert his enmity and profit by his munificence.

§ 22. Thick woods and forests surrounded Rouen. When the Giant Rothomagus and his companions,—or who ever may have been the archaic founders of Rouen,—selected their site, they were unquestionably mindful of the protection these ambushments afforded. To Rollo and his descendants they became constant scenes of recreation, habitual hunting-grounds.—The fabled Roumare Forest extended almost to the City-walls.—Beyond the Seine, yet so near as to be reckoned the palace-park, was shady Chevilly, where the Conqueror received intelligence of his cousin's demise, and heard how perjured Harold had occupied the English throne.

The "Foresta de Leonibus." Character of the locality.

Most memorable, however, amongst these wilds was the awe-inspiring *Foresta de Leonibus*, the *Nemus de Leonibus*, the *Sylva Leonum*. The Roumois and the Vexin were overspread by this forest, expanding from Rouen's vicinity to the Epte, the furthest border of the Norman territory.

As a natural fortification, the importance be-

longing to the *Foresta de Leonibus* became very <sup>927—942</sup>  
 apparent after the establishment of the Duchy. <sup>933—934</sup>  
 Rollo's descendants speedily learned to appreciate the keen foresight of the municipal patriarchs. If hostilities were threatened from France or Flanders, the dense forest curving around the Capital, and traversable only by a narrow road, greatly aided the Normans in resisting the advance of an invading enemy.

The European forests, during this period, still retained many primæval features. The last individuals of various animal species, which have since become extinct in our geographical climates, lingered in their original haunts. The bear, for example, was not uncommon in Normandy. Even in the tenth century, the "*Foresta de Leonibus*" was considered unusually formidable. It was not doubted but that strange and monstrous creatures, whose ferocity might be dreaded even by the armed warrior, lurked in the umbrageous coverts: whilst innumerable beasts of chase, the deer and the boar, constituted the huntsman's marvel and delight.

A small and tranquil marshy-margined lake, darkly gleaming at the bottom of a solitary valley, marked the natural centre of the forest; and, about a mile's distance from that melancholy, silent lake,—the *Morte-mer* as it was called,—  
 the Romans had whilome founded an important station. <sup>The Roman station in the Forest.</sup> Truncated shafts and mutilated capitals,

927—942  
 933—934

basso-relievos, tessellated pavements, and sculptured walls, the testimonies of departed splendour, have been abundantly disclosed through modern excavations. Medals exhibiting the impress of Nerva and of Trajan indicate, in some measure, the period when temples and villas, baths and hypocausts, were cheered by a flourishing inhabitancy. But none of the antient itineraries or geographers make mention of this *Castrum* or *Municipium*,—no inscription bears record of the name. This settlement seems to have been abandoned under the later Cæsars, though some French antiquaries suppose that the complete subversion did not ensue until the Barbarian invasions,—anyhow the whole locality had relapsed into desolate solitude.

The further history of the *Foresta Leonum*, were the theme diligently and intelligently elaborated, would furnish a monograph equally interesting and important, by exemplifying the agencies and proceedings which reclaimed the Norman wastes, and conducted the Province to its present state of agricultural prosperity. The aptness of the site, judiciously selected by the Romans, perhaps some remarkable ruins, may have attracted the notice of Rollo when he ran the deer. His son, so ardent in the chase, certainly affected the locality. Here had Guillaume timbered and thatched a rustic habitation; a forest-lodge where the Hunt might merrily

Origin of  
 the bour-  
 gade of  
 "Lions la  
 Forêt."

assemble. At a later period, and by degrees, <sup>927—942</sup>  
 foresters and their families settled round the <sup>933—934</sup>  
 seat of Ducal disport, and a small bourgade was  
 founded, which, adopting the old English phrase,  
 may be designated as the “forest-chamber,”  
 where the forest-courts were held.

The monks of Saint-Denis, who had obtained some grants of land in the vicinity, then provided a Church, which they dedicated to their patron Saint.—Subsequently, the Ducal lodge was replaced by a very stately castle: each of the four gates entrusted to a baronial Warder. Versailles arose nearly in the same manner. All the Norman dukes were fond of this pleasant residence, emphatically called Lions-la-forêt; and here Henry Beauclerc died.

Further utilizations ensued. Within the forest circuit and purlieus were many rough but fertile glades and heathlands, fringed with bush and straggling trees. These were depastured by the cattle of the terre-tenants, or mown for hay: and the exploitations continued. Three hermits seeking hardship, toil and seclusion, Tascio, Guiard, and the noble Guillaume de Fresquiennes, built their huts near the Morte-mer, and tilled and cropped the ground. Through this colonization originated the famous monastery of Mortemer. <sup>Origin of the Abbey of Morte-mer. (1130).</sup> Strenuously did the diligent monks of the new establishment apply themselves to the reclamation of the desert. Woods were essarted, granges

927—942

933—934

built, and a fresh impulse given to the clearances, which have proceeded so steadily during seven centuries, that, although the “forest of Lions” still exists, the character of the antient sylvan region is quite obliterated, and the continuity of the forest destroyed. Portions have acquired distinct and individual names—the forests of Brai, Andelys, Gournay, Vernon, Longbœl, and others, are all dismemberments of the Forest of Lions: and near or far in the variegated landscape the traveller now only observes woods and copses, interspersed amongst the flourishing farms.

The Meet  
in the  
forest-  
lodge.

But we must now return to Guillaume’s leafy lodge, as we shall find it decked for a noble gathering,—the hard-stamped earth strewn with the sweet-smelling rush,—silken tapestries dependant from the roof-beams and living flowers adorning the embowered recesses, the long-bladed iris, the yellow glayeul from the marshy lake, contending with the flora of the loom.—Congenial was this gallant theme to the fathers of Norman minstrelsy: many a floating tradition, melodious ballad, and family story, was embodied in their verse, elucidating the text of the solemn historian:

En la grande forest de Lions  
Od ses Princes, od ses Barons,  
Voult aller chacer au ruit.

\* \* \* \*

Hommes sous ciel, ne rien qui vive,  
Ne vit forest plus plaintive,  
Qu’ele est de cerfs et de senglers.

Besides his own Chieftains and Lieges, three were the Princes of France specially invited to the Meet by Guillaume Longue-épée, and welcomed in the Forest-chamber.—Hugh-le-Grand, whom the Northmen honoured as Duke and Prince of France, asserted an unchallenged precedence. Many reasons had the Normans to yield Hugh great respect, and some to fear him.—Hugh was accompanied by Herbert of Vermandois, so cordially claimed by Guillaume as his kinsman. Hugh and Herbert burnt with inward rivalry, but the competitors were now transiently inclined to mutual forbearance,—a pause for plans and schemes whereby each might contrive to further his own power.

Herbert was joyous. Hermengarda, resting from martial exploits, had returned with her daughters, Alicia and Liutgarda, to Rheims, and the lingering engagement between the eldest and the Flemish Arnoul was concluded by their marriage. Alicia had been betrothed when she was but a little child: during the protracted wooing she had grown up to blooming girlhood, whilst the astute Arnoul had attained a full sober age, nearer sixty than fifty. Moreover, Count Arnoul was gouty, but in other respects he was sound and vigorous. His life and reign received such unusual prolongation, that he is specially distinguished in the Flemish fasti as *Arnoul-le-vieux*—and, to the end of his days, old Arnoul exhibited

927—942

983—1034

Marriage  
of Arnoul  
Count of  
Flanders  
and Alicia  
of Vermandois.

927—942 and retained remarkable clearness of judgment,  
cleverness, and talent.

933—934

§ 23. State policy had unquestionably dictated and perfected the incongruous, though not unhappy, union between Arnoul and the Vernois Atheliza. Such political alliances are of no great practical use in securing concord, but they gave and give plausible reasons for co-operation or interference: territorial accessions were also occasionally gained by them. Moreover, amongst the “great Feudatories” a feeling, analogous to that which now subsists amongst royal families, was receiving a marked development. A match implies equality. The Counts and Dukes and Nobles of the Gauls would acknowledge no equals except among themselves: nobility began to be more sensitive to mesalliance: and the acquisition of a distinguished bride, was the object sought by the third of this noble party.

Guillaume  
Tête-d’  
étoupe,  
Count of  
Poitiers  
and Duke  
of Aquit-  
taine.

This aspirant was the young Count Palatine, son of Ebles the Mamzer, and the English Atheliza, Guillaume Tête-d’étoupe, who, upon his father’s decease, had recently succeeded to Poitou. His profusion of flaxen locks suggested the homely epithet which has become his dynastic appellation. These queer and quaint designations were, in a manner, the result of necessity: the prevailing practice of distinguishing homonymous sovereigns by ordinal numbers, is of comparatively late introduction; first employed with re-

spect to the Roman Pontiffs by those who wrote or spoke of them, but never, even at the present day, by the Popes themselves. The odd old usage recommends itself as a help to the imagination : cyphers are unsuggestive ; few numerals have had the good fortune to be amalgamated with individuality, as in the examples of Charles-Quint and Louis-Quatorze.

927—942  
 933—934

Merrily the Meisnée enjoyed the Chase ; and each day, after their pleasurable fatigue, did our Duke Guillaume entertain his guests with royal splendour.—A fitting opportunity was soon found by the Count of Poitou to open his mind.—Loth to entrust any messenger with such a secret, Guillaume Tête-d'étoupe had, as he declared, visited Duke Guillaume with a humble hope of obtaining the hand of Guillaume's sister,—discreet and pious Gerloc,—Rollo's daughter. But, indeed, could he do otherwise than proffer his request in person to so great a Prince as Guillaume, exalted above all the sovereigns in the world ?

The Count  
 of Poitiers  
 solicits the  
 hand of  
 Gerloc,  
 Rollo's  
 daughter.

The cap-in-hand lowliness of the lover may have provoked Duke Guillaume's humour ; but pride had nestled in Guillaume's heart. Courteous Longue-épée was thrown off his guard by the delirium of prosperity, and he answered in words breathing insolence and scorn. The flight of the skulker Ebles before the Northmen had become a popular jest. Guillaume mocked the Poitevins—cowards and faint-hearted even from father to son, fickle and untrue : upon none such



927—942 } could his noble sister be bestowed. Tête-d'étoupe  
 983—984 } would take no offence. Perhaps the lover's anxiety  
 restrained the indignation of the young warrior. His countenance reddened (as the Romaunt tells us); but he said nothing. His tranquillity subdued the scoffing Norman: Longue-épée sobered into his usual decency of manners, and soliciting a brief and decorous delay until the morrow, for consultation with his lieges,—he then explained his conduct, and solicited pardon.—It was a silly joke, he said, yet such as might be excused amongst good friends, and nothing more.

If there was much levity in Guillaume's reply, there was far more arrogance, and above all, a great deficiency in common sense. Was not his own father liable to the imputation cast upon the Poitevin? Ought not any allusion to the name of Chartres have made him blush also? Had not the panic which turned back Rollo and the Northmen from the *Pré des Réculés* disgraced the Jarl's memory, as much as the Count's concealment in the workshop of the fuller? And when had young Guillaume Tête-d'étoupe exhibited such a collapse of courage as Guillaume Longue-épée himself, on the yesterday (so to speak), quailing before Riulph and the insurgent bands?—Tête-d'étoupe's gentle discretion, however, led all parties right. After a consultation with Hugh-le-Grand and Herbert of Vermandois, the assent was granted. Gerloc, well worth the pains of seeking, was espoused to Guillaume the son of Ebles.

Splendid were the nuptial gifts bestowed upon her,—the release of the Danegeld imposed upon Poitou was an additional and more grateful guerdon.

The bride was escorted with great pomp to Poitiers; and as she pursued her lengthened journey, the accompanying trains of sumpter-horses laden with bales of silken stuffs and wardrobe gear, announced the Norman Duke's munificence to all beholders. Gerloc proved a worthy and good woman, pious and beneficent, leading a life so tranquil, that very few things are recollected concerning her except the best, her works and her piety. Gerloc, after her marriage, received the appellation of Adela, vaguely employed as an epithet or a title, and which still designated the dignity of a royal Princess, though passing into a proper name. Adela is the name by which, to the exclusion of her original barbaric name, Gerloc is styled in all her husband's charters. Tête-d'étaupe probably wished to extinguish the recollection of her heathen ancestry. Thus originated the first connexion between the illustrious houses of Normandy and of Poitou. Tête-d'étaupe's son by Adela was Guillaume Fierabras, Count of Poitiers and Duke of Aquitaine, in whose direct male lineage the Duchy continued, till it fell to the spindle-side, when his remote descendant, the wanton Eleanor, brought the great inheritance to Henry Plantagenet.

927—942

933—934

The Count of Poitou married to Gerloc, who takes the name of Adela.

Eleanor of Poitou, a descendant of this marriage.

927—942

833—834

Guillaume  
Longue-  
épée's  
popularity.

§ 24. "So long as thou doest good unto thyself, men will speak well of thee." How ample might be the exposition of this text,—the World's invitation to go and do likewise,—*tenthly*,—could not exhaust it. We would fain pelt the Preacher whose hollow cheeks and thready voice testify his practice of the Lenten self-denial he inculcates: whilst we parade with humble thanksgiving the smallest crumbings of edification dispensed by the sleek Divine whose dignified table displays three courses and champagne.

Guillaume Longue-épée fully reaped the benefit inseparable from such conformity. With a smack of devotion, he threw himself thoroughly into all the enjoyments of life, pomp and magnificence, luxury and splendour; and therefore the good people of his time descanted the more earnestly upon his piety.

Guillaume, always considering himself first, and postponing the rights and feelings of everybody else to his own, has been lauded to the skies for his chivalrous magnanimity. Without the least suspicion of his own motives he was essentially selfish. In all doubtful circumstances, his choice was decided by the attractions of self-interest or the impulses of self-gratification; yet his renown never failed during his life-time: his defects were excused by his prosperity, and his reputation was sustained with increased affection after his death. He was very bright; and there

is perhaps no quality which more generally en- 927—942  
 sures a pleasant remembrance beyond the grave.             
 Certainly he possessed some excellent qualities; 933—934  
 yet many more than he possessed were ascribed to  
 him. Powerful and rich, people gratified them-  
 selves by magnifying his riches and power.

But amidst his popularity Guillaume had a  
 secret grief. He was Rollo's son. Guillaume  
 could not fail to suspect the thoughts nourished  
 by the Frankish nobles in the depths of their  
 hearts. He was not entirely one with them, nor  
 one amongst them. The Normans were not yet  
 adopted by the national family into which they  
 had forced themselves. Cordial as the French ap-  
 peared, Guillaume might guess, from some unfor-  
 tunate slip of the Frenchman's tongue, that, though  
 invested with the Patrician robe, he was still  
 reckoned as a Buccanier, by those who prudently  
 made the best of a bad bargain. Guillaume  
 doated on Espriota, yet his love could not blind  
 him to the fact that his home was not honour-  
 able, whether morally or politically. The humble  
 damsel, the Christian woman, married to Guil-  
 laume, (if married she were), according to the  
 Heathen fashion, could not be considered a help-  
 mate meet for the Seigneur of Rouen, an equal  
 by his side beneath the Ducal canopy.

Of a surety, such sentiments had been discerned,  
 perhaps encouraged, by his kinsman of Verman-  
 dois—Could Herbert otherwise have possibly

927—942

933—934

formed any expectation, that Guillaume might be induced to cast off his ardently loved consort for the purpose of espousing Liutgarda? Guillaume had always prided himself in claiming consanguinity with this house. Had the noble science of blazonry then existed, Guillaume Longue-épée's coat of arms, as it hung over his mail, would have displayed the golden Leopards of Normandy quartering Vermandois—"checkée *or* and *azure*, a chief of the *second*, three fleurs-de-llys of the *first*,"—and no Pursuivant, who valued his ears, would have dared add the defacement of a brisure, or to challenge the bearing. Without any delay, or misgiving, did Guillaume Longue-épée either make or accept the flattering offer. He had an encouraging, and home example. As Guillaume's own mother had been dealt with by his own father Rollo, so did Guillaume deal with the mother of his own child. Not a thought was given by any one to Espriota, the damsel of low degree, the mean *hustrue*, who pretended to be wedded by a Danish marriage; no divorce was sought; no difficulties honoured by discussions; no conscientious scruple raised, needing the decency of a ghostly adviser to remove it: none of the parties, principals or accessories, concerned in negotiating or completing the forthcoming grand espousals, considered it worth while to take notice of Espriota's existence. Liutgarda was conducted

Guillaume Longue-épée—his repudiation of Espriota, and marriage with Liutgarda.

to the Palace of Rouen, and the marriage between Guillaume Longue-épée and his noble bride, the true daughter of Vermandois, was celebrated with marvellous magnificence.

Never is Espriota named again during the remainder,—brief in time, yet lengthened by the abundantly succeeding incidents,—of Guillaume's life and reign. Yet equally are we destitute of any information concerning that brilliant Liutgarda, of whom nothing further is known until after Guillaume's death, when she re-appears as the hardened widow, rushing into the embraces of a graceless lover—the childless stepmother, pursuing the son of her deceased husband with direful hatred; and yet without being able to offer the wretched excuse which might be furnished by jealousy for the promotion of her own offspring.

Liutgarda's  
hatred of  
Richard-  
sans-peur.

In the hope that an heir would be granted to him, had Guillaume taken Espriota. The hope was fulfilled; but the concubine's child could not be endured in the Palace when the step-mother passed under the Portal. That once-welcomed babe was now removed far away. Nor did the noble boy ever again gaze on the father's face until the shadow of death was spreading over him.—Nevertheless, the silent march of history affords cogent reasons for an humiliating surmise.—Combining positive and negative evidence; filling up the blanks evidently occasioned by the

927—942 suppression of facts, with the collateral circumstances, which, though retained, are only imperfectly explained or left without explanation, it is scarcely possible to doubt but that Guillaume, seduced away from Espriota by the pride of the Prince or the policy of the Statesman, continued nevertheless secretly to cohabit with her whom he had put to shame before the world.—We cannot repel the conjecture that Guillaume's heartlessness thus involved him in complicated culpability:—faithful in heart to the true-love whom he deserted, faithless in conduct to the princess whom he had taken in her stead.

Intentional  
obscurety  
of Dudo  
de Saint  
Quentin  
upon the  
subjects  
connected  
with Es-  
priota and  
Liutgarda.

The history of Guillaume Longue-épée, as it has been transmitted to us, was mainly founded on the information given to Dudo de Saint Quentin by that child Richard when he grew up to man's estate, and by Richard's brother, another son of Espriota, not proclaiming Guillaume Longue-épée as his father, but who nevertheless acquired high importance and dignity, the famous Raoul Count of Ivry. Dudo, composing under such dictation, enjoyed great advantages. The primary sources of information concerning the events were open to him, no one could bear record more fully or truly if he chose. But the very patronage which encouraged or rather urged him to the task, would inspire discreet reserve. In all those portions of the narrative whether relating to Espriota or to Liutgarda, the writer appears to amplify for

the purpose of concealment. If, after expatiating upon the splendour of Liutgarda's nuptials, the Dean of Saint Quentin felt inclined to speak more clearly about her or the deserted one,—*Hush!*—was whispered in his ear.

§ 25. During these Norman transactions and adventures, the aspect of French affairs became increasingly perplexed and dreary. A swarm of untowardnesses, distresses and misfortunes;—portents, and visitations, serpent-like streams of fire darting across the welkin;—and, concurrently with these tokens, a devouring pestilence—the symptoms described, being similar to those which accompany the Plague. Queen Emma, Hugh-le-Grand's sister, Raoul's faithful and energetic consort, died; and the widowed king, his health declining, was wearing himself out. Aquitaine required Raoul's presence: an inconsiderable Burgundian Castellan rebelled. Raoul was compelled to hasten thither: he no longer had his Emma to help him. The furious Magyars spread all over Burgundy, tormenting the country with fire and sword. Raoul marched against the Tartars. They evaded the collision—retreating rapidly before him as he advanced, and the fugitives, repeating their mischiefs elsewhere, compensated themselves beyond the Alps by the plunder of the Lombard plains.

Raoul's own brother Boso took advantage of his distresses, and seized Dijon; but Raoul

927—942

933—935

934—935

French  
affairs.

934

Death of  
Queen  
Emma.



927—949 marched against him and recovered the city.

Other vexations ensued: most doleful was the Paschal tide at Laôn; a riot broke out in the King's very presence,—a scuffle between his soldiers and the cathedral clergy,—an affront to the royal dignity as well as a scandal. The clerks may have been indiscreet, but the soldiers were savage, and their blades cleft many a shaven crown. Though stricken by a sore disease which rendered locomotion very irksome, Raoul could not obtain any respite: the urgencies of the State compelled him to convene a council at Soissons. Apprehensions of trouble forced Raoul to perform a painful journey for the purpose of obtaining an interview with King Henry the Fowler, he also dying. Pagan Northmen ravaged Bourges. The quarter from whence they came is not exactly ascertained. A learned Dane conjectures that they started from Armorica; Harold Blaaland was cruising, and they may have disembarked from his ships in the Loire. Raoul could give no aid, and the citizens had to help themselves, which they did bravely.

935  
Raoul's  
troubles  
and ex-  
ertions.

Sept. Oct.  
Raoul's  
malady  
encreases.  
During the autumn Raoul's malady encreased: his body was covered with loathsome sores and ulcers, swarming with vermin. He attempted to journey towards Sens. In the outskirts of that city stood the celebrated Abbey of Saint Columba—that noble Gaulish Virgin who, as legends tell, suffered martyrdom by Aurelian's special com-

mand—"Sainte Colombe-lez-Sens," founded by King Dagobert, a monastery, a palace and a castle. Richard-le-Justicier had caused the consecrated precinct to be surrounded by walls and towers, for the purpose of protection against the Danes. The Sanctuary was much venerated by the family; and Richard-le-Justicier was buried there, in the chapel of Saint Simphorien. When Raoul had been borne as far as Auxerre, he could not be conveyed further. The childless King had no commands to give respecting the succession, no bequests to make of crown or sceptre, or royal robe, designating by the delivery of these symbols the future Sovereign.—The regalia are left untouched in the tall Tower of Laôn—there let them remain until an occupant is found for the Throne, dying Raoul has no care about them.—As to this world's concerns, Raoul thought only of his grave, and he directed that his bones should rest nigh his father's.—Evil-doers were encouraged by the abeyance of the Sovereign authority: a great riot, accompanied by incendiarism, ensued at Sens, the city was partly burnt; nor did the fortifications of Saint Columba protect the monastery from the revolvers; and on the morrow of Saint Hilary, King Raoul died.

927—943

935—936

Jan. 15,

936

Death of  
King  
Raoul.

During Raoul's illness the nobles had been gathering in the vicinity, and they immediately came together for his funeral. Within eight and forty hours after King Raoul's death the corpse

927—942 was conveyed from Auxerre to Sens, probably  
 floated down the placid Yonne, and deposited,  
 935—936 according to his wishes, by his father's side, in  
 the fire-scathed sanctuary. A plain stone table,  
 inscribed *Rodolphus Rex*, marked his place of  
 sepulture.

State of  
 public feel-  
 ing at the  
 era of  
 Raoul's  
 death.

§ 26. During the latter years of Raoul's life, when there was no longer any probability of his leaving a lineal heir, all parties prepared themselves for action, as soon as the throne should become vacant by his demise. Raoul's lingering malady afforded full opportunity for machination or deliberation: his death brought on the crisis; but not before opinions had been deliberately matured.

Steady ad-  
 herence to  
 the mon-  
 archical  
 principle.

About the form of government there was no doubt or question: the Gauls must be ruled by one Sovereign, invested with imperial rights, a crowned and anointed Sovereign. All were immutably convinced that they were bound to maintain the unity of the State—an imperial federation, if you choose—yet one body politic. The fury for division, which raged during the revolutions of the *Eight hundred eighty and eight*, had subsided—no more repartitions of the Gauls. This was their unshaken resolution—they prostrated themselves before the principle of Monarchy.

They withstood all the temptations of opportunity. Who could have gainsayed the Patrician of Rouen, a monarch in his people's estimation,

had he demanded his autocracy?—Until Raymond 927—942  
 thought fit to become Raoul's liegeman, he 336  
 reigned in the Capitol of Toulouse, without bow-  
 ing before any superior: Raymond might altoget-  
 her have refused rendering that acknowledgment.  
 —Hermengaud at Rhodéz was beyond the long-  
 est stretch of Raoul's sceptre; it was his own  
 choice, if he came within that sceptre's reach.  
 —The Vascons would have answered with en-  
 thusiasm to Lope Aznar's summons, had he  
 required their aid for the vindication of their na-  
 tionality.—Thirty or more "Grand Feudatories,"  
 as they were afterwards called, are reckoned at  
 this era, who, whether the throne was deserted,  
 or whether the throne was filled, might, had they  
 chosen, have decreed the suppression of Royalty  
 in the Carlovingian Commonwealth. But no one  
 could move in that direction—no one had the  
 will. Each acted as though a yoke had been placed  
 upon his shoulders by an invisible hand, a yoke  
 which he would not have shaken off even if he  
 had the power. Surrounding perils and impending  
 dangers may in a certain degree have assisted  
 in supporting these feelings.—The Saracens  
 were on the confines: *Deen! Deen! Deen!*  
 the invocation shouted by faithful Islam which  
 animates the charge beneath the British banner  
 in Hindostan, might resound amidst the vine-  
 yards of Burgundy: the soil was yet reeking

Adherence  
 of the  
 Franks to  
 the mo-  
 narchical  
 principle.

927—942 with the blood, shed by the Mogors:—hosts  
 of Northmen were crossing the seas.

986

Nevertheless the thrice-repeated *Eight*, the great events which marked the "*Eight hundred and eighty-eight*," had effected a radical revolution in the dynastic sentiment of all the States composing the recently-dissolved Carlovingian Empire. The peculiar ascription of royalty to the Carlovingian race was rejected; and the nations throughout that Empire, each and every of them, asserted in act and deed, their liberty and prerogative of appointing their King, if they thought fit, without any reference to ancestry.

Late appearance of the name of "France," as applied to the kingdom at large.

§ 27. The magnificent Realm which at this period was encircled by the Channel, the Atlantic, the Pyrenees, the Mediterranean, and the Rhone, had not, hitherto, obtained any appropriate or collective constitutional or national name. Each Population or Province was called by a territorial or ethnic denomination. "*France*," was thus a designation vaguely applied in the reign of Charles-le-Simple to a territory, for which, except where the Seine or the Loire formed the boundary, we cannot find any precise geographical demarcation,—"La France!"—"La Belle France!"—French historians, so accurate, so diligent, so expert in other points of enquiry, have not afforded us much assistance in tracing the gradual extension of that word—the inspiration of their genius, their patriotism, and their power—to the whole of

their present fatherland. Certainly it was not thus employed under the Merovingian, Carolingian, or early Capetian Sovereigns, though the terms "France," "French," or "Frenchman," may be occasionally permitted to the Historian in cases, when the adoption of an anachronism, conveying an idea correct in the main, is preferable to circumlocution or ambiguity. The title of *Rex Franciæ—Roi de France*—appears in the Royal style from the reign of Philippe Auguste—earlier examples are exceptional;—nevertheless, until after the Lions of England were chased away, it is questionable whether, in the popular mind, the idea of *France* distinctly included the Languedoc, and the proper Aquitanian Provinces. It was the victory gained over the victors of Cressy, Poitiers, and Agincourt, which perfected the homogeneous nationality of the Kingdom.

Indeed, as long as the usages of the remoter periods prevailed, there was absolutely no opportunity for the employment of a general chorographic name in any matters of state or temporal government. The King only designated himself as the ruler of his people, or rather of the predominant race: and the chroniclers localize their interests and their feelings. But the secular, as well as the spiritual, Catholicity of the Realm was preserved by the Church, and the Church continued to speak in the language of the Empire. The Archiepiscopal Provinces were precisely con-

927—942 } terminous with the civil provinces as they existed  
 936 } in the age of Honorius; and if the Clerk had  
 been asked to describe the Realm whose destinies  
 were now in suspense, he would have repeated  
 the words of Cæsar,—“*Gallia est omnis divisa  
 in partes tres, quarum unam incolunt Belgæ,  
 aliam Aquitani, tertiam qui ipsorum lingua  
 Celtæ, nostra Galli appellantur.*”

The tripar-  
 tite divi-  
 sion of the  
 Gauls. Its  
 constitu-  
 tional ap-  
 plication.

This Tripartite division, archaic but not obsolete, was practically accepted as the basis of the Constitution. The great privilege now claimed—that the populations of Gaul were free to elect their King—was exercised through the suffrages assigned to the three territories, designated according to the three principal nations who presented themselves to the Romans, when the Eagle was planted on the Gaulish soil.

Founded, however, upon antient reminiscences, combined with the actual circumstances of the country, now overspread by other races, the antient ethnographical boundaries were not strictly retained.

“Belgic  
 Gaul,” ac-  
 cording to  
 the mediæ-  
 val idea.

*Gallia Belgica*, according to the mediæval notions, which we shall express however by borrowing more recent names, as the clearer exponents of localities, comprehended Champagne and Vermandois, Picardy and the Artois, Haynault and Flanders and their appurtenances, most of Romane Lorraine, Alsace also, together with some dismemberments and districts of Celtic Gaul.

With respect to *Aquitanian Gaul*, the designation is rather ambiguously employed, sometimes restricted to the native seat of the antient people between the Pyrenees and the Garonne, but more generally extended, according to the decree of Augustus, so as to include the modern Touraine as far as the Loire.

*Celtic Gaul* had lost the Transjuran regions which constituted the independent *Kingdom* of Burgundy, whilst the Burgundian *Duchy*, which remained to Gaul, had been erected upon the states of the noble Ædui, the Lingones, and the Sequani, forming a transit-region, connecting the Belgic Gauls, through Alps and Rhone, with Septimania and Italy. "Gallia Celtica," as above mentioned, no longer included the portions between Aquitania proper and the Loire; and the north-western boundaries are blurred and confused. Yet we may define this Electorate with tolerable accuracy as containing all the Carlovingian portions of Burgundy, the Pays Chartrain, the Brie Champenoise, the Nivernois, the Senonois, the Orléanois, the Isle de France, and possibly the Terra Normannorum also.

§ 28. The electoral theory was only roughly draughted. Had the scheme been perfected by the successive touches of the jurist's pen — sharpened, when needed, by the soldier's sword — France might have attained a constitution, elaborate and defective as that of the German Empire. The principle however deduced from

927—942

936

"Aquitanian Gaul."

"Celtic Gaul."



927—942

936

1484.  
Natural or-  
ganization  
of the  
Etats Gé-  
néraux of  
Tours.

the Tripartite division continued deeply impressed upon the national mind. After the accession of the Capets, the right of appointing the Sovereign was still assumed to be vested in the concurrent Electorates of the Belgic, Celtic, and Aquitanian Gauls. And when the doctrine of Elective Right was abandoned, the theory that the voice of the kingdom was to be expressed by the Provinces, classed as *nations*, was still steadily retained. In the most memorable Convention of the States General at Tours, when the Sovereignty of the People was asserted with equal temperance and boldness, the members, instead of voting by Orders, marshalled themselves, not into the *Three*, but as the *Six Nations* of the Realm, namely, *France*, *Burgundy*, *Normandy*, *Aquitaine*, the *Languedoc*, and the *Langue d'oïl*—a reasonable adaptation of the antient principle to the altered state of the Realm.

This repartition was evidently suggested by the wish of neutralizing the numerical preponderance of any particular party or faction, and, if made honestly, not ill calculated for the protection of the minor masses, and the frustration of cabal or intrigue.

Nor must it be omitted that the scheme of grouping the individual electors, or others having the rights of suffrage into "Nations," acquired no inconsiderable degree of approbation during the mediæval era. Although unwarranted by the traditions of the Church, this national organization

was boldly sanctioned by the innovating Council of Constance. It obtained in the Military Orders, the Knights Hospitallers affording an illustrious example—" *Language*" being synonymous with " *Nation*."—From the same model arose the *Quatre nations* of Paris University: and, inherited from that venerable and departed mother, the organization subsists in full vigour beyond the Tweed. When, in the City of Saint Mungo, the Four Nations of the Academic Commonwealth,—*Glottiana*, *Transforthiana*, *Laudoniana*, and *Rothseiana*,—assemble for the choice of their Lord Rector, the Red gowns may find the suggestions for their *Comitia* in the opening sentence of the Commentaries.

927—942  
936

§ 29. Amongst the Three nations, the third and last according to the enumeration of Cæsar, took the lead. Celtic Gaul pronounced immediately for him whose dominions were spread so wide, and his fame still wider—Hugh-le-Grand, "Hugo Dux Francorum Gratia Omnipotentis Dei," in his own country—"Rex Francorum" beyond the seas. The crown had been already offered to him; birth, reputation, and power, again designated Hugh-le-Grand for the throne, the son of a King, the brother of a king, the nephew of a king, who could be more fitted to reign?

Celtic  
Gaul sup-  
ports  
Hugh-le-  
Grand.

The predilection shewn to Hugh-le-Grand by the Electorate, of which Burgundy and the Duchy of France constituted the largest portions, is

The Aqi-  
tanians  
take the  
same side.

927—942

936

Explana-  
tion of the  
conduct of  
the Aequi-  
tanians.

intelligible and explicable: but that Aquitaine should also join in the postulation, may almost appear as an unexpected phenomenon. We have seen how solemnly the Aquitanians had repudiated Raoul, when the Celtic and Belgic Gauls bestowed the Crown upon him. They would not acknowledge his political existence; nevertheless, if we consider the circumstances of the country, their present adhesion to Hugh-le-Grand will not only receive a sufficient elucidation, but be found fairly consistent with their former conduct. The Aquitanians had never been thoroughly cordial towards the Carolingian interest. By the indulgence which Charlemagne extended to their nationality, when he dealt with Aquitania as a separate kingdom, he conciliated them for a while, yet this policy engendered a tendency towards estrangement. The great Emperor's management had only partially answered the purpose his wisdom sought. Long ago, the installation of Louis-le-Débonnaire at Toulouse, his adoption of the Aquitanian garb, and the devices whereby he sought to identify himself with the Vascon race, had operated unfavourably against the Frankish crown.

But no severance of Aquitaine could now be thought of: the Gaulish Realm was not to be maimed. The indignation of the Aquitanians against the "unfaithful Franks" who had "disgraced" their king, was not accompanied by any ardent sympathy for the banished lineage. Pos-

sibly, the Aquitanians considered, that they ought to have been consulted in an act which concerned them all; and their stern reprobation of Charles-le-Simple's dethronement may be construed, rather as the manifestation of anger at the national affront, than as a demonstration of loyalty. When Raoul had justified his pretensions to the throne by the victory of Limoges, they found the King for whom they had been tarrying, and accepted him, not because he had been crowned by the Belgic Gauls at Soissons, but as the king of their choice. Therefore it was quite in conformity with their previous line of action that their postulation should now be given in favour of Hugh-le-Grand,—Hugh, Abbot of St. Martin, a great nobleman on the southern bank of the Loire,—Hugh, Duke of France, the greatest Prince on the North.

But throughout the Belgic Gauls, where the Carolingian monarchs had been most seen and known, studded with the cities, the palaces, and the castles, where whilome they held their courts, displayed their valour, and succumbed under their misfortunes, the nobles and the people were most anxious to recal the orphan son of Charles, the martyred king. The Prelates generally advocated his cause; yet the most loyal dared not maintain that the Crown belonged to the son of Charles by undoubted hereditary right. The affection still commanded by the antient lineage of Charlemagne,

Louis supported by the Belgic Gauls.

927—942 the benefits to be anticipated from the restoration  
 of Louis, might guide the discretion of the Elec-  
 torates; but their liberty was not to be seduced or  
 coerced into the admission of an indefeasible claim.

The Ver-  
 mandois  
 party op-  
 posed to  
 the resto-  
 ration of  
 Louis.

Celtic Gaul and Aquitaine supported Hugh-  
 le-Grand upon his own merits,—antagonists of  
 Louis, without entertaining personal enmity; but  
 there was a third party, a non-national party,  
 very powerful in Belgic Gaul, strongly opposed  
 to his restoration, actuated by a sharper incentive  
 than political principle or patriotism—fear. Those  
 who had concurred so actively in the persecution  
 and dethronement of the wretched Charles, those  
 who had brought him to his miserable death,  
 dreaded lest the son should become his father's  
 avenger. No one could have more cause for  
 apprehension, should young Louis obtain the  
 sovereign power, than Herbert of Vermandois,—  
 the halter might be tightened round his neck  
 should Louis ascend the throne.

Elfgiva or  
 Ogiva, and  
 the young  
 Louis, un-  
 der Athel-  
 stane's pro-  
 tection at  
 York.

§ 30. The Queen-mother—whom, to avoid  
 confusion we must still denominate Ogiva, though  
 it would be more agreeable to recognize her by  
 her right old English name, since we now rejoin  
 her in old England her native home—was at  
 this juncture residing with her brother Athel-  
 stane and her son, in the Royal palace of York.  
 If Charles had laboured in his happiest moments  
 or most anxious years to devise a plan by  
 which his only child could be best schooled for

the duties of sovereignty, he could not have contrived any course of discipline or instruction so well calculated to invigorate and enlighten the young Louis in body and in mind, as that course provided for Louis by his calamities. His education, unschemed by parental forethought, was far better cared for than any care could have dictated, combining the advantages of adversity and prosperity.

927-942

936

Advantages enjoyed by Louis under the protection of Athelstane.

Hardships are apt to harden; the young Louis was exempted from this deterioration; he suffered the chastisement of misfortune without its bitterness. An exile, a dependent, maintained by charity, he dwelt beneath the oppressive shelter of another's roof, and ate the acrid gift-bread bestowed by another's hand; yet his life was rendered cheerful, and his moral and intellectual feelings kindly cherished and cultivated. Athelstane was the very mirror of civility. His magnanimity took out the sting from the dependence to which he had reduced the Celtic princes. Fierce King Harold Harfager, the King of Norway, sought, as the greatest favour, that his son Haco should be trained under the guidance of the English King: and when that Haco attained the sovereignty, he conjoined the name of his benefactor to his own. — "Haco, Athelstane's foster-son," — is the title by which he stands enrolled in the chronicle of Norwegian kings.

A banished Court is usually the weary har-

927—942  
 936  
 bour of hope deferred: the exiles breathe an enfeebling atmosphere,—sad reminiscences of the past, sickly anticipations of the future,—expectations raised by a whisper, or destroyed by a word. The young Louis, however, was not exposed to these debilitating influences. Though always brought to the most lively sense of his calamities by the presence of that mother whom he loved and honoured, he was, nevertheless, placed in a station which guarded him against the meannesses and manœuvres, intrigues and untruths, engendered by the carking cares of expatriated royalty.

His dignity was respected, and he received the instruction best calculated to render him competent for the exercise of that dignity. Athelstane wisely and considerately trained his nephew to the arts of government, conferring with him as a councillor and adviser. The Scottish Reguli had failed in their revolt against the supremacy of the British Basileus: but Athelstane well knew that further hostilities were impending. He was now preparing for the campaign which was terminated by the great victory of Brunnaburgh, and hints are given that the young Louis, a representative, through his mother, of Cerdic's line, might receive as an appanage some Danish, Celtic, or Cymric Earldom or Kingdom. Yet better would it be that Louis should regain the noble Realm which he inherited from his fore-

fathers; and, during the malady of Raoul, Athel-  
 stane had been opening negotiations for effecting  
 the restoration of Louis to the throne.

927—942

986

§ 31. There were three amongst the French Princes from whom Athelstane might expect useful aid on behalf of Louis: three in particular, who might recal him from beyond the sea. Adolph, the brother of Arnoul, and Count of Boulogne, was familiar with the Anglo-Saxon Court and with England. The shores of Albion were constantly in his sight. Caligula's imperial tower, the *Turris Ardens*, the twelve-storied pyramid, rising in massy stateliness from the edge of the commanding but treacherous cliff, still corresponded with the Dover Pharos; and the ancient "Ges-soriacum," not yet supplanted by Witsand, continued, as in the Roman age, to be the accustomed point of transit between the Gauls and England.—Adolph held the key of France on that side. Were he hostile to young Louis, he might in great measure frustrate the chances of restoration: if friendly, he might afford the most important facilities.

Athel-  
 stane's ne-  
 gotiations  
 for the  
 restoration  
 of Louis—  
 the three  
 Princes  
 from whom  
 he might  
 expect sup-  
 port.

Boulogne,  
 the point of  
 transit, its  
 import-  
 ance.

The active concurrence of Hugh-le-Grand was indispensable. Two-thirds of the realm had invited him to ascend the throne: it was take, and have. Yet Athelstane was inclined to rely upon the moderation which Hugh-le-Grand had already evinced, and the sentiments which appeared to dictate that moderation. Solicited to



827—842  
 886 } assume the crown, and without any doubt of success, had he accepted the repeated offer, he never had shewn any wavering, any tendency to depart from the strict letter of his self-denying vow. Moreover, the personal friendship subsisting between Hugh and Athelstane had been confirmed by the much-celebrated intermarriage. Hugh had sought the hand of Eadhilda, the sister of Athelstane, the sister of Ogiva—the onyx vase, the precious gems, the sword of Constantine, and the lance of Charlemagne, now the pride of Athelstane's treasury, were pledges of Hugh-le-Grand's amity. The *Rex Francorum* called himself Ogiva's brother, uncle of the young Louis, his natural protector; and though Eadhilda had died prematurely and childless, the connection had survived, uncanceled by her death. In the very cause of grief there was this consolation, that no cousin to the young Louis had been born to Hugh, on whose behalf his father might have been tempted to desire an hereditary monarchy.

If any secret misgiving might be felt lest Hugh, seduced by the noble prize, should desert his principles, and seek to thwart the desired accession, there was a third friend, upon whom Athelstane could rely—as he had full reason to believe—without any misgiving or hesitation. The flourishing and prosperous Duchy of Normandy had become very important in the balance of power. A Peer of France, a member of the

French Monarchy, and yet more free in action <sup>927—942</sup>  
 than any other amongst the French Potentates, <sup>936</sup>  
 Guillaume-Longue-épée, the noble son of a mag-  
 nanimous father, was assuredly most dependable.  
 In the hour of anguish and distress had not  
 the Duke prepared to place her whom he then  
 most dearly loved under the English Monarch's  
 protection? Athelstane doubting not but that  
 the Norman Duke would cordially reciprocate,  
 urged him to work in the cause of the Carlovin-  
 gian heir, which he did, and as the Norman his-  
 torians inform us, efficaciously, and successfully,  
 when the time arrived for settling the succession  
 to the throne.

§ 32. The nobles who, with that high intent, <sup>936.</sup>  
 were convened at Sens, reverently followed King <sup>Convention</sup>  
 Raoul's body to the grave. No further delay <sup>of the no-</sup>  
 ensued, nor was the interregnum factiously pro- <sup>bles at Sens</sup>  
 longed. All parties concerned acted discreetly and <sup>—Hugh-</sup>  
 decorously; and, on the morrow of the funeral, <sup>le-Grand</sup>  
 the Nations of the Gauls met in solemn assem- <sup>elected</sup>  
 bly. Their first proceeding was to elect Hugh- <sup>President.</sup>  
 le-Grand as their President, either sensible that  
 they could not resist his authority, had he chosen  
 to demand that station, or confiding in his  
 honour and impartiality. His determination con-  
 tinued steady: never could Hugh-le-Grand dis-  
 miss from his mind the terror inspired by the  
 avenging fate which had fallen on his father  
 Robert; nor is it improbable but, that in the

927—942  
 936 } horrible malady which had afflicted Raoul and brought him to his most painful death, Hugh equally beheld a token of wrath. It was a current belief that the German Arnolph's breach of the solemn oath he had sworn to Charles-le-Gras had thus been punished; for there always has been a prevalent popular opinion that such an hideous disease is to be viewed as the peculiar chastisement of some grievous sin.

Hugh-le-Grand rose, and opened the discussions by his speech from the Chair; managing his argument ably. He expressed the strongest opinion in favour of the Carlovingian Prince, but he evaded pronouncing any severe condemnation upon the rebellious transactions which had driven that young Prince and his Mother into exile. Unhesitatingly advocating the restoration of Louis the son, he nevertheless delicately insinuated that the deposition of Charles the parent had been justly earned by his misgovernment. Yet the abstract justice of the sentence did not justify the agent by whom the sentence was executed. Robert, his own father, had done evil that good might come: nor could the suffrages which elevated King Robert to the throne absolve him from culpability.

Hugh-le-Grand counselled them to abstain from calling in any strange race, any race not previously honoured by royalty. Raoul's example might be a sufficient warning against such an error. How had France fallen in honour

during his reign! Therefore Hugh earnestly exhorted them to remember the antient royal family, and invite the young Louis from beyond the sea. Thus presented, the acceptance of Charlemagne's descendant did not directly impugn the prerogative liberty of choice appertaining to the nobles of the Gauls.

927-942  
936  
Hugh le  
Grand ad-  
vocates the  
restoration  
of Louis.

The antient lineage afforded, according to Hugh-le-Grand's opinion, a powerful recommendation, yet without conveying an indefeasible right: if the recommendation was judged insufficient, the naked right was not to prevail. Neither was there any dogmatic renunciation of the principles or motives actuating the parties implicated in the preceding revolutions: the admission that a moral liability was incurred by rising against the royal authority, did not contravene the constitutional right of giving the rough admonition, should circumstances vindicate the deed.

The proposition for the acknowledgment of Louis alarmed the powerful partisans who had been directly and actually concerned in procuring the deposition and death of Charles. They dreaded the advent of the young king. Charles had been betrayed, mocked, murdered: would his son be truly his son, unless he wreaked a condign vengeance? Yet this third party, however active, had a difficulty in organizing an effective opposition. The extreme unpopularity of Herbert of Vermandois counteracted his power. We see no

927—942  
 936 reason to doubt the statement made by the Norman historians, that Guillaume Longue-épée co-operated in supporting Louis, but the victory gained in the Convention was due to Hugh-le-Grand's tact, talent, and steady determination. The question was carried, Nobles and Chieftains joyfully proclaimed their concurrence; and Hugh-le-Grand, the temporary Stadt-holder, took the needful measures for completing the restoration.

Embassy  
 sent to  
 England  
 inviting  
 Louis to  
 the Gauls.

§ 33. Imperial Eboracum, the birth-place of Constantine, though celebrated throughout Western Christendom, was separated from the well-frequented and familiar southern regions of our Island, by tracts so uncouth and savage in the opinion of the Frenchman, that clerks compared the awful vastness of the intervening country to the dreary spread of the Riphæan range. Hugh-le-Grand therefore, in the execution of the trust imposed upon him, appointed a solemn embassy which might convey the offers to the young Louis on behalf of the assembled nations: and the Primate, William, Archbishop of Sens, was the chief of the Legation. At Boulogne the ambassadors embarked. Count Adolph readily befriended them: they found the trim vessel fitted out for their voyage, and, making the passage safely, their long journey terminated by their reception in the palace of Athelstane.

The Anglo-Saxon Basileus demeaned himself gravely. If he inwardly rejoiced at the success

of his exertions, all outward tokens of exultation were suppressed; he demurred without refusing. Athelstane intimated that it was a concession on his part, if he sanctioned the acceptance by Louis of the perilous Sovereignty. The Archbishop of Sens expatiated on the loyalty of the French:—fears might have been felt, doubts entertained; but Hugh-le-Grand had tranquillized the fears, and removed all incertitudes.—They therefore prayed the appointment of the time and the place where the Nobles might attend to receive their Sovereign.

Athelstane, acting with cautious dignity, now declined the further prosecution of the treaty until the Archbishop and his colleagues should, by solemn oath, pledge their fidelity to him, the protector of Louis, and also to Ogiva. They complied, and moreover, in addition to this compliance, certain members of the legation consented to remain behind as hostages; but in return they only obtained a qualified promise from the Anglo-Saxon King.—Louis would hold himself in readiness to assume the Sovereignty, if the treaty of restoration should receive a satisfactory settlement. Wary Athelstane might well require convincing evidence, that the proffer of the Crown was made in sincerity and good faith, not a device concealing some traitorous design, whereby it was sought to gain possession of the young King's person, deluding him, like his

927—942

936

Athelstane  
and the  
embassa-  
dora.Athel-  
stane's cau-  
tious con-  
duct during  
the nego-  
tiations.

927—942 unhappy father, into a prison, the porch of the  
 }  
 } sepulchre.

923—924

Athelstane  
 and Louis  
 "keep  
 trust" at  
 Dover.

§ 34. Between England and France, severed by the Channel, no closer trysting-places could be indicated than Dover and Boulogne; and it was agreed that, during the negotiations required to satisfy the careful guardian's anxiety, the Heir of France and the Nobles representing the States of France should respectively tarry at these ports, on the mutually confronting shores.

Amply escorted by Prelates, Earls, Thaness and cavalry, Athelstane, with the young Louis, journeyed to the Kentish coast: stern and awful Odo, Bishop of Sherborne, afterwards so conspicuous as Archbishop of Canterbury, joined the royal train. French and English punctually kept their day. On the morn when the Anglo-Saxon Basileus arrived at Dover, a column of smoke ascending from the white cliffs of Boulogne announced to Athelstane that the Frankish nobles awaited their king. The column of smoke from England's white cliffs reciprocated the signal. Yet Athelstane paused, his vigilance increasing in proportion as he approximated to the ratification of the pending treaty. Not yet would he surrender the Heir of Charlemagne. The young and ardent prince was still restrained by his uncle's prudence, nor yet permitted to cross the sea. For the guidance of his judgment, Athelstane required further information; Bishop Odo

Bishop  
 Odo des-  
 patched to  
 Boulogne  
 for the pur-  
 pose of ob-  
 taining in-  
 formation.

therefore was sent over to acquire full conviction that Louis commanded the fealty of the lieges. The Bishop must treat with the Frankish nobles face to face, search out the truth, and make out the truth,—(if any truth could ever be made out in that Luegenfeld)—whether the Franks really sought the young Louis faithfully and loyally: otherwise Athelstane would provide for his nephew in Albion, and not let him encounter trouble in another country.

927—942

936

Charged with this enquiry, Bishop Odo met the Frankish nobles, and ample declarations were made of the prevailing desire for the young Prince's recal: but an important condition was, for the first time, disclosed. Hugh-le-Grand, speaking for himself, and on behalf of the rest, promised allegiance:—they would be all true men to Louis, provided Louis covenanted never to depart from the counsels of Hugh-le-Grand. A strangely pregnant proposition was this, leaving the widest field open to Hugh-le-Grand's discretion—no suggestion as to apportionment of power, no restriction as to extent, no term prescribed for the duration of an indefinite tutelage, no boundary assigned for the guardian's authority. During the anterior course of the transaction, Athelstane had proceeded with austere reserve, even so as to imply continued distrust, objections arising at every stage: but, to this vast demand, he, on behalf of Louis and Ogiva,

Hugh-le-Grand requires that Louis shall agree to obey his counsel.



927—942 immediately assented; not a moment's demur,  
 and Louis embarked for Boulogne as one who  
 936 fully trusted to the influence of his star.

Louis lands  
 at Bou-  
 logne.

§ 35. The weather favoured the joyful navigation: the gilded galley gliding over the crisp rippling sea. As Louis drew on towards the shore, he beheld the sands crowded with Frankish Chieftains, ready to greet their Monarch. Four are foremost amidst the throng: Adolph, Count of Boulogne, is there, welcoming the Sovereign's first footstep on his land:—Herbert of Verman-  
 dois obediently testifies his deference:—bright-haired, bright-hued, tall, manly Guillaume Longue-  
 épée, hails Athelstane's nephew, the son of his father's liege lord:—but preeminently remarkable is Hugh-le-Grand; the mightiest of the assembly, in the humblest attitude, holding by the bridle the right regally caparisoned steed. The spirited animal was unruly; but his master was come. Into the saddle the young Louis bounded without touching the stirrup, or help from groom:—that bound was worth a kingdom! The avenging sentence impending upon the race of Charlemagne appeared to be reversed: loud shouts testified the admiration of the multitude, who sought to accept the omen; and Hugh-le-Grand, accompanying the King to his hostel, walked humbly by his side, his serving Squire.

From Boulogne Louis progressed to Laôn, there to be solemnly consecrated as Sovereign.—

Previously to the age of Honorius, the Primacy <sup>927—942</sup> of Celtic Gaul certainly appertained to the <sup>986</sup> Chair of Sens. Lyons claimed the Primacy of *all* the Gauls; but the See of Pothinus and Irenæus had, subsequently, by the authority of Pope and Emperor, been deprived of that pre-eminence in favour of the Burgundian Archbishop. Therefore, whether as Primate of Celtic Gaul, or Primate of all the Gauls, William the Archbishop of Sens, who had so recently served on the embassy, accompanied Louis to his capital, placed the crown on the young King's head, and <sup>June 19, 986.</sup> anointed him with the holy oil; whilst Artaldus, <sup>Louis crowned at Laón.</sup> the Archbishop of Rheims, enrobed him. Certain authorities also state, that Artaldus, as Primate of Belgic Gaul, demanded and exercised the privilege of repeating the unction and coronation, in his own Basilica of Saint Remi; though the accounts are more conflicting than might be anticipated with respect to an act so public and patent.

§ 36. The claims and counter-claims of prelates upon these occasions are not to be slighted as ecclesiastical squabbles or petty rivalries; for they involved very important constitutional principles. The Bishop represented his Church, the Archbishop all Churches within his Province, the Primate all within his Primacy, and the Primacy the Church and kingdom. Like the Archbishop of Canterbury in England, or the Archbishop of

927—942



886

Gnesen in Poland, there was usually some one Prelate, peculiarly designated as the high functionary empowered to admit the King, according to the antient usages of the Commonwealth. Royal authority was not perfected until the benediction had been bestowed: the imposition of the crown was required to ratify the inchoate right; and the act of investiture, performed by the constitutional prelate, or usurped by an unconstitutional rival, might give colour to a dubious title, or weaken the influence of legitimacy.

When Louis-le-Gros was struggling for that throne which he ascended, despite of adulterous Bertrada's enmity, he was much perplexed by the obstacles opposed to his obtaining the *Sacre*. In this difficulty Louis-le-Gros consulted the famous Ivo Carnotensis. Rheims now insisted strenuously upon the prerogative privilege, to the exclusion of all other the Gaulish Prelates; and an application to Rheims at that juncture, might have retarded, perhaps defeated, his inauguration.—Ivo pointed out the course which he deemed to be safe and constitutional; and we may read the very opinion given by the father of the Canon Law. According to the theory propounded by Ivo, the three nations of the Gauls, the Celtic, the Belgic, and the Aquitanian, were, in the election of the King independent of each other; no one binding the other by her choice; no one having a superior right. Yet,

Theory of  
the rights  
of the  
Gaulish  
electorates  
according  
to Ivo  
Carnotensis.

as the unity of the kingdom was the fundamental principle, we arrive at the conclusion, that, according to Ivo's views, when the monarch had been crowned by one Electorate, the throne continued vacant, until the other two Electorates concurred, either explicitly or tacitly, in accepting him.

927—942  
986

Ivo searched out and considered the several analogous historical examples, tracing them from the Merovingian æra; but the instance on which he laid most stress was this very coronation of Louis d'Outremer, by the Archbishop of Sens. Following such an apt precedent, the son of Philip the First was accordingly crowned at Orleans by Daimbert, Archbishop of Sens, in the presence of his suffragans, Walo, Bishop of Paris, Manasses, Bishop of Meaux, John, Bishop of Orleans, Hugh, Bishop of Nevers, Humbert, Bishop of Auxerre, and Ivo, Bishop of Chartres, who had counselled the ceremony.

Aug. 3,  
1108.  
Coronation  
of Louis-le-  
Gros by  
the Abp. of  
Sens, ac-  
cording to  
the prece-  
dent of  
Louis d'  
Outremer.

### CHAPTER III.

LOUIS D'OUTREMER,—GUILLAUME LONGUE-ÉPÉE, AND  
RICHARD SANS PEUR HIS SON.

---

936—942.

FROM THE COMMENCEMENT OF THE REIGN OF LOUIS D'OUTREMER TO THE DEATH OF GUILLAUME LONGUE-ÉPÉE, AND THE RECOGNITION OF HIS SON RICHARD SANS PEUR.

936—942

§ 1. NOSCE TE IPSUM,—excellent advice, whether due to the Delphic Oracle, or proceeding from the mother-wit of sage Pythagoras or Thales.—No objection can be made, save that a better wisdom than Thales or Pythagoras could attain to, or Delphic Oracle impart, would have taught them that the solemn precept enjoins a duty which, in any strict sense, is impossible. How can the Heart, which is deceitful above all things, ever truly comprehend the depth of its own wickedness? No Cimmerian fog raised by self-delusion is more impenetrable to the light of conscience than the obscurity occasioned by the sophistry of the synecdoche—*a part taken for the whole*,—and reasonings grounded thereon accordingly.—Such, for example, are the compendious concentrations of popular theology—one verse taken for a chapter, one chapter for an Epistle, one Epistle for the entire canon of Holy Scripture.—Nor is the teaching of minor morals less tricky; a duty, or supposed duty, presented as

representing all duties. A decency, adopted as the indispensable complement of all virtues.—Many a good man,—a very good man upon 'change—worthy and punctual to the minute, accepts punctuality as something nigh upon a satisfactory compromise for the Decalogue.—The staid Matron, spotless as her own ermine, stainless as her own starched cambric, and bright as her own peach-blossom sarsnet, conjoins “cleanliness” to “godliness” in her creed, by so short a hyphen, that she more than doubts whether the begrimed beggar could *now* be lifted up from the dunghill, and allowed to inherit the throne of glory.

The outward history of Hugh-le-Grand has been transmitted to us, on the whole, with considerable amplitude and accuracy: rarely amidst the troubles of the tenth century can we avail ourselves of such trustworthy memorials. With respect to the substance of the speech delivered by the Duke of France in the Convention of Sens, we have sufficient grounds,—considering the channel through which the report has reached us,—to admit its substantial correctness, our informant being the son of an Officer who held a high station in Louis d'Outremer's court. Hugh-le-Grand's moral character can be readily appreciated:—his unshaken refusal of the Crown was perfectly compatible with the most grasping ambition.—We all strain at our own gnat, and swallow our own camel;—The conscientious scruples of Hugh-le-

936—949

Political  
Character  
of Hugh-  
le-Grand.

936—942 Grand were all accumulated upon one article of his political creed.—Never would he wear the royal Crown, or assume the title of King: but, Crown and title forborn, there was no species of opposition, contradiction or violence against the Sovereign, in which Hugh-le-Grand had not indulged, or was not ready to perpetrate. Bating the acceptance of the regal authority, *eo nomine*, he never felt that there had been the slightest restraint imposed upon him in his relations towards King Charles or King Raoul. He plundered the King, he fought the King, he betrayed the King, he let the King rot to death in the jail: but never would he be so presumptuously bold as to lay his hand upon the Crown.

Hugh-le-Grand's Protectorate.

The condition inserted in the restoration treaty gave Hugh-le-Grand far more authority, a much tighter grip upon the young King, than any Mayor of the Palace possessed in the old time. For the Mayors of the Palace stole by degrees into their supremacy; so that their ascendancy was always somewhat odious, and therefore, in a measure, infirm—a Steward defrauding his Master. But, according to the present arrangement, the Master formally gave up the keys to the Steward. Hugh-le-Grand enjoyed his overwhelming prerogative by deliberate compact; by the King's voluntary grant, he became potentially viceroy over the King, the King's *alter Ego*, without any power of revocation reserved to the grantor, and store of good reasons

always to be given for the continuance of the <sup>936—942</sup> salutary restraint, so long as the reign should last.—During his minority the young Louis must necessarily follow his Adviser : — when declared an adult, how needful would it be that Louis should retain a wise counsellor whose voice the King could not silence, and whose station must be honoured by all. Had Hagano been such a counsellor, how much misery would have been spared to unhappy Charles ! And when Louis should grow old, the like support would be still more urgently required. — That period Hugh-le-Grand could not expect to see ; but should Hugh ever happen to have a young, talented, and sagacious son, might not he take his father's place ? Hugh had, as yet, no heir. Rothaida, his first wife, died childless ; Eadhilda, his second wife, died childless ; therefore Hugh was determined to try again a third time : and ere long we shall behold him espoused to a damsel who ranked amongst the noblest princesses of Christendom, one, to whom it should seem, that none but a monarch could aspire.

No portion of Hugh-le-Grand's character was concealed, or could be concealed, from any one amongst the three parties who concurred in the covenant whereby they rendered him the perpetual Tutor of the restored monarch—nominally second in rank to the King, but really the inamovable Protector of the monarchy.—There was no chaffering on the subject, the offer of conditional



936—942

Conjectures as to the causes that induced Athelstane, Ogiva, and Louis, to assent to Hugh-le-Grand's Protectorate.

allegiance was accepted without a moment's further consideration—Athelstane, the British Basileus, Ogiva, the Queen-mother, and Louis the young King, nothing staggered by the amplitude of the concession, all instantly struck the bargain. All three respectively knew full well whom they dealt with : all three knew full well what they dealt for. Athelstane, hitherto so punctilious, and reticent, at the close of the protracted negotiations, which he had managed with exquisite diplomatic caution, had now unhesitatingly allowed the son of King Robert to be clothed with a prerogative, virtually rendering him more than equal to the crowned and anointed sovereign. How great was Hugh-le-Grand ! All the country between Seine and Loire, much of the country between Seine and Meuse, constituted the dominion of the most prosperous Duke of France, the Abbot of St. Denis, the Abbot of St. Germain, the Abbot of St. Martin, or was subjected to his supremacy.—What fence against such an uncle could be found by that youthful king who had not a city, fortress, or stronghold he could call his own, except the rock of Laôn ?

Equally inconsistent with her experience and maternal solicitude, was the course pursued by Ogiva. She had escaped, only by stratagem, with the boy, fearing for his very life, when Charles, her husband, was, by the co-operation of Hugh-le-Grand, lured into the pit-fall: and now, as far as

in her lay, she surrendered her precious child into the power of that most unkind kinsman, who morally was to be reckoned amongst his father's murderers. 896—949

But most unaccountable, if we contemplate the proceedings according to their then present aspect, was the submissive assent yielded by Louis, the principal in the great transaction. According to the usages of the monarchy, this guardianship, even if it had been created in the most mitigated form, was a grievous and unwarranted usurpation. There was no pretence whatever for treating Louis as a minor. At his age, had not his namesake, the hero of the Vimeux, reigned in the plenitude of royal authority?—Sovereigns are born to the knowledge of their station. The baby prince knows it, and graciously stretches out his little hand. Louis grew up in the fullest sense of the rights he ought to possess, revered as an heir apparent,—associated to imperial Athelstane in the affairs of government,—the king,—had he chosen to accept the boon,—of a British kingdom. Therefore we may safely come to the conclusion that all three reckoned the cost, the gain or the loss, whether present or contingent. Indeed, they could not help themselves: under a show of coldness, they were most anxious to recover the succession, and they adopted the only practicable line of conduct. Unless by Hugh-le-Grand's permission,

936—942

Louis could not have entered the kingdom: Hugh-le-Grand had procured the vote which recalled Louis to the throne: Hugh-le-Grand could rescind the vote; therefore they were at his mercy.—It is not difficult to conjecture their intentions and feelings. They gave the promise; but according to the usage of the Gauls, there was no reason why the promise should be kept longer than was convenient. They took their chance, and waited till the way should open. Disunion amongst the nobles was the regular course of affairs: the whole realm was leavened with untruth, cabal and treachery. The inveterate dissensions between the two arch-disturbers of the Realm, Hugh-le-Grand and Herbert of Vermandois, had been lulled for mutual profit, the scarcely dormant feud might be roused at any moment;—then, let King Louis cast off his bonds. He would not lack support: midst the legion of the unprincipled, there was one at least who might be expected to be true;—the young hold to the young: surely gallant Louis might trust the splendid Guillaume Longue-épée.

936—942

Affairs of  
Britanny.

§ 2. Before we proceed further, we must here notice events not directly concerning Louis d'Outremer, but which are to be considered as the supplement of his restoration, very important to the immediate interests of Normandy, and also to the future kingdom of France.

Natural affection instigated magnanimous

Athelstane to urge the recognition, by the French, of his royal sister's royal son.—Generosity, state motives also contributing, induced him to mediate on the part of the Breton refugee Alain,—Alain, truly “Alain Barbe-torte,”—Alain, whose savage aspect was so fully in harmony with his pictorial epithet.—When Alain hunted, he disdained to employ the weapons of the soldier, the sword or the spear, against the brute beasts unworthy to be combated with cold iron;—and he fought bear and boar, swinging and wielding the uprooted tree, fierce as the emblazoned wild-man or *mode-man* of heraldry.

936—942  
 937—943  
 Alain Barbe-torte returns under Athelstane's protection.

Noble-minded Athelstane sought to become the Protector of all the Races inhabiting the British islands.—Towards the Cymri, the English Basileus had behaved generously; he maintained a friendly intercourse with their kindred Breyzad race in Armorica: and, having interceded with Guillaume Longue-épée on behalf of the valiant exile, the representative of Alain-le-Grand was pardoned by the Duke, and permitted to return. The younger Alain, however, was not fully reinstated in the honoured dominion of Alain-le-Grand—Vannes, and the County of Vannes, the Venedotia, the Gwynneth of Armorica, was restored, and homage obediently rendered for the same by the Breton Prince; but all his claims upon peninsular Cornouaille were perpetually barred.—The greater part of that country lost

Vannes restored to Alain, but Cornouaille permanently annexed to Normandy.

936—942 its antient name, and the Breton character was  
 937—948 so thoroughly obliterated by the Norman or  
 Normanized populations, that these districts may  
 almost be reckoned as the very Normandy of  
 Normandy:—the Bruce came from the Côtentin.

Conduct of  
 Alain-  
 Barbe-  
 torte's  
 enterprise.

The Bretons of the lesser Brittany had begun to rally round Alain, ere he departed from the greater Britain. The intercourse was encouraged by Athelstane, who corresponded with the Breton Prelacy. John, the Abbot of famous Landevenech, was amongst the number of those who performed homage to their national Sovereign on antient British ground. A squadron, furnished by King Athelstane, transported the Breton Prince and his adherents across the Channel; but no further aid was given, and Alain was left to assert his claim by the sword, and to re-conquer his land. The Northmen, settled in various parts of Armorica, were bold and numerous, principally on the coasts: it is probable that, amongst them, were many who had freshly arrived from Denmark, particularly the crews of Harold Blaaland. The pacification between Guillaume Longue-épée and Count Alain was ignored by these independent warriors. They knew nothing of the rights expressed or implied by any acts which had passed between Alain and the Duke of Normandy.—Guillaume-Longue-épée might acknowledge Alain Barbe-torte as his vassal; but their honoured Duke did not ask *them* to resign their inherit-

Alain opposed by the Northmen occupying Armorica.

ance, or kneel before the paltry Breton as their Seigneur: the Breton lands had been won by themselves for themselves; the Northmen required no help, they would defend their own. Guillaume Longue-épée had merely permitted Alain to regain Armorica, if he could; and, during the contests which ensued, the Duke did not interfere on behalf of either party.

Unapprised of Barbe-torte's movements, the Northmen were completely off their guard; no sentinels posted at their gates, no mariners on the look-out towards the sea. Had they even known that the Bretons were coming, they would have mocked at such an enemy.—Alain Barbe-torte's small fleet appeared suddenly before Dôl; the Northmen were celebrating a grand bridal, and unquestionably as a bride-ale ought to be, with store of strong liquor. The Bretons landed, fell upon the merry-makers, and effected a good rid-dance; yet their main object was to inspire alarm: therefore they did not occupy the position, but re-embarked, and coasted further on, to Saint-Brieux.—Another surprise, another slaughter; the Bretons began to cancel the bloody scores incurred during many a long year. The Breyzad populations now flocked in from all parts, hailing Alain Barbe-torte; nay, it is said, that in the first moment of enthusiasm, they proclaimed him as their Sovereign.

936—942  
 937—943

Alain  
 Barbe-  
 torte de-  
 feats the  
 Northmen  
 at Dôl and  
 at St  
 Brieux.

The other Breton Counts would scarcely have

936—942 acknowledged such a supremacy: nevertheless  
 the people combating under Alain's commands,  
 937—943 fought sturdily and stedfastly. An universal in-  
 surrection against the Northmen ensued: they  
 abandoned their posts, and the interior country  
 was cleared of them. The Northmen, retreating  
 before the wide-spreading hostility, concentrated  
 their strength upon the banks of the Loire,  
 principally about Nantes. Here they intended  
 to make head against the Bretons, trusting in  
 the reinforcements which they expected from the  
 North, from Ireland, from Great Britain, from  
 Scandinavia. Nantes had been repeatedly burnt,  
 sacked and plundered, nought now remained of  
 the antient City save ruined walls in a wilder-  
 ness. The Northmen fortified themselves nigh the  
 site, and, notwithstanding their recent reverses,  
 they thoroughly despised their Celtic antagonists;  
 but the Bretons were invigorated by the strenu-  
 ousness of their Leader, and they encamped in  
 front of the Danish entrenchments.

The North-  
 men con-  
 centrate  
 their forces  
 about  
 Nantes.  
 They are  
 defeated by  
 the Bre-  
 tons.

The Northmen resenting the defiance given  
 by adversaries, deemed so contemptible, rushed  
 forth and attacked them. The Bretons yielded  
 and fled—rallied—and turned against the assail-  
 ants—the Danes were routed; nevertheless they  
 retreated to their vessels without much loss, and  
 sailed away, but much provoked, and with the  
 full—and ultimately satisfied—desire, of wreak-  
 ing condign vengeance. Alain's first and rightful

impulse conducted him to the Cathedral of Saint Felix, or rather to the vestiges of the Sanctuary, originally of Roman construction. So completely had Nantes been deserted in consequence of the Danish ravages, that the sorrowfully dilapidated edifice was surrounded by a thicket of rank vegetation, and the triumphant Count could not reach the shattered portal, otherwise than by cutting his path with his sword through thorns and briers. Alain Barbe-torte was the re-founder of Nantes. He summoned his Lieges to aid in restoring the walls, and he also built the huge Castle, in which the Dukes afterwards resided. The walls which Alain raised constitute the core of the lofty circuit, now coated by more recent ashlar, upon which you may observe in faint embossments the *Cordeliere* devices of good Duchess Anne, weather-crumbled almost to the level of the field.—Traders were encouraged to resort to Nantes by Alain's wise institutions: ample privileges were granted to the representatives of the old Breyzad nobility: the clergy reaped the fruits of his liberality. The new colonization flourished rapidly on the shores of the ocean-commanding æstuary; and ere Alain died, Nantes had regained her pristine opulence.

Like the Norman Duke, the Breton Count was drawn more and more into connexion with the French monarchy. He entered into amicable relations with Guillaume Tête-d'étoupe, and

936—942

937—943

Nantes re-  
founded by  
Alain  
Barbe-  
torte.



936—942

937—943

943

Alain Barbe-torte obtains the cession from Tête-d'étoupe of certain contested territories south of the Loire.

widened his own borders. South of the Loire, opposite to the Nantois coast, there is a small but important district, over which Bretons and Poitevins asserted a confused domination, contending against each other, to the great profit of their common enemy, the Pagan Danes. Alain Barbe-torte settled these grudges, obtaining advantageous terms. Mauge, Tiffauge, Herbage, and chivalrously sounding Clisson, being the four Seigneuries confirmed to him by Tête-d'étoupe, were united to the County of Nantes, together with the adjoining Poitevin Marches.

Alain's claims upon Anjou amicably settled by his marriage with the daughter of Foulques-le-Roux.

On the side of Anjou, an extensive tract towards the river Mayenne, antiently depending upon Armorica, was claimed by Count Alain. The Angevin Count, Foulques-le-Roux, advanced in years, unwilling to admit the demand, and yet not caring to enter into a contest, proposed that Alain should marry his daughter, the sage Roscilla, and hold the disputed territory as her dowry. The vigorous Alain accepted the land and the faded Lady.—His second wife was a daughter of Blois. We shall hear more about these Princesses hereafter: we must always be observant of Brittany,—Britanny, linked to the destiny of Rollo's inheritance, and the remote, yet efficient cause of that inheritance's loss.

936, 937.

Hugh-le-Grand acquires a portion of Burgundy.

§ 3. Louis was called into activity speedily after his accession.—The station held in the Carolingian Commonwealth by the Burgundian

Dukes or Counts was very illustrious: the individual Princes of Burgundy are sufficiently identified, but the rights or tenures enabling them to exercise their authority are ill defined and obscure. Nor do the laborious historical Enquirers by whom the subject has been discussed,—all at variance amongst themselves,—enable their readers to arrive at any satisfactory conclusion. In tracing the succession of the early Burgundian Potentates we encounter constant conflicts of opinion. Du Cange asserts *this* Count to be hereditary, but Dom Plancher decorously denies any ancestral privilege. Concerning another, there is an argument whether *he* was official and removeable, or official and permanent; whilst the dignity ascribed to a third, is stigmatized as being suppositious or imaginary.

For our present purpose, however, it is sufficient to accept the Dynasts as we find them, *de facto*, immediately after the death of King Raoul.

Counts of Burgundy at the era of Raoul's death...

Hugh-le-Noir, son of Duke Richard-le-Justicier, and the late King's brother, then claimed the superiority, not only of his father's dominions, but of various districts and jurisdictions which had been previously dismembered. Langres was subjected to Hugh-le-Noir, together with the larger portion of the Diocese, so also the City of vintages, rubicund Dijon.

...their rivalities.

Hugh-le-Noir's portion of the Duchy.

Gilbert, the son of Count Manasses, Duke Richard's son-in-law, he with whom Queen Emma

Gilbert's portion.

836—842 had warred, having been reinstated in romantic  
 836—837 Avalon, was also called Duke of Burgundy. His  
 dominions included much of the modern Duchy.  
 Chalons-sur-Saône was held by Gilbert, Mâcon  
 also, the boundaries of his dominion being the  
 rivers Saône and Tille, and that shallow Vienne,  
 whilome choked by the Danish corpses.

Claim of  
 Hugh-le-  
 Grand.

Hugh-le-Grand asserted constitutional pre-  
 tensions, of which the foundation cannot be ascer-  
 tained, to the whole Duchy, either in supremacy  
 or in demesne; but he now sought to prevail by  
 shifting his ground. It was affirmed, that, upon  
 the death of King Raoul, the Duchy of Burgundy  
 had escheated to the Crown, and was conse-  
 quently in the King's gift.—The first employ-  
 ment therefore which Hugh-le-Grand made of his  
 vastly influential position was, to render his royal  
 Pupil the instrument through whose agency he  
 could gain the much envied possession. Louis,  
 progressing through his kingdom for the purpose  
 of accepting the acknowledgments of his subjects,  
 advanced into Burgundy, his Guardian by his side.  
 Nobles and people, upon the approach of the  
 Sovereign, crowded to take the oath of fealty.  
 But there was one inimical defaulter. Hugh-le-  
 Noir, who had been summoned to appear, ap-  
 peared not; and when Louis and Hugh-le-Grand  
 came before Langres, the gates were closed.

936  
 Surrender  
 of Langres  
 to Louis  
 and Hugh-  
 le-Grand.

This was a useless act of disobedience: after  
 a brief but vigorous defence made by the garri-

son—for the inhabitants were loyal,—Hugh-le-Noir abandoned the Place; hostages, selected by the Bishops and Nobles of Burgundy, were sent to Paris: the young King was loudly and loyally welcomed by the citizens; Langres was his own. —By the King's assent, however, Hugh-le-Grand received the City, which he occupied. Henceforward, the son of King Robert must be reckoned as a Duke of Burgundy; so that there were now three concurrent Dukes or Counts of Burgundy, Duke Hugh-le-Grand, Duke Hugh-le-Noir, and Duke Gilbert, all claiming under diverse rights. Hugh-le-Grand subsequently concluded a treaty with Hugh-le-Noir: they agreed upon a partition of territory, and the transaction was confirmed by the King.

§ 4. Hugh-le-Grand thus gained his immediate object; but his success disclosed the weak points of his political position. Had it not been for the young King's co-operation, Hugh-le-Grand would have failed. Duke Gilbert would have defied him from mountainous Avalon, and destroyed all his enjoyment of the garners and wine-vats. Powerful as Hugh-le-Grand was, the fact became evident to the world, that he could not have won his Burgundian Dukedom otherwise than through the young King's aid. His installation was the sequel of the King's *joyeuse entrée*. The Tutor was indebted to the Infant: the Guardian had to lean upon the arm of his Ward.

936—942

936—937

936—937

Vigour of  
the young  
king's go-  
vernment.

936—942

936

Notwithstanding the length and breadth of Hugh-le-Grand's dominions, it seems that he could not raise forces adequate for the expedition. Historical theory ascribes more potency to feudality (at least at this æra) than can be authentically verified by existing evidence. The lithographs of the "Feudal Castle," with which popular history is interleaved, exhibit grander aspects than the battlements would have displayed had we approached them on their own ground. Precise information escapes us when we endeavour to ascertain the actual composition of such a feudal muster as would have been marshalled by Hugh-le-Grand. We cannot form any clear notions of the power possessed by the "Dux Francorum" over his lieges in the Duchy of France. Neither is it easy to answer the question, whether the *Fideles* holding the lands of Saint Martin were bound to follow their redoubtable Abbot when, clad in mail, he rode from the banks of Loire to the foot of the Jura hills.

But, with respect to the King, the case is otherwise.—The King's name was a tower of strength. The Crown imparted to Louis all the prerogatives, whether Roman or Teutonic, which had appertained unto his progenitors. The King was Imperator: none denied the King's right to summon the *arrière-ban*: none but the King could summon the *arrière-ban*. In the worst of times the summons was obeyed. We have seen

Influence  
of the  
King.

how cheerfully the Lieges responded to the call of Charles-le-Simple, even after his dethronement. The success which attended the young Louis, when, in the language of chivalry, he won his first spurs at Langres, gave him confidence in his own powers. His personal influence was very pervading. In consequence of the steady adherence to traditional jurisprudence, there was absolutely no mode of obtaining a good legal title to a Benefice or a Fief, except through the King, as the channel of conveyance. No territorial Honour was perfected without the Royal confirmation. Even in the most disturbed state of society, mere possession is not satisfactory, unless when accompanied by some shew of right. A Charles or a Louis might be affronted, despised, defeated, degraded; yet, unless the King took up the pen and subscribed his elaborate monogram to the Charter or Precept of Saisine, engrossed by the royal Notarius, countersigned by the same high Officer, and displaying the royal Seal, the Count was not at ease.

936-942

936-937

Royal prerogatives, their importance.

These instruments were not issued as a matter of course: the King might delay, demur, nay, refuse; therefore the Lieges throughout the Realm had a direct interest in courting the King. The people at large admired the fine young warrior. All these advantages were appreciated by Louis. Deliberately and silently, feeling his aplomb, knowing his own prerogatives, he de-

936—942 terminated, or most probably had determined from  
 the beginning, to cast off the incubus as soon  
 937 as the opportune hour should arrive.

The young Louis vaulting into the saddle, and keeping his seat on the curvetting steed, typified by that action the spirit which animated him when he received the Crown. Gallant, ardent, energetic, cheerful, daring, full of resources, dreading nothing, hoping for all; but discreetly adapting himself to circumstances, not taking his leap too soon—and therefore at the commencement of his reign fully conforming himself to Hugh-le-Grand.

In his public instruments Louis proclaimed the Duke as the acting Viceroy.—“Hugo dilectissimus noster et Francorum Dux, qui est in omnibus Regnis nostris secundus a nobis.”—But, though thus styled the second in the government, the treaty of Boulogne by which Louis bound himself always to obey the advice of Hugh, virtually rendered the Duke of France the Premier of the Realm: and Louis endured the subjection very patiently. Without making any discernible preparation for the *coup d'état*, or exhibiting any token of impatience, he waited till towards the close of the first year of his reign; and then, declaring the Protectorate void, he entered upon the full exercise of his royal authority. Louis relied entirely upon his own wit and means. No Prelate was summoned to aid by his wisdom.

937  
 Louis releases himself from the protectorate of Hugh-le-Grand.

He canvassed not for supporters amongst his great Lieges in France. Athelstane's fleet would have filled the channel at his demand; but Louis sought no succour from beyond the seas. The only mortal to whom he turned was his mother, Ogiva, affectionate and wise, who came over from England; and, until Louis was happily enabled to win a still nearer and more intimate confidante, continued his chief adviser and friend.

To be free for action, it was of the highest importance that Laôn should be placed under the most trustworthy keeping, so that the King's place might be supplied when he should be absent. Laôn was the only gem of the diadem which remained in its socket. It was the fate of Laôn to be the theatre of female prowess. Raoul could confide the City of the rock to none but his unwearied Emma.—On behalf of wily Vermandois, the fortress had been boldly defended by Hermengarda. The Damoyseau Louis found as able a *Lieutenant* in his English mother; and to her he gave the command of that famous stronghold, whence, fourteen years before, she had escaped, concealing him by that odd stratagem, of which he loved to tell. Henceforward we behold the young Louis as King, having to contend against the ceaseless faithlessness, malice, and falsity of those who were bound to him by allegiance, duty, and consanguinity. Defrauded, troubled, harassed, and betrayed, Louis nobly vindicated his station.

936—942

987

Ogiva recalled from England.

Command of the City of Laôn entrusted to her by Louis.



936—942 He seemed destined to renovate the decaying Car-  
 lovingian lineage, by his resolution, his prowess,  
 937—938 his quick, varied, and versatile talent.

§ 5. Hugh-le-Grand forthwith proceeded to organise his plans for recovering his vicarial supremacy. Whatever title he bore, the *Dux Francorum* steadily pursued his intent of being as much of a king as was possible, consistently with the non-assumption of the Crown; and he efficaciously, though cautiously, began to collect his party—a process to be effected, fully as much by the conciliation of enemies as by acquiring friends. Hostility against Louis was the main-spring of this combination, not affection towards Hugh; and we shall see the confederates emerging, when, and as the opportunities arose for annoying the King.

937—938  
 Hugh-le-Grand's  
 plans for  
 assailing  
 the King.

The first with whom Hugh concluded an alliance was Herbert of Vermandois. It was a forcible evidence of the power which still adhered to the Crown, that these rivals, so cordially hating each other, were compelled to coalesce for the purpose of making head against the lad of sixteen, who had but one city he could call his own;—a shame thus to plot and intrigue against a woman and a boy; but no feeling of conscience or humanity ever enfeebled their hearts. The opposition lately raised by Hugh-le-Grand during the settlement of the succession, when he had so energetically promoted the King's cause, testified

his animosity against the adverse Count of Vermandois. He had extolled Louis, lauded him, advocated the Restoration as the only safe course; his present conduct was an emphatic recantation: Hugh-le-Grand, turning against the King whom he had brought in, was performing the *amende honorable* to his opponent; and Herbert could do nothing better than accept the compromise.

During the late reign, Herbert's schemes had not, on the whole, satisfied his expectations: he had profited scantily by all the exertions he had made to gain the Archbishopric of Rheims. The archbishopling, "Hugo Parvulus," had been ejected from the See: and of all the vast temporalities, the custody whereof had been granted to Herbert, he was only able to preserve Coucy, held under him by Bernard de Senlis, the good uncle of Guillaume-Longue-épée:—a noble domain certainly, yet only a morsel of what he coveted.

In like manner Herbert had failed to obtain Laôn; but now, all his thwarted projects revived. Although Herbert had been kept out of the City, he contrived to retain possession of the *Chateau-Galliot*, built on the slope of the rock; and he had increased the fortifications of that stronghold, so annoying to the Crown. From this commanding point he could always distress, and perhaps re-acquire the great object of contention. "Hugo Parvulus," as he grew up, had been going on well: he was now a young tonsured clerk,

936—942

937—938

Balance of  
loss and  
gain in the  
political  
affairs of  
Herbert of  
Vermandois.

936—942 well disposed; and during his enforced retire-  
 937—938 ment from the archiepiscopal dignity, had im-  
 proved by his education. Disgracefully irregular  
 had been the acts of those who intruded him,  
 yet Hugo Fitz Herbert was not so incongruous  
 a candidate as when he commenced his prelati-  
 cal career.

Herbert of  
 Vermandois allies  
 himself to  
 Hugh-le-Grand  
 against  
 Louis...

Whilst the many feathers to be plucked from  
 the young King, would instigate Herbert to co-  
 operate with the discarded Protector; yet there  
 was, as before, a still more vehement stimulus  
 inciting the Count to trouble Louis—to diminish  
 his authority, nay, if possible, to deprive him  
 wholly of power, and perhaps not even to stop  
 there. Herbert could not wash himself clean  
 from the blood of King Charles. The dread of  
 retribution had caused him to obstruct the resto-  
 ration of the young son; and, by Ogiva's recal, he  
 was exposed to the bitter vengeance of a widow.  
 The question might, to Herbert, be a matter of  
 life or death.

Herbert of  
 Vermandois com-  
 mences his  
 operations.

§ 6. Herbert first raised the standard of re-  
 volt. His forces were small, and he began his  
 operations, judiciously, with reference to the  
 future expansion of his dominions, and charac-  
 teristically, by tricking a deceiver. The Cham-  
 paign of Rheims, the "*Campania Remensis*,"—  
 a most appropriate descriptive denomination of  
 the region,—an extension of the plains of Flan-  
 ders,—but not yet employed politically as desig-

nating a province—was protected against Count Herbert on the Vermandois border by the *Castrum Theodorici*—Château Thierry,—now best recollected as the birth-place of the inimitable Fabulist,—which Louis had entrusted to his liege-man, Gualo, or Walo. Herbert's profuse promises induced the Commander to betray his duty. Gualo became Herbert's Man; taking the oath, and placing his hands between Herbert's hands. Gualo ordered the King's troops away from the Castle, and, on Saint Valentine's day he opened the gate for Herbert and his forces. Gualo expected to be well rewarded, and confirmed in his post; but, as soon as the Count of Vermandois was in possession, he spurned away the serviceable traitor with ferocious contempt. Gualo, fettered and chained, was cast into the dungeon; where, for aught we know, he continued during the remainder of his life. Herbert, through this occupation of Château Thierry, obtained the City of Troyes and all the "*Campania Remensis*," which, under his potent sway, was speedily developed into the magnificent County of Champagne.

936—942  
937—938  
14 Feb. 937.  
Surprise of  
Château  
Thierry.

Herbert  
founds the  
County of  
Champagne.

Herbert and his lineage held Champagne during three generations, until some time after the accession of the Capets, when the Grand Fief passed from the House of Vermandois to the House of Blois; and the Counts having received or assumed the Palatine title, were also elevated to the high estate of the Douze-Pairs.

936—942

937—938

937  
March—  
October.  
A great  
Magyar in-  
vasion.

But the civil war was suddenly staid. The day when Herbert's troops entered Château Thierry, was a marked Saint Valentine's day: for, on the night of that day, ere faint daylight broke, the north-eastern sky blazed resplendent with undulating flames. A great calamity was anticipated; and, very shortly afterwards, the Magyars, having crossed the Rhine at Worms, poured in like a flood, spreading themselves all over Belgic Gaul, and all over Celtic Gaul, all down into Aquitaine. The country was dreadfully ravaged: the depredations perpetrated by these insatiate Tartars were minor evils compared with their cruelties;—priests stripped stark naked and shot at, as marks;—innumerable captives starved to death. Louis sustained deep humiliation from the indignities and injuries thus inflicted upon his kingdom; but, unaided and pestered, he could not oppose the barbarians. The Magyars, when they had done their worst, rushed away through Italy, carrying off multitudes of prisoners, who merged in the mixed population of Arpad's kingdom, where they settled peaceably: the fierce Magyars, so ferocious whilst pursuing their invasions, were rudely hospitable in their own land.

937, 938  
Louis en-  
deavours to  
bring the  
realm into  
good order.

§ 7. As soon as France was relieved from the presence of the hideous *Ogres*, Louis concentrated his energies with the wise intention of reducing the Kingdom into good order. One example of his strenuousness deserves particular

notice. Serlo, the Seigneur of Montigny in the  
 Soissonais, levied black mail all around his castle ;  
 a circumstance somewhat novel. These preda-  
 tory barons, tearing open the Merchant's pack and  
 emptying the Traveller's purse—personages so  
 prominent in the *Tableaux du Moyen Age*—rarely  
 present themselves in the pages of our Benedic-  
 tine folios. Serlo's example might, however, en-  
 courage others to perpetrate the like outrages.  
 Louis determined that his subjects should be com-  
 pelled to appreciate the protection imparted by  
 the Crown. He worked actively with the small  
 forces that he could command. Montigny was  
 stormed by the King, Serlo, delivered over to the  
 executioner, and the noble brigand would have  
 lost his head, had not Archbishop Artaldus in-  
 terceded. Louis banished the robber, whose life  
 was spared ; but he demolished the robber's nest,  
 razing Montigny to the ground. It is interesting  
 to observe the able stroke of policy carried out,  
 ages afterwards, by Richelieu, and so redolent of  
 absolute monarchy,—the humiliation of the no-  
 blesse by the abatement of their châteaux,—  
 taking its commencement under a reign when the  
 resources of Royal authority were so slender.

936—942

937—938

Serlo de  
 Montigny  
 the bri-  
 gand.

Louis had next to deal with a far mightier  
 wrong-doer. Count Herbert was burrowing his  
 way into the Archbishop's territories of Rheims.  
 He still held Corbigny. Louis attacked the Place,  
 and Archbishop Artaldus again enjoyed the grati-

936—942

937—938

fiction of interceding on behalf of his enemies : the Vermandois garrison would have been harshly treated, had they not been permitted, through the Archbishop's intercession, to depart in peace. Herbert continued his depredations ; but Louis was enforced to leave the neighbourhood, important state-duties calling him elsewhere.

Defection  
of Guill-  
laume  
Longue-  
épée also.

Another and most formidable foe suddenly discloses himself—The Duke of Normandy, that Guillaume Longue-épée, recently so zealous in supporting the King's right to the throne, rises up also as a Leader amongst the insurgents.—Hugh-le-Grand and Herbert of Vermandois might quote abundance of grudges and quarrels, and recollections of grudges and quarrels, past and present, ancestral and personal. Had these potentates continued patient and self-denying under the provocations given through the boldness of the young King, and the opportunities which his conduct offered, they would have contradicted all the precedents afforded by their respective political careers.—Had they consistently kept their oaths and promises they would have been inconsistent ; truth to Louis, would have been untruth to themselves.

With respect to Guillaume Longue-épée, the case was otherwise. He was not merely the King's subject, but the King's friend—and that *he*, the young, the gallant Duke, so renowned on account of the eminent part he had taken in the

restoration, should join the Capetian confederacy, <sup>936—942</sup>  
 is an act of outrageous political profligacy which <sup>937—938</sup>  
 comes upon us by surprise. No previous move-  
 ment towards the insurrectionary party is re-  
 corded, no reason assigned. Whether ignorant of  
 the cause or ashamed of the act, the French and  
 the Norman historians maintain, on these points,  
 equal silence. It may be offered as an hypothesis,  
 that Guillaume yielded to the influence exercised  
 over him by the Vermandois family.—A father-in-  
 law alone, Count Herbert by himself Count Her-  
 bert, could not perhaps have effected much with  
 such a son-in-law as the Norman. Herbert's  
 daughter, Guillaume's consort, brilliant Liutgarda,  
 might be more persuasive. But since we must  
 needs resort to conjectures, we shall prefer the  
 supposition that Guillaume Longue-épée, when  
 making this bold step in the path of treason,  
 followed the suggestions of his trusty Verman-  
 dois uncle, old Bernard de Senlis, to whom he  
 had planned fleeing for assistance, whilst scared  
 out of his wits during the Riulph rebellion.

Bernard de  
 Senlis, first  
 Count of  
 Couci.

Bernard was now, through Count Herbert's  
 grant, in possession of Couci, wrenched from the  
 See of Rheims. Bernard is reckoned as the first  
 Count of Couci. Learned Ducange denies this  
 fact, which the Vermandois Genealogists maintain,  
 —these contests sport amidst the ponderosities of  
 archæology. But, as we have seen, Archbishop  
 Artaldus was a bold soldier, not at all willing



936—942

937—938

to allow the spoliation of his temporalities; and, if King Louis gained strength, he would assuredly aid the Prelate to recover the domain; therefore Bernard de Senlis, for the purpose of diverting the assault, might be well inclined to engage his Norman nephew on the Capetian side. As for Guillaume Longue-épée's violation of his engagements to King Louis, he was kept in countenance by every noble with whom he sat down at meat. There was not any one who had not done the same, or was not ready to do the same: and the Husband who had so cruelly broken the pledge given to his first love, the Woman of his choice, the Mother of his child, was scarcely likely to feel any acute twinge of conscience when deserting his Sovereign.

Arnoul of  
Flanders  
asks the aid  
of Louis.

Amongst the Princes of the Kingdom, Arnoul of Flanders was, at this juncture, the only lay individual of note who adhered with apparent earnestness to the Royal cause—probably because he required the young Sovereign's aid: and not merely for the troops which Louis might furnish, but valuing his advice as a general, who, young as he was, had, whilst in England, attained a precocious military proficiency: skilled in attack, skilled in defence, and, moreover, a clever contriver of ordnance and artillery.

Northern Picardy, from Boulogne eastward, was then still a country of the *Vlaemsche taal*. In Calais, now so thoroughly French, the Belgic

tongue does not seem to have been entirely effaced by the Romane, until after the period when that Town, originally included in the County of Boulogne, had passed to Philippe Hurepel, (the son of Philippe-Auguste,) husband of the Countess Maud. Great privileges did the Countess grant unto the Calais Burghers and the Calais Magistracy. Her Charter, and her confirmation of their Keuren, or statutes, may be found amongst our records in the Tower. At Calais, I have often fancied the grave and sturdy Keurmannen and Scheppenens, processioning into the Hotel de Ville, when hearing the strike-up of the tinkling carillon of Maud's merry chiming Beffroy-bells. To the south-west of Calais, the sandy coast is now desolate and inhospitable; but, in the tenth century, and indeed, till a much later era, it offered to the mariner, about nine miles South-West from Calais, a noble harbour, opening into the wide sea, a peculiarly safe and easy place of landing, and, therefore, even at comparatively recent times, much favoured as a point of embarkation between France and England.

An antient encampment, known in the middle ages as the *Castellum Cæsaris*, crowning an adjoining mount, commemorated, nay, now commemorates, the occupation of the locality by the Romans. The most critical amongst French topographers identifies this Harbour with the renowned *Portus Iccius*. In addition to other arguments in sup-

936—942

987—988

Witsand or  
Wissant,  
the antient  
*Portus*  
*Iccius*—  
changes of  
the coast.

936—942

937—938

port of his opinion, he appeals to Cæsar's Castle. The name imposed or adopted by the conquerors of the Gauls was, however, disused by the inhabitants; and the Haven acquired in the vernacular dialect, the very intelligible denomination of *Wit-sant*, suggested by the blanched aspect of the shores. But, since the fifteenth century, the *white sands* have choked up the sheltering bay, and rendered its pristine existence merely an historical tradition. Cæsar's camp, however, still exists, and the hamlet of *Wissan*, which indicates the position of the obliterated sea-port, stands idly inland, at the distance of about four miles from the salt water.

Arnoul applies to Louis to strengthen the fortifications of Witsand.

Very earnest was Arnoul to strengthen this position, so inviting to the access of any adventurous enemy; and he invoked the talent of the young Louis to direct the erection of further fortifications, which consisted most probably of stockades or other similar additions to the Roman lines. Louis began the works, but he was speedily called off for the relief of Archbishop Artaldus. The Archbishop had just completed a Castle upon the Marne. Herbert, expert in the arts of corruption, obtained possession thereof: and, there entrenched, disturbed the Rhemish territory.

Siege and capture of Herbert's castle at Laón.

Louis determined, at once, to humble the Count. He must, if possible, relieve himself from that thorn in his side, Count Herbert's Castle on the slope of the rock of Laón. The fortress was

fully manned, and very massy. Louis invested the Tower. The attack was commenced by artillery; bows and arrows made no impression: Louis thereupon adopted another and more scientific mode of attack. He constructed a large testudo, strongly compacted of timber. From the minute description given of this machine, we may collect that such contrivances were objects of curiosity, new and strange in France. Propelled close up against the Castle, the well-framed roof resisted the stones cast down by the besieged. The walls were undermined and fell. The garrison surrendered at discretion, an exploit whereby Louis gained much renown. These operations, together with various skirmishes and military movements, so comminuted that it is difficult to take note of them, occupied more than a year. The utmost extent of territory traversed by the belligerent parties may have been some fifty leagues: yet, it is in appearance only, that these transactions can be denominated petty or inconsiderable, for, in them, the whole continuity of French history—Kingdom, Republic, or Empire—is involved. It is the magnitude of the ultimate stake which we have to consider, not the breadth of the board upon which the game is played.

§ 8. French historians do not afford any direct explanation of the motives inducing Arnoul to labour so earnestly for the protection of Witsant. But the fortifications erected to guard that conve-

936—942  
 937—938

938  
 Affairs of  
 Flanders.

936—942 nient Northern harbour, imply the dread of some  
 maritime invader. The territory which included  
 937—938 Witsant, belonged nominally to the Abbey of  
 Saint Bertin: but whilst the Monks performed the  
 religious services in consideration whereof the  
 grant had originally been made, the land itself  
 was appropriated by Count Arnoul.—The lay  
 Abbot, however, did not enjoy his benefice quietly,  
 being much disturbed in his possession by the  
 Northmen.

Siegfrid  
 the Dane,  
 the first  
 Count of  
 Guisnes.

Siegfrid, the brother of some Danish king, had  
 overspread the country: the great conflagration  
 of Danish warfare had been renewed in England:  
 and Siegfrid may have been, so to speak, a brand  
 darted from the British Islands. The monks of  
 Saint Bertin cared not to bear record of Siegfrid's  
 achievements, and the negligence of the cotem-  
 porary Clergy in this respect, was lamented and  
 censured by their successors, who, three centuries  
 afterwards, sought to recover the scattered remi-  
 niscences of local history.

The Guisnes annals commence with ugly inci-  
 dents. Siegfrid, it is said, having abused Elstruda,  
 a Princess of Flanders, hanged himself to escape  
 her kinsmen's vengeance.—A Danish warrior, a  
 Viking, or a Berserker, when insurmountable  
 danger drove him to despair, would surely have  
 fallen on his own sword, rather than condemn  
 himself to a death so disreputable.—But the main  
 facts relating to Siegfrid are well attested. He

became the first Count of Guisnes: his son Ardolf inherited the small, but distinguished domain, renowned for minstrelsy and chivalry. Ardres was included in the County of Guisnes: and the *Champ du Drap d'Or* continued in Siegfried's lineage till the thirteenth century, when the "Grand Fief" was transferred, by a series of transactions, austere, if not unjust, to the illustrious house of Brienne.

It is possible that, during the conflicts which preceded, or were occasioned by the establishment of this dominion, Arnoul may have fringed the coast with his forces, seeking to prevent any further immigrations of Danes.—The Count of Flanders, who held the ample Principality granted to his renowned grandfather Baudouin Bras-derfer, upon the express condition of protecting the Carolingian Empire against the Pirates, was bound to employ this vigilance. The conquest effected by Siegfried must have been grievous to Arnoul, equally a detriment and a disgrace. Friendship, may at one period, have subsisted between Arnoul and Siegfried; but political amity is in no wise inconsistent with much antecedent as well as subsequent hostility. It is, however, equally probable, and the general bearing of events rather corroborates this hypothesis, that the fortifications were intended for the defence of the country against Guillaume Longue-épée. The husbands of the two Vermandois sisters were becoming bitter enemies.

986-942

988

Results of  
the Danish  
conquest of  
Guisnes.

936-942

938

§ 9. Riulph was slain, but after the discomfiture of the Norman insurgents in the Pré de la Bataille, Arnoul had patronized his cause, not only by harbouring Balzo the Rebel's kinsman, but by advancing him to station and honour. Had the Count of Flanders laboured to excite the apprehensions and insult the feelings of his brother-in-law, he could not have devised a more stinging provocation. This was probably the originating cause of the quarrel, and Guillaume Longue-épée commenced hostilities against Flanders with the aid of Hugh-le-Grand, the latter having been angered by Count Arnoul's adhesion to the king.

Guillaume  
Longue-  
épée at war  
with Count  
Arnoul.

Guillaume Longue-épée's first attempts were directed to the sea-board; and it is this circumstance which suggests the supposition that the fortifications, projected at Witsand, were intended to prevent the landing of Rouen forces from Eu on the Brêle, or from Fécamp river. The Norman ravaged all around Boulogne, Terouenne, and Sithieu, or St. Omer's. Had Guillaume Longue-épée still been a Pagan Dane, he could not have punished the country with greater severity. Herbert, on his part, continued the turmoil, more particularly for the purpose of annoying the King, devastating the territory of Rheims. Count Herbert was anathematized by the Bishops. Guillaume Longue-épée was involved in the same censures; but, whether because he had committed his outrages during some solemn season, so as to

occasion peculiar scandal, or whether, like his father-in-law, he had plundered some ecclesiastical possessions, does not appear. Anyhow, the offenders took no heed of the excommunications, deriding bell, book, and candle.

Louis, hitherto supported only by Arnoul, had now acquired the aid of Hugh-le-Noir, the coparcener Duke of Burgundy, whom he had ejected from Langres in favour of Hugh-le-Grand. The son of King Robert was their common enemy, and the peculiar despite entertained by Hugh-le-Noir against Hugh-le-Grand, rendered him the more active in co-operating with Louis. Conjoining their forces, they marched against Hugh-le-Grand and Guillaume Longue-épée, and the attacks made upon Arnoul were checked. The Count of Flanders did not immediately retaliate upon the Duke of Normandy; but he adopted a course by which, whether designedly or not, the brothers-in-law were speedily brought into desperate collision.

Helgaud, the Count of Ponthieu,—he who had been slain by the Danes, when they broke out of the wood and stormed the camp of King Raoul,—was now succeeded by his son Count Herlouin, under whose government Montreuil became very prosperous. The convenience of the sea-port attracted a considerable trade; and the duties or tolls, levied upon the vessels which entered the haven and the goods landed there, produced to Herlouin a considerable revenue. Herlouin comes

938—942

938

Affairs of  
Ponthieu.  
Herlouin  
son of  
Count Hel-  
gaud.



938—942 into notice many ways. He had a wife whom  
 938 he loved very dearly; but there was some irregularity, some impropriety, connected with their union.—Possibly when Herlouin espoused this Lady, who is to be noticed in our history, he already had another consort, undivorced, and still living. —Whatever may have been the reason, he was brought to open shame on account of this marriage, and condemned to do penance before the Synod of Trosley.

Ambiguous  
 political  
 position of  
 Herlouin  
 and the  
 Counts of  
 Ponthieu.

Herlouin's political position was dubious. Ponthieu, in some respects, appears as an appendage to Baudouin Bras-de-fer's Marquisate—but Herlouin had commended himself to Hugh-le-Grand, thereby annexing the Honour to the Duchy of France. The Northmen, at an earlier period, and the Normans in later times, had much connexion with Ponthieu: the territory, interposed between Normandy and Flanders, might be rendered advantageous or troublesome to either Sovereign.

Moreover, the profits arising from the frequent resort of traders and merchant-vessels were attractive to Arnoul, who, in his own proper dominions, was beginning to appreciate the advantages of commercial prosperity. The sharp ascent of the hill, the strength of the Castle, the precipitous fosses, the thick-set stockades, rendered Montreuil very defensible, and Arnoul found it more expedient to attempt a capture

by intrigue, than by force of arms. Over and above the real advantages of avoiding a doubtful and perilous conflict, the fraudulence was tempting. The excitement of overreaching an enemy always rendered such attempts a species of game. One of Herlouin's most trusted Captains was threatened or bribed into compliance. As the story goes, a secret Messenger, dispatched by Arnoul, made the overture symbolically. The emissary displayed two rings—a golden ring and an iron ring—inviting the Castle-Warden to choose. The torch, held high over the battlements by the Confederate, announced the unguarded hour. The gate had been opened. Arnoul's troops rushed in, and Montreuil was gained: Herlouin escaped; but his Wife and family fell into the power of the enemy. Arnoul sent them across the water to England; and Athelstane, pursuant to his request, detained the lady and the children in captivity. Strange, that our magnanimous Basileus should consent to perform the office of Count Arnoul's jailor! Yet, such was his compliance; and Herlouin mourned for the prisoners as those whom he should never see again.

936—942  
 938

Arnoul  
 takes  
 Montreuil  
 by stratagem.

Herlouin repeatedly craved assistance from his Seigneur, the Duke of France. But he obtained neither help, nor promise of help. Hugh-le-Grand declined an interference, which might have embarrassed him in his further enterprizes: thus

936—942 rejected by his Liege-lord, Herlouin turned to the Norman Patrician, earnestly praying his succour.

987—988  
Guillaume  
Longue-  
épée re-  
captures  
Montreuil.

Guillaume Longue-épée, to whom few gratifications could be more welcome, than any opportunity of plaguing his brother-in-law, was as anxious to engage in the enterprize as Hugh-le-Grand had been to avoid it. He accepted the championship of the despoiled Count. Alain Barbe-torte sent his contingent; the combined forces of Normandy and Brittany invested the town; the Côtentin men began the assault, boldly plucking up the palisades. Guillaume Longue-épée was foremost in the storming-party. Count Arnoul's garrison was overpowered; and the prisoners, thus taken, were so numerous as to enable Guillaume to negotiate, by their exchange, the restoration of the beloved ones whom Herlouin had lost. Arnoul, however, though deprived of Montreuil, invaded the Ponthieu country, which he ravaged. But Herlouin defeated him. To Arnoul, the loss of Montreuil, mainly occasioned by Guillaume Longue-épée's interference, was an extreme mortification. If the small, but repeated, causes of vexation, for which proximity affords so much opportunity amongst relations, act so mischievously by accumulation, how much more do serious injuries? Arnoul's hatred became inveterate; and, though occasionally concealed, the bitterness continued encreasing till the very last.

§ 10. About one month after the inauguration of Louis at Laôn, Otho, whom history honours by the epithet of "the Great," received, pursuant to his father's appointment, the German Crown.

Of the four sons left by Henry the Fowler, three, namely, Thankmar, Otho, and Henry, were competitors for the German Realm. The natural privilege of primogeniture designated the bold and energetic Thankmar as Henry's successor, nor would he have discredited the royal dignity: but the heartless pretences which had enabled the departed Monarch, availing himself of his own wrong, to cast off the tender and confiding Hathburga, also deprived Thankmar of his position in Christian society. Born under the full sanction of holy matrimony, their Child was adjudged illegitimate. The retrospective operation assigned to the sentence which dissolved the marriage between Thankmar's Mother and her fickle Husband, under any aspect a rigid construction of the law, was wrested into positive injustice. Not merely had Thankmar lost his Father's Kingdom, but, a large private inheritance, which unquestionably ought to have devolved upon him through his maternal ancestry, was withheld.

Henry, the third son, asserted a right paramount to the claims preferred by either of his senior brethren. Bold Thankmar, as Henry argued, was absolutely out of court—he could not be heard—a bastard, declared to be spurious

936—942

936—938

Death of  
Henry the  
Fowler: his three  
elder sons,  
Thankmar,  
Otho, and  
Henry, (see  
pp. 22—23)  
competi-  
tors for the  
kingdom.

Henry the  
Porphyro-  
genitus.

936—942 by the solemn decree of a competent tribunal.  
 Otho was fully admitted by Henry to be the eldest son of *Henry, Duke of Saxony*,—let Otho therefore have his due, the Dukedom of Saxony belonged to him; but it was equally undeniable that he, the younger Henry, was the eldest son of *Henry, King of Germany*. Henry, the Porphyrogenitus, though a younger son relatively to Otho, was the eldest son of royal blood, first born after the accession of *Duke Henry* to the Throne of Charlemagne, the first-born of *Henry King of Germany*; and consequently, to him, the first-born son of a crowned King and a crowned Queen, did the royalty appertain.

Thankmar  
 claims by  
 primogeni-  
 ture.

Matilda, the Queen Dowager, affectionately supported the young Henry in his demands; parental fondness strengthening her sincere impression of their abstract justice. The doctrine of *Porphyrogenitism*, congenial to popular sentiment, and not without some foundation in principle, prevailed influentially and widely in many countries and through many ages: yet, the theory has rarely been consistently acknowledged, so as to impart a definite and constitutional right. In some few instances,—and, amongst them, may we not include the Empire of the Czars?—it has been practically recognized; but, more generally, the pretension has merely tended to excite unnatural contests between brethren. In England, this opinion stimulated Henry Beauclerc to a constant

antagonism against Rufus; and fomented in Germany—the example now before us—a virulent civil war.

936—942  
936—940

Otho, however, commenced his reign without encountering any immediate opposition or objection. Aix-la-Chapelle witnessed the inauguration, celebrated with unprecedented solemnity. —Unable, like Cologne, or Metz, or Treves, to trace her municipal ancestry to the Roman age,—not dignified by an Episcopal chair,—neither remarkable for strength, nor distinguished by opulence,—Aix-la-Chapelle was, nevertheless, honoured as the Capital of Lotharingia. Much celebrity was given to the City by the perennial thermal springs; and some local pride resulted from the legendary traditions of King Granus; but Aix-la-Chapelle's highest consecration was imparted by Charlemagne's memory.

8th Aug.  
936  
Solemn inauguration of Otho at Aix-la-Chapelle.

Charlemagne's columned Hall,—the Hall adjoining the Sanctuary,—conducting to the Catacomb,—exhibited the most affecting and solemn combination of grandeur—holiness—and death.—In this Hall, the Prelates and Nobles assembled. Homage was performed by the Lieges, who placed their hands between the hands of Henry the Fowler's Son. Otho then proceeded into the orbicular Temple, of which the model had been sought in Byzantine Ravenna: the encircling galleries were crowded by the Clerisy and Laity, to whom he was presented, and who, raising high

936—942 their opened palms, declared their assent by act  
 and voice, the shouts resounding beneath the  
 936—940 shadowy Dome.

The imperial diadem of Charlemagne, which Henry dared not wear, was placed upon the brow of Otho by Hildebert, Archbishop of Mayence. The two great Lotharingian Prelates, Robert of Treves, and Wicfried of Cologne, contested,—and the last exercised—the privilege of conferring the Sacramental unction.—Then ensued the gorgeous Coronation-banquet; Otho the King, seated at the table of marble-stone, his lovely and pious Queen, the English Editha, by his side. As Duke of Lotharingia and *Reichs-marschall*, Gilbert, the King's brother-in-law, Gerberga's husband, received the Sovereign in the Palace. Everhard, Duke of Franconia, exercised the functions of *Truchsess*, or High Steward, afterwards appertaining unto the Pfaltzgraff of the Rhine; Herman, Duke of Franconia, acted in the capacity of *Reichs-schenk*, or Chief Butler; Arnolph, Lord Harbinger. Gifts were most liberally bestowed on all the guests; and the reverend festival was concluded amidst exuberant hilarity.

936—940  
 Transactions be-  
 tween  
 Germany  
 and France.

§ 11. Germany exercised a powerful influence within the sphere of France; and the accession of this Sovereign was a very important event to Louis, and also to the yet unborn son of Louis after him. Editha, the Queen Consort, was the younger, perhaps the youngest, sister of Ogiva, daughter of

Edward the Elder, sister of glorious Athelstane. 936—942  
 The three great royal families, of England, France 936—940  
 and Germany, were therefore, so far as inter-  
 marriage can tend to constitute affinity, one  
 family. Otho, the compeer of Louis could, like  
 Athelstane, or Hugh-le-Grand, call himself the  
 Uncle of Louis, and become a troublesome in-  
 termeddler, or a powerful friend.

During the preceding reigns, the political  
 relations subsisting between France and Germany  
 had been frigid, and often hostile. Gentler senti-  
 ments now succeeded. Louis, the legitimate  
 sovereign, and Otho the son of Henry the Fowler,  
 seemed, until the excitement resulting from the  
 fresh enjoyment of royalty subsided, to rejoice in  
 mutually acknowledging each other as brothers.  
 The Coronation brought Otho to the confines of  
 France. Courtesy required that the young and  
 kindred Monarchs should exchange congratula-  
 tions; and the Court of Laôn reciprocated with  
 Aix-la-Chapelle. Yet a silent, though not the  
 less intelligible jealousy, really alienated the  
 lineal representative of imperial Charlemagne  
 from the Saxon occupant of Charlemagne's im-  
 perial throne. — Louis, even when his direct  
 dominion was restricted to the Rock of Laôn,  
 even when he lost the Rock of Laôn, never  
 abated one jot of his pretensions. Otho, on his  
 part, aspired to all the glories of the Great Em-  
 peror—Charlemagne's majestic form beckoned

Otho  
 courts  
 Hugh-le-  
 Grand and  
 the discon-  
 tented  
 party.



936—942 him onwards to the distant Capitol: the Eagle  
 was soaring before him.

937—938 The apparently cordial glow of affection, rapidly cooled, and, during the troubles which enveloped Louis, after he had liberated himself from the Protectorate of Hugh-le-Grand, Otho scarcely observed the decorum of neutrality. Cultivating the acquaintance of the French nobles generally, Otho extended his graciousness peculiarly amongst the discontented, or revolting party. With Guillaume Longue-épée, he contracted a firm intimacy: and the Normans, always anxious to obtain any recognition of their Duke's pre-eminence, boasted that there was not a soul amongst the French nobles who stood so high in Otho's favour as Guillaume.

Arnoul of Flanders and Herbert of Vermandois became the adherents of Otho; but the most emphatic enunciation of Otho's sentiments was afforded by his conduct towards Hugh-le-Grand. As soon as Hugh-le-Grand had been ejected from the Protectorate, he immediately sought to counterbalance such weight as Louis might possess in the councils of Otho by reason of family connexion; and, for this purpose, he adopted a course wisely calculated to increase his consequence and political stability. Imperfect is the ideal of power unless accompanied by the element of perpetuation. It is not good, in any sense, for man to be alone,—and Hugh-le-Grand was desti-

tute of the political support which the child im- 936—942  
 parts to the father. The Widower of two wives ———  
 solicited the hand of Hadwisa, or Hadwina, King 937—938  
 Otho's sister, the late King Henry's daughter, and Hugh le  
 the royal Brother gladly assented. The fertile Grand  
 Beauty presented her Consort with the Heir he marries  
 needed, Hugh Capet being the first-fruit of their Hadwisa,  
 marriage. daughter  
 of King  
 Henry the  
 Fowler.

Abstractedly from any project, more or less Difficulties  
 definitely entertained by Otho, for conquering the attending  
 supremacy of *Gallia Romana*—as the Germans Otho's ac-  
 called the Kingdom ruled by Louis,—it was a cession.  
 felicitous contingency that he should be able to  
 support himself towards the Rhine, by the French  
 nobles, whose alliance he had thus gained. Otho  
 was sorely pressed by barbarian hostility, as well  
 as by domestic dissensions. Germany sustained  
 a large proportion of the stripes inflicted by  
 the Magyars, whilst Slaves and Wends shouted  
 their fierce war-cry.

These troubles were serious, yet external, and  
 very bearable when compared with the compli-  
 cated and annoying afflictions and dangers arising  
 out of the fratricidal wars in which Otho was  
 engaged. The sturdy Thankmar, availing himself  
 of the discontents amongst the Franconians, and  
 supported by the Duke Everhard,—he who had  
 presented the golden beaker to King Otho at the  
 Coronation-feast,—asserted his rights as the Saxon  
 Fowler's first and eldest son. But his Brother's

938—942 royal power and royal forces were overwhelming.

The venerated Teutonic Ehresburg, into which

937—938 Thankmar had retreated, surrendered; and Thankmar sought refuge within the Minster, dedicated to the Prince of the Apostles, in Charlemagne's days, by Pope Leo, himself a fugitive.

Thankmar's unsuccessful revolt against his brother.

Thankmar, in the agony of terror and despair, literally embraced the Altar. His pursuers dared not enter the Sanctuary, though their scruples failed to deter them from shooting their arrows at the miserable suppliant, and darting their spears. The missile of Maginzo, a soldier whose name has obtained this evil reputation, transfixed the Victim. When the news was brought to Otho, the King gravely lauded the deceased Thankmar's prowess; deplored his own brother's fate; and sternly condemned the perpetrators of the deed to the gibbet. Thus delivered from a dangerous enemy, whilst he evaded the opprobrium of participation, Otho reaped all the benefit of the crime.

Otho's prudence and courage.

The institutions of the newly-constructed German Realm were, as yet, so rudimentary and imperfect, that the prosperity, nay, possibly the existence of the State, depended upon the Ruler's personal character. Proud, persevering, impelled by high aspirations, and systematizing his future Empire, Otho had proceeded steadily, dangers pullulating after dangers. The Magyars had inflicted poignant sufferings upon Otho's own father-

land. Nevertheless Otho was able, singlehanded, to defeat them; and the chastisements they received from the German King, seem ultimately to have stayed their aggressive invasions. The Bohemian disturbances had, at their commencement, distracted the Sovereign's attention, and exhausted his means. The Sclavonians could not be coerced otherwise than through sharp and strenuous warfare: defeats did not daunt them, they valiantly endeavoured, again and again, to recover their independence. But, like the Celts, they were self-vanquished, internal feuds impeding that unity of action, which could alone have ensured success. The opportunities of rising against their arrogant oppressors were neglected or ill-chosen, and the obstinate conflicts they maintained, were terminated by the confirmation of Teutonic ascendancy.

At the onset, Thankmar's revolt threatened very serious perils, but the storm subsided as suddenly as it had burst forth. All these untowardnesses and conflicts, trying the young Monarch's strength, had evinced his power, or testified his good fortune. Now, however, ensued the insurrection of the Porphyrogenitus, accompanied by concussions which shook the very basis of Otho's throne. Otho, stern and dignified, commanded the obedience and respect of the German Nations, Henry, cheerful and adventurous, won their love. The personal affection existing in favour of Henry,

936—942

987—988

Moral advantages enjoyed by Henry.

936—942

}

937—938

Plots of the  
discontent-  
ed nobles.

—the extended recognition of his rights,—the advocacy given by his pious and conscientious Mother,—all rendered him a formidable rival to his Brother, and peculiarly at the juncture when that Brother was menaced with the loss of the proudest portion of his Realm.

§ 12. The solemn Assembly of the Nobles in Charlemagne's Hall at the recent Coronation, had enabled the many discontented Chieftains of the subjugated nations and vassal kingdoms, to arrange their plots and plans against the Sovereign. In his very presence, they concocted their treasons.—Whilst they were taking the oaths of fealty to Otho they were preparing to violate those very oaths so soon as they could assail him. Such indeed was signally the conduct pursued by Everhard of Franconia, who, with the honors of the banquet fresh upon him, had so strenuously abetted the unfortunate Thankmar in his unhappy enterprise. But, pending that conflict, another great Officer—he who had held the highest room at the festival, possessing far more command, far more ability, far more means of mischief than Everhard, had determined to support the Porphyrogenitus and establish him upon the throne.

Nobles of  
Lothar-  
ingia.

Amongst the nobles of Lotharingia—a region which, since the “eight hundred and eighty-eight,” extended from modern Holland on the North, to modern Alsace on the South—the sons and

family of Rainier au Long-col still continued pre-  
 eminent. Gilbert, the eldest son, "Duke of Lo-  
 tharingia" by the appointment of the late King  
 Charles,—Gilbert the bold swimmer, the success-  
 ful lover, had fully regained his authority, but,  
 though highly qualified for the acquisition of  
 power, he was, through his desperate rashness  
 and versatility, equally unqualified to retain it.

Rainier, the second son of the Founder of the  
 family, had succeeded to the County of Hainault.  
 The epithet "*Long-col*" had become a surname:  
 this second Rainier, also bore the name of "*Long-*  
*col*": a third Rainier, his son, the like. The  
 chronology of these nascent States is very ob-  
 scure, and the three long-necked Rainiers are not  
 always distinguishable from each other. Frederic  
 or Fritheric, a third son of the first Rainier, a  
 monk of Fulda—brother therefore of Duke Gil-  
 bert—had, through his influence obtained the  
 Archbishopric of Mayence. Vast importance ap-  
 pertained to the primatial See of Saint Boniface,  
 though, as yet, uninvested with the gorgeous  
 attributes of an Imperial Principality.—Berenger,  
 Count of Namur, was brought into the circle of  
 this aspiring lineage by his marriage with Sym-  
 phorienne, the first Rainier Long-col's daughter.

The other Chief Estates of Lotharingia, though  
 not so closely connected with the Ducal family, were  
 very formidable.—A large portion of the antient  
 Friesland had then been recently overwhelmed by

936—942

937—938

Pre-emi-  
 nence of the  
 family of  
 Rainier.  
 Long-col  
 and his  
 family.

Other  
 nobles and  
 prelacy of  
 Lotha-  
 ringia.

936-942 the waves : but Thierry, the Count of West Fries-  
 land, or Westergo,—nearly identical with modern  
 937-938 Holland—might threaten Saxony. Not less in-  
 influential, were Thierry's compeers. Otho, Count  
 of Verdun—a man commemorated for the stern  
 justice he had exercised upon his beautiful wife,  
 whom he beheaded when he discovered her to be  
 an adulteress—stood as a stake-holder between  
 Germany and France.—Isaac, Count of Cambrai,  
 commanded the French border.—Extensive do-  
 minions, and high prerogatives and privileges,  
 were possessed by the Lotharingian Sees.—Metz,  
 Toul, and Verdun, emphatically known as the  
 “Trois Evêchés,”—and Strasburg, afterwards so  
 bitterly aristocratic,—and Mayence, and Cologne  
 and Utrecht, whose Prelates were all verging  
 towards the successful achievement of temporal  
 power.

A peculiar curse of enmity clung to Lotha-  
 ringia. From the first erection of the Kingdom,  
 pursuant to the treaty of Verdun, Lotharingia  
 became the incessant source of dissension amongst  
 the children and children's children of the unna-  
 tural and unhappy Son who gave his name to the  
 Sovereignty. As time advanced, a very remark-  
 able sentiment of individuality became developed  
 in the mixed population of the Country:—their  
 desire was to preserve their autonomy without  
 striving for independence. We have seen how  
 resolutely the Lotharingians had refused to con-

cur in the election of Conrad the Franconian, 936-942  
 adhering conscientiously to the Carlovian Line, even at the period when, in the person of Charles-le-Simple, the antient lineage had no other claim for support, except that claim which was bestowed by a generous and uncalculating loyalty.

Subsequent events had partially restored the German ascendancy. Duke Gilbert could not refuse to acknowledge his kind Father-in-law's protecting sovereignty, and Lotharingia was treated by King Henry as an integral member of his Realm.

But a very general disclosure of public opinion now ensued throughout the Lotharingian Kingdom, to the effect that Otho's pretensions, deduced through his father, were tortious. They distinguished between Otho's German title and Otho's Lotharingian title—the first was lawful, the last unlawful. Henry the Fowler had been made King in Germany, for the purpose of defending that country against the Slave and the Magyar; but Lotharingia belonged not to him. His dominion there, was an unjustifiable aggression. He had usurped the antient Kingdom, when the lawful King was wailing in the cradle.

Sympathy  
 of the Lo-  
 tharingians  
 for the  
 Carlovian  
 line.

The happy restoration of the consecrated Dynasty gave new vigour to those congenial sentiments which, never wholly dormant, have been so remarkably revived in our own times. With comparatively few exceptions, the Lotharingian Prelates and Princes, as well as the People, were,

The Lo-  
 tharingians  
 —their love  
 of France.



936—942 more than ever before, under the fascination of  
 938—940 France—earnestly turning their desires towards  
 the young Louis, ardent to accept him as their  
 Sovereign, the foretaste of that feeling which,  
 upon the death of the amiable Stanislaus, re-in-  
 corporated the Duchy of Lorraine with the French  
 monarchy, far more soundly than could have been  
 effected by diplomacy.

Similar  
 tendency of  
 Alsace and  
 "Rhein-  
 Preussen."

Even amongst the present and living gene-  
 rations of the Germans, still inhabiting the wide  
 extent of Rhenane Lotharingia, the same affec-  
 tions have deadened the sympathies of their  
 Teutonic race. They have repudiated their kin-  
 dred and have delighted in their severance from  
 their Fatherland. No Citizen of the Republic,  
 "one and indivisible," has defended that unity  
 and indivisibility more enthusiastically than the  
 Alsatian peasant, who still speaks of going to  
 "Frankreich" when he crosses the antient fron-  
 tier.—Fair France!—how earnestly do all the  
 other weary Provinces of the great boundary-  
 stream yearn for their reunion with thee, from  
 whom they have been separated by power, but  
 not divorced in heart!

Duke Gil-  
 bert's views  
 upon Lo-  
 tharingia.

§ 13. Though the Lotharingians were anx-  
 iously seeking the means of casting off Otho's  
 supremacy, they were not concordant in their  
 ultimate views. Gilbert reverted to his pristine  
 schemes—the Duke of Lorraine, who had re-  
 volted against his benefactor Charles-le-Simple,

was not by any means inclined to submit to Louis. <sup>936-942</sup>  
 Pre-eminent amongst the Lotharingian nobility, <sup>939-940</sup>  
 Gilbert wrought for the purpose of diverting  
 their energies for his own advantage. His alli-  
 ance with Henry was based upon the expectation  
 of mutual profit. Gilbert would assist the Por-  
 phyrogenitus in the vindication of his hereditary  
 rights over Germany, provided the Porphyrogeni-  
 tus, on his part, would be content to surrender the  
 Lotharingian superiority, and consent that Gilbert  
 should rule his Duchy as an independent Mo-  
 narchy. Gerberga was the sister of the Porphy-  
 rogenitus as well as of Otho, and, between his two  
 brothers-in-law, Gilbert might surely urge that he  
 was fully justified in supporting that Son whom  
 the common mother of the competitors deemed  
 to possess the more righteous claim.

Compact  
between  
Henry the  
Porphyro-  
genitus and  
Duke Gil-  
bert.

The majority of the Lotharingians, however, in- <sup>939, 940</sup>  
 clined simply and solely to bestow the crown upon <sup>The Lo-</sup>  
 Louis from beyond the sea; every circumstance <sup>tharingians</sup>  
 combined to induce them to release themselves <sup>invite</sup>  
 from Otho's unpleasing and ungracious domina- <sup>Louis to</sup>  
 tion: and they despatched a deputation inviting <sup>accept the</sup>  
 Louis to reassert his father's claims, and regain <sup>crown.</sup>  
 his own inheritance. Louis hesitated; entertain-  
 ing, as it is surmized, some scruples of conscience,  
 some punctilios of honour. But the Lotharin-  
 gians trusted that the ambition of the Monarch  
 would overcome the ingenuousness of youth; and  
 a second Legation appeared before Louis at Laôn,

938—942 repeating the offer. He had, as the Lotharingians intimated, acted too hastily—let him reconsider the proposal: if he adopted their advice, how greatly would he not advance his glory.—  
 939—940 Louis complied: No declaration of hostilities was made; no Herald defied the enemy; and Otho, utterly unprepared for such an attack, was surprised by the sudden invasion. Louis went forth, boldly as was his wont. A fleet, fitted out by Athelstane for the purpose of aiding his nephew, cruised in the channel, ready to support the French land-forces—the first example of our naval interference in continental affairs. But this co-operation was not required: Otho's troops had withdrawn from the country: and Louis was hailed throughout Lotharingia as the Liberator of the Kingdom.

Henry the  
 Porphyro-  
 genitus  
 assumes the  
 royal au-  
 thority.

During the threatening period, when Otho's Realm seemed to be breaking away on the West, Henry assembled his partizans at Saalfeld in Thuringia. A splendid festival was followed by the proclamation that King Henry's eldest son had assumed his rightful royal authority. His adherents were numerous and enthusiastic; and, with their approbation, he directed his march towards Alsace. Gilbert joined him with some Lotharingian troops. Otho was stationed near the Rhine, at Xanthen, to oppose their passage. A happy accident, improved by Otho's talent and the valour of his soldiers, enabled him to

resist the assailants: and, crossing the river, he entered Lotharingia, laid siege to Gilbert's strong fortress of Chevreumont, and devastated the country with fire and sword. Yet Otho's success was imperfect. He was compelled to retreat; and a truce of thirty days, equally welcome to both belligerent parties, afforded them respectively the means of developing their schemes. One unexpected result was obtained—Gilbert abandoned his projects of independence, and coalesced with the Vermandois Confederates.

936—942  
939—940

Advance of Henry checked by Otho. Gilbert abandons his own pretensions, and joins the Vermandois party.

§ 14. The four principal Lotharingian Magnates performed homage to Louis on behalf of the rest: that is to say,—Gilbert, compelled sorely against his will to forget his pretensions;—Isaac, Count of Cambray;—Otho, Count of Verdun;—and Thierry, Count of Holland. Gladly, would the Lotharingian Prelates have concurred, but they were so coerced by Otho—either in consequence of the position of his army, or because they had given some security or pledge to him—that they were compelled to restrain their loyalty. Great advantages indeed did this accession of territory promise to the young King Louis. He was “reintegrating” the inheritance of his forefathers, spreading his realm onwards into Charlemagne’s antient Empire. Might he not expel the intruding Saxon, and perhaps acquire the whole Cisalpine Realm? But Otho was as bold as Louis, no less fertile in expedients, superior in state-craft, wider in aim.

940  
The Lotharingian Magnates perform homage to Louis.

936—942 The designs of restoring the Empire, which we  
 { may fancy in Louis, were ultimately executed by  
 938—940 Otho; and whilst Louis was establishing himself  
 in Lotharingia, a new combination ensued, having  
 for its object the reannexation of Neustria to the  
 German Realm.

Otho com-  
 bines with  
 the dis-  
 contented  
 Frankish  
 nobles.

The good fortune attending the efforts of Louis, the extent of his influence, the liberal support he obtained, elicited a corresponding energy amongst the Capetian Revolters, with whom Arnoul of Flanders, notwithstanding his grudges against Guillaume, had now joined. Otho, diligently observant of their dispathies and their sympathies, immediately sought to neutralize the advantages which Louis had gained, availing himself astutely of the apprehensions excited amongst the Confederates by the king's prosperity; and a very threatening and unprecedented alliance between Germany and discontented France, was formed. Hitherto, however disobedient or detrimental to Louis the conduct of the Confederates had been, they were only Revolters from the King, now they became Rebels against him. Otho crossed the Rhine: a conference ensued. Duke Hugh, Count Herbert, Count Arnoul, and Count Guillaume, came before the son of Henry the Fowler, took the oath of fealty, and transferred their allegiance to the German Sovereign.

940  
 Hugh-le-Grand and his party transfer their allegiance to King Otho.

This defection cannot be construed otherwise than as separating the territories of these Princes

from the Crown of France and annexing them to the Crown of Germany.—If Otho could keep Lotharingia, then his Suzerainty over Hugh-le-Grand's Duchy of France, Herbert's County of Vermandois, Arnoul's County or Marquisate of Flanders, Guillaume Longue-épée's County or Duchy of Normandy, together with the appendant Brittany, would widen his imperial dominion from the Rhine to the Atlantic ocean.

936—942  
939—940

Nothing deterred however was Louis. He marched to Verdun, where the Prelates, who had liberated themselves from Otho's duress, performed homage. His presence, he might boast, inspired obedience.—How great was the progress which Louis had seemed to be making, towards the revival of the antient Carlovingian glories! Yet, if Louis expected any permanent tranquillity, he was hoping against hope. The soil was saturated with treachery. Whilst Louis was away, his own Bishop, Raoul, Bishop of Laon, was negotiating for the surrender of that City to Herbert of Vermandois. Louis marched from Alsace, and expelled the dishonest Prelate. But Fortune-tide was turning. Otho resumed operations, observantly and steadily, contending equally against force and against treachery; his stout heart sustained him. Otho recruited his army, and reentered Lotharingia. Louis retreated. Gilbert and Prince Henry united their forces, fiercely prosecuting the war against Otho. But

Louis re-  
treats from  
Lorraine.

936—942

939—940

Gilbert's  
mysterious  
death.

they mismanaged their enterprises; and untoward events disconcerted their schemes. Gilbert, leaving Gerberga, his lion-hearted lady, in the strong castle of Chevreumont, advanced towards the Rhine, with the intent of joining Everhard of Franconia, who had actually renewed the rebellion. Taking their station at Andernach, they were over-powered by Otho's troops. Everhard was cut down. As for Duke Gilbert, never afterwards was he seen or heard of. The bold Swimmer, according to a generally credited report, had been tempted by his ardent rashness to destruction:—he and his horse tried to swim the Rhine; but they perished in the rapid stream.

Another version of the event, to the following effect, was, however, equally prevalent, and many people believed that it was confirmed by positive evidence—Gilbert, with many other fugitives, swamped the little boat into which they crowded. His corpse, cast upon the shore, was found, (as it was said), by certain fishermen, who stripped off his valuables, burying the body for the purpose of concealing the robbery. The remains however were discovered, and the noble nuns of Rémiremont asserted, even until the suppression of their opulent Convent, that an obit, sung in their Church, pursuant to an endowment supposed to have been made by Gerberga, soon after Gilbert's death, indicated his ultimate place of sepulture.

During these transactions, Otho continued to besiege Breisach ; not "Nouveau-Breisach," Louis-Quatorze's dull pentagon ; but the original Breisach, now designated as "Alt-Breisach," Old Breisach,—then situated upon an island, which, by the shifting of the channel, has been since conjoined to the right bank of the Rhine. Otho's position was perilous. Henry's forces were assembling in his rear. But Duke Gilbert's death decided the contest : Henry was discomfited. Gerberga would not harbour the insurgent Prince, and exhorted their father's younger son to submit to the Elder. Otho returned to Lotharingia : and completely reduced the country.—Some time afterwards, the Porphyrogenitus obtained a grant of the Duchy : the brethren were reconciled, and the unnatural contest ended.

Not long did Gerberga linger in her weeds. Whilst Otho was re-advancing towards Lotharingia, Louis prevented him, and hastened to Chevremont for the pious purpose of offering his condolences to the Widow. Gilbert's strange and untimely death, as the gallant and sympathizing Louis professed, had grieved him deeply ; and he repaired to the Relict's Castle, in order that he might comfort her under her affliction—He did so very effectually ;—before the calendar year had closed, the merry young king returned with full-blown Gerberga as his Wife ; and, ere long, the Queen Consort was crowned at Laon.

936—942

938—940

939

Marriage of  
Louis and  
Gerberga.



936—942

939—940

We shall hear much more concerning Gerberga, in connexion with Normandy and Norman affairs.

She had already one son and one daughter by her first husband, and was almost old enough to be the mother of her second. A wise and energetic matron, Gerberga became in all respects a judicious and faithful helpmate to Louis; no prime minister could have served him better. After his death, she proved the vigilant and affectionate guardian of their children: not, perhaps, overscrupulous in state-policy; yet the errors, into which the best principled were seduced, during these perilous times, should receive a lenient judgment.

Guillaume  
Longue-  
épée's  
want of  
truth.

§ 15. The interest arising from the dramatically diversified incidents characterizing the declining Carlovingian era, is, in a manner, diminished by the monotony of political treachery. We are compelled to harp upon it.—Hugh-le-Grand and Herbert of Vermandois were inveterately tainted; Arnoul of Flanders belonged to a disobedient and wayward lineage; all had abundance of hostile and grudging recollections, affronts and injuries, past and present, ancestral or personal. Their adhesion, therefore, to the King of Germany, and their consequent renunciation of their own Sovereign, resulted from a uniform course of conduct; but with respect to Guillaume Longue-épée the case was otherwise.—No complaint against Louis had Guillaume to prefer, no grievance real or pretended to allege; his friend-

ship for Louis was uncoerced : he had bestowed <sup>936-942</sup>  
 the greatest help in his power to Louis, who had <sup>939-940</sup>  
 cordially reciprocated. Yet, as we have seen,  
 Guillaume in the very gaiety of his heart, joined  
 the armed opposition headed by Hugh-le-Grand;  
 and his defection to Otho closed the way which  
 was opening for the prosperous maturation of  
 the young King's fortunes.

If our imagination be taxed to discover or to invent an excuse for Guillaume Longue-épée's breach of faith, we can find none, except that arguments sufficiently plausible to deaden the moral sense of the man by satisfying the conscience of the politician, may have been grounded upon the assumption that Louis had, in the first instance, when he discarded Hugh-le-Grand, violated his compact with the realm. Under this view, the revolt became a constitutional attempt to bring an erring monarch to reason : and, the admonition failing, he had vacated the throne.—Whether such a mode of dealing with the Sovereign was justifiable or not, Guillaume Longue-épée had become King Otho's Man, and had voluntarily bound himself to be so.—Whether the deed was righteous or not, still the deed was done. But, with Guillaume Longue-épée, and indeed with all his contemporaries, there was an enduring mental reservation, that neither oath nor promise held any longer than pleased the party who took the oath or gave the promise. Guillaume Longue-

936-942

}

939

épée extended this convenient doctrine to all duties and relations; and, within a very short time afterwards, when Louis had conducted his experienced Bride to her Palatial home, Guillaume Longue-épée determined to desert his party, abandon the oath he had sworn to Otho, detach himself from the Confederacy, and reconnect himself with the French Monarchy.

For Guillaume's sudden evolution, performed by him with such amazing rapidity, no reason is assigned by the historians, none can be discerned upon the surface. Fickle in love and fickle in religion, fickle in friendship and fickle in enmity, fickle in peace and fickle in war, we might content ourselves by ascribing this most unexpected mutation to mere instability: and yet, however nicely the weathercock may be poised, however smoothly the vane may whirl upon its axis, some breeze must breathe, however gently, to make the girouette spin round. We suspect that Guillaume was driven back to Louis by an anxiety which had been secretly disquieting him till he could no longer bear the gnawing. Although Guillaume Longue-épée was fully in possession of the Terra Normannorum, together with all the rights, members and appurtenances of the said Terra Normannorum, that is to say, Maritime Brittany, and the supremacy of Armorica, even unto the sea, yet that possession was not fully confirmed. The grant, made by the Burgundian

Raoul, had not been re-issued by the Carlovingian Louis in proper form, a process purposely delayed, may be, in the first instance, or neglected; and now, so long as Guillaume continued his hostility, unattainable. The Sovereign often found that it was expedient to excuse the laches of a powerful Prince who had omitted to apply for a "renovation" of his "dignity." On their part, the French Potentates frequently dispensed with the ratification conferred by the King, yet, as we have already observed, they were not satisfied without it. The King, in theory, was always the centre of the system.

986—942  
939.

Title of  
Guillaume  
Longue-  
épée to the  
Duchy of  
Normandy  
incomplete  
till ratified  
by Louis.

A complete legalization of beneficiary possession could not be obtained otherwise than through the King's direct sanction—and Normandy, during the earlier eras of her political existence, approximated more closely to the normal type of a "Fief,"—before such type was artistically developed by the Jurists,—than any other domain of the like nature, save and except the Marquisate of Flanders.—No fears are more distressing to the constitutionally timid than when any apprehensions of evil, having the smallest foundation in reason, are conjoined to the highest degree of improbability. How painfully does the fear of poverty flicker over the millionaire's troubled brain, and we may believe that Guillaume Longue-épée quailed before the phantoms which the contemplation of his own falsehood had raised. Upon legal princi-

938-942

}

940

ples, Guillaume Longue-épée's title to his dominions was very questionable. Being in the king's allegiance, he had renounced that allegiance, and why should not Louis, availing himself of the prerogatives of the Crown, rarely exercised yet never renounced, declare him a Felon, proclaim him under the ban of the Empire, depose the rebel Duke, and then condemn the denuded "Commander of the Pirates" to death?—The motives urging Guillaume to seek the Sovereign are disclosed, as fully as unspoken sentiments can ever be disclosed, by the conduct which he pursued.

Guillaume despatched a respectful legation to Louis, transmitting assurances of unshaken fidelity—an undaunted assertion, which must have required a marvellous power of face in the grave ambassadors by whom the same was propounded.—The young King was at Laon, happy with his bride, at once new and mature, buxom Gerberga; and welcome indeed was this message to him. Amiens was appointed as the place of meeting; and thither Guillaume Longue-épée repaired. Kneeling before the King, and receiving from the King a re-grant of the "Province"—this is the term employed by those who recorded the transaction—"which the late King Charles had granted to the late Patrician of the Normans, Guillaume Longue-épée's father, Rollo," and commending himself to the King, placing his hands between the hands of the King, Guillaume be-

940

Guillaume Longue-épée returns to his allegiance, and performs homage to Louis at Amiens.

came the Man of Louis in the most solemn and authentic form. 938-942  
940

Yet, even the act of homage sufficed not to satisfy Guillaume's zeal and humility; the dry legal formula did not adequately express the intensity of his feelings.—He declared he would sacrifice his life, were such a sacrifice needed, could he thereby replace his Sovereign in the plenitude of imperial power. He would do all that King Louis pleased: he would live or die for the sake of King Louis.

§ 16. Under any or all circumstances, the French hated and scorned the "Dux Piratarum." Must not their contemptuous sentiments have been immeasurably enhanced by the conduct and bearing of the self-stigmatized recreant?—When Guillaume Longue-épée presented himself as a true homager before Louis at Amiens, he branded the Guillaume Longue-épée who had knelt before Otho in Lotharingia, as a traitor. He had wantonly abandoned his lawful King, to him trebly lawful:—lawful by inheritance,—lawful by the nation's assent,—lawful by his own voluntary and uncoerced adherence. No censures passed upon Guillaume Longue-épée for his previous desertion of the King, could have been so bitter as those which he inflicted upon himself by his present professions of good service, and his outbursts of exuberant loyalty. The inveterate Luegenfeld perverseness of the age bestowed a popular

936—942  
 840 condonation upon such delinquencies as disgraced the Norman Duke. Yet some conventional apology, some shew of repentance, would have been decent.—The French annals present us with curious examples of the outward contrition exhibited by Offenders not so bad as Guillaume.—Had the forsworn Duke, bareheaded, clad in a thin poor garment, tarried by the high-road side, and then craved permission to embrace the King's knees, and, kneeling on the stones, and confessing his disobedience and his untruth, humbly solicited forgiveness, he would only have repeated the self-imposed discipline of Guillaume of Poitou before King Raoul.

But Guillaume Longue-épée, though making ample professions as to the future, did not own to any guilt in the past. No sorrowful regret was expressed, no pardon asked. He proffered his submission to Louis boldly, like a man who did not anticipate any rebuff, and who had nothing to be ashamed of. Louis very much needed Guillaume's help; and he therefore welcomed the return of the disobedient Duke as readily as it had been tendered. If any of the Pirate's indignant enemies scoffed at his renovated loyalty, the admirers of the pleasant and prosperous young Duke might have pleaded the exigences of the times as the excuse for his tergiversations, and paraded his speedy return to his allegiance as a full compensation for his political *faux pas*.—Guillaume

Longue-épée did not, however, allow any breathing time for the expression of sentiment. Whilst his hands were yet, so to speak, feeling the warmth and pressure of the hands of King Louis his Seigneur and Sovereign, Guillaume super-added a further act of treachery to his previously repeated acts of treachery, and unsheathed his sword against that Seigneur and Sovereign, seeking to cut at him, where the wound would occasion the keenest smart.—

898—949  
940—941  
Guillaume  
Longue-  
épée pre-  
pares to  
change  
sides again.

The opportunity of which Guillaume availed himself was furnished by the ever-restless Herbert of Vermandois—Count Herbert had been baffled: his power, his craft, his influence had not prevailed against the young King; his cravings continued unsatisfied. In the Vermandois territory, between Laon and Rheims, a remarkable hill arises; which was *then* known by the name of the Montfendu. Herbert of Vermandois ascending that hill, and gazing on the prospect commanded by the summit, must have been sadly teased and tantalized by the reminiscences which the view recalled. If Herbert looked to the West, he beheld in the verge of the horizon the unconquered Rock of Laon; and, if he turned his face to the East, he saw, in the extreme perspective, the towers of Rheims, whence his son had been expelled.

Position of  
Herbert of  
Verman-  
dois.

The worrying warfare which Herbert prosecuted against Archbishop Artaldus, had, however,

Herbert's  
chance of  
recovering  
Rheims.



386—942

}

940—941

been so far profitable to Herbert, that it enabled him to gain time for the organization of his plans. The fruit was beginning to ripen, the chances of replacing the lad Hugh in the See were encouraging. Hugoline was favoured by a strong party amongst the citizens. Could Herbert regain Rheims, he would accept the prize as a full equivalent for Laon. If the young Deacon could be reinstated in the Archiepiscopal throne, the vast temporalities of the See would pass, as a matter of course, to Herbert the father, and, conjoined to the sovereignty of the Vermandois, render the Ruler even greater than Hugh-le-Grand. Therefore, if there was any one contingency which Louis, having due regard for the maintenance of his influence, the stability of the throne, and, perhaps, the security of his life, had most to fear, it was the accomplishment of this scheme.

Herbert of  
Vermandois  
renews  
the warfare  
for the ac-  
quisition of  
Rheims.

Louis, fully appreciating the imminent danger, worked in every way for the preservation of Rheims, and Archbishop Artaldus, though appointed by King Raoul, adhered faithfully to King Louis. He was a wise statesman, and a doughty soldier; and Louis granted important honours and privileges to the Prelate, which rendered him more useful as an ally—the dignity of “Count of Rheims,”—and the royal prerogative of coining money. Some ineffectual, or rather deceptive, overtures were made by Herbert to the Arch-

bishop, for the purpose of negotiating a truce. 938—942  
 The King, being on his road to Burgundy, Artal- 940—941  
 dus exerted himself to make a diversion in favour  
 of the royal cause, mustered his troops and in-  
 vested Causoste on the Oise, which place he cap-  
 tured after five days' blockade. Rejoicing in the  
 opportunity of shewing mercy, Artaldus allowed  
 the garrison to go free. But the Castle, he razed  
 to the ground. The Royal party acted upon  
 the doctrine that such strongholds were public  
 nuisances, and put them down accordingly.

Herbert was much provoked by this achieve-  
 ment. In a confined field of action, small successes  
 assume a portentous magnitude—and, stimulated  
 by this mishap, Herbert applied to Hugh-le-Grand  
 for aid. They determined to attack Rheims. But Hugh and  
 Herbert of  
 Vermandois lay  
 siege to  
 Rheims.  
 the large and strong City, girt by her broad  
 Roman walls, might offer a protracted resistance;  
 it was extremely important that they should win  
 the post before Louis could come up to relieve  
 the besieged. For this purpose additional force  
 was required; and the required support was  
 immediately found. Guillaume Longue-épée, the  
 humble Liegeman of Louis, vanishes; and, in  
 the twinkling of an eye, Guillaume Longue-épée  
 re-appears on the stage in the part which he acts  
 so perfectly, the character of a rebel.

Without demur or hesitation Guillaume Guillaume  
 Longue-épée joins  
 the confederates.  
 Longue-épée again joined the implacable ene-  
 mies of that Sovereign to whom he had just

938—942

940—941

pledged his solemn oath, swearing to die in his defence. Concurring with all his power in the prosecution of the complot for effecting the transfer of the Crown to the German King; Guillaume reunited himself to the Capetian confederates. Treason without the walls of Rheims was combined with treachery within: the Citizens and a portion of the soldiery conspired in favour of the Herbertines. The anger of the loyal or Cathedral party was exalted to desperation: "Dogs," "Rascals," "Tyrants," were the names they bestowed upon the three hostile Commanders, Herbert, Hugh-le-Grand, and Guillaume Longue-épée.

Such scolding disclosed their weakness. At the expiration of six days, the City, divided against itself, surrendered. Archbishop Artaldus fled into the Sanctuary of Saint Remi; the "Dogs," the "Rascals," the "Tyrants," carried all before them. Archbishop Artaldus was urged to surrender his Crook; but though he might not care for the flock, he adhered to the pasture, and demurred. Nobles, Knights, Citizens, nay, his suffragan Bishops, all united in the same irksome request; at length Artaldus was bullied into a compromise. These were not times when the Clergy could very safely resist such demands. Had he continued obstinate, his enemies would scarcely have scrupled to pluck out his eyes. Two good Abbeys were offered as a compensation for the Archbishoprick, Artaldus gladly took what

Archbishop Artaldus expelled, and Hugh restored to the See.

he could get; and, to the great satisfaction of <sup>938—942</sup>  
 “the Dogs,” agreed to resign; yet, after he <sup>940—941</sup>  
 made the promise he would neither execute the  
 deed nor quit Rheims, until “the Dogs” hunted  
 him away. Artaldus retired to the Abbey of  
 Saint Baseule; not however with the intention of  
 seeking retirement in the Cloister, but in order  
 that he might prepare for making reprisals. He  
 had granted the lands of the See to his kinsmen,  
 as military tenants. These grants were annul-  
 led by the victorious Vermandois party, and the  
 ousted Knights were burning for vengeance.

This second ejection of Artaldus did not terminate the miserable contest, which was prolonged during twenty years more. The fact is, that neither of the competitors could establish a clear and satisfactory right to the archiepiscopal throne. If Hugh had a blot on his canonical title, so had Artaldus,—of a different tint may be,—but just as dark. However, the Citizens, the clergy ultimately assenting, claimed Hugh—who had now outgrown the epithet of *parvulus*,—as the Archbishop of their choice. A Provincial Council was held; and Artaldus having been solemnly deposed by the Synod, the Vermandois Primate was installed in the dignity, but only to await a reiteration of his expulsion.

§ 17. Thus was Rheims lost to the King, and the heavy loss mainly inflicted through Guillaume Longue-épée’s instrumentality. Louis was

Hugh-le-Grand,  
 Herbert, &  
 Longue-épée, try to  
 reduce  
 Laon.

936—942 then warring in Burgundy, where the Loyalists  
 gave him considerable support. Hugh-le-Noir  
 940—941 gladly maintained the Royal cause against Hugh-le-Grand; nevertheless the Confederates were improving their successes. Laon was unprotected: thereupon angry Hugh-le-Grand, wily Herbert, and flourishing Guillaume Longue-épée, encouraged by the advantages they had obtained at Rheims, marched against the City of the rock, expecting to succeed by surprize or collusion. But Laon could offer stout resistance from within. A massive tower had been recently erected by Louis, intended, according to usage, both for splendour and protection,—a palace and a castle.

Gerberga's  
 defence of  
 Laon.

Gerberga was left there by Louis as his Lieutenant. When, Duchess of Lorraine, the newly married Queen had defended Chevreumont, she acquired good experience in the affairs of war. Emma and Hermengarda and Ogiva had all signalized their courage and fidelity at Laon: a fourth heroine was now added to their number. The garrison was ample and trustworthy; and, during seven vain weeks, the Confederates invested and battered rock and tower.

Had fortune favoured their enterprize, Louis would not have retained any means of exercising his royal authority, otherwise than as a skirmisher in the open field. Like his father under analogous circumstances, he would have been virtually dethroned. But the Confederates did

not intend that his station should continue problematical. They were fully determined that he should lose, not only the substance, but even the shadow of royalty; and Otho, now at Pierrepont on the Aisne, near Laon, had been marching up from Lotharingia, for the purpose of co-operating with the besiegers.

938—942

940—941

Otho advances into the isle of France.

Louis equally alert, and fully apprized of his danger, was advancing from Burgundy. Archbishop Artaldus had joined him, accompanied by his host of hungry kinsmen, the dis-beneficed Knights of Rheims. The numerical strength of the forces under Louis was small; but the Confederates, probably discouraged by the length of the siege, dared not meet the brave young King and his eager adherents. Hugh and Herbert therefore having abandoned their position before Laon—(let it be remarked that nothing is said concerning Guillaume Longue-épée)—marched in the dead of the night to Pierrepont, from whence they solemnly escorted the German King to time-honoured Attigny. Affinity did not inspire any compunction to the great Otho. He had warred implacably against his brother-in-law, Gilbert, Gerberga's first husband; and he was equally ready to adopt the same course with his brother-in-law, Louis, Gerberga's second husband:—she might have become a widow again, for any thing that Otho cared. Installed in the ancient Palace where Merovingians and Carlovingians had held their royal state, Otho

938—942 appeared as the ruling Monarch, and there, Hugh-le-Grand, Herbert of Vermandois, and Roger, the displaced Count of Laon, but now Count of Douay, Guillaume Longue-épée's intimate, performed homage to the Saxon, again implying that they acknowledged him to be their King. Otho, to whom so much magnanimity is ascribed by the traditions of German history, ought, as a Sovereign, to have been deeply interested in fostering the sentiments of loyalty; but, under any stress of political temptation, Princes and Parliaments always find the means of granting plenary absolution for the violation of the very principles upon which their existence depends.

940  
Homages again performed to Otho at Attigny by the French nobles.

Guillaume Longue-épée detaches himself from the confederates.

§ 18. But, where is Guillaume Longue-épée? —We meet him not at Attigny.—The rotten net of treachery was always breaking. When his allies, Hugh-le-Grand and Herbert, and his confidential friend Count Roger, marched in the dead of the night to Pierrepont, he remained behind, or stole away. Had Guillaume become jealous of Hugh-le-Grand? Hugh-le-Grand was a thorough-blood genuine Frenchman; and Guillaume Longue-épée knew that a Frenchman could not help regarding him with an aversion which nothing short of a moral miracle could overcome.—Guillaume was always rubbing against the collar. His constant restlessness under any promise, oath, or engagement of any kind,—his nervousness,—the panic fears which haunted him,—approximate to symptoms of mental infirmity. Never-

theless his aberrations were systematic—always 936—942  
 circling round his own dear self—self-preser- 940—941  
 vation, self-gratification, or self-aggrandisement;  
 and his varied devices were astutely, if not wisely,  
 consistently calculated to answer these ends.

The Attigny proceedings were very threatening to Louis; but his elasticity increased under pressure. In the North of France, Guillaume's influence was failing; yet compensations were obtainable in Burgundy; and Louis well knew how to profit by the chances of war, and the far more fertile sources of advantage offered by the accommodating consciences of his adversaries. Count Roger of Douay, now the subject of King Otho, had stationed himself upon the Marne, for the purpose of intercepting the march of the King whom he had discarded. Louis defeated the noble Count Roger by a vigorous assault: the recreant was taken prisoner, and Louis would have been fully justified, had he thought fit to gibbet his captive. But, instead of displaying severity, Louis placidly treated Count Roger as though he had made a mistake, behaved courteously towards him, and received him into favour; having, without doubt, due consideration for the intimacy subsisting between Count Roger and Guillaume Longue-épée, and possibly also suspecting that the latter was not unlikely to wheel about, and replace himself beneath the royal standard.

Again the war was concentrated into a con-



938—942  
 940—941

test for the City of the Rock. Hugh-le-Grand and Count Herbert, albeit deprived of Guillaume Longue-épée's assistance, summoned their forces and advanced towards Laon, doubting whether they would be able to reduce the Stronghold by force, yet still reckoning upon their friends within the City. Distinguished partizans were these friends, Arnoul, Count of St. Quentin in the Vermandois, and Landric, his brother. But the sharp-sighted Louis gained information of the plot, and expelled the colluders. The vigilant and active King collected a considerable body of troops, and advanced to the "Pays Porcien."—Hugh-le-Grand and Count Herbert were not less vigilant and active. Quitting the siege of Laon, by a sudden movement they came up to Louis, surprised him, and dispersed his army. The King was obliged to fly for his life:—had they caught him, we should now be writing the concluding paragraph of his history. Nevertheless, the Confederates had received a check; and Louis, having found a temporary refuge in the castle of Hautmond, returned to Laon and to Gerberga, nothing daunted. The defeat he sustained in the Pays Porcien became the commencement of a more prosperous æra in his reign.

Pope Stephen IX.  
 (939—942)  
 interferes  
 on the  
 King's be-  
 half.

§ 19. The potency of the veneration commanded by St. Peter's Chair, subsisting undiminished, despite of the Supreme Pontiff's vices or misfortunes, is a secular phenomenon recurring

in every successive æra of Ecclesiastical history. <sup>936-942</sup>  
 A memorable example of this inherent energy is <sup>941-942</sup>  
 afforded by Stephen, sometimes reckoned as the  
 Eighth, though more correctly as the Ninth, who  
 now filled the Papal throne. A German by birth,  
 an obscure and mean man, of whom, previously  
 to his Pontificate, we know nothing, though such  
 was his character that the unanimous suffrages of  
 the Roman people elevated him to the Primacy  
 of Christendom.

Stephen became very obnoxious to Count Alberic, and the other tyrannical Lords of Rome. They dared not deprive Stephen of life; but the course whereby they satisfied their malignity was scarcely, if at all, less atrocious than murder. Stephen was assaulted by the congenial retainers of the Nobles, who hacked and slashed his face most cruelly, his countenance being rendered so ghastly, that he never afterwards appeared in public, lest the hideous spectacle should distress the beholders. Yet, notwithstanding his seclusion from the general converse of mankind, Stephen resolutely exerted all the functions appertaining to his exalted mission. The oppressions he sustained, had in no wise diminished his earnestness for the protection of others. Acting according to the principles of the Church, as she enounced in antient Councils, Stephen solemnly admonished the Princes of France to obey their lawful King, and sheath the sword. In France,

936—942 the sentence was duly promulgated by the Papal  
 Legate, certainly encreasing the moral strength  
 941—942 of the royal cause: falterers were confirmed in  
 their allegiance; and the open declaration of a  
 right principle never fails to produce some good,  
 however faintly and tardily evolved.

Continua-  
 tion of the  
 insurrec-  
 tionary  
 war: Guil-  
 laume  
 Longue-  
 épée passes  
 over to the  
 royal party.

§ 20. Herbert was bent upon continuing his rough wooing of Laon: but Guillaume Longue-épée's absence seems to have perplexed him, therefore he and Duke Hugh again beleaguered the City, probably retaining the lingering hope that some secret well-wisher would turn the key from within. Queen Gerberga continued at Laon, as the only place where she could be protected. Expectations were entertained that she would become a mother. Hugh and Herbert suddenly raised the siege. Gerberga may possibly have thanked them in her heart, supposing that commiseration for a poor burthened woman had induced the compassionate warriors to desist;—but no such chivalry: they repaired to Guillaume Longue-épée, and then returned and recommenced hostilities.

Louis, adapting himself to circumstances, shifted his ground, and encountered his adversaries with their own weapons, exploding their mine by a countermine. Guillaume Longue-épée could not be trusted by any party, and yet no party could venture to neglect Guillaume-Longue-épée. Twice within the brief period since

the accession of Louis, had the Duke of Normandy betrayed his lawful Sovereign, and twice the Capetians, and now, for the third time, making the fifth in this class of defections, did the pitiable son of Rollo prepare again to desert his confederates. A series of transactions ensued, of which the results are very patent, though the course of events is involved in extreme obscurity. Negotiations and intrigues ensued which never were revealed:—kept so close that not a syllable of them is recorded;—and their purport can only be surmised from the actions of the principal personages. These, imperfectly observed, inaccurately related from memory, or casually and meagrely noted down on the tablets of contemporaries who participated in the troubles, defy all attempts to reduce them into a consistent narrative. I am not aware of any portion of mediæval history which, being fairly within ken, offers equal perplexities; and the difficulty of treating the subject is increased by the absence of any intelligible principle; except so far, that, setting aside every other consideration, each consulted his own interest: and Guillaume Longue-épée, quietly and slyly drawing away from his own friends, became a recognized adherent of the King.

§ 21. The Capetians finally abandoned their attempts upon Laon, and Gerberga being happily left in tranquillity, a male child was born to her as the wife of Louis, the event most desirable for

936—942

941—942

Intrigues  
of Guilla-  
ume  
Longue-  
épée.

941

Birth of  
Lothaire,  
son of King  
Louis and  
Gerberga.

938—942

941—942

sustaining the moral influence of the Crown. When Louis returned from beyond the sea he was the only recognized representative of the Carlovingian line. In his person, had he died without issue, the lineage of Louis-le-débonnaire would have become extinct. Nor would there have been any individual who could assert any claim to the throne by right of Carlovingian blood, unless the Vermandois family, the representatives of Pepin King of Lombardy, had been rehabilitated in the national opinion as the descendants of the great Emperor. It is not improbable but that Herbert calculated upon the chances which the demise of Louis without an heir might afford. Nay, even more. What if Hugh-le-Grand, the representative of King Robert, were, in such a contingency, to assert that the reasonings which, erewhile, restrained him from accepting the Crown upon the demise of Raoul, were no longer applicable to the exigences of the State, and that he was free to ascend the throne?

The boundary deduced from the principle of political necessity is of indefinite vastness; and Hugh-le-Grand might have argued with convincing plausibility, that the claim of blinded Bernard's lineage, the Lombard line, had been absolutely foreclosed, and that the Kingdom was therefore thrown open to any new man or new family. Thus, without contradicting the spirit of his former professions, he might accept the oft-

proffered diadem; but all speculations grounded upon the repudiation or extinction of the "throne-worthy" Carlovingian race, were, by the Queen's fruitfulness, postponed indefinitely. Gerberga was now happily delivered of a son, her first child by her second marriage: two others followed duly and regularly; and, as far as human prescience could extend, there was good reason to expect the perpetuation of the Carlovingian dynasty.

Louis, however, was labouring under heavy perplexities. Enemies were continually pressing upon him: his best chance of raising up any efficient opposition to Hugh-le-Grand and crafty Herbert was through Guillaume Longue-épée. It was now understood that the Duke of Normandy was well disposed to re-invest himself with the Courtier's garb, and re-enter the royal presence-chamber; and Louis, postponing affront and indignation, was no less willing to receive him. Taking advantage of the late joyful occurrence, he entreated Guillaume Longue-épée to become the sponsor of the royal infant. The offer was exceedingly gratifying to Guillaume's vanity: he accepted the honour, and repaired forthwith to Laon.

Much renown did gentle Guillaume Longue-épée earn by his courtesy towards the Lady Queen. As Godfather, he presented the child at the font. The name of "Lothaire," a reminiscence of the old

938—942

941—942

Guillaume  
Longue-  
épée asked  
to stand  
godfather  
to Lothaire.

936—942 time, was revived in that infant, the last but one of  
 the Carolingian dynasty. More pointedly important  
 941—942 than Guillaume's pleasant demeanour, were  
 the unsolicited promises which, upon this occasion,  
 he made to the King. He declared, with earnest  
 humility, that he submitted to Louis as a Monarch  
 possessing the throne by hereditary, and there-  
 fore indefeasible right, wearing the crown which  
 had descended from generation to generation.  
 Guillaume Longue-épée would humbly obey his  
 anointed Suzerain in all things, aid him against  
 every rebel, defend every one whom Louis be-  
 friended, and be the foe of every one whom Louis  
 would mark out as an enemy.

These outpourings could not pass unnoticed by  
 his insurgent associates of yesterday. How could  
 Hugh-le-Grand and Herbert of Vermandois relish  
 such a manifestation? Would he go against them  
 in right earnest, or how?—The marauding "Cap-  
 tain of the Pirates" was distrusted and scorned  
 by the French, this apostate loyalty would render  
 him more contemptible than before. But though  
 Guillaume might suspect these feelings, he did  
 not heed them. His return from Laon to Rouen  
 was a continued triumph: the Normans rejoiced  
 enthusiastically in the station which their Duke  
 had attained: women and children crowded the  
 battlements as he advanced towards the Porte  
 Beauvoisine: the Clergy came forth with psalm  
 and song.

941  
 Guillaume  
 Longue-  
 épée's  
 triumphant  
 entry into  
 Rouen.

§ 22. Louis made a prudent selection when he appointed Roger, Count of Douay, now Count of Laon, as his representative at the Norman Court; nor did the unexpected death of the Envoy interrupt the progress of the new alliance, through which the Carlovingian Monarch sought to check the developement of the Capetian Dynasty.

Could Louis secure the Duchy of Normandy, the Duchy of France would be fully counterpoised in the balance of power. Hitherto, the *Terra Normannorum* had been only imperfectly connected with the French Monarchy. The idea of the Duchy was not distinctly conceived. Louis was strange to the populations beyond the Epte; they hardly knew him as their King; and he therefore discreetly practised upon Guillaume's hospitality for the purpose of familiarizing them with his presence, and making them realize his Royal supremacy—seeing is believing.—Since the occupation of ancient Rothomagus by the Danes, no King of France, whether Carlovingian, or Burgundian, or Capetian, neither a Charles-le-Simple, nor a Raoul, nor a Robert, had dared to present himself before her towers as an enemy, or to dwell within her walls as a friend. Either course, hazardous: a hostile King might be sorely discomfited, a confiding King, betrayed. But Louis would not display fear; and, accepting Guillaume Longue-épée's invitation, he made, as Sovereign, his *joyeuse entrée*. Louis was cordially and ho-

936—942

941—943

942  
Louis enters Rouen, and is received with royal honours.



936—942 nourably received—If it encreased his influence  
 941—942 that the Northmen should learn to recognize the  
 individuality of the Sovereign, equally calculated  
 to advance his interests was the instruction he  
 acquired by becoming personally acquainted with  
 Rouen and the defences of Rouen, the breadth  
 of her portals, the height of her ramparts, the  
 ways within and the accesses without, the streets  
 and the roads, the meads where troops might  
 encamp, the surrounding hamlets where they  
 might be covered, or the defiles through which  
 they must pass.—But far more than the de-  
 fences,—the Defenders of Rouen.—Here Louis  
 for the first time saw the countenances of the  
 antient warriors—the last connecting links be-  
 tween the age of the pagan Rollo and his own,—  
 Oslac and courteous Botho, and Bernard the Dane.  
 A wary general, Louis in Normandy might also  
 glean information concerning the military strength  
 of Guillaume's proud dominion, whilst Louis the  
 statesman, mixing freely and condescendingly with  
 Guillaume's Counsellors and Vassals, and not dis-  
 daining the converse of the Burgher, or even  
 the Villain, would obtain some insight into the  
 factions and parties whose discontents and an-  
 tagonisms cankered Guillaume's power.

Guillaume was striving to vindicate the cha-  
 racter of his refashioned loyalty, working stren-  
 uously for the purpose of restoring the King's  
 authority amongst the neighbouring Princes.  
 Here through Guillaume's exertions was Louis

greeted by his brother-in-law the vigorous and prosperous Guillaume Tête-d'étoupe, and Alain Barbetorte the Breton, the descendant of the antient Kings, both of whom, yielding to Guillaume's influence, proffered their military service. It should seem that Tête-d'étoupe had refused to acknowledge Louis: his present recognition rivetted Aquitaine to the Monarchy: whilst the promises made by Barbetorte, and in which Juhel Berenger and the other Breton Chieftains joined, would, without releasing the immediate dependence of Brittany upon Normandy, render them more cordial in co-operating for Louis under Guillaume Longue-épée, should occasion arise.

938—942  
 941—942  
 Barbetorte and Tête-d'étoupe proffer military service to Louis.

As by these transactions Guillaume Longue-épée had determinately proclaimed himself the prime adherent of King Louis, so were Hughle-Grand and Herbert of Vermandois driven closer to Otho; supporting his cause with rival energy: and with them he retreated into Lotharingia. Further motions were made by Louis for a pacification: and in the course of these proceedings we have an account—so blurred however by the narrator that we cannot attempt to bring it into shape,—exhibiting Guillaume Longue-épée as having repaired to Lorraine when seeking an interview with the German King. The affection between Gerberga and her brother revived—Otho had enriched his nephew and namesake, her son by Gilbert, with Gilbert's

936—942   Duchy, acknowledging him as his father's heir.

941—942   Louis on his part was well disposed to be reconciled with his brother-in-law; but, towards Hugh-le-Grand and Herbert of Vermandois he conducted himself austere-ly: he neither courted them nor evinced any dread of their power: yet was willing to make peace.

September,  
942.  
Negotia-  
tions be-  
tween  
Louis and  
Otho.

At length, through the intervention of Guillaume Longue-épée, a conference ensued on the banks of the Oise. Louis and Guillaume Longue-épée marched thither, supported by the Poitevins and the Bretons: encamping upon the Southern bank: Herbert, Hugh, and young Otho, the new Duke of Lotharingia, took their station on the opposite shore. They arrived first, for such were the mutual suspicions entertained by these kinsmen, that King Otho and the Confederates had advanced by forced marches for the purpose of taking precautions against surprize: they broke down all the bridges, and cleared away the craft from the river, leaving only two small boats, in which the parties crossed during the negotiations. A truce having been concluded, Louis frankly and heartily proceeded to King Otho in Lorraine, a brother-in-law seeking a brother-in-law's love and friendship. Otho laboured hard to effect a reconciliation between Louis and his other brother-in-law the stubborn Hugh-le-Grand, and succeeded; Herbert of Vermandois was included in the pacification. He and his son Herbert

(afterwards Count of Troyes) became the King's homagers, and the affairs of the Archbishoprick of Rheims, having, for the present, been compromised, Louis returned to Gerberga at Laon.

§ 23. Supreme Judge, sole Legislator, Guillaume Longue-épée was born to absolute Sovereignty. His was the Law, His was the State, His was the Church, the field of despotism entirely open before him. No oral law placed him in subjection to the Shades of his ancestors. No Code, no Doom-book existed, whose precepts bridled his caprice or regulated his discretion. "Antient customs," "paternal customs," are vaguely noticed in the earliest chapters of Norman history, but the Danes in Neustria never endured under Danish Chieftainship as a settled and unmixed population, sufficiently compact and sufficiently permanent to maintain their national jurisprudence, which therefore universally melted away. No form of procedure, no technical term bearing any tangible stamp of Scandinavian origin, can be discovered in any of the extant or subsisting muniments. A few traditional usages may have lingered during the first three generations,—though none are recollected—and if, by possibility, any of the antient Scandinavian popular Courts or tribunals were introduced, a fact of which however we have not the slightest evidence,—it is certain that none survived. The Patrician, the Duke, the Sovereign, sat in isolated dignity.

938—942

941—942

Guillaume Longue-épée an absolute sovereign in Normandy.

938—942 No Baronage surrounded his curule chair, no  
 Clerk sat at his feet. He spake the law, he  
 941—942 gave the law, he made the law, he executed the  
 law.—The decree was the Deemster's "Breast-  
 law," the outspeech of his mind.

Subjuga-  
 tion of the  
 Church to  
 the Duke's  
 authority.

From any ecclesiastical restraint the Duke was entirely exempted. The Church had lost all control, maimed, stricken, and dumb. Between the establishment of Rollo's domination and William the Bastard's accession, no ecclesiastical Council was summoned, no Synod was convened. The Duke appointed the Bishops by his unchallenged and independent authority: they were his creatures in the strictest sense of the odious term. Those whom he chose those he made, the Papal supremacy, the Canon-laws, the qualifications of the parties all equally disregarded. In the Crown of the "Holy Roman Empire" the mitre is seen implanted in the Diadem. But the Duke of Normandy fused mitre and helmet into one.

In the Secular State, the Duke's regaline prerogative was equally surpassing. He could not be extravagant, for he knew no bounds.—Years ago, did I commence these enquiries, entertaining the firm belief that the germs of our English constitution could assuredly be recovered in antient Normandy—the Normandy which descended to the Conqueror—the Normandy of Robert le Magnifique, the Normandy of Richard le Bon, the Normandy of Richard Sans-peur, the

Normandy of Guillaume Longue-épée, the Terra <sup>936—942</sup>  
 Normannorum of Rollo. There were grave au- <sup>941—942</sup>  
 thorities dictating this opinion to me, and I  
 searched the historians and the scanty memorials  
 of Norman policy and jurisprudence for proofs in  
 favour of an opinion which I could not reject  
 without reluctance, but I have found none. At no  
 period after the first developement of the Duchy,  
 until it had been reunited to the Crown of  
 France, can we discern any Courts or Conven-  
 tions of prelates and nobles, equivalent to the  
 great Councils, States general, or Parliaments  
 of subsequent times. Nor do we behold any of  
 those institutions, which, encreasing the Sove-  
 reign's dignity, participated in the exercise of  
 political power.

Nevertheless, the wise, firm, and equitable  
 administration of remedial justice, resulting from  
 Guillaume Longue-épée's personal vigilance and  
 talent, constitutes the crowning honour of his  
 reign. In the exercise of the exorbitant power  
 which he possessed, he was exposed to grievous  
 temptations, but he escaped them.—The due  
 administration of the Law depended upon his  
 vigour and integrity. He redeemed the responsi-  
 bility cast upon him. He fully performed this  
 duty, nor, towards his subjects—save and except  
 under the exigencies of the Riulph rebellion—can  
 any injustice, wrong, or oppression, be surmised.

So far well—but Guillaume's judicial rectitude

936—942



941—942

Guillaume  
Longue-  
épée, his  
deficiency  
of religious  
principle.

was not the result and reward of righteousness : he simply followed the natural impulse of his mind. He did not dwell in the Habitation of Justice. Certainly, he observed Justice, but neither in word nor in deed, neither by example nor precept, did he keep the way of life. When it pleased his phantasy, Guillaume Longue-épée adorned himself with godliness as a garland, though he scorned submission to righteousness as a girdle for his loins. Whether his union with Espriota be honoured as lawful wedlock or stigmatised as concubinage, his conduct in taking her, or his conduct in casting her off, testified, but too notoriously, how stubbornly he disregarded the voice of conscience, and spurned the dictates of Christianity, whenever conscience or Christianity opposed any obstacles to the indulgence of his passions or the promotion of his interests.—He loved the false oath, the thing hated of the Lord : untruth was his sport : he brought disgrace upon Religion by shamelessly manifesting, that no binding force was imparted by her precepts to his covenants with man.

Poverty  
and degra-  
dation of  
the Nor-  
man  
Church.

Bounteous before the world, profusely splendid in the delights of peace and the glories of war, showering gifts and guerdons upon courtiers, soldiers, friends, Guillaume's munificence had been wholly withheld from the Church. Establishments, buildings, decency, discipline, were all dilapidated, neglected, and despised. Roughness and pro-

fligacy prevailed universally amongst clerks and laity :—the clergy, the very dregs of their order, —and Guillaume encouraged them in their evil courses, by the favour he manifested to the criminals. Hugh, the Monk of St. Denis, a man of illustrious descent, upon whom he bestowed the Primatial dignity of Rouen—possibly at the instance of the illustrious Count-Abbot, Hugh-le-Grand—was a prodigy of incontinence and rapacity. All the schools of piety, of discipline, and of learning, had been deleted from the face of the country. When Jarl Oskar first sailed up the brimful Seine, more than sixty antient monasteries and other religious foundations still continued to flourish in the Province. All were destroyed, not one survived the landing of the Northmen upon the Neustrian shores, nor were any of the Merovingian or Carlovingian foundations ever resuscitated, save and except the following:—first, Saint Ouen, nigh Rouen; second, Saint Vandrille, or Fontenelle by the Seine; third, Saint Vigor or Cerisy in the Bessin; fourth, Saint Taurin at Evreux; fifth, Saint Martin of Seèz; sixth, Saint Michael *in periculo Maris*; seventh, Fécamp, no thanks however due for this to Guillaume;—and, eighth and last, renowned Jumièges,—all these eight, when Guillaume Longue-épée succeeded to his Sire's authority were wrecks and ruins. Deserted and forgotten, except perhaps by a few obscure

936—942

941—942

Destruction of monastic establishments, &c., by the Danes—all left in ruins, of which eight only were ever restored.



936-942 good men who endeavoured to preserve some faint  
 memorial of pristine devotion, a recluse whispering his solitary mass within the half-roofed chapel, or a meagre, ghost-like priest, flitting around the shattered walls. Nor were any of these foundations, Jumièges alone excepted, renewed or revived until better times.

Absolute  
 need of  
 monastic  
 establish-  
 ments  
 during the  
 middle  
 ages.

Liberality, extended towards the Church, cannot in any wise be implicitly accepted as an indubitable test of holy zeal, sincere contrition or heart-felt piety, nevertheless we may be assured, that, during the mediæval period, no one who, having the worldly means, neglected the support of monastic establishments could be truly and sagaciously zealous, contrite or pious. The Cloister contained the most efficient organization through which man could display goodwill towards men. Monasteries were not excrescences implanted on the ecclesiastical system, but vital organs, the needs of man's body and soul required them. A Community could alone keep up the perennial strain of prayer and praise, instruct the ignorant, indoctrinate the Teachers of the truth and the Preachers of the Gospel. It was only by employing the Monastery that you could ensure—so far as human prescience can affect the future—the steady and permanent dispensation of eleemosynary charity. No house was there save the House of religion, where the wayfarer would be sure to find a welcome, where the

couch was always spread for the sick, the meat and drink ready for the poor. Not merely did practical faith dictate these foundations, but they were also popular in the best sense, the lawful means of winning golden opinions of society. Examples of beneficence towards the Church abounded in the Christian Community. Peculiarly excelling in this noble quality was Guillaume's friend, the glorious Athelstane. Civil and temporal legislation co-operated with the generally prevailing sentiments of the age in encouraging all men to give plenteously; nor had the miserable period arrived, when, as we may now deplore in a Realm where Christianity is ostentatiously proclaimed to be the law of the land, every obstacle is imposed which the perverse ingenuity of a jealous Senate can cogitate, in order to deny to him who is rich, the privilege of laying up for himself a store against the time to come, by bestowing that wealth so emphatically denominated "real," in promoting the honour and glory of God; allowing the Sinner at the same time the fullest license to bequeath his lands and possessions to the World, the Flesh, and the Devil.

The stintedness of Guillaume Longue-épée was therefore completely inexcusable. Precept, policy, example, concurred in condemning him.—The ample substance which had been granted to him, was absorbed by his pomps and his pleasures; and the mean, little, paltry, hovel church which,

936—942

941—942

836—842 at Fécamp, he had erected with the spare rub-  
 841—842 bish cast aside by the builders, was the visible  
 symbol of the course he pursued.

Rollo's dona-  
 tions to  
 the Church  
 (i. 691)  
 illusory, for  
 want of  
 posses-  
 sion.

Desolation  
 of Jumi-  
 èges.

The two  
 recluses of  
 Cambrai  
 who, in  
 honour of  
 Himeltru-  
 da, settle  
 there.

§ 24. The donations made by Rollo, when he wore the neophyte's white chrismal vestment, are elaborately specified by his biographers. Rollo unquestionably intended to give, but verbal donations, were merely words, unless accompanied by actual seizin; nor does it appear that Rollo's donations received this indispensable complement, for Jumièges, though particularly pointed out as an object of Rollo's liberality, had ceased, when Guillaume Longue-épée ruled, to exist as a Community. The pleasant country, so diligently cultivated by the Monks previously to the Danish devastations, was now a forest: here and there, on the borders, you might glance at a patch of arable tilled by the remaining allodial rustics, but elsewhere, desert. Saint Himeltruda, however, was recollected in her native Flanders; the devout could tell you where her neglected relics rested undisturbed, and two Anchorites from the Cambresis, Baldwin and Gondouin, repaired to the Oratory which contained her Shrine. They delved and dug, and hacked and hewed; trees fell, and turves were raised; they worked most sturdily; beginning their clearances on some small spots of ground.

Guillaume Longue-épée hunted in all directions, far and wide; but Jumièges' forest he

had not yet explored. Coursing through and over bush and glade, he ran upon the two old labourers. Whence came they? and what were they busied about? Guillaume Longue-épée, so benignly gentle in the Lady's bower, was in a vexed mood: the sight of the monks made him angry: their poverty did not excite any commiseration; nay, a better-minded Sportsman than he, could scarcely have failed to be rather provoked by the progress the trespassers had made, in disturbing the coverts of the game. Baldwin and Gondouin bowed to the Duke, meekly saluting him, and humbly inviting him to partake of their fare, all they had they offered him, coarse barley bread and water. He refused the monks rudely, spurning them away.—The Huntsman's ardent passion quenched the Huntsman's languishing devotion: Rider, dogs, and horse, started and darted off, giving chase to a magnificent wild boar. The unfortunate animal turned fiercely against his brute persecutors, quadruped and biped, dogs, horse, and Rider: Guillaume Longue-épée's javelin broke short; and the boar, rushing upon his chief enemies, steed and Cavalier, threw them to the ground.—Grim personages did the faint Guillaume Longue-épée behold by the side of his pallet-bed, when he recovered from his swoon and opened his eyes. The tending Recluses had stanch'd the blood, bandaged the bruises, perhaps saved his life.

836—842

841—842

Guillaume  
Longue-  
épée's  
rudeness to  
the monks.Kindness  
to him  
when in  
danger of  
death.

Their humane assiduity, and the recollection

936—942

940—941

Guillaume  
Longue-  
épée re-  
founds Ju-  
mièges, but  
on a small  
scale.

Martin of  
Poitiers the  
first Abbot.

of his danger, excited contrition: he repented him of his great harshness and vehement anger, a thank-offering was due, and he determined to restore the Monastery, of which some walls were standing,—white stone fragments, as they now are seen—brilliant amongst the green groves: the Choir was roofed anew, and the requisite claustral buildings, refectory, dormitory and cells, erected, repaired, or rendered habitable in a small way. But the empty structure was lifeless: fitting inmates must be found. The traditions of Saint Benedict were wholly extinguished in Normandy; and Guillaume Longue-épée had no means of reviving Saint Philibert's Sanctuary, otherwise than by introducing a Colony from some more favoured region. The Diocese of Poitou had been comparatively spared: religion flourished at Poitiers; and Guillaume turned to Adela, that pious sister. Saint Cyprian's monastery was celebrated for sound discipline; and the Adela persuaded the Superior of that House, the venerable Martin, to undertake the duty her Brother required. Twelve Monks, Martin at their head, went forth from Poitiers to Jumièges. Martin, well-spoken and wise, became the first Abbot of the new series of Prelates; and Guillaume Longue-épée purchased, at a cheap rate, the honour of being commemorated as the Founder.

A good scholar was Martin; knowing somewhat of Greek, he had studied Dionysius the Areo-

pagite, and the worthy man evidently prided himself upon his accomplishments. Moreover the Abbot was a deep and erudite Theologian, delighting in mystic contemplation; and yet therewithal clear-headed and practical, a sage counsellor in the ways of the world. Guillaume Longue-épée took pleasure in his conversation, and, not unfrequently, resorted to Jumièges for the purpose of enjoying the Abbot's company,—possibly also, as it was supposed, to seek refreshment in retirement, or even in prayer.

§ 25. Verily, he needed comfort.—As a monarch, Guillaume was splendidly prosperous: widely extending his borders, he had reduced rebellious subjects and obstinate vassals to obedience:—and, such were the honours he now received from the King, that he stood pre-eminent amongst the Nobles of the Realm.—But the heart knows its own bitterness. Guillaume's successes were poisoned by mental misery.

Errors as well as sins are sure to come home. Variety of purpose, with a purpose, is consummate wisdom:—a time to kill, and a time to heal; a time to cast away stones, and a time to gather stones together; a time to embrace, and a time to refrain from embracing; a time to love, and a time to hate; a time of war, and a time of peace:—but, to be constantly wavering between right and wrong, between good and evil, may, on the whole, be more enfeebling to the moral sentiment,

896—942  
840—941

a Guillaume  
Longue-  
épée's  
troubles  
of mind.

936—942  
 -----  
 940—941

and certainly is much more detrimental to worldly esteem and influence, than the steady prosecution—for any world-applauded object—of wrong and evil. Such a character was Guillaume Longue-épée: his changes of opinion, his political tergiversations, his violations of engagements, brought him in incessant collision with himself—the Guillaume of to-day contradicting the Guillaume of yesterday, and preparing to run athwart the Guillaume of to-morrow.

Failure of  
Guillaume  
Longue-  
épée's *juste*  
*milieu* po-  
licy. He  
equally  
alienates  
the Danish  
and the  
French  
parties.

Guillaume  
Longue-  
épée, ex-  
treme dis-  
credit  
brought  
upon him  
by his ter-  
giversa-  
tion and  
treacheries.

Rightly had Guillaume seen and foreseen that the social no less than the political stability of Normandy, depended on her incorporation, as a Christian State, into the French commonwealth; but whilst working to effect this end, he had spoilt his machinery by mismanagement. He had humiliated the Danish party, and in a degree broken their power; but his own strength was not thereby encreased proportionally. Whilst Guillaume had lost his position amongst the Heathen party as the Representative of the antient dominant Danish race, he had not gained a standing ground in any other community. A Deserter from every camp, no one owned him; an Alien wherever he shewed his face, surrounded by scoffers and enemies. Distrusted by all, and therefore distrustful of all, discarded alike by Heathendom and by Christendom. Many amongst either party, including the highest, the most potent, and the most noble, he had provoked

to the death, and they were whetting their weapons to wreak their vengeance upon him. Even those, who otherwise, might not have been rancorous, were on the watch to assail him, enticed by the weaknesses which presented such tempting opportunities of profiting by his vacillations.

336—342  
 341—342

Whether Guillaume Longue-épée stepped forwards or backwards, to the right or to the left, to the east or to the west, to the north or to the south, every tramp of his foot trod down the crops he had sown. The aid he afforded to Herlouin, had exacerbated his envious brother-in-law, Arnolph of Flanders; by occasioning the loss of Montreuil and the valuable harbour; and he had continued pestering Arnolph by petty and useless warfare.

For the purpose of promoting the ambition of Hugh-le-Grand, Guillaume basely abandoned that King Louis whom he had restored, and then he immediately forfeited the wages of iniquity by betraying the Protector to whom he had sold himself,—a capital piece of folly, for Hugh-le-Grand, a mighty neighbour, might at any convenient time invade the Evrecin, an integral portion of Normandy, but which would afford the most desirable enlargement to the Capetian Duchy. When endeavouring to establish Otho upon the throne of France, Guillaume Longue-épée violated all the dictates of duty, honesty, and feeling, Through his co-operation in this strange enterprise, he became equally guilty of treachery against

Hugh-le-Grand, his views upon the Evrecin.



938—942 the French Sovereign and against the French  
 941—942 people; for there was no one humiliation which  
 could have been more painful to the French than  
 subjection to a German ruler; and having incurred all this grievous liability, Guillaume, by deserting Otho, had deprived himself of the countenance which that prosperous and aspiring Monarch would have afforded him.

Basely did Guillaume cast away his first love, Espriota, for the purpose of connecting himself more closely with proud Vermandois; and yet he had latterly become the bitter enemy of his treacherous father-in-law. Hankering after the repudiated fair one, neither wife nor concubine; he had insulted the noble Liutgarda,—and where was the boy Richard? far away, concealed, unrecognised. If his father ever saw him, it was stealthily, as though he had been ashamed of the noble child;—more shame to the skulking father.

Guillaume's one good quality, his sincere desire of promoting equity and justice, which caused him to be valued at home, did not tell upon the Stranger.—Had he been consistent in any other good path, had he proved himself to be a decent Christian, a true husband to his wife, or a loyal liegeman to his Superior, or a faithful friend to his fellows, his natural gifts, handsome person, and agreeable manners, might have mitigated, perhaps even healed, the Frankish enmity. But it was quite the contrary. His life had been

a continued tissue of falsehood, neglect of social bonds,—those dearest to him sacrificed to self-interest or ambition,—and his religion displayed so feebly or capriciously, as neither to deserve nor earn confidence or respect. Whatever degree of popularity the cheerful, hospitable, opulent Duke of Normandy may have enjoyed amongst the French towards the commencement of his career, was entirely dissipated: he had now become the object of implacable detestation. The Danes had rendered themselves terrific, and might assuredly triumph in having this tribute paid to their valour. But the malignant cunning ascribed to the barbarian Pirates by people whom they tormented, was even more awe-inspiring than their power: it invested them with a species of supernatural character. Furthermore, it was universally believed that the Danish ferocity was indelibly inherent in the race, no effluxion of time could mitigate their inherent savagery, nor, according to universal credence, did they ever abandon their claim to any country where they had once encamped or domineered. Never are our fiendish passions more diabolically roused than when we can single out the one man as the representative of the masses whom we hate: and all the hatred which the French bore to the Danish nation at large was accumulated upon the head of the “Captain of the Pirates.”

Fear often seeks to protect herself by con-

Fatal effect  
of the con-

938—942 tempt; a cruel instrument of revenge; and this  
 } opprobrious appellation, "Captain of the Pirates,"  
 941—942 } habitual among the French, and coming naturally  
 temptuous } into their mouths, equally fomented and betokened  
 epithet so } their aversion and their terror, "Captain of the  
 bestowed } Pirates,"—a degrading name, suggestive of loath-  
 upon Guil- } some sensuous ideas and odious moral feelings,  
 laume. } offensive to the nose, hideous to the eyes, hateful  
 to the mind—filth, and foulness, soiled garb, and  
 bloody hands. The character thereby conveyed  
 was engrained, the impression indelible.—What  
 mattered the worship rendered by King Louis to  
 Duke Guillaume,—Queen Gerberga's smiling  
 courtesies,—the spiritual affinity contracted at the  
 font,—the exalted rank appertaining to the  
 Seigneur, Duke and Patrician of Rouen and the  
 Terra Normannorum, the Lord and Suzerain of  
 Brittany and the Armorican Marches?—Opinion  
 was unchanged, opinion could not be changed.  
 From the lowest to the highest, from the greasy  
 Scullion sweating in the sooty kitchen, to the  
 stately Usher stalking before the Council-door,  
 from the frowsy stable-varlet to the Peer in the  
 Council, or the Chancellor at the foot of the  
 Throne, there was not a Frenchman who spoke  
 of Guillaume Longue-épée, or who thought of  
 Guillaume Longue-épée, otherwise than as the  
 rascal Buccaneer, the Captain of the Pirates.

Guillaume, departing from the royal chamber,  
 might have chanced to receive the listener's pro-

verbial meed, had he lingered on the landing. 836—842  
 We know how Louis and Gerberga scoffed at the 841—842  
 Pirate, his base discarded brat, and his dishonoured  
 trull.—Guillaume—Who is he?—What is he?—  
 another Regnar Lodbrok, strutting about in that  
 Ducal mantle which his father filched from the  
 royal wardrobe; but the miscreant cannot hide  
 his shaggy breeks—faugh!—he leaves a whiff of  
 tar behind him.

§ 26. The difficulty of adjusting the succe- Dudo's  
narrative,  
difficulties  
which it  
offers.  
 sion of events in Norman history increases as  
 we advance.—Information concerning the inter-  
 nal transactions of the country is abundantly  
 furnished by our garrulous friend, that trusty  
 Scribe, charged to bear record of the family tra-  
 ditions; a task which he performed under the  
 immediate inspection of the parties mainly con-  
 cerned. Therefore, under one aspect, our ma-  
 terials may seem singularly satisfactory. When  
 we open the Dean of Saint Quentin's grandilo-  
 quent volume we know that there is but one  
 witness intervening between Guillaume Longue-  
 épée and Richard Sans-peur, and our own times,  
 yet Dudo distresses us by the disorderly copious-  
 ness of the facts which he discloses.

The events he narrates, present themselves to  
 the enquirer, as the Æginetan marbles did to  
 their discoverers; disjointed, and flung down in  
 confusion. The restoration of the Grecian groups  
 and sculptures was not, however, impracticable.

936—942 Separated members were reunited to the torso  
 from which they had been severed. Measure,  
 941—942 attitude and expression, conjoined in conducting  
 each effigy to its position on the base line. The  
 lowest crouching warrior disclosed the angle of  
 the pediment. The height of the tutelary Deity  
 gave the perpendicular, and the Artist, guided by  
 these data, was enabled to reinstate each of the  
 other images in its proper location; he could  
 see how they were regulated by the ascending  
 cornice, how their limbs were directed, and what  
 their countenances told.

Somewhat after this manner, have we to  
 deal with Dudo, and, accepting Guillaume Longue-  
 épée as the centre of the action, we may approxi-  
 mate to the position which the other characters  
 who are collected around him ought to assume.

Guillaume  
 determines  
 to govern  
 through the  
 Danish or  
 Anti-  
 Christian  
 party.

Hitherto Guillaume's vacillations betokened  
 infirmity of purpose, wanton caprice, or selfish  
 untruth; but he now deliberately determined  
 upon a complete alteration in his former policy.  
 Higher principles than those which a Minister can  
 allow to be recognized in a cabinet, would have  
 reprobated the scheme of action now matured  
 by Guillaume, but it was not unworthy of an  
 able Statesman. Notwithstanding Guillaume's  
 brilliant successes, he might well apprehend  
 that his labours were lost. Rollo's rude mili-  
 tary domination had been planted in the soil of  
 the Terra Normannorum, firm as a rock, whilst

Guillaume's Duchy of Normandy stood in tot- <sup>936-942</sup>  
 tering equilibrium, a tall and ornate column, <sup>941-942</sup>  
 trembling on its base, and which the slightest  
 touch might topple down.

Guillaume Longue-épée had hitherto conducted his government upon a system congenial to his tastes, and conducive to the dignity and well-being of the country.—Normandy, he had planned, should flourish as a Christian State, an integral member of the French Monarchy—and, to obtain this most desirable result, it was needful that he, the Dane by race, the Frenchman by nature, should meditate between the antagonistic nationalities. For this purpose had he wasted his life in toil and in turmoil, fought in the field and forsworn himself in the chamber, he had perilled body and soul; but what was his gain? Instead of being feared and honoured, he was now feared and despised: men cringed before him, and spat on his footsteps when his back was turned—thus ostracized—a red mark scored against Guillaume's name—he was irresistibly driven to the conviction, that if the outlawed “Dux Piratarum” bore a “wolf's head,” best it would be that he should defend that head by all the Pirate's power.

Until this crisis, Guillaume Longue-épée had been working to depress the Danish interest, and to rule by French ascendancy, but he now entered upon a course diametrically contrary to that

936—942 which he had previously followed, under the  
 conviction that his wisdom would thenceforward  
 941—942 consist in effecting a union of interests between  
 Normandy and the great and prosperous Danish  
 community, whose sons were preparing to achieve  
 the conquest of the Anglo-Saxon Empire. Since  
 the ruinous, yet inevitable, recognition of the  
 Danelaghe by Alfred, every Anglo-Saxon song of  
 triumph was but the prelude to the victorious  
 advances of the Northmen. Cut down by Athel-  
 stane, their armed hosts sprang up from the  
 blood-swamps of Brunnenburgh, in tenfold num-  
 ber, and with tenfold vigour. Hitherto, Guil-  
 laume Longue-épée had been striving to extin-  
 guish the Danish nationality, and to naturalize  
 the French nationality, but now he would throw  
 himself upon the Norskmen, trust to their loy-  
 alty, and bring them out as a people.

Guillaume's previous jealousy of the Danes  
 had made him well acquainted with all their  
 strength. Where he had watched them as enemies,  
 there he now knew to seek them out as friends.  
 Open or concealed, they abounded far and near.  
 Even amongst the Citizens of Rouen, immedi-  
 ately exposed to the influences radiating from  
 Palace and Cathedral, the semi-Romanized Danes,  
 always ready to shew themselves as thorough  
 Danes, constituted a powerful party.—In Bayeux  
 and the Bessin, when the Danish growth began  
 to be altered by the new climate: repeated

immigrations had renewed the old Gothic population. Whilst the old stocks were wearing out, new saplings had been planted.

936—942

941—942

All Denmark yielded obedience to mighty Harold, whose grim visage has already glanced before our view. "Harold Blaaland"—Harold with the blue tooth,—or Harold with the black tooth,—choose which version you will—son of Gorm,—the antient Gorm,—“Gorm-hin-gamle” and the sagacious and much-renowned Thyra Dannebod,—the wise Thyra, “Thyra Denmark’s adviser,” that Queen Thyra whose deeds are still sweetly sung in Danish ballad, her memory fondly endeared to national feeling. It was Thyra whose energy completed the great fortification, the “Danewirk:” the fosse and the rampart, which, combining with hill and stream and dividing Danish Holstein from German Schleswig, shoots across the Peninsula from sea to sea.

Harold  
Blaaland  
arrives in  
Normandy,  
and settles  
in Cher-  
bourg.

All competitors subdued or extirpated, Harold reigned as sole and supreme Monarch, the “Overking” of Denmark: Harold’s crews had repeatedly annoyed the Northern Gauls, but now, far more terrifically than erewhile, his Dragons of the Sea were descried from the Channel Shores.—If Harold’s approach excited great uneasiness, far greater was the public astonishment, when it was found that Guillaume Longue-épée, instead of testifying alarm or offering resistance, greeted the Dane as an ally and a friend. Harold was



936—942 cordially welcomed, sixty vessels disembarked  
 941—942 their sturdy soldiery, with whom Harold occupied  
 Cherbourg. Reinforcements flocked in from the  
 Danish bailliwicks, keels were laid down, and, thus  
 preparing for further operations, Harold flourished  
 singularly in the Norman Territory. Either by  
 the grant or the permission of Guillaume Longue-  
 épée, Harold possessed himself of the Côtentin.  
 He ruled in the Bessin where his Dansker-men  
 coalesced with their kinsmen, and Harold's in-  
 fluence was extending itself throughout the  
 Avranchin, the Cinglais, and indeed the greater  
 part of the Basse Normandie, according to the  
 nomenclature of more recent times.

Guil-  
 laume's per-  
 plexity as  
 to the po-  
 sition of his  
 son Ri-  
 chard.

A perilous venture it might seem for Guil-  
 laume Longue-épée, to permit these genuine  
 Norskmen, these men of the old sterling kith and  
 kin, the natural enemies of the men of the  
 Romane tongue, thus to flesh themselves in the  
 opulent country, and fill her ports and harbours.  
 —Had Guillaume Longue-épée counted the cost  
 of the aid he now sought to obtain?—His present  
 system could not be considered as a mere half  
 measure; a modification of the policy he had been  
 pursuing since his accession: it amounted vir-  
 tually to the total abandonment of such policy.  
 By consorting so heartily with the native Danes,  
 Guillaume Longue-épée was endeavouring to  
 undo all that Guillaume Longue-épée had hitherto  
 done. Previously, he had been governing entirely

as a Frenchman, assimilating himself to the French in all respects; but now he was reverting to a hostile nation, an antagonistic nation; not merely antagonistic as political enemies, but in language, religion, manners, customs, and all the usages of social life. By their instrumentality, he was seeking to support his power, the terrible Huscarls to be henceforward the Duke of Normandy's battle-axe guard. Had he not therefore irrevocably declared himself as the Frenchman's deadly foe?

§ 27. Still no comfort, no inward peace, no rest.—Accused by his own conscience, worn and worried by his divided mind, dimly yet painfully impressed by the perception of abiding contumely, perplexed by his increasing dangers, Guillaume Longue-épée's spirit collapsed. The dreams of early childhood, his youthful imaginations of monastic life revived and became a passion, moodily nourished until he pictured to himself that he would flee the conflict, and purchase tranquillity by the sacrifice of his Sovereignty.—No longer Lord of Brittany and the Armorican Marches, Seigneur, Duke, and Patriarch of Rouen and of the Terra Normannorum, but a poor and humble recluse, he would cast off the splendid shame of the purple chlamys, hide his face in the cowl, and, wrapping himself round in the coarse serge gown, which perhaps might veil his obloquy, retreat for the rest of his days to secluded Jumièges, the Sanctuary raised

936—942

941—942

Guillaume  
Longue-  
épée fan-  
cies he will  
become a  
monk.

936—942 and provided by his own bounty, the ready harbour of refuge open for the Dux Piratarum.

941—942

The conference between Guillaume Longue-épée and the Abbot.

The very remarkable conference which ensued when, having repaired thither, he opened his mind to Abbot Martin, has been minutely recorded—The Historian, when such cases occur, may, if he thinks fit, crave permission to excuse himself from enquiring who was the Reporter listening behind the arras; in the present example, however, we need not avail ourselves of this indulgence, inasmuch as we are able to ascertain without difficulty the channel transmitting the tints and lines of thought which gleam through the murky text indited by the Dean of Saint Quentin.

The discussion, so memorable in its results, must have been a great event in the Abbot's monotonous life, the story to tell and to tell again and again with increasing particularity, years after Guillaume Longue-épée had departed. Nor could even the Saint—for according to provincial traditions Martin was canonized—have avoided recollecting with some degree of complacency how cleverly he had managed his argument. Naturally would Dudo, when collecting the family traditions, resort to Jumièges for the reminiscences of the transactions which decided Guillaume's destiny.—And therefore we believe that the Abbot's own report is the foundation of the existing redaction, curiously exhibiting many features marking the individuality of each Inter-

locutor, the Prelate's quaint erudition, and the combination of subtlety and vehemence characterizing Guillaume Longue-épée. 936—942  
941—942

Guillaume, when he prepared to meet the Abbot, was bent upon carrying out his determination, and yet he was only half in earnest. Insincere to others, Guillaume was insincere to himself; nor could he avoid the apprehension that his abandonment of the Ducal Power might be fatal to the interests of the State and the ruin of his infant child. Distracted by the difficulties which enveloped him, Guillaume shrunk from facing the perils which he had aggravated by his double dealing, dreading equally the biting tongue and the trenchant blade.

“Ask your own conscience,” is the Preacher's common-place, whether in the pulpit or out of the pulpit.—Alas for the result! Ask,—but who gives the answer? When Man interrogates himself concerning himself, how rarely does he conduct the examination otherwise than on behalf of his Client: and, by putting leading questions, he makes the Witness reply in the manner which best pleases him. When you profess to doubt whether you are right, you most usually practise to wheedle yourself into a certainty it is right to do the wrong. If you commit your course to the lot, and play cross and pile with yourself, you fillip the coin to the intent that it should fall flat on the negative side and turn up the affirm-

936—942  
 941—942  
 ative. The friendly confidant is rarely consulted otherwise than with the same ingenuity, so, that whilst timorously disclosing the scruples which restrain us from the determination we wish to adopt, it seldom happens otherwise but that when we place ourselves with our selected guide in the thick of the wood, we contrive to make him see our way out of the tangle.

Amidst the eulogies which Dudo has bestowed upon his hero, we have no difficulty in discovering that such was the adroit perverseness of Guillaume Longue-épée. By the management of his own cause he sought to obtain the Abbot's sanction for his pusillanimity, to the intent that he might cast the responsibility upon his Adviser, the first and original deceit, upon which the conduct of Mankind affords a perpetual commentary.

Guillaume Longue-épée approached the grave Abbot under cover. He manœuvred to satisfy his own desires without subjecting himself to responsibility. And his artifice displays much cleverness; he concealed himself, as it were, in the crowd, and merged his individuality in the collective destiny of human society.

The "three  
 Alls," the  
 three or-  
 ders of  
 Society ac-  
 cording to  
 the Medi-  
 æval theory  
 of polity.

The mediæval system of Social Polity recognized three Orders as constituting the perfect Commonwealth—the Priest, the Soldier, and the Husbandman—the Triad, tersely and sonorously described by the Teuton, as the "Lehrstand," the "Wehrstand," and the "Naehrstand:" the

Three who respectively offer the prayer, wield <sup>936—942</sup>  
the sword, speed the plough. }

In our days, this triple organization is not <sup>941—942</sup>  
implicitly accepted as the normal scheme of  
society. Calmly is the *first* Order tolerated by the  
esoteric doctrines of civilization, a temporary  
concession to the weaknesses of the yet unen-  
lightened multitude, which may be kindly per-  
mitted to endure, until Positive Philosophy shall  
have superseded the last lingering supernaturalism  
of mankind.—A pietism, scarcely less antagonistic  
to Faith, indulges in the happy vision, that the  
progress of intelligence, rational religion, and  
humanity, will equally extinguish the *second*  
Order. And, to this effect, do the Orators of the  
platform pour out their bland eloquence, undis-  
turbed by the reports of the messages of peace  
and good-will towards all men, despatched to the  
Kaffirs from the Crystal Palace through the  
Christian agency of the five-barrelled revolver.—  
Coerced to admit the need of the *third* Order,  
the Political Economist grudges to confess the  
Divinely appointed sentence which condemns man  
to eat his bread in the sweat of his brow, and the  
ardent machinist announces his steam-plough as  
the harbinger of the good time coming, when all  
arduous manual toil will absolutely cease under  
the sun.

But, in the simple organization of Mediæval  
Christendom all the Three Orders were deemed  
to be mutually supporting; all Three equally

936—942 essential for the security of the State and the  
 happiness of the people—the Three Pillars which  
 941—942 support the Throne. This Theory was universally  
 adopted, no reasoner opposed it; no nation re-  
 jected it; King Canute promulgates the doctrine  
 as the canon of all good government; and, even  
 now, under the homely denomination of “The  
 Three Alls,” the “*ragione di stato*” of our an-  
 cestors may not unfrequently be seen symbolized  
 in the rude imagery of the weather-beaten sign,  
 swinging and creaking over the village ale-house  
 door.

Diverse, yet not discrepant, all the Three Orders  
 were equally honest, Holy Church embraced them  
 all. All therefore were unquestionably indispen-  
 sable; but, did each mode of life possess equal  
 merit and deserve equal reward?

Chevaliers, Clercs et Villains;  
 Chacun est droit et bon et sains,  
 Si l'un de l'autre se devise,  
 Si les receit tous Sainte Eglise.  
 Li uns Ordres l'autre soutient,  
 Et l'uns Ordres l'autre maintient.  
 Trois Ordres sont, chacun pour soi,

\* \* \* \* \*

Ceux qui vivent si diversement  
 Auront ils egalement  
 Un merite e un loier,  
 Dites le moi, ceo vous requier?

Such was the doubt submitted by Guillaume  
 Longue-épée to Abbot Martin, as the means of  
 suggesting the very direction which he wished  
 to receive, shaping his course warily, and with  
 a fair share of forensic subtilty, scarcely anti-

icipating that he could fail to gain a satisfactory <sup>938—942</sup> result. Was it likely that the Priest could do <sup>941—942</sup> otherwise, than point out the abandonment of worldly joys and temptations as the most assured path which the Christian could pursue?

A well-meaning and pious Confessor, but one not gifted with much insight into human nature, would assuredly have felt his heart melted by the gallant Prince's contrition and humility;—the splendid Warrior indifferent to the delights of the court and the glories of war, devoting his young and vigorous life to penitence, privation, and seclusion. The excusable desire of securing such an ornament for the House of Jumièges in particular, and Saint Benedict's religion at large, might have led the most honest Superior to hail the illustrious Convert. Had Abbot Martin been a character of the ordinary stamp, Guillaume Longue-épée would assuredly have added one to the ninety-three Royal Personages who appear as fruits amidst the branches of the oft-delineated tree, figuring the spiritual developement of the Benedictine Order: but, would this fruit have ripened?—or rather, would it not, worm-stricken within, have perished off the bough?

Our Abbot, however, though taken by surprise, was not thrown off his guard. Fore-warned for the discussion by his knowledge of the Guest, he was prepared, at once, to grapple with the exi-



936—942 gency—to him, the device was transparent as the  
 air. Treating therefore the subject very respect-  
 941—942 fully, dissecting the proposition with scholastic  
 ingenuity, and adorning his disquisition with  
 many a Greek vocable, he speedily arrived at the  
 conclusion, that Heaven was equally accessible to  
 all men, provided they duly performed the duties  
 allotted to them during their progress through  
 this world of trial.

Guillaume Longue-épée was indignant when the Abbot administered this baffling consolation; he would not abide it: he declared he could not possibly lead a righteous life amidst the allurements, distractions, and seductions of his station. The Norman Duchy had been thrust upon him in his youth—no fault of his—he had not courted the perilous dignity. His Father and the Chieftains of the Land had compelled him to accept the supreme authority when a boy, and now when he was of full age and competent to act for himself, he would cast off the grievous burden: he would be a monk—a monk Longue-épée would be! — —

Abbot  
 Martin's  
 answer.

Abbot Martin answered as though he were appalled by the very possibility of Guillaume's accomplishing his plan; Martin was evidently convinced that Guillaume Longue-épée would become a scandal and a disgrace to the Church, incapable of perseverance, one unconscious that such principles as truth and fidelity existed;

therefore, with the deepest sorrow, the Abbot gave a denial, respectful, discreet, but peremptory.—His answer was to the following import—such conduct would be a culpable abandonment of the charge imposed upon Guillaume Longue-épée by Providence: let him abide worthily in his vocation so long as life should last, protect his people, ministering law and justice. Should Guillaume Longue-épée force himself as a Monk into the Monastery, he, Abbot Martin, would flee the country, never to return.—

But Guillaume Longue-épée would not take any refusal; he asserted with vehement passion, that he would not continue Duke of Normandy, he would abdicate in favour of his son; the vow he had made, he would perform. And, let it be here remarked, that this very last assertion convicts him of deceit. The vow, what vow? had he made any vow when he came before Abbot Martin, there would not have been any questions to ask.—The Abbot broke up the conference by preparing to depart, but Guillaume, the angry Penitent, literally clung to his companion's skirts, casting himself at the Abbot's feet: nor, would he let the Abbot go, until his angry yet pitiable importunities extorted one concession from Martin's prudent compassion. Just as you give a play-thing to pacify a pettish child, Abbot Martin presented the Duke with the outward garments of the Monk—the gown and the cowl. Having gained these

936—942  
941—942

Guillaume  
Longue-  
épée's  
anger at  
the abbot's  
persevering  
refusal.

938—942 toys, the provoked and embittered Guillaume  
 returned to Rouen. Frock and cowl he deposited  
 941—942 in a precious shrine, the lock was locked by a  
 silver key; Guillaume appended the key to his  
 girdle which he always wore about his body;  
 never did he part with the key,—the key was  
 always ready for use should occasion arise.

Guillaume  
 Longue-  
 épée be-  
 comes dan-  
 gerously ill  
 at Rouen.

§ 28. Angered and grieved, his mental ex-  
 citement increased upon him; bodily illness en-  
 sued, and Guillaume fell sick of a raging fever,  
 so that his life was endangered. His constitu-  
 tional vigour, however, resisted the disease, the  
 fever left him; his head became more clear; and,  
 lying on his bed, he matured his plans for the  
 government of the Land during the interval which  
 might elapse between the Father's demise and the  
 full establishment of the Ducal authority under  
 his son.

During all these troubles, the anxiety con-  
 cerning the child pressed heavily on that father's  
 mind—and possibly, his distress in this behalf,  
 though blended with other motives,—even un-  
 worthy timidity,—induced him to resolve upon  
 the measure of abdication, in order that he might  
 settle a firm and responsible Regency, competent  
 to protect the infant heir.—Guillaume Longue-  
 épée's conduct, viewed as an entirety, discloses  
 the warning he had received. His ill-regulated  
 plans for resigning his Dominion were evidently  
 commingled with anticipations of his own death,

and also with the dread that the young and helpless Richard, never seen by his Father since the Stepmother came, might fall into the power of his enemies. — The current phrase, that presentiments, like prophecies, work their own accomplishment, is simply one of the devices whereby we vainly strive to effect our escape from the unseen World surrounding us. The thought, and the events which the thought forebodes, proceed from the same eternal treasury of foreknowledge.

Languishing, yet convalescent, Guillaume removed from the Palace to the Park of Chevilly, the place of disport, now sought by the pallid invalid for the enjoyment of tranquillity and fresh air. Much recommended also was the Lodge of Chevilly by its sylvan seclusion:—untracked and unobserved, and secured from the Stepmother's jealous espial, there might the troubled father behold his boy.—To Chevilly was the young Richard warily conducted from Fécamp by trusty messengers, and received by Guillaume Longue-épée, surrounded by the hoary Counsellors whom he had inherited from his father, the men who guarded him in his own childhood, Botho and Oslac, and Bernard the Dane. To them he exhibited the boy, calling upon the three aged Veterans to admire the pretty Richard's ruddy cheeks and flaxen hair. Guillaume kissed the child's eyelids, stript off his garments, and displayed Richard's tender, yet

936—942

941—942

Convalescent he removes to Chevilly: see p. 126.

The boy Richard produced by his father to Botho, Oslac, and Bernard the Dane.

936—942 sturdy limbs, coaxing them all the while. Ad-  
 dressing the three Nobles, not only as his friends,  
 941—942 but also as the representatives of the Community,  
 he poured forth his earnest solicitations that they  
 would take order and preserve the Duchy for  
 Espriota's child, so worthy to become their  
 Sovereign.

They ac-  
 cept him  
 as Guil-  
 laume's  
 successor,  
 and per-  
 form ho-  
 mage.

Guillaume Longue-épée appealed to them,  
 whether he had not striven hard to secure Nor-  
 mandy's prosperity;—but his work was almost  
 done.—Solemnly did Bernard, Oslac, and Botho,  
 make their responsive promises; faithfully had  
 they obeyed Guillaume Longue-épée whilst he  
 lived, faithfully would they guard and obey that  
 young child when his father should be called away.  
 —Richard Sans peur should be their Count, their  
 Duke, their hereditary Patrician. And the three  
 Old Men, kneeling before the lovely child, swore  
 the oath of fealty, performing homage in solemn  
 form, placing their great wrinkled hands between  
 his tender palms.

Guillaume  
 Longue-  
 épée takes  
 order for  
 Richard's  
 education.

Yet there was one parental duty still to be  
 performed, even more transcendent. The Child  
 was to be trained in the way he had to go. By no  
 mediæval dynasty was this precept more consis-  
 tently received than amongst Rollo and his pro-  
 geny, even until the extinction of his line. Tho-  
 roughly had Guillaume Longue-épée thought over  
 the education fitting for his Heir, and he declared  
 his wishes with a minuteness which testified that

the subject had been anxiously weighed and considered by him, and that he had formed a distinct conception of the ultimate results.—Not to Bishop or Priest, to Monk or to Abbot, would Guillaume entrust the fearless Richard. For all we can tell, never did his father wish that a shaveling should draw nigh him.—Botho had been Guillaume's teacher, and to Botho, the wise and courteous, the book-instructed warrior, the skilful huntsman, did he commit his son.

936—942  
 941—942

How must the young Duke of Normandy be trained?—Dignified as the Noble,—lettered as the Clerk,—firm in the saddle,—fleet in the field,—perch the falcon on his fist,—know the waters and the wealds—cast the net—dart the javelin,—slip the hound—break the deer.

Every branch of learning, every elegance of demeanour, might be acquired at Rouen. But in Romane Rouen, only half the work of tuition could be performed: to perfect Richard for the Dukedom, he must be reared elsewhere. Rouen's indwellers shunned the barbaric dialect of the Sea-Kings.—The French, and the best French of France, therefore became current in the antient City; but the schooling of Rouen, however good of its kind, would not suffice for the Monarch of the Terra Normannorum; he must be a Frenchman amongst the French, a Danskerman amongst the Danes. No other language could reach the Danish heart except the Danish mother-tongue;

Richard is  
 to be per-  
 fected in  
 the Danish  
 tongue.

936—942 and Guillaume, who could only discourse in  
 941—942 French, must often have felt the grievous disadvantage to which his ignorance exposed him. Not merely must the young Rudo Jarl comprehend the Norsk, but he must speak it as if inborn; and nothing of the sort could be gained at Rouen. The Norsk might be read from the Rune-stave, but you could not learn the lore from the book; the hearing ear must listen to the opening lips; and therefore did Guillaume Longue-épée insist that the young Richard should fix his residence at Bayeux, where the very children lisped in Danish syllables.—All these behests did Botho promise to perform. As the apple of his eye, would he care for the precious child.

942  
 May 29.  
 Inauguration of Richard at Bayeux.

It was the usual custom during the middle ages—not yet entirely obsolete amongst the Churches of the Roman obedience—that the opening of National Councils or Assemblies, should be hallowed by celebrating the Mass of the Holy Ghost, or held on the Pentecostal Day: and on that high festival, at Danish Bayeux, a City selected with a very marked intent, was the young Richard inaugurated, the ceremony being performed with unprecedented solemnity. Conjoined to Botho and Oslac and Bernard the Dane, seven other Nobles appointed by Guillaume Longue-épée constituted the Regency. Their names are not recorded, but, judging from the important parts which Osmond de Centvilles, Yvo, the father of

Guillaume de Belesme, and the grasping crabbed Raoul-Torta, afterwards played in the historic drama, it is probable that they were amongst the number. Moreover, besides this selected Council, all the Chieftains of Normandy and Brittany—the latter country still bearing rather the appearance of a co-ordinate dominion than a vassal state—were then and there also assembled.

936—942

942

To Guillaume's impassioned address, a universal assent was given. On behalf of the Community, and swearing the oath on the Holy relics, did the seven Nobles become the young Richard's liegemen and perform homage to the Child, placing their hands between his hands, following the example which Botho, Bernard, and Oslac, had afforded at Chevilly.—Thus was the young Richard put in actual seizin of the Ducal authority; and Guillaume's mind being tranquillized, he speedily recovered his health. Yet he was often languid, as if he were wearied, and desiring to lie down and rest.

§ 29. Guillaume Longue-épée had relieved himself from the immediate pressure of care concerning his son, but he had subjected himself to a burden of anxiety which he could not shake off. He could not be satisfied with himself. The measures which he had commenced, necessitated a complete reconstruction of the Norman Commonwealth. When he began his reign, he did not entertain any particular ill-will against the Danish

Guillaume  
Longue-  
épée's dis-  
tress of  
mind.



936—942 party, though he delighted to be a Frenchman:  
 but favoritism is more galling than injustice, and  
 942 thereby he excited the virulent discontent which  
 provoked Riulph's insurrection.

Guillaume suppressed this great rebellion—  
 but his victory was really a moral defeat. He  
 stained his character indelibly. His most zealous  
 and attached friends had felt themselves dis-  
 graced by his unworthy cowardice. By his treat-  
 ment of Riulph and Riulph's family, he had roused  
 the pertinacious vengeance of their kindred; and,  
 if the intensity of the outraged feeling which was  
 dogging him to the death, can be accepted as  
 the standard whereby we are to measure his de-  
 parture from mercy and from truth, atrocious  
 must have been his cruelty and perfidy.

The dispersion of the Danish revolt egged Guil-  
 laume on to firmness; he pledged himself to rule  
 as a French Prince, and strove to knit Normandy  
 into the French monarchy. Had he adhered  
 faithfully to King Louis, it is possible that the  
 rare virtue of a Liegeman's integrity might, from  
 the very strangeness of the occurrence, in some  
 degree have redeemed the Pirate from obloquy.  
 But, abusing all opportunities, he had exasperated  
 the leading men amongst the French, and, by his  
 alliance with the terrible son of Gorm, Guil-  
 laume now presented himself to the whole French  
 nation under the worst as well the most despi-  
 cable aspect; according to their judgment, a rene-

Offence -  
 given to the  
 French by  
 his union  
 with the  
 Danes.

gade, in the most odious sense. Secular policy <sup>936—942</sup> and religious faith were amalgamated, and there- <sup>942</sup> fore a political union with the Danskermen in the State was the inevitable precursor of religious apostasy from Christianity. Guillaume's dealings with Harold Blaaland were fraught with imminent danger to men, women, and children, to gentle and simple, to priest and peasant, to goods and chattels, to life and land, to the Frankish Commonwealth and to universal Christianity.

Neither was Guillaume's inimical policy to last only for a limited time. The foundations for the rebuilding of the Danishry were laid fast and wide. Guillaume Longue-épée had planned that the system should endure from generation to generation.—As the young Richard was taught, so would he transmit his lessons to his children and to his children's children. Guillaume's scheme of tuition professed to imbue the Pupil with the Danish ethos concurrently with his qualifications as a Frenchman, yet the whole academical course could scarcely fail to impart unto the young Richard a decided predilection for the Danish policy, and render the Danishry preponderating in his spirit and mind.

Preponderance given to the Danish element in the scheme of Richard's education.

It is impossible to teach without a tendency. Be you "Popish," be you "Protestant," be you "Panthéist," be you the very perfected type of philosophical indifference, you will contrive, somehow or another, to give an inkling of your sentiments

936—942

942

even in your lessons of words of one syllable.—Guillaume placed the noble Youth amidst the Danish population of the Bessin, at that period of human life when the clay, still ductile, though hardening, is able to receive the impress most readily, and with the best chance of retaining the stamp until solidification. Thus would the young Richard become a Danishman in all his tendencies, and, as years advanced and power increased, a fatal foe to Christendom.—The inauguration of the future Sovereign at Bayeux indicates that thenceforward the Danish City was to be the seat of government and the Capital, Danish Normandy the ruling State, Romane Normandy the subordinate member. Besides the political importance which Bayeux would acquire as the Sovereign's residence, Rouen depended upon these Western Provinces for her supplies, being almost wholly victualled by the Cotentin and the Bessin. Throughout the Carlovingian Empire the Norsk was execrated as the chief nutritive element of Paganism, and not improperly. The extinction of that language amidst the converted Northmen, was inculcated and exacted as the indispensable test of their sincerity. Guillaume Longue-épée's instructions were calculated to render the Norsk the language in which Richard would think, whilst, to the French, every phrase he uttered in the same Norsk would be offensive as a testimony against Christianity.

Indeed, the general scope and tendency of <sup>936-942</sup> Guillaume Longue-épée's educational theory, <sup>942</sup> whether from designed policy, or from absolute unconcern, was practically antichristian. The one thing needful was wholly ignored; no Bishop, no Priest, no Monk or Abbot was placed about the boy. Christianity had absolutely no place in the Instructor's Programme: When providing for the courtly training and intellectual cultivation of the young Prince, Guillaume Longue-épée was conducting himself like his equals and conforming implicitly to the spirit of the age; but, by excluding the Clergy from the school-room he placed himself in dogged opposition to that same spirit.

Christian-  
ity ex-  
cluded from  
Guillaume  
Longue-  
épée's  
scheme of  
education.

The boy's education was exclusively confided to laymen, clever men, men of war;—even his own mother, the gentle Espriota, was entirely kept away from him. For anything that Guillaume Longue-épée had enjoined, his boy might never hear a good word. Nor indeed, in this respect, had Rollo managed otherwise for Guillaume his son than the son was preparing to do for the grandson. Such wise politicians as Bernard, Botho, and Oslac, though obviously opposed to the Pagan Danes as a party, were Christians of the slackest observance. Even the legends do not, as is usual in the case of distinguished individuals, try to connect them with the Church. The only Christian Danish *Kæmp* for whom local tradition supplied a Christian sepulture, is the renowned

936—942

}

942

Oggiero il Danese. Religion, thus neglected, there was every probability that Richard, not caring much for any of these things, would protect, if not profess, the antique Creed of Odinism. Raoul-Torta, a Frenchman, Father of Walter Bishop of Paris, Hugh-le-Grand's Chancellor, was a Church demolisher as fierce as Hastings. Under a Sovereign so minded, the Normans would fall into a state of semi-paganism more insidiously dangerous to Christianity than avowed heathenry,—Was or was not this the result anticipated by the careful Parent?

§ 30. Despite of Guillaume's more than suspicious conduct, Louis apparently bestowed so much favour upon him as to excite the jealousy of the other French Princes. As there was always one intrigue shelled in another intrigue, it is possible that Louis wished to play him off against the Vermandois-Capet party,—or, may be, it was a feint, for the purpose of throwing Guillaume off his guard. But this state of affairs did not last.

The Council of Attigny. Peers summoned thereto.

A very remarkable rumour obtained currency in England, that Count Riulph's Kinsmen—Balzo is the only one whose name we know—had appealed the Duke of Normandy before the King of France, as a cruel and treacherous murderer. No further circumstances are recorded—but Guillaume, however, did at this period certainly acknowledge the obligation of rendering suit and service to the French Monarch, like as a Peer of

France. In this quality he was summoned by Louis to a great Council, to be held in the Palace of Attigny. Hugh-le-Grand, having made his peace, was summoned. Arnoul of Flanders, and Herbert of Vermandois, were summoned; King Otho, now cordially united to his brother-in-law, attended also, obviously as a friend and chosen counsellor of the Realm.

Following his father's example, Charles-le-Simple, Louis d'Outremer fully maintained due state, and his Counsellors theirs also. According to the law and practice of these Assemblies, it scarcely beseemed such Potentates as composed them, to appear before the King precisely on the very day which his precept enjoined. It was a point of honour not to be strictly punctual; the King might wait in patience or with impatience through the first day, the second day, and the third day, but if the haughty Peer presented himself on the *quarto die post*, he had done all that could be required. The Commentator of the laws of England quotes an apt passage from Tacitus, in support of the opinion that the Freeman's pride may have found consolation in this conventional assertion of independence; yet another reason, at least equally sufficient, may be found for the indulgence — namely, the uncertainty of intercommunication. — With the fullest desire to “keep his day,” a foundered horse, or a bridge ruined by a flood, might render the Baron's appearance on the re-

936—942  
942

The return  
and the Es-  
soign.

936—942 turn of the writ, impracticable. Hence the commercial “three days grace.” The most trusty Factor might be retarded in bringing the money-bag to his Principal. If, through such a contingency, the Merchant of the Rialto did not discharge his *cambio* the very day when it became due, it would have been cruel, by reason of his involuntary default, to exhibit him in the Piazza before San Marco,—elevated, as an insolvent, on the stone of shame.

942

Whether the Counsellors, earnestly desiring to speak with the King, and waiving their dignity, accelerated their pace, and, literally obeying the Precept, had come together three days earlier than could have been expected—or whether Guillaume Longue-épée had been delayed by accident, or whether he had mistaken the Essoign-day, or whether he had not cared to remember the right day, cannot be ascertained.—Anyhow, when Guillaume arrived at Attigny, the Council had been long in actual session: the portal of the council-chamber was closed: porches and galleries deserted by the Royal officers: even the important Usher had slid away. Guillaume therefore was compelled to tarry outside the dumb door. He waited and waited to be introduced—no one came.—The proverbial discomfort of expectancy was increased by the vehement suspicion that the neglect was prepense, until, losing all patience, Guillaume smashed open the

Guillaume Longue-épée excluded, whether by accident or design, from the council. His anger.

valve. Rushing in, he beheld King Louis seated on the estrade, King Otho by his side. "Do you treat me as an intruder?" roared the son of Rollo—"am I guilty of treason?" He compelled King Otho to rise: he would have pummelled King Otho had there been any delay. The Council was broken up, and King Louis departed.

Were the circumstances which had caused this deplorable turmoil purely the result of chance,—or was any insult to Guillaume Longue-épée really designed? The contemporaries of this strange scene asked the question, but no clear answer was received. If, however, the intention of giving such an affront to Guillaume Longue-épée, as might madden him to some wild outrage, be hypothetical, the result of his anger-burst is incontestable.—All determined to abide their time.

§ 31. An awful decision, which the Princes of France had not hitherto been able to contemplate distinctly, now assumed a definite shape and form. Until this explosion of violence, they had not fully comprehended their case, but (as it seemed to them) they now understood it in all its bearings. Guillaume Longue-épée had forfeited the protection of every law, human or divine—a Pirate, a Pagan, above all, a Barbarian, he was entitled to none. Received into the safeguard of the Christian community, he had forfeited that safeguard. Uniting himself to the

936—942  
942

Determina-  
tion of the  
French  
party to rid  
themselves  
of Guil-  
laume  
Longue-  
épée by  
summary  
vengeance.



936—942 } Danish Outlaws, he became a Pirate himself; his  
 942 } pristine liabilities reverted to him. In open war,  
 Guillaume might escape by the chances of war,  
 but, was he entitled to the privilege of being dealt  
 with openly?—Therefore, were not all men enti-  
 tled to deliver themselves by every means in their  
 power from that pest of humanity, against whom  
 fair force might not avail. Moreover, the recent  
 history of the Empire had afforded a precedent  
 peculiarly applicable to this particular exigency.  
 Who could do otherwise than applaud the skilful  
 astuteness by which the Emperor Charles-le-Gras,  
 the Archbishop of Cologne, and the noble Counts  
 Henry and Everard, had freed the Christian Com-  
 monwealth from the Danish Godfrey?—The  
 Emperor would not even allow the claims of a  
 daughter's husband to stand between the country's  
 safety and the needful sacrifice. How much misery  
 had been saved to the Community, when Count  
 Everard drew his sword, and split the boozing  
 Northman's skull!

Does not our age of civilization sanction this  
 mode of reasoning equally by ethics and by prac-  
 tice?—Who are our Heroes?—Our generous youth  
 are taught to twine the myrtle boughs around  
 the swords of Aristogiton and Harmodius.—Still  
 is the “God-like stroke” of Brutus eulogized in  
 prose and verse.—Had the trigger of the Tippe-  
 rary blunderbuss been pulled in the “classic land  
 of liberty” and amidst the splendid scenery of

lake and glacier, would not the clumsy barrel be proudly exhibited in the Armoury of History bound up in the same "*faisceau d'honneur*" with Wilhelm Tell's mediæval Crossbow.—The gory head of the Pretender would have been duly honoured as a draft at sight, good for Thirty thousand pounds, payable over the counter to the bearer when presented at the Treasury. And, until the sea shall give up her dead, has not the applauding voice of our assembled Legislature drowned the Dayak's cry for vengeance?

Otho, exceedingly incensed by the indignity he had sustained, unhesitatingly proposed the summary infliction of capital punishment. King Louis, according to a widely-spread rumour, concurred in the determination. True it is, that after the bloody deed had been perpetrated, it is said that he professed much indignation at the act: but the eagerness with which he immediately strove to profit by the Duke's assassination, imparts an unfortunate degree of probability to the accusation tarnishing his fair fame. Hugh-le-Grand is very distinctly named as one of the conspirators, and, conducting himself exactly like Louis, the immediate snatch he made at a tempting portion of Guillaume Longue-épée's dominions, renders him liable to the same heavy condemnation. But that Arnoul was the acting leader of the conspiracy is incontestable, and he undertook to carry the sentence into execution.

936—942

942  
 Arnoul des-  
 patches an  
 embassy to  
 Guillaume  
 requiring a  
 conference  
 on the  
 island of  
 Picquigny.

Had Arnoul's long-standing hatred against Guillaume Longue-épée needed any further incitement, the Norman now gave some slight pretence. Herlouin not having been fully reinstated in his dominions, Guillaume Longue-épée, on behalf of his dependant, made reprisals upon the Flemish territory: but he pursued his warfare slackly; his wish for tranquillity was increasing upon him: his angry passions were mitigated, and he was well prepared to receive with favour the pacific legation despatched by his brother-in-law.

Arnoul's ambassadors spake beseechingly and humbly to Guillaume in their Master's name.—Arnoul, as his Envoys stated, craved a truce for the purpose of negotiating an enduring peace; the terms to be proposed, should, in every way, redound to Guillaume's honour. Arnoul would himself have repaired to Rouen, but his sad podagrical infirmity precluded him from attempting so long a journey. A personal conference was however indispensable, and Arnoul therefore ventured to name the locality where the meeting should be held.—Apprehensions of treachery or suspicions, not by any means unreasonable during the mediæval era, jealousies of rank and punctilios, not entirely unrecognised in later periods, frequently suggested that such high contracting Parties should assemble on an island. It was upon the Island in the Epte that Rollo performed

homage to Charles the Simple. Indeed, from the old Roman times, when the Triumvirs met on the Island of the Reno, until the nuptial pavilion was pight upon the Isle des Perdrix, history abounds with notices of interviews between royal or other great personages thus held. Therefore it was equally conformable to the usual habits of official intercourse, and suitable to Guillaume Longue-épée's personal convenience, that Arnoul indicated an eyot, circled by the Somme, opposite Picquigny, just beyond the borders of Ponthieu, almost in Guillaume's territories.

Arnoul's proposition was very grateful,—strangely grateful,—to Guillaume Longue-épée, who, at once, shewed himself ready to hail this submissive and loving courtesy. His Advisers, however, did not participate in their Sovereign's facility.—“Trust him not,”—said Count Herlouin;—“be assured that deceit is lurking in his offer.”—Guillaume Longue-épée could not deny the relevancy of this warning, yet he did not accept it; and, summoning his Council, he brought the matter before them. They unanimously adopted Herlouin's opinion, but Guillaume Longue-épée persevered, with fated eagerness, in seeking the removal of all difficulties.—The Duke besought his Council that they would sanction his compliance with Arnoul's proposal.—Peace he desired at any cost, and in any way; yet he would avoid fool-hardiness, in no wise omitting

936—942  
942

Guillaume accedes to the proposal, contrary to advice.

<sup>936-942</sup> any degree of jealousy which prudence might  
 require.

<sup>942</sup>

Guillaume mustered his troops, Normans and Bretons, the latter commanded by Alain Barbe Torte and the Count of Rennes: and a large number of "Pirates" (as the French always called Guillaume's men), fully adequate to prevent any surprise, took their position nigh the Somme, observing the eastern bank of the river. Other detachments were stationed at Amiens.—The infirm Arnoul, though burthened, as he complained, by his swollen limbs, retained nevertheless, so much activity, that he was able to reach the place of tryste sooner than the young and vigorous Guillaume. Ere the Duke of Normandy landed, the Flemish Count had occupied the island.—Arnoul came forward limping—dear old gouty man—supported by two of his companions.—Four had he with him, three of them being obscure individuals:—a Henry, a Robert, and a Rodolph, who cannot be identified; but the fourth was too well-known,—none other than the ominously celebrated Balzo, Count Arnoul's familiar, the nephew of Riulph, the instigator of the great rebellion. All, the four, however, presented themselves as domestic attendants of the heavy halting Count, undefended by helm or hauberk, clad in pacific garb, and wrapt up in the furry garments suited to the chilly season. Very different was the array

17 Dec.  
 942.  
 The meeting on the island.

Arnoul and his four companions await Guillaume.

of Guillaume Longue-épée. Twelve full-armed<sup>936-942</sup> Knights were ferried over in his barge,—his <sup>941-942</sup> body-guard—who carefully kept the ground so long as the conference lasted. Guillaume appeared with this military train, according to Arnoul's own expressed desire; and the many who were distrustful of Arnoul's honesty, might try to be satisfied by the circumstance, that, to his suggestions, were owing the precautions, seemingly sufficient for the defence of Guillaume against any latent treachery.

Yet the propositions, ostensibly so unobjectionable, were most considerately calculated to answer the ends of Guillaume's implacable enemies. The whole scheme for entrapping and murdering him had been organized by Arnoul and Hugh-le-Grand, with the participation, according to common fame, of Thibault Count of Blois, otherwise Thibault *le Tricheur*, or *le Fourbe*, or *le Vieux*—all three epithets well and truly earned or bestowed.—It having been decreed that Guillaume should die, Arnoul, when he consented to accept the dread responsibility of becoming the principal agent, shrunk from the obloquy, or perhaps feared the distress, of actually witnessing his brother-in-law's mortal agony. It was needful therefore that this horrible catastrophe should so be woven into the plot as not to ensue until he should have turned his face away.

Plot for entrapping Guillaume planned by Arnoul and Hugh-le-Grand, Thibault of Blois also said to have joined therein.

938—942

}

942

Moreover, as it was anticipated that the “Commander of the Pirates” would be protected by his Pirate bands, it was necessary that due order should be taken to screen the actual enforcers of the judgement from their fury.

Arnoul's  
deceit.

The short December day was fully employed in copious and cordial discourse between the kindly friends.—Arnoul declared he would make every sacrifice to obtain peace and tranquillity;—Herlouin should be fully reinstated in his dominions. Arnoul intimated to Guillaume that he dreaded the encroachments of King Louis; nor was he less apprehensive of their common father-in-law, the crafty Herbert, and also of the mighty Duke of France, Hugh-le-Grand. Therefore Arnoul would transfer his allegiance to Guillaume, accept him as his Protector and his Superior, nay, as his Sovereign; and, after Arnoul's death, Guillaume should succeed to the dominion of the entire territory. The hours wore away rapidly; evening darkness drew on; the kiss of peace closed the discussions; and Guillaume Longue-épée prepared to quit the island: yet otherwise than as he had arrived. By the management of Arnoul's people, the twelve knights who escorted Guillaume crossed over first to the shore, in a larger boat; Guillaume Longue-épée was left alone. Not however could this separation disquiet him, for a small skiff, — the crew, consisting of a single Mariner and two lads — was lying by.

Guillaume entered: the Mariner steered, Guillaume helped to pull an oar. When the Duke was on the water, Arnoul's attendants ran to the river-brink, and called out to him to make the land again, they had an important message to deliver from Count Arnoul, — matters forgotten in the haste of parting. The boat was turned about, and Guillaume stepped forth upon the swampy greensward. The four Confederates drew the swords concealed beneath their vestments. They fiercely rushed upon the defenceless Guillaume and his companions. The sailor and the boys were desperately wounded, Guillaume slain:—Balzo, the avenger of Riulph's blood, gave the mortal blow.

936—942  
 942

Arnoul  
 having  
 returned,  
 Guillaume  
 is over-  
 powered  
 and slain.

It is scarcely possible to doubt but that Guillaume fell by Balzo's sword; for it was in consequence of the act that he, ere long, sustained the retribution inflicted by the savage sorrow of Herlouin. Nevertheless, so strongly did the evil repute cling to the Tricheur's name, that, in the following century, he was still execrated as the real criminal:—and we can distinctly trace the opinion subsisting in that Treasure-house of historical reminiscences, the Monastery of Fécamp.

§ 31. The locality is well ascertained by tradition; the *Pré au trois Cornets* being the present name of the field. The deed was committed in full view of Guillaume Longue-épée's army, assembled on the opposite bank. But the river was much broader than it is at present, corre-



936—942 sponding to the pristine spread of the estuary.  
 The course of the stream has also been much  
 942 changed; and the branch which separated the  
 mainland from the little island has been choked  
 by alluvion.

The carefully devised complot had fully succeeded. The "Pirates" were utterly baulked. To have rescued the victim was impossible; but Guillaume's troops could not even obtain the unsatisfactory satisfaction of vengeance. Arnoul and his party escaped, long before the Normans and Bretons could reach the island. The river was Arnoul's; he had cleared away the craft. At length, means were found for conveying the Corpse to the left bank of the Somme. They washed the body, stripping off the bloody garments, and found the silver key attached to his girdle.—What treasure is thereby secured? His Chamberlain gave the explanation. It was the key of the silver casket in the palace of Rouen, containing the cowl and robe wrung from Abbot Martin :—and with plaint and wail, the Corpse, wrapt in a silken shroud, was slowly conveyed to Rouen.

Guillaume  
Longue-  
épée's  
corpse re-  
moved to  
Rouen.

State of  
affairs in  
Normandy  
immedi-  
ately after  
Guil-  
laume's  
death.

§ 32. Normandy, when the appalling fate of the Sovereign had been announced, continued steady in gloomy tranquillity. The sympathy of grief and the apprehension of danger, the common affection entertained towards the young Child and the common peril, produced quiescence amongst all parties, and silenced all contentions.

Not even did the impatient Armoricans endeavour to insurge against the Regency, which Guillaume Longue-épée had so considerably provided for the government of the country during the minority of his son. True did his friends continue to their trust. Bernard the Dane adhered religiously to his promise; he watched the child as the apple of his eye.

Bernard, the valiant companion of Rollo when the Terra Normannorum was first won, retained his pre-eminence,—universally acknowledged as the President of the Land,—Commander of the Norman forces,—the Leader and the Councillor of the State. Bernard's great bodily vigour was scarcely diminished; his mental powers were in full vigour. Bernard was equally adequate to the cares of the cabinet, or the strain of the chevauchée,—not such another in Normandy for his years. Veritably did he exemplify the true Norman type according to the repute which the Norman race popularly acquired;—the half-savage Danish cunning subtilized by civilization,—quick, clever, astute, full of devices and wiles, and enjoying the artifices by which he gained his ends. Bernard's aspect bespoke his character. The Minstrels celebrate his long flowing grey beard, which equally certified and symbolized his age and sapience:

La barbe avait blanche e florie,  
N'avait en toute Normandie  
Un Chevalier de son aage  
Qui mieux semblast prodome e sage.

936—943

943

Yet whilst the observers admired the rough-barked antient, they would smile when they beheld his delicate young wife by his side, and express their doubts whether, in one respect, it might not be thought that the wrinkled Sage had lacked discretion. An octogenarian, he had married a tender damsel of high degree, and the Minstrels who describe Bernard's long flowing grey beard, were equally fluent in the praises of the varied charms and attractions which adorned the lovely Lady:—

Gente Dame de haut parage  
Bele, corteise, e proz e sage.

Her name is unknown, though like many other beauties, she was doomed to attain an unlucky poetical celebrity.

Botho,—  
Osmond de  
Centvilles,  
—Raoul  
Torta.

Some other of the principal personages are also brought before us. Botho, occupied by the affairs of government, transferred the actual charge of the young Richard his god-son, to the anxious and affectionate Osmond de Centvilles.

The ungain character of Raoul Torta (afterwards the unpopular minister of the young Duke) has been clearly chronicled, but we do not know much concerning his personal history. Possibly he may have been connected with Hugh-le-Grand, inasmuch as his son Gautier, Bishop of Paris, had previously been one of the Duke-abbot's flock—a Monk in his Monastery of Saint Denis. Raoul Torta was opulent and influential, enjoying large possessions, and supported by numerous friends

and retainers in the vicinity of Rouen. But though the before-mentioned nobles enjoyed the highest political station, yet the head of the Baronage—  
 for we may now fairly begin to employ this term—  
 was Yvo, the "*Veteranus*," or the "*Fortis Marchio*," or the "*Formargis*," or the "*Normannus Normannorum*," the founder of five great families, Belesme, Ponthieu, Perche, Alençon, and, through the female line, Montgomery.

Proud Liutgarda, amply endowed by Guillaume Longue-épée, and retaining her endowment, very speedily departed; and within a short time after Guillaume Longue-épée's murder, she became the congenial consort of Thibault Count of Blois. According to the Fécamp version of the sad story, the *Tricheur*, hasting away from the eyot of Picquigny, was the first who conveyed the intelligence of the happy riddance to Herbert of Vermandois, Guillaume's father-in-law: and, attributing to himself,—whether truly or untruly, the merit of the misdeed,—solicited and obtained the Widow's hand. Be this as it may, the marriage operated much to the annoyance of Normandy. As long as she lived, Liutgarda entertained the most direful antipathy against the young Richard, whether she disliked the son for the sake of his father, or whether she had been provoked by Guillaume's attachment to Richard's mother, the Concubine.

With that much defamed but really honest

936—943

943

Liutgarda  
and Espri-  
ota—their  
marriages.

936—943




943

woman our group must be terminated. Espriota seems to have continued for some time near her son; but when he had passed from captivity into exile, and the troubles came on—possibly at the juncture when the shameful conduct of the French garrison of Rouen towards the Norman women occasioned so much distress—she, like her Vermandois rival, took a husband, but hers was a worthy and substantial man, Asperling, or Sperling, the rich Miller of Vaudreuil.—The fruit of this marriage was the renowned Raoul, Count of Yvri.

Divine  
right of  
kings—not  
recognized  
during the  
mediæval  
periods.

§ 33. “The right divine of kings to govern wrong,” had not been promulgated in the mediæval era. Wrong enough was done, but not sacrilegiously sanctioned by any attribution of Divinity. Kings and beggars,—fellow-subjects to the same authority,—fellow-sinners,—none were permitted, according to the teaching of the mediæval ethos, to break God’s laws, or exonerate themselves from their duty towards man. Not that all men were amenable to the same tribunals, or liable to the same temporal law, yet the Sovereign was encircled by a boundary, which, if he overpassed, shut him out as a transgressor; there was a Code to which he must conform. Men’s base passions were as rife as they ever were and always will be. Poets flattered, Courtiers crouched, and Prelates cringed, but no grave, cassocked Homilists had dared to utter the sycophantic blasphemy that the Eternal

had communicated his name to a mortal king.— 936—943  
 Render unto Cæsar those things which are Cæsar's.   
 Render due submission, so far as submission is due; but nothing more.—Fear God first, then honour the King. 943

Assuredly, in one sense, regal dominion is really a divine right, inasmuch as through Him kings reign. The first King placed over the People of God, albeit the people sinned in demanding him, received his kingdom through the Prophet's ordination,—sealing him to be the secular Chief of the Lord's inheritance. Therefore it was appointed by the mediæval Church that the Sovereign should be hallowed in his dignity; the Christian Minister ruling the Christian People; governing the Holy Nation by Priestly Royalty, such was the theory of Mediæval society. The King appertained to the Clerisy; a principle most plainly affirmed by our antient English common law. Even as the Priest was set apart to perform his office, so was the King. Even as the Bishop vowed and promised before the altar, duly to perform his functions, so did the King. And the covenant which the King, upon the demand of the Church, then entered into with his people, summed up, in three brief clauses, (hereafter to be noticed), every essential obligation of a Sovereign.

*Le Roi est mort! Vive le Roi!* was the proclamation made by the gorgeous Herald to the

Saul accepted by the mediæval Church as the type of royalty.

936—943

943

trumpet's sound, when the surcoat was emblazoned, and the helmet crested, and the embroidered banner dropped ponderously pendant, shadowing the foliated ogive-canopy of the sepulchre.—But the maxim, *Le mort saisit le vif*, was not undeniable law if applied to the Sovereign during the subsistence of the Carlovingian race, nay not even during the early generations of the Third Dynasty. Firmly as the principle of an hereditary right, vested in any given lineage, may have obtained, it was not a right absolutely inherent in the person. The son did not enter upon the royal authority, as a matter of course, after his father's demise. Amongst Subjects, the Benefice, Fief, Feud, or Lehn, was not brought into the heir's legal possession until he had been acknowledged by his Superior, neither could the Sovereign-apparent consider himself as clothed with royalty until sanctioned by the recognition of the Commonwealth. A father might, for the ensuring the transmission of the Kingdom to the Son, associate that Son to himself in the exercise of the regal office; nevertheless in some guise or another the affirmation of the State was required; nor could the right, though indefeasibly appertaining to the lineage, be perfected, until such acceptance could be testified:—upon each mutation of occupancy, a pause ensued.

Hereditary right requiring the ratification of the people on each mutation of authority.

Therefore, however solemn had been young Richard's inauguration at Danish Bayeux, Nor-

mandy must ratify the compact, and that assent must be given which it was needful to solicit, though no one could anticipate a refusal. The same principle is still exemplified in England when,—the right to the throne having been previously acknowledged by those who according to antient custom speak on behalf of the Community,—the yet uncrowned Sovereign is presented before the shrine of the Confessor to the Lieges of the Realm.

It was a great advantage to Bernard the Dane and the Council of Regency, that the slow progress of the funereal train from the banks of the Somme, had afforded them full leisure for opportune consideration. The time was employed in devising the measures best calculated to ensure the country's safety, and the future stability of the young Richard's dignity. He was forthwith brought away from Danish Bayeux, and lodged in Rollo's palace in Romane Rouen, and Bernard the Dane—for we can scarcely question but that he suggested the proceedings—effected the young Duke's inauguration shrewdly and sagaciously, appealing not merely to the political opinions and affections of the people, but also to their imaginative feelings. Nor is it any disparagement to the good sense of those who directed the solemn ceremony that there was a marked attention to dramatic effect,—

936—943  
943

Interment  
of Guil-  
laume  
Longue-  
épée in  
Rouen Ca-  
thedral, and  
Richard's  
inaugura-  
tion.



936—943  
 948 an impressive contrast exhibited between grief and gladness, a striking transition from mourning to joy. This tendency to poetize the affairs of human life seems to have been innate amongst the French, and it is one of the elements which potently contributed to the developement of chivalry.

In the Cathedral of Notre Dame, Chieftains and Nobles, Priesthood and Laity, Normans and Bretons, were crowded—a vast commixed assembly. Guillaume Longue-épée's deep-dug resting-place had been prepared opposite to his father's tomb. By the side of the yawning grave stood the bier, bearing the swathed cere-clothed corpse.

The still existing effigy which transmits Guillaume's portraiture, may, though the tomb be of later date, be readily accepted as recording the traditions of the antient times. The long-bladed sword, sheathed in the gemmed scabbard, was lying as on the dead man's breast.—All was ready—yet the obsequies were stayed.—No movement was made for the dark descent into the pit, and the untouched corpse remained a weight upon the bier. Then was the young Richard suddenly brought forth,—the pleasant and fearless child.—You would have known Richard Sans Peur anywhere as Guillaume's child,—the child displaying the characteristics of the antient Danish race, the

bright tints, the fair complexion, the golden hair, <sup>938—943</sup> and the brilliant eyes; the features which, to the <sup>943</sup> last, were hereditary in Rollo's gifted progeny. One universal shout arose when the Boy was presented before the multitude. With one acclaim they acknowledged the heir of Guillaume Longue-épée and of Rollo;—they would serve him, they would defend him,—they would live and die for him, their natural Sovereign.

The proceedings were opened by the Armoricans, Count Juhel Berenger took up the speech, <sup>Recognition of Richard on the proposition of Juhel Berenger.</sup> an honour possibly rendered to his Comital dignity, as if he and Alain were the chief Peers of the Northman's Monarchy. Moreover the increase of the Danish forces in the Côtentin, and the fear entertained by the Bretons lest the Pagan Danes might renew their devastations, compelled them to draw closer to the Christianized Northmen. But in whatever manner the pre-eminence thus ceded to the Count of Rennes may have been construed or taken, any way it manifested that Bretons and Normans were equally determined to co-operate in maintaining the dignity of the Ducal Realm. Juhel Berenger insisted upon Richard's right, echoing the popular postulation,—The boy must be their Duke, their Patrician, their Sovereign.—Guillaume's shield had fallen, Richard's shield must be raised. And, continuing his impassioned argument, the Count of Rennes demanded how otherwise than mustered under one

936—943 } standard, could they protect themselves against  
 943 } the invasion of the enemy?—Again, a thunder-  
 ing shout declared the universal consent; and  
 now the young Richard became qualified to re-  
 ceive the consecrated investiture.

Only to a crowned King did the sacramental unction appertain, and not to every crowned King was that ordinance extended. The Duke's exalted rank entitled him to the benediction of the altar, and that benediction was bestowed. So to speak, he was in minor orders. In all respects, save ampulla and diadem, did the Ducal inauguration and the royal coronation correspond, and the three promises which the young Richard made to the people, binding himself to their observance in the Saviour's name—that he would preserve Peace to Church and people,—prohibit all oppression and violence—and in all his judgments observe justice and mercy—were those exacted from every Sovereign. Peculiar reference was made in the Collects to Richard's youth. He received the ring and was girt with the sword—symbolizing his espousal to the dominion whereof he was to be the natural defender.

The Lieges now perfected the compact. Again were the Armorican Chieftains foremost in testifying their obedience, placing their hands within the hands of Richard: and the other Nobles and Chieftains followed their example. The shrines were brought forth, and the Gospel book and the

Holy Rood ranged in awful array before them, and, <sup>936—943</sup>  
 the oath of fidelity being taken, the young son <sup>943</sup>  
 of Guillaume Longue-épée was full Sovereign.

But the young Richard inherited more from <sup>Loyalty of the Normans towards Richard.</sup> Guillaume Longue-épée than his dominions, he enjoyed a better defence than the trenchant sword—a more potent safeguard than any political theory—he commanded his people's loyalty. This unreasoning sentiment, resulting from a higher source than human reason, is as much a gift as any other natural affection, a free gift of the heart, uncoercible as love, and, like love, in no wise depending upon the worth of the object to whom the affection is rendered: and we are constrained to say it ought not.

However deficient in principle, Guillaume Longue-épée's character was very winning.—Not are the wisest the most regretted after death, because their wisdom rebukes our folly; nor the pious, inasmuch as their example shames us; nay, humiliating as the confession may be, not always even the truly loving; their very tenderness being oft-times a trouble to our perverse hearts. Most generally are those lamented who are most agreeable, whose geniality puts us in good humour with ourselves.—*Vive Henri Quatre!*—Scarcely would the *vert-galant* lover of *la belle Gabrielle* have been so deplored, had it not been for his sunny bonhommie superadded to the primal charm of his libertinism.

936—943

943

Guillaume Longue-épée's redeeming virtue was his firm and merciful administration of justice. Endeared to his subjects by the protection he afforded, his brightness fascinated them, and the resentment excited by the cruel treachery of his enemies, exalted the popular grief to a strain of indignant enthusiasm. All the affection for Guillaume Longue-épée was transferred to the young Richard. All the Norman parties, the fully Romanized, the settled Danishry, even the Pagan Northmen, entertained the same ardent feeling. Richard was a most precious pledge to whoever was interested in the affairs of Normandy, whether as a friend or as an enemy.

Richard's right was unassailable and indubitable.—No ambitious intruder from amongst the Northmen would be allowed to rise up as his rival. No stranger from without, should dare to challenge his dominion. All conjoined in revering their infant Chief as the representative of the Commonwealth. Adverse as the parties were in interest and opinions, all were consentaneous in their determination.—Under one Ruler, Normandy should continue one State, one undivided Monarchy. They never swerved from this normal doctrine, the boundaries of Normandy never receded, and the Dukes of Normandy became as independent as the Kings of France, whose superiority they acknowledged, but whose behests they never held themselves bound to obey.

## CHAPTER IV.

LOUIS D'OUTREMER—LOTHAIRE AND LOUIS LE FAINEANT—  
RICHARD SANS PEUR—ACCESSION OF THE CAPETS.

888—987.

942—987.

§ 1. HIC DEFECERUNT REGES DE 888—987  
STIRPE KAROLI.—Inscribed in uncial ca- 942—954  
pitals, this sentence, or its equivalent, rouses the 943  
reader as he labours through the manuscript The last  
commemorating the fates and narrating the for- era of the  
tunes of antient France. It is the usual practice Carlovin-  
of the French monastic chronographers thus to gian dy-  
bear record of the great event—The parchment nasty—  
rises up before you as a sepulchral memorial, accelerated  
the words startle you as the epitaph of the rapidity of  
doomed race. The sand is running out rapidly. its decline.  
The thrice-repeated Eight, the Eight hundred  
Eighty and Eight, dissolved the Carolingian  
Empire; and the Ninety and Nine circling years  
which ensued, and through which we are now  
passing, are fast conducting us to the last of  
these remarkable secular numbers,—the Nine,  
the Eight, the Seven,—when the knell of Charle-  
magne's dynasty was rung.

All the devices whereby Man seeks to delay  
the dread sentence which decrees that he shall

942—954  
 943  
 return unto the dust from whence he was taken, all his endeavours to cast a veil over the hideousness of death, either enhance the loathsomeness of corruption, or sharpen the rebuke of mundane vanity. Charlemagne's embalmed corpse, then and still abiding in the ghastly tomb-chamber of Aix-la-Chapelle mocked and mocks the decay, the disgrace, and the ruin of the glorious Empire which he had founded. Nevertheless, whilst the Monarchy was failing in the persons of the perplexed Rulers, the monarchical spirit continued to wax in strength. More firmly was the abstract doctrine of hereditary right protected by law, and far more forcibly advocated by public opinion, than when the Pontiff placed the diadem on the brows of Pepin's son.

Increasing  
 strength  
 of the mon-  
 archical  
 principle.

Never indeed, under any circumstances, had the Monarchical principle been contravened by the populations within the ambit of the Empire—no other form of government was known by them. The exceptions, when examined, prove to be no exceptions, or exceptions proving the rule. Regality was the organic element of the Commonwealth, the Commonwealth could not otherwise exist: an acephalous body politic was inconceivable. One supreme Pontiff, Head of the Christian Church; one Emperor, Temporal Head of the Christian Commonwealth; one King in each Kingdom.—No, not even when the remnants of the Carlovingian Empire had been rent

asunder, was the dream of founding a Republic entertained. Each King whose Kingdom had at any time been fashioned out of the ruins of the Carlovingian Empire ruled his realm with imperial right; every King, receiving the regal benediction, was as an Emperor within his kingdom.

942—954  
 942—943

Louis d'Outremer acted on the full conviction that this position was irrefragable. Well versed in the arts of government; bold without rashness; happily unincumbered by any inconvenient scruples of political morality; retaining the undiminished consciousness of his exalted dignity despite of his mortifications and misfortunes: all these qualities invigorated him during the hard conflict he had to wage—he fought the good fight of royalty with the spirit of a King. During his whole life Louis was, to use the common expression, under female influence, and, for a man of his rank, in a singular manner; that influence having been only exercised by Mistresses who might legitimately demand it.


Character  
of Louis.

During childhood and adolescence the energetic Ogiva, who had rescued him from perpetual imprisonment or death, continued to act as a wise and sagacious guardian. After his marriage with Gerberga, the closer claims of the wife superseded parental authority; yet the dutiful affection which Louis entertained for his mother was not diminished. He loved her and he

Influence  
of Ogiva,  
whom he  
appoints  
Lay-Abbess  
of Notre  
Dame at  
Laon.



942—964 honoured her, testifying his sentiments by practical kindness and liberality. So completely  
 942—943 had Louis been despoiled of his domains, that Gerberga, on her second marriage, does not appear to have received any dowry, whilst she lost a part (some say the whole) of that which, as the relict of Gilbert the bold swimmer, she ought to have held in Lorraine. Louis, therefore, not having any proper means of his own, enabling him to make a competent provision for the widowed Ogiva, applied himself, as was the custom, to the resources afforded by church property. There existed at Laon a noble Convent, founded by the venerated Saint Salaberga in King Dagobert's days. This House of Religion was peculiarly under royal protection. When the King entered the Close, he dismounted from his horse, and his dogs were left to bark without the gate—and, when he attended service in the Choir, he honoured the Festival and the Sanctuary by wearing his Crown. But Royal patronage was onerous as well as honourable. The Monarch assumed the irresponsible power of presentation to the preferment, and when Louis appointed Ogiva as the Lady Superior, such an act was perhaps the minimum abuse of his authority. Through his gift, the Queen Mother of France and Lay-Abbess of Notre Dame de Laon received the revenues of the opulent establishment;—where, unfettered by monastic rule or inconvenient vow,

she might hold her little Court, and enjoy herself <sup>942-954</sup>  
in sober ease and matronly dignity. 

Louis possessed in Gerberga the truest help- <sup>942-943</sup>  
mate. The natural character of King Otho's  
sister, King Henry's daughter, was closely ana-  
logous to her husband's; their merits were the  
same, the same their failings. Mutual affection  
increased the original conformity of the Royal  
pair: whether the wife of Louis or his widow,  
the Queen Consort of France exhibited parallel  
talent, parallel spirit, and parallel energy.

Never yet had Louis faltered since the cheers  
of the multitude welcomed him on Boulogne  
shore. Louis brought a will of his own from  
beyond the sea. The propitious omen still seemed  
to be verified, he still kept his seat on the cur-  
vetting steed, still manifested himself the master.

Measuring the results which he obtained  
against the means he possessed, King Louis had  
been singularly successful. Courage, prudence,  
and talent had enabled him to make head against  
the difficulties and evils which, from his very  
birth, had swarmed around him.—Under the  
domination of three successive Usurpers, the  
honour of Charlemagne's race had been tar-  
nished, and the son of Charles the Simple had  
inherited a maimed and humiliated Kingdom.—  
Replaced upon the throne, the Protector who  
seated him there was trying to edge him off.—  
This Protector rapidly disclosed himself as a

<sup>942—954</sup> rival, seeking to supersede and betray the authority which he had professed to restore.—

<sup>943</sup>

Neither faith nor trust could Louis find in his lieges. Throughout the wide extent of France but one walled city owned him as her lord, the oft-beleaguered Laon.—But now the ranks of his enemies were thinning, the Commander of the Pirates was laid low; and within a short season after this deliverance, Louis was also freed from the opponent who had most distressed him by pertinacity and perfidy.

<sup>943</sup>  
Death of  
Herbert of  
Vermandois. Tra-  
ditionary  
accounts  
thereof.

§ 2. A much-talked of day there was, when the travellers journeying from Laon to Rheims, or the travellers journeying from Rheims to Laon, both parties pursuing their route by the road which wound around the foot of the Mont Fendu, reined in their horses as they crossed each other midway on the causeway,—arrested by the strange and fearful spectacle exhibited on the summit of the hill—a corpse down dangling from the tall gallows-tree, and coming out stark and dark against the sky. This was the carcase of Count Herbert, who, (as it is said,) pursuant to the judgment pronounced in the King's Cour Plénière at Laon, expiated his crimes by receiving condign punishment. Such a sentence passed upon the representative of Charlemagne was sufficiently appalling; but when we are told that Louis himself was the Hangman, it is excusable to indulge in the supposition that popular belief may

have adorned the tale with additional horrors. <sup>942-964</sup>  
 In consequence of this stern vengeance did the <sup>943</sup>  
 Mont Fendu become the record of Herbert's fate,  
 acquiring the name of the "Mont Herbert," which  
 it still retains.

Some trustworthy Chroniclers however, relate that the murderer of the martyred Charles died in his palace, on his bed,—convulsed,—raving amidst his convulsions,—and shrieking out the confession of his treason.—“We were twelve who did it!” was his dying cry.—Neither narrative necessarily disproves the other. Either may be substantially true—both, making a discreet allowance for the tempting pleasures of imagination, equally credible. Although we may be in doubt as to the particular mode adopted by Louis to rid himself of the regicide, still we may readily believe that the noble malefactor perished by the King's righteous and legal judgment, or by the King's command. If Herbert was actually gibbeted, could it be denied but that he had deserved the doom?

In Herbert's own country, long did the tra-  
 ditions continue current, and the monumental  
 evidences in which they were embodied, have  
 been accepted by the most recent of the Ver-  
 mandois historians, as confirmative proof of the  
 Count's melancholy fate. When the stranger was  
 entering the Chapel of Notre Dame la Bonne,  
 adjoining the great Collegiate Basilica of Saint

Herbert's  
 tomb at  
 Saint  
 Quentin.

942—954  
 943  
 Quentin, the guide was wont to stop the visitor at the threshold, and ask him to look down upon the worn and fractured slab on which he trod: and there, (as pointed out and explained by the Sacristan), he might admire the incised outline of Count Herbert's effigy, displaying the culprit's neck encircled by the hateful halter; a representation always assumed to be a coeval memorial of the fact, inasmuch as it was believed that his sons caused him to be buried in that chapel, and no one doubted but that the stone had been laid down by their command.

Partition of  
 Count Her-  
 bert's do-  
 minions.

Be this as it may, four out of Herbert's five sons, his children by Hugh-le-Grand's sister Hildebranda, divided his dominions amongst them. Albert the Good, the second son, preferred to Eudes the eldest, for reasons which will be hereafter mentioned, became the Count of Vermandois: Eudes acquired Amiens: Robert, the third son, who died without male descendants; and Herbert the Handsome, the fourth son, the conqueror of hearts, successively obtained the Palatinate County of Troyes, which their father's boldness and adroitness had founded; whilst Hugh, the puisné, whilom the Parvulus, wasted the whole of his life in his contests for the Archbishoprick of Rheims against Artaldus. An attempt was made to dispossess Herbert's children, but Hugh-le-Grand supported his nephews, and aided them in vindicating their rights

before the King. Hugh-le-Grand was also gratified by a remembrance carved out of the defunct's estate, to wit the superiority of Creil and Thury, and Coucy's noble tower, all which fiefs were held under him by Bernard de Senlis. The late Count Herbert had detached these domains from the temporalities of Rheims, and his sons seemed to have ceded to their Uncle, as a token of gratitude, that which was not their own.

Legal evidence frequently extends no further than to raise vehement presumptions. When dealing with historical evidence it rarely happens that we can elicit much more. And it is not a far-fetched supposition, that Louis if he did in any wise plan or effect the removal of the Vermandois Count had fully reckoned upon the consequent advantages. The power of Vermandois was broken by the partitions of the inheritance; and whether Herbert of Vermandois was choked in his bed or strangled by the hempen noose, whether Guillaume the Captain of the Pirates had been lawfully executed or foully murdered, the result was identical. Two members of the treasonable Triumvirate had breathed their last breath: and the confederacy whereby Louis had been so venomously assailed was at an end.

Therefore it would appear, at first sight, that through the death of Count Herbert, Hugh-le-Grand was the loser, and Louis the gainer: but

942—954



943  
Hugh-le-  
Grand—  
increase of  
his power.

it was his destiny that his fairweather gleams of sky should always be speedily clouded; and Louis, though some time elapsed before the full extent of the reaction became manifest, was really on the suffering side.—*Qui habet socium habet magistrum*.—In the English language we lack any proverbial version of this instructive apophthegm, so well exemplified on the present occasion by Hugh-le-Grand: who, liberated from the constraint of partners no less grasping than himself, and always ready to check, contradict, or sacrifice him, presented himself in far greater force than before.

943  
Birth of  
Hugh  
Capet.

Concurrent with this important phase in Hugh's political affairs when, had his Astronomer "erected a figure," Jupiter could have been found to be lord of the ascendant, a most unexpected event occurred which complemented his good fortune. In early manhood Hugh-le-Grand had been childless; in the prime of life Hugh-le-Grand continued childless—wives and concubines equally barren; but now, in Hugh-le-Grand's old age, he ceased to be childless; a child was born to him. Hugh-le-Grand, hitherto characterized as the nephew of a King, the brother-in-law of a King, the son-in-law of a King, and the son of a King, though not a King himself, became, at last, the father of a King. Hadwisa, the sister of King Otho, was delivered of that sturdy child, the gossips' marvel, who, receiving the paternal name of Hugh

at the font, acquired in after-life, for the torture of antiquarian wits, the world-renowned epithet of Capet.

942—954  
942—943

Hitherto Hugh-le-Grand had pursued his schemes of aggrandizement somewhat desultorily.—He persisted in his self-denying determination that he would never wear the Crown. At the commencement of Louis d'Outremer's reign, this abnegation of the royal insignia merely amounted to a distinction without a difference. The Protectorate approximated so closely to the Sovereignty that the office might be easily accepted as an equivalent; but, when deprived of his Protectorate, he never pretended to exercise any marked predominance over his Confederates. He became the liegeman of Otho, readily acknowledging also his German brother-in-law as King of France: and, except when directly co-operating with the other leaders, he seemed to content himself with nibbling the royal territory, and to be satisfied if from time to time he could win some town or tower. But in future we shall find him acting definitely, whether defying the Carlovinian sceptre or gnawing under the throne, and not sparing any exertion of power, any flattery or any fraud, for the purpose of attaining his ends.

Hugh-le-Grand's conduct becomes more definite.

He was the same Hugh-le-Grand, and yet substantially altered. Henceforth we shall constantly find him acting, so to speak, in the spirit of an ambitious parvenu, seeking to be the founder



942—954 of a family, giving his whole mind to the acquisition of capital, which he hoards for the benefit of his heir.

943

Louis encouraged to plan the subjugation of the Terra Normannorum.

§ 3. Immediately after the butchery of Picquigny, Louis prepared to adopt measures for regaining the Terra Normannorum, commencing with the territory between the Seine and France. Yielding to the narcotic influence which plausible deductions from popular opinions exercise upon the mind, the scheme of annexation may, without any twinge of conscience, have been preconceived by Louis, Guillaume Longue-épée yet living, adding to his convictions that it was a righteous deed to slay the Captain of the Pirates for the safety of the Carlovingian Commonwealth.

No probability of real peace with the Northmen.

To speak of peace between the Danes and the Carlovingian nations was indeed a conventional falsification. There could be no peace between them, according to the doctrines which they mutually maintained. The Danskerman's print of his foot sealed the soil to him and his heirs for ever. If ousted, his title was not barred, and he would regain his own whenever he could or dared; no effluxion of time could affect the justice of his claim. The Danish champion challenged the Conqueror on his coronation-day—The Carlovingian people, on their part, would not admit that any title could be lawfully obtained by the Northmen;—their title was incurably bad;—no cession was valid, no

treaty binding, no oath was made to be held. <sup>942-954</sup>  
 No defiance needed to be given to the perpetual <sup>943</sup>  
 enemy; and, when Guillaume Longue-épée had  
 fallen—no matter by whose instigation—Louis  
 might surely believe that his royal duty bound  
 him to avail himself of the opportunity which  
 now was offered for the “reintegration of the  
 Realm, and uprooting the detested Pirates.”—It  
 seemed as if Guillaume Longue-épée had worked  
 prepensely for his country’s ruin. When called  
 to the dominion of the Terra Normannorum, the  
 antagonistic parties were rivals; his attempted  
 fusion had produced confusion—and, taken away  
 from that dominion, he left them prepared and  
 ready for mutual hostility.

Dismissing, however, from our consideration  
 all questions bearing upon the culpability or the  
 innocence of Louis, and, without attempting to  
 determine whether his aspirations prompted Guil-  
 laume’s assassination, or whether the assassina-  
 tion suggested the desire, it is indubitable that  
 he, the King of France, could not fail to watch  
 for every opportunity of destroying the Pirate’s  
 nest. That the Northman should reign in France  
 was a foul disgrace, an ever-increasing national  
 danger. Louis had a sufficient warning before  
 his eyes. Through Alfred’s fatal grant to Guth-  
 run the Danes were devouring England. Louis  
 must have felt that it might be within his power  
 to restore France to her integrity. One strenuous

Louis just-  
 ified by po-  
 litical pru-  
 dence to  
 plan the  
 re-annexa-  
 tion of Nor-  
 mandy in  
 the first  
 instance :

942—954

}

943

struggle might render the Kingdom safe and sound. Adversity taught Louis the lessons of prudence; necessity had enforced them. Discretion was one of the principal talents by which his authority had been sustained. He never presented himself as an aggressor except when he could reasonably expect success. The caution of the warrior-statesman, would have verged upon incompetence, had it caused him to doubt but that the right time for hitting the blow had arrived.

... but his  
plans are  
thwarted  
by the un-  
expected  
firmness of  
the Nor-  
mans.

All the political data upon which he had based his calculations of success, were, when he first entertained the scheme, such as fully warranted his conclusions. The Normans were a divided people, their ruler a child, and the deductions from these premises fully justified the course of action he was contemplating. But, as soon as the determined attitude taken by the Normans, when they rallied round the young Richard, became known to Louis, he must have had a presentiment that his adverse Nemesis was preparing to thwart him. The sources of weakness had been so over-ruled as to become sources of strength. The hearts of the people were turned. Richard, the child, was shielded by the ardent developement of the people's love, and the divided people were prepared to defend the united Norman Monarchy—Instead of being able to make a speedy entry into the Terra Nor-

mannorum, or to effect an easy conquest, Louis had now to anticipate an hazardous delay, whilst the actual conflict might require the most strenuous exertions of policy and power.

Whether directly or indirectly, the affairs of Normandy and the Normans always affected the destinies of France, and, under the present contingencies, these Norman influences were, through the strange complexity of parties, operating decidedly for the benefit of Hugh-le-Grand. Otherwise than by the aid of the dreaded rival, Louis could scarcely expect to accomplish his intentions.

In addition to the certainty that any manifestation of ill-will from Hugh-le-Grand, when Louis should commence his operations, would be a serious impediment, he possessed peculiar means of embarrassing the French Monarch. Hugh-le-Grand's Duchy of France commanded Normandy. The Seine gave him water-way from Paris to Rouen: and his northern frontier was conterminous with the most vulnerable portions of the Norman territory;—the Evrecin was open before him. Moreover, the fragment which Hugh had split off from the Vermandois inheritance, though not in the immediate vicinity of Normandy, much increased his means of interference amongst the Normans. By the possession of Couci and the fiefs dependant thereon, Hugh became the liege-lord of Bernard de Senlis, that Vermandois kins-

942–954  
942–943  
Advantage  
resulting to  
Hugh-le-  
Grand by  
the pres-  
sure of  
Norman  
affairs upon  
Louis.

Hugh-le-  
Grand's  
command  
of Nor-  
mandy.

942—964 man whom Guillaume-longue-épée had believed  
 to be his surest resort, and Bernard de Senlis  
 942—943 cherishing the consanguinity, though now somewhat distant, claimed Guillaume's son as his nephew, and evinced himself an affectionate member of Rollo's family.

Hatred  
borne by  
Louis  
against  
Hugh-le-  
Grand.

Louis hated Hugh-le-Grand: and, if hatred ever can be lawful, Louis had good reason.—“We were twelve who did it.”—Had Herbert of Vermandois, the agonized self-accuser, named the names of his accomplices in the Peronne tragedy, would he not certainly have proclaimed Hugh-le-Grand as one? So believed king Louis,—Hugh was his father's murderer,—and he nourished his resentment against Hugh as a sacred duty. But a suspension of their mutual enmities was urgently needful for Louis, and not unwelcome to Hugh. Louis therefore put on his choicest smirking mask, and opened the smoothest flattering palm, and began to bid higher and higher for the co-operation of his crafty enemy. The rays of court favour shone brilliantly on the Duke of France. We shall see how he obtained from Louis a large expansion of territorial power: and Hugh-le-Grand, exalted as he already was in station, deemed himself nevertheless encreased in honour by the marks of royal distinction he received,—the decorations which royal condescension bestowed.

A series of events now ensued, arising from

the contrarious and complicated forces which did not entirely expend themselves, until Richard's Norman reign was verging towards its conclusion. During many troubled years after his accession, Normandy became implicated in the contests amongst the rival parties, either striving to retain or gain Normandy, or endeavouring to render the Country a fulcrum of power.—The ultimate result may be briefly stated, Hugh-le-Grand aided most efficiently in building up the Norman Duchy, and the Duke of Normandy's wisdom and valour sustained Hugh Capet during his progress to the Throne.

942—954

942—943

Views of  
the con-  
tending  
parties.

The main plot of political intrigue continued to be worked by the same actors and agents as heretofore.—We shall find Hugh-le-Grand and Louis, sometimes simulated friends, but always open or secret enemies.—Arnoul of Flanders figures in the scene, still suffering from occasional attacks of the gout; nevertheless, despite a malady emphatically designated in legal documents as “tending to shorten life,” he attained the venerable age of ninety-two years. And although already fully entitled to the epithet of *le vieux*—he was more anxious than ever to improve the advantages he had gained by his brother-in-law's assassination. — Thibaut - le - Tricheur, and his fine consort Liutgarda, both stimulated by ambition and by spite, consistently appear as the persecutors of Richard to the utmost of their

The adver-  
saries of  
Normandy.

942—954 power—Otho vibrates between his two brothers-  
 in-law, the King of France and the Duke of  
 942—943 France, and holds himself high above both of  
 them.—All are equally unscrupulous, not a truth-  
 telling tongue or a sound heart amongst them.—  
 And our Chroniclers, the Dean of Saint Quentin  
 and the Monks of Rheims, distracted by the  
 troubles, and infected by the faithlessness of the  
 times,—will, to the end of the Chapter, perplex  
 and mislead us equally by their concealments and  
 their disclosures.

§ 4. It is perhaps one of the greatest curses  
 waiting upon intolerance, that the removal of  
 the wrong invariably generates further evil. Even  
 the grudging relief which hard necessity occa-  
 sionally extorts from an oppressor in favour of  
 an hitherto proscribed party or sect, is an act  
 sure to be misrepresented on either side. Those  
 who previously revelled in the full tyranny of  
 ascendancy, resent the diminution of injustice as  
 an affront, whilst the oppressed construe the  
 concession as a summons to retaliate in their  
 turn; and this was the crisis which Guillaume  
 Longue-épée had brought on.

Guillaume Longue-épée's vacillations,—the  
 tokens and results of his insincerity—the alterna-  
 tions of encouragement and disfavour which he  
 had manifested towards each of the antagonistic  
 parties of Normandy, were calculated to give the  
 greatest provocation to both of them. When first

called to the full exercise of his authority, Guillaume had prided himself upon his French consanguinities, courted French society, adopted French manners, and absolutely identified himself with the Romanized party. And although he may not have inflicted any positive injustice upon the Danishry, he was assuredly harsh and ungain towards them. But, after various shiftings, and in the gloomy evening of his reign, when he had tasted the contempt of the French, and was convinced of their implacable hatred, he had completely reversed his earlier policy. Giving the most favourable interpretation to his educational measures concerning Richard, they testified that he viewed Christianity as a thing indifferent. Guillaume was reverting to the antient race of his forefathers: he cordially conjoined himself to the Pagan Danes, and was proclaiming the restoration of his brotherhood with Scandinavia. Yet, in so doing, he had not withdrawn his confidence from the Romanized party; nay, he clung to them as his most intimate friends; to them, he entrusted the person of his child.—Therefore when Guillaume's days were cut short, he had armed the rival factions against each other. He had bequeathed to the Danishry the full benefit and advantage of his favour, affection, and patronage; whilst at the same time, by granting the custody of the infant heir to the Romanized or Christian party, the opponents of the Danishry

942—954

942—943

The Danish  
and Christian parties  
provoked  
against  
each other  
by Guillaume  
Longue-  
épée.



942—944 were, by such his concurrent act, fully invested  
 with the powers of government.

942—943 Bernard and his party being in possession—  
 they, like all clever men under similar circumstances,—determined to keep possession. They had the management of the inauguration in Notre Dame of Rouen. The administration of the oaths, *more Christiano*, manifested their decided intention. No further promulgation of the opinions entertained by the Regency could be needed. They were seeking to confirm Christianity as the State Religion, and therefore the Danishry, though thoroughly loyal towards Richard, kept away. The Danish-minded and the declared Pagans kept together. The Cathedral ceremonies were so planned as to affront and defy them. What concern had the old-fashioned Danes before the altar? What cared they for Gospel book or Orison, Collect or Benison, or Bones of Saints or Martyrs?

Indeed, the whole Danishry might argue that such an installation of the young Prince was clean contrary to his father's intentions. Guillaume, at all events, sought to maintain an equilibrium between the two nationalities; whereas the Christian Ordination of the Sovereign was a gratuitous innovation, uncalled for, and absolutely subversive of the compact. No such rite had hitherto signalized the accession of Duke, of Senior, or of Patrician.—Rollo had not sought the Clergy's

benediction when he obtained his dominion;—  
 no,—nor Guillaume Longue-épée either. If, with  
 the intent of conciliating the Romanized North-  
 men, Guillaume had appointed that the acknow-  
 ledgment of the Heir at Bayeux should take  
 place on a High-day coinciding with a great  
 Christian festival, yet, in this concession, he was  
 very chary. The act was altogether the act of  
 the Civil Magistrate. The Heir entered not into  
 the Cathedral, the Basilica of Saint Exuperius  
 was deserted — no Priest or Prelate was sum-  
 moned to hallow the secular ceremony—no bless-  
 ing asked. The instructions given by Guillaume  
 Longue-épée for the training of his child were  
 sagaciously calculated to withdraw the young  
 Prince from clerical influence, whilst, on the con-  
 trary, the Rouen consecration effected by the  
 Regency was as evidently adopted for the pur-  
 pose of launching the young Sovereign under  
 the protection of the Christian Hierarchy. Lastly,  
 the Danishry might insist that when Guillaume  
 had directed that the child should live amongst  
 the Danes, grow up amongst Danes, dwell in  
 Danish-Baieux, and be trained for the duty of  
 government in the Danish capital: Bernard had  
 most solemnly promised Guillaume Longue-épée  
 that he would observe all his injunctions. Yet,  
 what had Bernard done?—he had swerved from  
 the testamentary directions given by Guillaume,  
 in the most prominent and cardinal article,—he

942—954

942—943

942—954 had removed Richard from the Danish-spoken city to Romanized Rouen.

942—943  
Movement  
of the Da-  
nishry.

Thormod's  
renuncia-  
tion of  
Christ-  
ianity.

The Danes  
combine for  
the purpose  
of uniting  
Normandy  
to the  
Danish  
common-  
wealth.

But if the Christians were holding fast, the Pagans were up and doing.—The movement which Guillaume Longue-épée had imparted to the Danishry was proceeding with accelerated rapidity. Harold Blaataand and his Danes were settled in the Côtentin, and this immigration imparted a new vigour to the Pagan interest throughout the whole of the Terra Normannorum. Thormod, a powerful chieftain, and probably a Norman born, renounced his simulated Christianity and resumed the worship of the moody Hammer-wielder, the tutelary Demon, whose name he bore,—and we may imagine him enjoying his hearty meal of horse-flesh, the test of repentant sincerity. Communications were opened with other Danish Chieftains afloat or beyond the sea—a Sithric is named amongst them. A war of religion was impending. Odinism, considered as a system of positive belief, may have been on the wane, but a bitter antipathy against the faith of others is perfectly compatible with the laxity of our own. However, the Danes still retained a strong habitual attachment to their ancestral credence. Laws, customs, even food and clothing, contributed to keep the heathen Danes in the old paths, and, obeying the impulse given by Guillaume, they were earnestly endeavouring that the Terra Normannorum

should be reunited to the grand Danish Commonwealth. 942—954

Not that these views detracted in any wise from their loyalty towards Richard. They were as earnestly attached to the young Duke as their opponents. Even Harold Blaataud, who might be so excusably tempted to avail himself of the child's nonage, entertained a most honest affection for him. Since the Christian Danes would not content themselves with an equality of rights, the Danes must protect themselves. Normandy must be preserved as a united Monarchy, but the Duke must grow up a Dansker-man, and the State maintain the dignity of a true Danish community. 942—943

§ 5. In our age, a public debt is the most satisfactory evidence of "social Progress." By becoming liable to bankruptcy, the Ottoman Empire has been brought within the pale of civilization. Had France, in the tenth century, been qualified to possess this most delicately sensitive of political thermometers, the *Rentes* of Louis d'Outremer would have been suddenly quoted at a very remarkable rise. Yielding to the panic excited by the Danish revival—at all events no other reason can be honourably assigned,—the Romanized party resolved not only to obtain the guarantee of the Carlovingian crown, but even to place Normandy in absolute subjection to the French Monarchy.

When, upon Richard's accession, the news of

942—954

942—943

The Norman nobles bring Richard before Louis at his palace.

the determined attitude assumed by Normandy reached Louis and Gerberga, their hopes were dashed, scarcely sustained by a distant and indistinct prospect of revival. How greatly therefore must Louis have been cheered on being required to receive the Norman Nobles proceeding from Rouen, as the escort of the young Richard. The train appeared at the Palace-gate, entered the presence-chamber which had witnessed Guillaume Longue-épée's mortification, and, conducting the young Richard before the throne, they prayed that Louis would grant investiture to the infant, Rollo's heir in the second degree, even as he and his father had done to Guillaume and to Rollo. What demand could possibly be more grateful to Louis than such an unsolicited acknowledgment of his supremacy? Kindly he received the child;—What did the kindness cost him?—nay, yielding at first to the winning influence of Richard's comeliness, he was even inclined to regard the youth with favour. Far otherwise Gerberga,—so vexed and mortified when she compared the young Norman's pleasant countenance and well-shaped limbs with the looks of her poor, sallow, wry-legged little Lothaire.

But Gerberga had her revenge in another way; though she could hardly call Richard a hideous urchin, it was in her full power to bestow upon him a viler epithet. When the Court Chronicler bears record of the Duchy grant, he describes the

*status* of the young Duke with contemptuous accuracy—*Rex Ludovicus filio Willielmi nato de concubina Britanna, terram Normannorum dedit*—and whilst the Normans rejoiced in the confirmation of Richard's authority, the French might boast with delight, that good care had been taken to mark the young fellow as a half-caste bastard.

942—954

942—943

Investiture of Normandy granted to Richard as his father's bastard.

Thus far, the proceedings were regular, though the treatment received by Richard was rigid and needlessly humiliating; but a further transaction ensued, neither warranted by precedent nor dictated by principle. Without any notice taken of their mesne Lord, the Normans performed homage to Louis, and became his men, swearing the oath of fealty, thereby acknowledging him as their immediate Suzerain, and, having been guerdoned by the King's copious liberality, they joyfully returned to Rouen. In such manner did the Normans, as far as their acts had any validity, deliver their Duke, their country, and themselves, into the power of Louis. They made an unconditional surrender of their rights. Normandy, and all that belonged to Normandy, was his by constitutional law, and Louis might now confidently meditate upon his schemes of conquest.

The Normans perform homage to the King.

Louis never could have denied to himself that he sought the utter destruction of the detested pirate-race. Louis might shrink from the crime of shedding the young child's blood, yet, should he be provoked by apprehension, or tempted

942—954 by opportunity, there were many convenient  
 modes and devices, suggested by the traditions of  
 942—943 the past, which would effectually incapacitate  
 Guillaume's spurious representative, or remove  
 him out of the way. The fettered bastard might  
 be left to rot in a dungeon, or be blinded, or  
 maimed in his limbs. Richard was now legally  
 the Ward of Louis. The trust of Bernard, Botho,  
 and Oslac was annulled. What would become  
 of the Minor should the King assert the rights  
 which an irresponsible Guardian could claim.

Richard's  
 rights put  
 in peril by  
 the Norman  
 homagers.

Unquestionably it was a stroke of sound  
 policy, that Richard's accession should be con-  
 stitutionally sanctioned by his Carlovingian Su-  
 perior. The recognition of Normandy, as an  
 integral portion of the French Monarchy, insured  
 her existence as a Christian State, and incorpo-  
 rated her with the Carlovingian Commonwealth.—  
 But, had the Nobles who, assuming to act for the  
 Norman nation, effected the recognition, been  
 duly mindful of their independence? Did not  
 their conduct result from the over-zealous anxiety  
 of ill-concealed fear?—Why bring the young  
 Duke personally before Louis?—Would not an  
 embassy have sufficed? There was danger in  
 removing the child beyond the Norman border.  
 The very sight of Richard might tempt Louis  
 to profit by the helplessness of comparative  
 infancy, and suggest to him that it was both a  
 prerogative and a duty to assume the bodily cus-

tody of the Heir. To such objections, some replies <sup>942—954</sup>  
 might be attempted, not altogether satisfactory, <sup>942—943</sup>  
 though, in a certain degree, plausible; but their  
 supplementary act of homage seemed unsuscep-  
 tible of justification.

That the nobles of the land should personally become the French king's liegemen, was there-  
 fore indignantly resented by a large and influential party amongst the Normans; but whilst they dis-  
 dained such a degrading subjection, they incon-  
 tinently, with eager inconsistency, did the like or worse, giving a new whirl to the wheel of Fortune. A party amongst the Normans resent the homage rendered to Louis, and become the men of Hugh-le-Grand.  
 The unexpected improvement in the prospects of Louis might have encouraged him to feel almost independent of Hugh-le-Grand;—but so strangely were they set up against each other, that Hugh-le-Grand immediately got almost as much out of Normandy as Louis. The discontented Normans sought the aid of the Duke of France against the King of France, and, becoming his men, they accepted him as their Suzerain. In the homage rendered by these seceders to Duke Hugh, they paid no more attention to Richard, or Richard's rights, than the others had done when rendering homage to the king of France: they leapt over Richard in the like manner. This defection seems to have been principally manifested in the Evrecin, and virtually amounted to the incorporation of that district with Hugh-le-Grand's adjoining Duchy. By this political schism the Christian



942—984 party was split into two parties, the King's men  
 and the Duke's men, both eager to endanger  
 942—948 their common object—the independence of Nor-  
 mandy—by their mutual enmity.

Danish in-  
 vasion—

King Sith-  
 ric and  
 Thormod  
 join their  
 forces.

Thormod  
 obtains pos-  
 session of  
 the person  
 of young  
 Richard,  
 and con-  
 verts him to  
 Paganism.

§ 6. Capital encouragement this for the Pagan Danes. They immediately availed themselves of these internecine Christian dissensions. Fresh from the north King Sithric came, and joined his forces to Thormod. The Danish keels swarmed around the shores, many having probably passed over from Ireland or from England. The warfare was prosecuted as of old: the black sails hovering round the coast, the troops disembarking and harassing the interior. Sithric's squadron entered the oftplagued Seine. A general insurrection ensued.—Hey-saa! Hey-saa! Hey-saa!—the cheering national gathering cry, resounded through the Danishry. The Pagan Northmen boldly and energetically prosecuted their design of vindicating their supremacy without detriment to their loyalty. Thormod obtained possession of Richard; he would be the young Sovereign's Protector, and, as he might maintain, the protector according to Guillaume's heart's desire. Was it not the dying wish of Guillaume that his sturdy son should grow up as a valiant Dansker-man? Thormod therefore laboured earnestly and successfully for the conversion of the young duke, and had persuaded, or compelled him, to adopt the tenets of his Danish forefathers.

Every historian is grievously tempted either <sup>942-954</sup> to colour out or to blot out whatever may dis- <sup>942-943</sup> please his taste or contradict his views; perhaps <sup>Conceal-  
ments of  
the Nor-  
man his-  
torians.</sup> the latter course is the safest and most honest. Could the purest conscience or the clearest mind tell the whole truth concerning our Civil wars in such a guise, that his narrative should be pleasant and profitable equally to Cavaliers and Round-heads? Compromise can never answer in such cases. Fancy a portrait of Charles Stuart, *party per pale, Saint and Tyrant, both proper*,—would such a likeness gratify either High Church or Nonconformity?

This disagreeable incident in the life of Richard Sans Peur is completely ignored by the Father of Norman history, who, like all the other Norman writers, discreetly labours to suppress all examples of the struggling vitality yet retained by Pagan principles. Not a word of the young Duke's perversion appears in the invaluable memorials which we owe to Dudo's diligence. Dean Dudo and all his successors, whether in prose or verse, were thoroughly ashamed of this passage in the Norman annals, and resolved that Duke Richard's infantine adoption of pagan error should be considered as a thing which never had been. How anxious the Panegyrist was to maintain the Christian character of his patrons, may be gathered from the circumstance that he addresses Guillaume Longue-

942—954 épée as a Holy Martyr. Our knowledge of Thor-  
 mod's successful mission is solely derived from the  
 942—943 French historians, who, scoffing at the Leader  
 of the Pirates, take a grim delight in bear-  
 ing witness to his child's facility. Had it not  
 been for the malicious sincerity of Frodoardus  
 the monk of Rheims, and Richerius, the son of  
 Louis d'Outremer's confidential officer, the whole  
 transaction would have been buried in oblivion.

Hugh-le-  
 Grand's  
 energy  
 against the  
 Danes.

The boldness of the Danishry excited corre-  
 sponding exertions on the part of Duke Hugh  
 and of the King. Had the pagan Danes succeeded  
 in effecting the occupation of Normandy, then the  
 Duchy of France and the kingdom of France  
 would have been equally jeopardized. The  
 grandson of Robert-le-Fort rivalled his grand-  
 sire's strenuousness: Hugh waged such a rapid  
 succession of conflicts with the enemy that the  
 chroniclers have failed to number them. Skir-  
 mishes and forays kept up the continuity of  
 warfare. The Danes were very stiff in the stour ;  
 Hugh-le-Grand, during his campaign, suffered  
 great losses, nevertheless he retained his position  
 steadily, and, favoured by his Christian partisans  
 amongst the Romanized Danes, was enabled to  
 establish himself in Evreux.

Louis, on his part, directed his operations with  
 the spirit and talent of a great Captain. Avenger  
 of the murdered Guillaume, and Guardian, as he  
 professed himself, of the infant Heir, he advanced

into Normandy for the rescue of the young Richard and the re-establishment of Christianity.—  
 Louis was magnificent in the field. As he moved, Charlemagne's golden Eagle was borne before him, and, when he encamped, the Imperial Ensign crowned his pavilion. His ranks were always filled. Destitute of means, despoiled of his domains, without any sources of revenue, nor, so far as we can ascertain, possessing any power of compelling military service, the magnitude of his army offers a constantly recurring enigma. The Danes either had not time to "horse themselves," employing the phrase rendered so familiar to us by the doleful Saxon chronicle, or, if they had, they preferred combating on foot, according to their national custom, advancing against their enemy with sword and shield.

The Pagan Host, commanded by Thormod and Sithric, was numbered by thousands.—Eight hundred full-armed knights constituted the nucleus of the army which Louis had assembled;—a formidable force in themselves, yet not sufficiently ample to enable him to outflank the enemy. He therefore concentrated his cavalry, and made the onslaught. A sanguinary battle ensued, terrible as any which a Carlovingian Monarch had ever waged. The Danes gave way before the charge. King Sithric fleeing, tried to conceal himself amongst the bushes in a spinney, but his

942—954

942—943

"Battle of the Rescue." Danes defeated by Louis—Thormod and Sithric slain.

942—954 pursuers following the trail, found him out, and  
 the spears of three French warriors dispatched the  
 942—943 crouching victim. Louis, at the head of his horse-  
 men, rode over Thormod, and, galloping forwards  
 without recognizing the man whom he had run  
 down, attacked another Danish battalion. The  
 elastic Thormod had, however, instantly curled  
 up from the trampled turf-ground, unbruised and  
 unharmed. His keener eye enabled him to  
 mark the King, and, scurrying on with his com-  
 panions, they assailed Louis in the rear. Whilst  
 Louis was sabring to the right and to the left,  
 Thormod ran at him behind, and thrusting  
 at the King through the fault of his hauberk,  
 wounded him dangerously under the shoulder-  
 blade; but Louis, quickly turning round, clave his  
 adversary's skull. Hugh-le-Grand poured in also  
 with his forces, and the Danes,—nine thousand  
 miscreants,—taking to their vessels, abandoned  
 their enterprize. The French gloried in the  
 slaughter. The Christian party having regained  
 their preponderance, the regular order of things  
 was fully restored. The Regents resumed their  
 powers, Oslac, Raoul Torta, and Bernard the  
 grey-beard: the latter, honoured and respected by  
 all parties, was considered as the Stadt-holder.

The "Bat-  
 tle of the  
 Rescue"—  
 its import-  
 ance.

§ 7. The locality where the armies met is  
 not ascertained, but the final conflict probably  
 ensued somewhere nigh the Ponthieu Border.  
 We will therefore designate the battle as the  
 "Battle of the Rescue," for the result absolutely

liberated the young Richard from the grasp of the Pagan Danes, and a battle without a name is unquotable in history. The tale is told to us in tones of triumph—the chroniclers exhibit unwonted animation in their brief details—The agile start of the overthrown assailant, and the fate of the skulking Viking—are incidents bestowing a romantic character upon the narrative, most rare in this period of dull though sanguinary hostility. A Christian King engaged in single combat, chasing the rascal heathens, and wielding his weapon in the midst of the *melée*, had performed achievements which revived the antient days of imperial glory.

Oft and oft and desperately, had Charlemagne's fate-stricken lineage warred amongst themselves, brethren against brothers, uncles against nephews, and nephews against uncles, sons against fathers, and fathers against sons; but, how scantily had they measured their ineffectual swords against the weapons of the common enemy! During the sad interval of misfortune and misery which had elapsed between the death of Charlemagne and the "Battle of the Rescue," once only had the dreary annals of graceless dissension and national degradation been brightened in the plain of Saulcourt, when, as the Gleeman sang, the blood rose in the cheeks of the Frankish soldiers, rejoicing in the sport of war. But the arm of the young hero of Saulcourt had been

942-954

942-943

(See Vol. I.  
p. 575.)

942—954 } palsied by the folly of his troops; and the en-  
 942—943 } gagement was an event of small moment in the  
 general course of events.—Though a recreant  
 had been punished, and a marauder slain; yet  
 barren were the laurels which inspired the re-  
 sounding lay.

Strongly contrasted with such a fruitless conflict, was the result produced by the skilful prowess of Louis, which not only enhanced his personal renown, but was also most opportune for King and kingdom. The French had adopted as an indubitable proposition, that the Northmen were intolerable. As a Nation, they were in a manner pledged never to desist until they had effected the subjugation or expulsion of the vile intruders. Now at this exact nick of time, Louis, without any effort on his part, had, by the acts of his natural antagonists, been placed in the most advantageous position for combining the advantages gained by the military success of the General with the colourable claims of the Monarch. The Norman Patriots had been working for him. No greater service could have been rendered to Louis than the help he derived from the Norman Regency and their partizans who had so anxiously laboured to bring the young Richard before him at Compiègne: not only acknowledging the Suzerain's superiority, but conceding to him the immediate regal right over Rollo's land.

The oracular volumes of the *jus gentium* are <sup>942—954</sup>  
 not less complaisant than the vaticinations of <sup>942—943</sup>  
 the Sybil, hardly ever failing to afford a response  
 by which the wishes of the Querent may be  
 gratified. It is the apophthegm of our English  
 Tribonian, that execution is the life of the law:  
 but, if execution be the life of our common law,  
 it is the very "Law of nations" itself. The last  
 reason of Kings always ranks first in the Quarrel-  
 ler's cogitations, be he Autocrat be he Democrat.  
 Had the Lamb stood where the Wolf stood, he  
 would have found as a legitimate *casus belli*, as  
 the Wolf found, could, he, the Lamb have dared.

The concessions made to Louis enabled him,  
 in the first instance, to conceal his designs; and  
 he was in every way encouraged and incited to  
 avail himself of his advantages resolutely and  
 speedily.—During the Lotharingian disturbances  
 Louis had been tantalized by his reasonable but  
 disappointed expectations. Lorraine was lost, but  
 the acquisition of Gerberga's hand might con-  
 sole him for the loss of Lorraine: and, would  
 Gerberga let him rest, if, the way being so clearly  
 opened, he did not compensate himself by ex-  
 pelling the Pirates and their progeny, and sending  
 them beyond the sea?—The name of the Terra  
 Normannorum was an affront to the Frankish  
 royalty; the domination of the bastard Richard,  
 the son of the bastard Guillaume, was a scandal  
 to the Realm.



942—954

942—943

Flushed therefore with victory, yet having astutely matured his plans, Louis advanced to the Norman capital, leading on his exulting army. Had he required any further incitement to persevere in his intention of regaining the usurped land, it would have been furnished by the aspect of the country as it was again unfolded before him during this second examination. The exuberant fertility of Normandy, the fine, fresh, full-formed women, the hale manhood, the forests and chases, the thickly-planted villages, the flourishing towns, and the prosperous population testified the comfort and value of the territory; and he fully determined that, as far as depended upon his exertions, never should Neustria revert to the Pirate power. Louis presented himself clothed with a fourfold right—the young Duke was his lawful Ward,—the Norman Nobles, his Homagers,—King of France, he was the Sovereign of the country,—but above all, he entered Rouen as a Conqueror.

943

Louis enters Rouen as a Conqueror.

§ 8. No mistake could be made about the fact. The Norman nobles might attempt to disguise the humiliating catastrophe, but they could not gainsay it.—They had sold Richard and the Terra Normannorum into the hands of Louis. They had cheated themselves by their own want of sincerity. When they journeyed to Compiègne and instructed the graceful boy to bend the knee before the Carlovingian throne, they had no

expectation that the Suzerain, whom they made a shew of accepting, would repair to Rouen, and receive the infant Heir into his charge. When they became the homagers of Louis, they merely planned to play him off against their adversaries; the idea never crossed their minds that he would traverse the Border and enforce their obedience, the Sovereign's approach announced by Charlemagne's standard.—When they honoured him as King of France they never dreamt that, concentrating all the powers of government in his person, they should behold him installed in the Palatial castle of Rollo. They did not realize the words of homage when they spake the words of homage—they thought that the words were idle words, but idle words are fearful realities.

There was, in fact, no valid excuse which they could frame for themselves. Supposing, that by the utmost stretch of charity, they might be induced to doubt whether Louis had premeditated Guillaume's assassination, they could not avoid confessing that Louis had become an accessory after the fact. Common fame convicted the French nobles of being connivers in the misdeed, and the French would scarcely have condescended to evade the accusation. Against the Normans, the French indulged themselves to the fullest extent of contemptuous hostility. The concession of the Terra Normannorum to the son of the

942—954 British concubine had been effected coldly and  
 sternly. Not merely were all the usual conventional courtesies excluded, but there was an emphatic manifestation of ungraciousness. A gratuitous insult was incorporated in the grant when the royal Chancellor inscribed upon the record that Richard was a half-caste bastard.

Injudicious  
 concessions  
 made by  
 the Re-  
 gency  
 party.

Moreover, the Normans only asked that Richard should have his own; and for this they had made the extravagant concession which virtually took away his own from Richard. They had voluntarily become the royal homagers, discarding Duke Richard's authority. Surely, the Regency party must have confessed to themselves, that the indignation of their political opponents who had disdained such crouching obedience to the son of Charles-le-Simple had not been roused unreasonably. If it was true that the royal homagers had been seduced by the royal bounty, the greater their degradation!—The more they dwelt upon the retrospect, the more must their self-reproach have become heavier. Richard was, in no wise, properly reinstated as the representative of his Grandsire. Richard had not obtained any security for his own rights, nor the Normans either. Not so his wary ancestor. Rollo had endeavoured to get whatever hold he could upon the slippery conscience of his adversaries, and to render the relation between the King and the Patrician, and between the French

The ho-  
 mage ren-  
 dered by  
 Richard  
 very disad-  
 vantageous  
 to his inte-  
 rests.

and the Normans a national compact, in which <sup>942—954</sup>  
 there was no superiority conceded to the French <sup>942—943</sup>  
 Monarch beyond the points which were safe and  
 honourable: a Duke acknowledging the Hierarch-  
 ical precedence due to a crowned and anointed  
 King.

When Rollo, obeying the directions given by the Frankish Counsellors, placed his hands between the hands of King Charles, and became the King's Man, his homage was counterparted by the French,—aye, and more than counterparted. Charles King of France, and Robert Duke of France, and the Counts and the Proceres, and the Bishops and the Abbots, had promised to be faithful to Rollo-Robert in life and in limb, and the honour of the realm: and <sup>(Vol. I. p. 687.)</sup> moreover it was solemnly declared that the territory, as he held and possessed the same, should pass to his heirs and descendants from generation to generation for ever. It is true that no such covenant was exacted by Guillaume Longue-épée, because, in his case, no promises were required; Guillaume began to rule as Duke whilst Louis was an exile. When King Louis was out of possession, Duke Guillaume was in; but the present transaction did not offer any such safeguards. The compact was one-sided. Richard had struck no root in France, there was no reciprocity, no mutual bond.

It is perhaps the greatest of trials to which

942—954 our temper can be subjected, when, upon the retrospect of our conduct, the potent chemistry of self-deceit fails to extract any comfort from past errors. The Regents, and all who concurred in the proceedings which had delivered Richard over into the power of the Carlovingian Sovereign, could certainly find none. However, there was no immediate help—matters were very untoward, all the Normans could do would be to bide their time.—*Le bon temps viendra.*—Bernard the Dane was quite the man to adopt the spirit of the motto which, still gracing the achievement of his decendants, has perhaps, more than once, cheered the desponding heart. For the purpose of saving their credit, the Normans put the best face they could upon the matter; they professed a cordial acceptance of the explanations given by Louis, welcoming him as the avenger of the murdered Guillaume. Louis, on his part, displayed the deepest grief for the death of the noble Duke, Guillaume Longue-épée the Martyr.—Arnoul, he vowed, should receive a condign punishment.—The Normans knowing how complicated were the plans and plots of the French Court might believe that Louis, for reasons of his own, was not altogether insincere in his manifestations of hostility against Flanders. Moreover he was accompanied by Herlouin, who professed he never would abandon his determination of avenging his benefactor.

942—943

Louis received by Normans with simulated cordiality.

Louis therefore was greeted at Rouen with loud and loyal acclaim. It could hardly be deemed any indication of suspicion, that, before he had entered the City, Richard was removed from his father's palace and placed under the special care of Osmond. The arrangements made by Louis were equivalent to a declaration that the King of France had fully prepared to dwell peacefully amongst the Normans.—Some of his children had accompanied or joined him. The Bishops and Counts of France resorted to his Court as he held the same in his royal residence, and, when settled, he requested that the young Richard should be brought to him.—An affecting scene ensued: Louis, the tears flowing from his eyes, kissed and caressed the orphan, bewailed his destitution, admired his beauty. Richard—he promised—should be treated as his child, live with the young French Princes, eat at the King's table, sleep in the King's chamber.

Osmond departed, though not at ease; and thus closed the first day, the day during which Richard had passed into the actual custody of his Guardian.

On the following morning, the morning of the second day, the anxious Governor again appeared before Louis, soliciting that he might be permitted to resume his charge, and return with Richard to his own dwelling. Osmond assigned a reason which could be propounded without

942—954  
 {  
 942—943

disrespect and urged without intrusion. One antient usage of Roman civility was long retained in the Gauls : many a hypocaust still subsisted, and it was needful, as Osmond explained, that Richard should take the warm bath ;—but Louis would not part with the boy.

Louis de-  
 tains the  
 young Ri-  
 chard in  
 his custody.  
 Popular  
 insurrec-  
 tion.

On the third day's morning, Osmond presented himself to the King, and, undeterred by his two previous repulses, insisted determinately that Richard should be restored ; but Louis haughtily and doggedly gave a peremptory denial.—The intelligence of this detention, founded upon fraud, spread rapidly throughout the city. A general insurrection ensued ; Rouen was in a state of siege ; the house-doors closed, the streets blocked up by the infuriated populace, the storm-bells booming. The inhabitants of the suburbs swarmed in, joining the citizens, and the nobles donned their armour, girt their swords, and mixed amongst the insurgents. These men of might probably belonged either to the pure Danishry, or to the Danish party ; for the popular anger was fiercely directed against Bernard and the Regency—stigmatised by the general outcry as perjured traitors, who had surrendered their Sovereign into the hands of the enemy :—and the crowd having vented their indignation, rolled on to attack the King.

Appalled by the raging multitude, Louis despaired of safety, otherwise than through Bernard's

intervention. Bernard had reason to fear for his own life, so great was the odium he had incurred; yet this feeling was transient. Clever Bernard never failed to fall on his legs: and, after the first burst was over, he fully regained the confidence of all the contending parties. The acute grey-bearded Statesman instantly sought to avail himself of the consternation excited in Louis by the peril which the latter had brought upon himself. In reply to the King's message he forthwith suggested that Louis must come forth, restore the young Duke to Osmond, and crave the forgiveness of the Normans; no other mode of escape was practicable. If the opportunity was neglected, Bernard could not save him.

This declaration inflicted a severe mortification upon the Carlovingian King, for the acts enjoined must have been exceedingly repugnant to his feelings; but the sooner the penance was over the better. Louis did come forth with the young Prince, and presented him to the multitude, reiterating his caresses and expressions of affection.—How Louis loathed the touch of the warm soft creature!—He detested the family resemblance which endeared the comely son of Guillaume to Norman loyalty. In the sight of Louis, the Bastard was hatefully legitimated by his likeness to his Pirate fathers—the blood which mantled in those youthful cheeks was foul—the bright eyes of the tiger-cub bespoke his innate ferocity. De-

942—954

942—943

Louis appears before the multitude as a suppliant, and surrenders Richard to the Normans.



942—954 spite of his disgust, Louis gulped the humiliation.  
 He was supported in his re-doubled duplicities by  
 942—943 the political principles which his conscience never  
 contested.—Every fraud was fair when dealing  
 with a Dane—Submissively did Louis explain his  
 conduct to the listening Normans.—Guillaume's  
 faithful subjects were labouring under an erro-  
 neous impression: the young Prince was not  
 detained as a captive:—nothing like it. Louis  
 simply claimed the privilege of instructing his  
 Ward in the art of government, and conveying  
 to the youth all the knowledge which might  
 qualify him to perform the duties of a Ruler  
 and a Lawgiver.

The supplications of Louis were miserably ab-  
 ject;—let them do what they thought fit; pro-  
 vided his life be spared. He was failing with fear,  
 yet retaining all his presence of mind—bitterly an-  
 gered, yet thoroughly self-possessed; and, though  
 in the utmost dread of death, actively planning  
 for the future, trusting that he might regain  
 by sagacity what he had lost by compulsion.  
 The boy was restored to the Regents, the crowd  
 dispersed, and the tumult was silenced. Louis,  
 however, could not be reassured; for though he  
 was permitted to return to the Palace, which he  
 still retained as a home, yet the Normans would  
 not liberate him, and he continued a prisoner  
 in Rouen.—All the profit which he had gained  
 by his wiles, his crimes, his policy and his valour,

seemed to be lost. Victorious in the field, but defeated by the rabble, threatened equally by danger and by shame, most doubtful as to his course, yet determined to temporize, he sent for the three chief members of the Regency, Oslac, Raoul Torta, and Bernard the Dane. Certain of the Prud'hommes of Rouen were associated to the Regents: and, whether for the purpose of preserving secrecy, or of ensuring safety, he received them in an upper chamber.

During the conference which ensued, Louis treated Bernard as the spokesman of the Norman Community. To him, still the man most universally respected and obeyed by all parties, he addressed himself in particular, demanding council and aid. Bernard's reply was courteous, but peremptory. Saving the King's supremacy,—a submission by which Richard was honoured,—King and Duke, Duke and King, must meet upon equal terms. Richard must hold the Terra Normannorum even as his Sire and his Grand-sire had done before him. The King of France must defend the Normans against all men, and, in like manner, would the Normans defend the King, rejoicing in the protection which he afforded. Louis conceded all that was asked—words, words, words;—whether his promises were broader or narrower, to him it was no matter.

Louis kept his Court brilliantly at Rouen, and when the new treaty for the permanent

942—954

942—943

Conference  
between  
Louis and  
the Nor-  
man Re-  
gents.

942—954 settlement of the constitutional relations between  
 942—943 Normandy and France was ratified, a large number of the French Bishops, Counts, and Barons assembled in the Palace of Rouen, the Norman chieftains being also convened.

Richard again performs homage, and Louis swears the land to him upon the principle of mutuality.

Louis then and there granted to Richard the Terra Normannorum, to be held by hereditary right from generation to generation. Richard again performed homage, and Louis then made the covenant which he had previously avoided. The golden shrines, the Gospel-book, and the Holy Rood, were brought forth : and, placing his hands upon the sacred symbols, Louis solemnly pronounced the oath, that he would defend the Duke against all mortal men ;—he could not have the slightest difficulty in making a promise which he held to be entirely null.—The French Prelates and Nobles followed the King's example, but rather reluctantly. An expression is employed, intimating that they were somewhat restrained by conscience ; their scruples, however, gave way, and they swore also. The youth and innocence of Richard imparted a marked character to the ceremony ; and when Louis and the French afterwards violated their pledge, more than usual indignation was excited by their perjury.

Louis pacifies the Normans, and treats with them to obtain the direction of Richard's education.

§ 9. However, the pacification was accepted, and, in appearance, so cordially, that Louis continued to reside in Rouen as pleasantly as if it were his own City to all intents. We collect from

this somewhat preternatural tranquillity that, the parties being nicely balanced, the Christian Danes were compelled to deal with Louis as their ally against the Pagan interest. By gentle management, the acute Monarch assuaged the anger he had excited: and, gaining more and more power, he continued to negotiate with Nobles and People, expatiating on the advantages which would result to the young Duke if they would permit him to treat the young Richard as his own son, as one of the royal family.—Soundly shall he be trained to think and to act, to distinguish and to judge, to be courteous and wise.—A thousand times more will young Richard learn in my Palace in France, than ever he can acquire in Normandy.

Mais une chose vous requier,  
 Que Richart m'en laissez mener  
 Por estre od mei tant et ester,  
 Qu'il ait coneu et apris  
 Ce qu'est honeur al siecle et pris.

Qu'il sache un œuvre bel traiter,  
 Bel definir e dreit juger,  
 Chose obscure, forte et couverte,  
 Gent declairier et faire aperte.  
 De tote la riens qui est faite  
 Parlée, dite ne retraite,  
 Aura engin et connoissance  
 Mil tanz en mes palaiz en France,  
 Qu'il n'en aureit en Normandie.

The pupil of glorious Athelstane, might, as an inducement for their compliance with his request, have appealed to his own life and fortunes. If

942—954

942—943

Louis did not expatiate upon his own cultivation and proficiency acquired at York, yet it was universally known how well his Anglo-Saxon education had prospered; and, upon thinking men, his silence concerning himself might render his example the more forcible.

Louis now exerted himself to restore peace and good order. He commenced a circuit, ostensibly for the purpose of settling the government after the disturbances; and proceeded, in the first instance, to Evreux. There he made a short stay, compelling the inhabitants to return to their obedience, and render fealty to the young Richard:

Feauté fait prendre de toz  
 Al Duc Richart, le bel, le proz,  
 Ses dreiz li quiert ausi s'en paine,  
 Cum si ceo est ses fiz demeine.

But this parental assertion of Richard's rights was a selfish artifice. The strength of Hugh-le-Grand's party was in Evreux, therefore all that Louis effected in appearance for his adopted son was virtually executed for his own benefit. His toleration also of the Regency was, in like manner, a consistent portion of his scheme. If Louis might be slightly restrained by their position, it was prudent that he should render outward respect to an authority generally advantageous to him, and which he was able to divert for his own advantage.

So warily and delicately had Louis conducted himself, that the young Richard was never ex-

empted from the wakeful observation which Louis characterized as paternal care. Osmond's pupil was really a prisoner at large.—King Louis had promised that Richard should go wherever he went, even as though Richard were his son ; and this undertaking he fully performed.

942—954  
942—943  
Politio  
conduct of  
Louis. He  
conciliates  
the Nor-  
mans.

The resolute though tranquillizing policy pursued by Louis, was calculated to gratify both sections of the Romanized Northmen. By superseding the power of Hugh-le-Grand in the Evrecin, he satisfied his own voluntary homagers through whom the political schism had originated, whilst he never manifested any displeasure against the individuals, who, in the first instance, had disdained to become his vassals. The favour he shewed to Yvo de Creil testified his desire of keeping on good terms with the Normans generally. Yvo held the extensive lordship of Belesme in the Hiesmois ; the Castle erected there, became the head of his Barony, and, in the next generation, furnished the family surname ; but his domain of Creil was an appendage of Couci, Bernard of Senlis being Yvo's immediate seigneur. Now this great nobleman, very influential in the Terra Normannorum, and connected with the Duchy of France, in which Creil was situated, passed into the French service, was appointed Master of the royal Arbalisters, and will appear hereafter as a Royal officer, high in command.

Double  
dealing of  
Louis with  
the Nor-  
mans.

Louis d'Outremer's log-book does not lie

942—954

942—943

Subtle  
dealing of  
Louis with  
the Nor-  
mans.

open before us, nor is his chart unrolled, yet we have sufficient information concerning his track to ascertain that he steered his course ably; making the best of his misadventures; ready to drop down any favourable current into which he might be driven by an adverse gale.

Louis was pre-eminently endowed with the qualification so generally rewarded by success, that it has been considered as the peculiar attribute of great men—a ready adaptability to circumstances. Yet he holds but an obscure station in the annals of his Kingdom : the brightness of his gifts being clouded by his misfortunes.

His talents for governing were signally displayed under the series of exigencies which he was experiencing.—Kept in durance by the justly excited indignation of the Normans, subjected to grievous mortifications; deeply irritated by the contradictions he had sustained, he nevertheless avoided harsh measures, and sought the means of conciliation.

When the restraint, imposed by the revolvers, was removed, Louis frankly prolonged his residence amongst the pacified insurgents until he became habituated to them, and found the means of identifying himself with their feelings. He obtained their confidence by the apparent trust which he reposed in them.

Again convening the Nobles, he renewed his pledges that the foul murder of Guillaume Longue-

épée should be fully avenged.—Hitherto, the promises made by Louis that he would punish Arnoul's misdeeds had been expressed in general terms. —He now entered into details, explaining the plans of his contemplated campaign, during which he proposed that their exertions should combine with his own.

Returning to Laon, as he informed them, he would summon the *arrière ban*, and raising all the forces of France and of Burgundy—he would make war against Arnoul, and reduce the barrier-fortresses of Flanders.—Arras, Saint Omer, and Furneus, were particularized,—together with a fourth, of which the name has not been preserved. It is rather remarkable that a blank is left for such name in the only extant manuscript of the Chronicler who has preserved the fullest statement of the King's address: as though the Penman expected he might recover it. If this blank can be supposed to have been left by the Author, the circumstance assumes importance when we shall be called upon to value the testimony of the rich narrative due to the Anglo-Norman Benoit, who, somewhat conventionally, we denominate "Benoit de Saint More."—The blank in question occurs between the names of Furneus and Saint Omer.

942—954

942—943

Louis convenes the Norman chiefs and nobles, and details the plan of his intended campaign against Flanders.

Thus, as Louis explained to the Assembly, would he wholly humble the power of their detested enemy. Furthermore, he exhorted the



942—954 Bretons and the Normans, (whilst he should  
 be engaged in raising his forces,) to do their duty,  
 942—943 preparing to co-operate in avenging their lost  
 Sovereign. No peace or truce should be granted;  
 no mercy or forbearance would he extend to  
 Arnoul the Traitor. Three hundred thousand  
 marks of silver should not buy off Arnoul's de-  
 served punishment. Before the feast of Saint  
 Gervais the perfidious Count should be undone,—  
 “and Richard shall go forward with me.”

Louis sud-  
 denly re-  
 news his  
 proposal  
 for the re-  
 moval of  
 Richard to  
 Laon—to  
 which the  
 Normans  
 assent.

Pour treis cenx mille mars d'argent  
 N'en aureit-il treve ni pais  
 De ci qu'a feste de Saint Gervais,  
 Del grant domage e de la perte  
 Li ert rendue sa deserte  
 Iteu com il l'a deservie,  
 Vil desleiez e foi-mentie.—  
 Richart viendra od mei avant.

\* \* \* \* \*

‘*Richart viendra od mei avant!*’—Against this  
 astounding proposal, not a voice was raised.  
 Bernard the Dane, Regents, Nobles, all bowed  
 assent: and the people of Rouen exhibited the  
 same wonderful complacency.—But a short while  
 since, when the young Prince, though in his own  
 Palace, in the Capital of Normandy and under the  
 safeguard of the whole Community, had been, as  
 they apprehended, fraudulently coerced by his  
 royal Guardian, they were inflamed to the highest  
 pitch of desperation; and now, they allowed the  
 seducer to glide away in possession of this precious

pledge for the express purpose of removing him into the heart of France, and immuring him within the massive walls of Laon's impregnable tower. It is pleaded on their behalf that they yielded to his bland allurements and specious promises :

Od si faites sedicions,  
 Ed od teus allocutions,  
 Les a deceus, c'est la fin,  
 Od sei enmeine le Meschin.  
 Las ! tante larme en est plorée,  
 Ainz qu'il veie maiz sa contrée

942—954

942—943

But, was their facility to be thus excused?—Had not Louis been sufficiently tested and tried as a deceiver?

Are we to conjecture, that when Louis so unexpectedly propounded his request, the Normans were stunned by the sharpness of the blow?—Yet it is difficult to believe that Bernard the Dane, the toughest relic of the old times, could have been taken by surprize ; and impossible to suppose that the most trusty friend of Rollo would betray the child of Guillaume Longue-épée. It is therefore needful to assume the existence of some powerful motive which induced this strange mutation of opinion ; and a solution may, perhaps, be found in the hypothesis, that the Romanized Northmen suspected they could not depend upon Richard's perseverance in Christianity. Such a misgiving would not have been destitute of probability. Guillaume Longue-épée's

942—954

}

942—948

Probability  
that the  
Normans  
assented  
for the pur-  
pose of  
placing Ri-  
chard out  
of the  
power of  
the Danish-  
ry.

instruction had opened the ears of the facile boy to the persuasions of Thormod. Richard escaped perversion, yet the effects of the teaching suggested by his father were permanently discernible. The pliant youth became so thoroughly versed in the Danish tongue that he spake it with equal fluency as the Romance. He was renowned for this accomplishment. At the close of his long reign he was distinguished as one of the very few Normans who retained a knowledge of their ancestral language; and, throughout his life, he always appears as a boon hail-fellow, well met amongst the Danes. Now the heathen or heathenizing party being still numerous and formidable, the Romanized party who enjoyed the ascendancy at Rouen might be desirous to remove the young Duke beyond the sphere of Danish power, and still more beyond the subtle dangers of the moral influence which the Danishry exercised. Laon was entirely secure against a coup-de-main,—no river up which a Danish fleet could sail, flowed through the surrounding plains. No Danish Hosts had ever nighed the Rock of Laon or been signalled by the Warder stationed on the topmost turret of Laon's huge tower.—Louis anyhow would educate the boy as beseemed a Peer of France and a Christian, and keep him clear from Pagan infection.

Concomitant circumstances may also have been admitted as diminishing the perils to

which the Minor might be exposed when his person should be placed in the actual custody of his Royal Guardian.—Laon, though distant from Rouen, was fairly within ken of Senlis, where antient Bernard, the trusty Uncle of Guillaume Longue-épée, now usually dwelt. Richard would be under Bernard's shadow: and Couci, Count Bernard's stronghold, — the stronghold wherein Guillaume Longue-épée, when crazed by terror, had contemplated of taking refuge, was quite in the neighbourhood of Laon.—Starting from Laon, and refreshing your horse at Couci by the way, you might reach Senlis between prime and evensong.

942—954  
942—943  
Vicinity of  
Bernard de  
Senlis to  
Laon.

These ready means of communication with Count Bernard, that affectionate and powerful kinsman, so prompt for action, Hugh-le-Grand's liegeman, a member of the Vermandois family, and therefore radically antagonistic to Louis, might surely be valued as affording some security.—Closer safeguards had also been provided. When the royal cavalcade, defiling beneath the Beauvoisin gate, moved off from Rouen to France, the gazing multitude might behold Osmond de Centvilles riding by the side of the merry boy's horse, and, with the Tutor and the Pupil there was also the *Fortis Marchio*, otherwise the *Formargis*, the Veteran Yvo, heading the king's cross-bow men, and preparing to take charge of the proud Castle in which the young Richard was to

Richard  
accompa-  
nied to  
Laon by  
Yvo de  
Creil and  
Osmond de  
Centvilles.

942—954 be prepared for the exercise of sovereign power.  
 Thus would the Heir of Normandy be sure to  
 942—943 have excellent friends about him; some more  
 distant, some nearer, whose fidelity and activity  
 compensated for the paucity of their number.

Louis supersedes the Norman authorities—appoints Herlouin Governor of Rouen.

Whether this escort had been conceded to Norman solicitude or proffered by the cunning courtesy of the French King, the effect of the sedative, thus administered to the popular anxiety, must have been the same.—Louis dealt with the Normans in a masterly way. Bernard may have discerned the King's manœuvres, but, for the present, his sagacity could not serve to defeat them. Bernard, and Oslac, and Raoul Torta had been elided from the government without any visible effort. Louis, all his rights and privileges coalescing,—Liegelord, Suzerain, Protector, Guardian, Conqueror, King,—had become supreme in Normandy. He therefore could safely depart, and Bernard, who had previously acted as Governor of the City, being put aside, that most important office was entrusted to Count Herlouin as the Royal Lieutenant.

Count Herlouin was a brave soldier, one of Guillaume Longue-épée's best friends, and rendered very recommendable to the Normans by his enmity against Arnoul. Yet there were those who entertained a dislike against him because it was held that he had brought Guillaume Longue-épée to his death. Herlouin's enemies

argued that it was the protection he had obtained from Guillaume Longue-épée in the Montreuil affair which provoked Arnoul to the perpetration of the murder, and that therefore he was the original cause of the crime. Without denying the fact that popular unreason may have cast this undeserved responsibility upon Herlouin, we would also suppose that his strenuous adhesion to Louis, and his desertion of his patron's child, may have enhanced the aversion to which he ultimately fell a sacrifice;—and, as we shall find in the course of this history, he perished during the crisis when his services were most needed by the French king.

§ 10. Hugh-le-Grand held off cautiously during these first stages of the Norman revolution, a revolution ultimately so conducive to his own aggrandizement and to the irreparable detriment of the King. He avoided embroiling himself with the Normans, allowing free scope of action to Louis; for although Hugh kept up his relations in Normandy, yet he refrained from giving any open support to his homagers, and not only permitted Louis to pursue his schemes undisturbed, but actually made a formal surrender of Evreux. The apprehensions which Louis entertained concerning Hugh-le-Grand, his distrust of Hugh-le-Grand, his deep resentment for the injuries he had sustained from Hugh-le-Grand, and, most tormenting of all, the drear foreboding that he had

942—954

942—943

Hugh-le-Grand and Louis equally cautious and mutually inimical.

942—954 not yet come to the worst of Hugh-le-Grand—kept  
 him in constant disquietude. But the able antago-  
 942—943 nists were well matched and worthy of each other.  
 The son of Charles-le-Simple and the sire of Hugh  
 Capet were equally keen-sighted and agile:—lunge  
 and guard, guard and lunge,—the fencing match  
 continued during their respective lives. Hugh-  
 le-Grand's temporary tameness was considerably  
 motivated according to the maxims of his family.  
 Never did Hugh really recede, and, if he now ap-  
 peared to halt in his career, he had slackened  
 only for the purpose of making a fresh advance.  
 When practicable, Hugh-le-Grand always pre-  
 ferred to cover his usurpations by the sanction of  
 legality, and he had various objects in view, which,  
 so long as there was a King in France, could not  
 be effected otherwise than through that King's  
 instrumentality.

Partition of  
 the Ver-  
 mandois in-  
 heritance.

The sons of Herbert of Vermandois were  
 bickering about the partition of their inhe-  
 ritance, to which an allusion has been previously  
 made. Hugh-le-Grand was much interested in  
 this transaction,—he watched his nephews' affairs  
 as well as his own,—and they all appeared before  
 Louis when holding his Court at Compiègne.

See Vol. I.  
 p. 357, II.  
 p. 330.

It will have been noticed by the reader, that  
 the genealogical table of the succession exhibits  
 an apparent departure from the usual rule, inas-  
 much as Albert the second son took the County  
 of Vermandois and assumed his father's title,

and Herbert the Handsome, the fourth son, <sup>942—954</sup> was left, according to the original scheme of allotment, with only his face for his fortune, <sup>942—943</sup> whilst Eudes the eldest, received Amiens. Now <sup>Amiens assigned to Eudes.</sup> for this, there was sufficient reason—Eudes was more active than Albert, and had been already put in possession of Amiens by his father. If Vermandois was the prouder dominion, Amiens was the richest of the shares. Amiens—*urbs inter alias eminens*—maintained the splendour which distinguished her during Julian's flourishing reign. The Counts of Amiens, who date from Louis-le-Débonnaire, acquired so much power that they might almost be treated as independent Sovereigns. But the Count had a rival in the person of the Bishop, who possessed great privileges, and was lord of a numerous body of military tenants. So long as the Prelate was canonically elected by Clergy and People, the Citizens would find in the Prelate a protector against the Count, but when the Sovereign, as at this period, exercised the donative patronage, this usurpation enabled him to drop the mitre upon the head of any serviceable partizan, and thereby appoint a permanent Governor, who, protecting the interests of the Crown, might check either the "feudal" Lord or the Civic municipality. Those who discuss the vast question of the Prerogative and the Pontificate, and who consider the pull as lying merely



942—954 between Pope and King, should keep such facts in  
 mind. It is probable that Hugh-le-Grand helped  
 943—944 in managing to establish Albert, who was of  
 a very pacific disposition, in the county of Ver-  
 mandois, in order that Eudes, the fighting man,  
 should be able to control Louis: whilst, in rela-  
 tion to Hugh's more immediate territorial con-  
 cerns, the transfer to him of Couci and its appur-  
 tenances, Creil and Thury, may have required  
 the royal confirmation.

Louis visits  
 Hugh-le-  
 Grand at  
 Paris.

§ 11. Great familiarity ensued between Louis  
 and Duke Hugh, an affected dismissal of all  
 grudges. Soon after Louis had quitted Rouen,  
 we find him in the place where of all others  
 we should least look for him, to wit, at  
 Paris a portentous event in those times. For,  
 whereas, according to the current of modern  
 ideas, the King of France and the City of  
 Paris are now naturally suggestive of each  
 other, they were then inevitably repulsive. No  
 Carlovingian Monarch had ever been seen in  
 Paris since Charles-le-Chauve. Not a square  
 toise of land was owned by Louis in the future  
 Metropolis. At Paris, Louis had neither house  
 nor home, nor right, nor power. He could not  
 have repaired to that jealous city otherwise than  
 pursuant to the Duke's invitation: nor can it be  
 supposed that he lodged elsewhere than in the  
 Duke's palace, situated, as French antiquaries tell  
 us, near the antient Moûtier of Saint Barthelemy.

It must have been esteemed a signal token of confidence that Louis should pay such a visit. Cautious men might shake their heads and murmur : —was it not dangerous for Louis to enter within the walls, and expose himself to the perils of having the portals closed and the doors bolted after he had passed them?—Treachery, however, was not to be apprehended from Hugh at this juncture,—because it would not have answered;—but the residence of Louis at Paris was unexpectedly prolonged. Louis, suddenly sickening, languished throughout the summer, and could not move during several months. People believed that his blood was corrupted. We do not possess any information concerning the nature of the ailment, but it evidently undermined his health—and his strange death seems to have been preceded by temporary mental hallucinations.

The era upon which we are now employed offers a brief but rather remarkable passage in the history of mediæval therapeutics, with some bearing upon Church and State. During the reign of King Raoul, and amongst the nobles of the Court, was a certain Deroldus, a man of high rank and station—*Vir spectabilis ac palatinus*—and much loved by the King, who, having taken orders, and acquired great skill in the healing art, became Raoul's body-physician. The medical profession was, during this era, divided between two rival classes of practitioners, the

942—954

943—944

Medical  
practice  
divided  
between  
the clergy  
and the  
Jews.

942—954

943—944

Deroldus  
the king's  
body phy-  
sician and  
Bishop of  
Amiens.

Clergy and the Jews. Amongst the Hebrews we may quote the celebrated Zedechias, who, having prescribed for Charles-le-Chauve during his last illness, was in danger of his own life in consequence of an accident, which, were it retributed upon the faculty at large as it was likely to have been upon him, would speedily extinguish the College, namely, the sufferer dying under his care. The medico-clerical doctors were prohibited by the canons of the Church from receiving fees. Deroldus therefore never put his hand behind him when concluding his visit, as the unscrupulous Zedechias would have done, nor indeed had he any call to do so; for he was no loser by his conformity to the decorum of the cloth. In some way or another, Church-property was the reserved fund upon which the King was accustomed to draw, and when Physic and Divinity were conjoined, the fees were generally paid in a lump by some "good piece of preferment," as the same (during the ante-reform age) used to be styled in the official language of His Majesty's faithful Commons, when addressing the Sovereign on behalf of their Chaplain that his services might be rewarded by the Crown—and King Raoul accordingly nominated Deroldus to the great See of Amiens.

Deroldus, like Zedechias, lost his patient, but the opprobrium of the Jew became the luck of the Bishop. We will not suppose, for a moment,

that the successor of Raoul felt any degree of obligation towards his predecessor's medical attendant: however—be that as it may—when Louis, whether grateful or not, was called to the throne by the demise of Raoul, Bishop Deroldus, retaining his appointment in the royal household, was forthwith received into the King's high favour.

942—954  
 943—944  
 The Bishop  
 and his  
 rival, the  
 Leech of  
 Salerno.

Gerberga, conjugally antagonistic, as is usual in such domestic affairs, patronized a learned Leech of Salerno, whom she much desired to call in, but Louis, usually so conformable to his wife's wishes, was obstinate on this point, and would not give up the Bishop.—Louis teased the grave visitor by seducing him into a dinner-conversation before his competitor, thereby exposing his comparative ignorance of surgery, botany, and other branches of science. The puzzled foreigner was provoked, and a pharmaceutical duel ensued, appropriately fought by exchange of poisons. Deroldus triumphantly vindicated his skill in this branch of practice, though it is rather doubtful whether he behaved honourably. The unfortunate Neapolitan, less perfectly versed in the art, afterwards carried to such perfection in his country, was worsted in the conflict. The subtle venom—a powder, it seems, administered to him by the Bishop in the *sauce-piquante* of which both partook,—assumed the shape of a pill when it entered his veins, and ultimately lodging in his

942—954 left foot, he was compelled to submit to amputation as the only means of saving his life; but  
 943—944 further details would be irrelevant. It is sufficient to know that Zedechias would have had no chance with the Bishop had he been driven to deal with him.

Hugh-le-Grand's ducal style ran proudly. He wrote himself—*Hugo excellentissimus Francorum Dux*—nay, sometimes he employed a form now usually considered as exclusively appertaining to royalty,—*Hugo, clementiâ Omnipotentis Dei, Francorum Dux*—and he held the noble Duchy of France as amply as his father before him. Yet, though enjoying unchallenged possession, his title was not so perfect as he could desire.

Partition of  
Burgundy  
upon the  
accession of  
Louis  
d'Outre-  
mer. See  
pp. 183 and  
185.

The tenure by which these territorial dignities was held is not clearly understood. Usage unquestionably regulated the construction of the written documents. Large expressions do not always comprehend as much as they might be supposed to include, and brief phrases may convey far more than the words would appear to warrant. We only know that various "great Feudatories," in whose lineage counties and cities are known to have been *de facto* hereditary, did acknowledge that the Sovereign might treat their patents as revocable at pleasure. The grandson of Robert-le-Fort was therefore neither satisfied with the guarantee which the muniments of his Neustrian Duchy afforded him, nor certain that, supposing there was a tribunal competent to take cogni-

zance of the question, it might not be adjudged <sup>942—954</sup>  
that the right of the crown was insufficiently <sup>943—944</sup>  
barred.

Much less contented must Hugh-le-Grand have been with his position in Burgundy. Hugh's influence as Protector had enabled him, upon the accession of Louis, to increase his paternal inheritance by the addition of one-third of the Burgundian kingdom: but nevertheless his dynastic position did not content him.

The scanty information we possess concerning this powerful and opulent territory is perplexingly deficient in precision. We know that Burgundy was divided into three Duchies, but we cannot ascertain their several boundaries. Hugh-le-Grand, more generally known in Burgundy by the colloquial designation of Hugh-le-Blanc, may be considered as Duke of Langres.—Good Hugh-le-Noir, might be called Duke of Avalon; but *Hugo Niger*, though colloquially distinguished by his colour, did not adopt the epithet as a diplomatic identification; so that when he is mentioned in the same document with Hugh-le-Grand, he is merely noticed as the *alter Hugo*. —The third department of Burgundy belonged to Gilbert, Hugh-le-Grand's own brother-in-law. This last-named Duke connects himself with Norman history. From Gilbert, in the female line, came Renaud, who married the Adeliza Judith, the grand-daughter of Richard Sans-peur. Lastly,

The three  
Dukes of  
Burgundy,  
Hugh-le-  
Blanc,  
Hugh-le-  
Noir, and  
Gilbert.

942—954 over and above these three Burgundian Duchies,  
 there was a fourth Burgundian "Grand Fief,"  
 943—944 that is to say, Macon, which constituted a distinct  
 County, held by Leutaldus, the son of Alberic of  
 Narbonne, a true friend of Louis d'Outremer.

Concord of  
 the Bur-  
 gundian  
 Dukes.—  
 Hugh-le-  
 Grand ne-  
 vertheless  
 taking the  
 lead.

The partition between the three Dukes had prospered. The once fiery competitors renounced their rivalries; and, their dissensions having subsided, Hugh-le-Grand took the lead in all Burgundian affairs. This union of interests, and the good understanding subsisting between him and his coparceners, enhanced his general influence; but the prerogatives of the Crown in Burgundy concurrent with, and also counteracting the unquestionable pre-eminence of Hugh, were very great. Burgundy was still treated as a separate Realm by the French Kings—a fact which has not excited sufficient attention. And the King of France, anointed at Laón, seems to have possessed a greater direct jurisdiction over Burgundy than he could claim in the other provinces,—more it should seem than in any other portion of the Realm, whether North or South of the Loire.

Antiquarian research being baffled by the vagueness of the Burgundian records, it is impossible to ascertain how far Royal pretensions conflicted with Ducal rights; but Hugh-le-Grand was determined to end all uncertainties as soon as he should find the means, and to close all

open questions on his own behalf, and upon the most advantageous terms. 942—954

We know not what kind attentions Louis, when lodged in Hugh's Parisian Palace, may have received from his Host, but we have very instructive hints as to the moral pressure which he sustained. It is probable that some concessions made by the Sovereign to his Tormentor resulted from policy, a conjecture, however, not excluding the certainty that many more were surrendered to irresistible requests. When we shall meet Louis, venting his indignation, and telling his own story, then we shall hear him confess how deeply he resented the tyranny which Hugh-le-Grand was used to exercise over him. However, at the present juncture, his good sense not only restrained him from manifesting any discontent when he assented to demands which did not admit of a nay-say, but also induced him to add a grace to the grant. 943—944

So much worship was yet rendered to Royalty, that the spiritual relationship contracted with the Sovereign through baptismal sponsorship, was esteemed a transcendant honour. We may recollect how highly Guillaume Longue-épée had appreciated the favour which invited him to present a royal infant at the font. Gerberga, the buxom Matron, had just enabled Louis to confer the like compliment upon some other distinguished personage, and Hugh-le-Grand was



942—944 selected as the infant's godfather. "Alerada" was the name given to the babe, espoused at a very early age to Renaud Count of Rheims and Rouci. This *gossiprede* was only an adornment of the substantial advantages which Hugh-le-Grand was reaping, but the distinction magnified him before the crowd, and Louis knew better than to refuse a token of condescension which imparted strength to his own cause. It was thankfully accepted as testifying the *entente-cordiale* subsisting between the Potentates.—Louis and Hugh-le-Grand were exhibited to the public walking arm-in-arm.

943.  
Hugh-le-Grand stands godfather to Alerada the king's daughter.

Further powers granted to Hugh in his Duchy of France, and the whole of Burgundy subjected to him.

The confirmation of authority which Hugh-le-Grand craved in his dominions, was effected by Royal Precepts or Charters, imparting to him further privileges, so as to coalesce with his previous rights of possession and of inheritance. Louis appointed the Duke to be his perpetual Lieutenant in his Duchy of France. With respect to Burgundy, the whole Province, or, as we should rather say, Kingdom, was subjected to him, *Hugo Dux, filiam Regis ex lavacro sancto suscepit, et Rex ei Ducatum Franciæ delegavit, omnemque Burgundiam ipsius ditioni subjecit*: and these two distinct transactions, presented by the Chronicler in connexion with the sponsorship, the latter being conferred as a special decoration, were construed as creating him Duke of all the Gauls: *Hugo Dux in magna gratia*

*Regi habitus, ejus filiam ex sacro lavacro suscepit, unde et eum Rex omnium Galliarum Ducem constituit.* 942—954  
943—944

Our information concerning the quoted instruments is limited to the curt phrases employed by Richerius and Frodoardus. The commentary must be sought in the sequence of events. We can scarcely doubt but that all the rights of the Crown within the territories to which these singular documents related, were virtually transferred to Hugh-le-Grand. In the Duchy of France or the County of Paris, Hugh-le-Grand had nothing beyond the regalities to desire, and both in Burgundy and in the Duchy he now became an irremovable Viceroy. But the privileges so obtained by Hugh-le-Grand, produced very important political results, both present and future. Hugh assumed even a loftier bearing than before; Burgundy was annexed to the Duchy of France, and passed with the Duchy; and the grant thereof made by Hugh Capet to his son Henri-le-Grand, severing the same from the Crown, created the premier Duchy of Christendom, the most splendid appanage which a Prince of the third Race could enjoy—the rival of the Throne.

Yet Louis may have been the more willing, or rather the less reluctant to make these vast concessions, upon the calculation that he could now afford the sacrifice; it might be taken as a compensation for the dividend of his Royal pre-

942—954  
 943—944  
 rogatives relinquished to Hugh, that he had, through his own exertions, won a full equivalent elsewhere. Normandy was, under every aspect, a glorious acquisition. Nobles and chieftains obedient, the people docile, Rouen well guarded, Hugh-le-Grand as well contented as he ever could be expected to be, Danish audacity chastised, the King of France, laurelled as a victor in the battle-field, Guillaume Longue-épée in the grave, and his son, the only representative of Rollo's race, safely secluded in Laôn Tower. No Carlovigian monarch had been so triumphant as Louis within the memory of any living man, or far beyond : and Louis, encouraged by his successes, determined to re-plant the Eagle standard firmly beyond the Loire.

Notwithstanding the submission rendered by the Aquitanian Princes upon the accession of Louis, they did not care to realise the notion of a King. After the departure of Charles the Simple, these haughty chieftains sternly repudiated the authority of Raoul, whose usurped domination they treated as an interregnum ; but they did not exhibit any corresponding feeling of loyalty towards Louis, and were so slack in recognising the legitimate Sovereign, that, in the dates of their charters, the Ducal notaries often forgot to insert the regnal year. Raymond Pons, the great Marquis of Septimania and Count of Toulouse, though not actively rebellious, was

prominent amongst the slighers of the Royal supremacy.—In fact, they were becoming independent Sovereigns.

942—954  
944—945

Louis, having recovered strength, though the grievous malady under which he had sickened continued lurking in his system, moved from Paris to the South: and Gerberga, during the royal progress, rode with her Husband. The monition issued by Louis was pacific, but Hugh, at the head of a large body of troops, was prepared to enforce obedience; nor did the presence of Gerberga remove the possibility of hostilities—Gerberga never flinched from the perils of war.

944.  
Louis moves towards the South for the purpose of enforcing his royal supremacy.

Raymond and the other Aquitanian Nobles, Dukes, and Counts, having appeared before Louis at Nevers, he gave a command to them by which he asserted the fullest right of sovereignty over the Aquitanian kingdom. Required to surrender their Provinces into his hands, they complied implicitly: whereupon Louis, in the plenitude of his prerogative, issued new grants for the express purpose of testifying that the authority of the Princes proceeded wholly from the Crown. Whatever powers of government they possessed, were to be deemed and taken as exercised on behalf of the King, and, the renewed Charters being accepted, they were permitted to return home. This very remarkable transaction affords the best commentary upon the anxiety manifested

The Aquitanian Princes surrender their Provinces, and accept re-grants thereof.

942—954 by Hugh-le-Grand to obtain such securities as  
 could bar any royal right, whilst it equally exem-  
 944—945 plifies the marvellous strength inherent in the  
 royal authority. The Aquitanians yielded to the  
 moral influence inherent in the crowned and  
 anointed Monarch;—had they resisted, how could  
 Louis have enforced his demand?

Plans  
 formed by  
 Louis for  
 extending  
 his domi-  
 nion in  
 Flanders.

§ 12. Louis, in all his transactions with the  
 “Pirates,” conducted himself with such consistent  
 untruth, that, upon the first impression we are  
 inclined to disbelieve every promise which he  
 made to them, or any explanation which he gave.  
 Yet, when he emphatically declared to the Nor-  
 mans his hostile intentions against Arnoul, we  
 have reason to suppose he was in earnest. His  
 capacity, recklessness and talents, qualified him  
 for a conqueror; his aspirations were great and  
 glorious; schemes of aggrandisement were float-  
 ing before his mind. The plan of the Flemish  
 campaign which he had detailed before the Nor-  
 man nobles, sufficiently proves that he was not  
 indulging in empty bravadoes: he had consi-  
 derately planned the hostile invasion of Flanders.  
 If he acquired popularity amongst the Normans  
 by punishing Guillaume Longue-épée’s murderer,  
 well and good; his main object being nevertheless  
 to effect an important acquisition of territory. The  
 Counts of Flanders were not so personally odious  
 to the French as the race of Rollo; but the pride  
 of the Carlovingian Sovereigns had been deeply

insulted when the son of "*Houd-u-wacker*" had established himself in the Flemish march- and marsh-lands; and though Arnoul was the grandson of Charles-le-Chauve, the amours and abduction of Madam Judith were awkward anecdotes in the family history.

942—954

944—945

See Vol. I.  
(pp. 523—  
532.)

If we examine the map, we shall find that a line drawn from Arras to Furneus includes somewhat more than the modern French Flanders; Louis d'Outremer in seeking the annexation of these opulent tracts to his domainal kingdom, seems to have anticipated, though with unequal success, the plans of Louis Quatorze. The inclinations of the French people, supported by the political agency at his disposal, encouraged his views in that direction. Opportunities were now arising by which, without any exertion, various desirable possessions, tending greatly to his advantage, were falling into his power.

The inhabitants of Montigny, grateful perhaps for their deliverance from Serlo the Brigand, were anxious to place themselves under royal protection, and, slaughtering the Vermandois Commander, they gave up the town to Louis. In those wars of small things, Montigny was not to be despised; but a far more important item was speedily added to the account. Bishop Deroldus had been silently exerting himself on behalf of his tutelary Patient, and the Citizens of Amiens, aided by the Bishop's military tenants, having

944

Increasing  
influence of  
Louis.—  
Montigny  
and Amiens  
surrender  
to him.

942—954 } ousted the stalwart Eudes, placed themselves  
 944—945 } under the obedience of the crown. Louis deter-  
 mined to grant the County of Amiens to Her-  
 louin: and prepared to attack the Flemish terri-  
 tory in right earnest. He entered the City, and,  
 after holding a council with the inhabitants, who  
 seemed to be cordially well inclined towards him,  
 he summoned Herlouin, the Count-expectant,  
 to join him at the head of his forces. Arnoul,  
 notwithstanding the gout, summoned his lieges  
 and advanced immediately towards Normandy,  
 determined to be the assailant; and, as if to shew  
 the greater despite against Herlouin, he was  
 accompanied by Balzo, Riulph's avenger. The  
 Flemish troops were intercepted by Herlouin. A  
 sharp conflict ensued, Arnoul was defeated and  
 put to flight, Balzo, slain, the murderer's hands,  
 cut off, and the bloody trophies sent by Herlouin  
 to Rouen.

Hugh-le-  
 Grand's  
 constant  
 mainte-  
 nance of his  
 views upon  
 France.

§ 13. Fresh troubles for Louis were ma-  
 turing, all of the same quality, wasting away the  
 strength of the monarchy; and all caused, or  
 increased, or exasperated, by the cautious, yet ever  
 vigilant agency of Hugh. Ambition is most  
 surely successful when made to operate by com-  
 bining her blows with an unintermitted pressure,  
 of which the effects become sensible, whenever  
 accumulated sufficiently to occasion a rift in the  
 body which the weight is crushing. Bald and  
 petty as the majority of the incidents constituting

French history during this downward progress may appear, it is absolutely necessary to detail them. We must pursue the revolution minutely through the descending stages, and stage by stage during the descent, if we seek to ascertain the process which conducted the wary Founder of the third dynasty to the throne.

942—954  
 944—945

The regalities which Hugh had so successfully wrested from the King in Burgundy and in France, now stimulated him to make further exertions in Normandy. The claim of Hugh-le-Grand over Normandy approximated in a certain degree to an hereditary right. Robert Duke of France, when the conference was held on the Island of the Epte, was felt by all, to be the superior of King Charles. It was by the assent, and under the protection of Duke Robert, that Rollo-Robert had been settled in his land; and the conventional pictorial embellishment which adorns the hide-bound educational volumette, King Charles, clad in his royal robes, capsized by the Danish soldier, whilst Duke Robert stands upright, clad in full plate armour, conveys a truthful impression of the relative position of the parties.

In consequence, without doubt, of this feeling, Louis when he first planned the Norman invasion, proposed that, the Pirates being expelled, he, the King of France, should take the "Haute Normandie," or all the territory on the right bank



942—954 of the Seine, whilst to the Duke of France  
 } should appertain the “Basse Normandie,” or  
 944—945 Normandy *outré Seine*. The existence of such  
 a compact explains the spontaneous submission  
 of those Normans, who turned away from Louis  
 to Hugh. Louis, as they might maintain, had  
 no right to their allegiance, and the act, however  
 construed with respect to Richard, gave the  
 Duke of France a title to the country of which  
 the legitimacy could scarcely be distinguished  
 from the title of the King. Upon this construc-  
 tion, when Hugh entered into the Evrecin, he  
 only took possession of his own. True it is, that  
 Hugh ostensibly abandoned his rights in Evreux;  
 but, of course, he reckoned this surrender as a  
 deed to be cancelled, so soon as any opportunity  
 should arise.

Hugh was called upon to be watchful, for in  
 some degree, however slight, the Carlovingian  
 family had been gaining stability. When Charles  
 expired in the dungeon of Peronne, Louis was  
 the sole throne-capable representative of the Car-  
 lovingian dynasty. The existence of that branch  
 depended upon his single life, but now the race  
 was reviving; every child promised by productive  
 Gerberga diminished the chance of the infant  
 Capet; and, ere the expiration of the year  
 during which Gerberga had boldly ridden with  
 Louis to Aquitaine, there were evident tokens  
 that such an event might be again confidently  
 presaged.

Hugh-le-Grand therefore began to negotiate actively among the *Nordmanni*, and concluded a treaty with them—pledges given and pledges taken on either side,—a transaction implying a more stringent bond than mere homage. Moreover, it should seem that this alliance comprehended not merely both the Norman parties, the Romanized Normans and the Norman Danishry, but also the pure Pagans. Hugh's adherents thus became numerous and formidable, waiting only the word of command. However, there was a pause; Hugh did not begin by sounding the trumpet in Normandy: it was his constant practice to work against Louis like a skilful besieger, surrounding him with parallels, and connecting these parallels by zigzag covered ways, and advancing the more rapidly because he did not take the shortest path. Louis and Hugh were equally active, but the former unwarily continued furnishing his antagonist with those further means of annoyance, which, ultimately coalescing with the efforts of the Normans, not only deprived him of Normandy, but accelerated the ruin of the Carolingian dynasty.

§ 14. It will be recollected that, not very long since, a pacification had been concluded between the two brothers-in-law, Otho and Louis, through the intervention of Guillaume Longue-épée, greatly to Gerberga's satisfaction. But there never was a truthful transaction in the Luegen-feld commonwealth, and Louis main-

942—954  
944—945  
Hugh-le-Grand's intrigues amongst the Normans.

Quarrel between Louis and Otho, fomented by Duke Hugh.

942—954

944—945

Transac-  
tions con-  
cerning  
Lorraine.  
(see p. 255,  
256).

tained his pretensions to Lotharingia.—All Charlemagne's Empire belonged to him. He was Charlemagne's descendant, and his brother-in-law, the Saxon, an intruder;—and now, that Louis had occupied Normandy, his success in reintegrating his kingdom in the Western quarters, rendered him the more desirous to win back the noble territory of which he had been deprived in the East.

Death of  
the young  
Duke Otho,  
and ap-  
pointment  
of Conrad  
the Red.

Louis had concurred in the appointment of Otho,—Gerberga's son by her first husband, Gilbert the bold swimmer,—to his father's Duchy. He assented willingly to the family compromise, and abandoned his rights in favour of his stepson; but the young Duke died, having scarcely held his dominion two years. Otho thereupon treated the feud as vacant, and in his gift, and he accordingly granted the Duchy to Conrad the Red, the son of Werner Count of Worms and Spires, bold and wise, but who had no heritable claim. Louis was provoked, and sent his agents into Lotharingia for the purpose of treating with the discontented nobles, and exciting them against King Otho. In this transaction Louis conducted himself with equal want of honesty and of discretion: he intrigued with Count Manasses, Hugh-le-Grand's liegeman, taking him into his confidence, speaking most disrespectfully of Otho, and branding the brother of his affectionate wife as a perjured traitor.

A family quarrel ensued: Otho discovered the

emissaries of Louis, and cast them into prison. <sup>942—964</sup>  
 Hugh-le-Grand had now an adequate reason for <sup>944—945</sup>  
 swerving away from Louis, and prepared to recommence military operations against him. King and Duke began to compete for Otho's alliance. Louis dispatched his ambassadors to the German King: and the representatives of the King of France and of the Duke of France, severally presented themselves before Otho, holding his Court at Aix-la-Chapelle in Charlemagne's eagle-crowned palace, as though he were their common superior. Count Manasses revealed the French King's slanders in the full presence of the assembly; the ambassadors of Louis were dismissed contumeliously, Count Manasses and his colleagues received into high favour; and Otho associated himself to Hugh-le-Grand, prohibiting his lieges from giving any aid to the King. No open hostilities ensued, but this episodical squabble revived the jealousies between Germany and France, and, for a time, had an unfavourable influence upon the affairs of Louis. The affectionate Gerberga laboured earnestly for the purpose of effecting a reconciliation between her husband and her brother; the rancour was mitigated, and, personally, Otho and Louis became sincere friends, yet the political rivalry between the Saxon successors of Charlemagne in Germany and the Heirs of Charlemagne in France, subsisted until the extinction of the Dynasty.

942—954

944—945

Richard in  
the Tower  
of Laon.

§ 15. The superabundant kindness displayed by Louis towards Richard whilst abiding under the immediate observation of the Normans at Rouen, can only be designated as outrageous hypocrisy: but, when Richard had been removed to Laon, Louis continued to treat him mildly; nor was any tendency to harshness manifested. Richard remained under the tutorial care of the wise Osmond, having for his companions the other noble youths trained in the King's House, and, conjointly with them, he performed the honourable servitude of waiting at the Royal table. This kindness was politic: Louis had lulled the apprehensions of the Normans when they placidly permitted the transfer of Richard from Rouen Palace to Laon Donjon. Even a report tending to excite a doubt concerning the boy's safety, might rouse their apparently dormant loyalty.

When Louis had possessed himself of the young Duke's person, he exposed himself to grievous temptations. He had practically reannexed the *Terra Normannorum* to the Kingdom of France. So long as Richard could be retained in captivity, the Guardian Regent was in no great danger of being evicted: and, if Richard, being in captivity, should die childless—and was there much chance that he could die any other way?—then the detested race of Rollo would be extinct, and the Kings of France would hold the land for evermore.

If such can be conjectured as the inward thoughts of Louis, there were outward advisers, who, soon after the boy had been safely lodged in Laon tower, were suggesting that he should avail himself, to the utmost extent, of the advantage he had gained. Arnoul was haunted with the recollection of his crime and the fear of punishment: the whole Norman nation might unite in seeking to avenge the blood of their Prince. The Governor of Rouen, Herlouin, high in the King's favour, was Arnoul's particular and declared enemy: and, if the faithful vassal had displayed his affection towards the murdered Guillaume, by mangling Balzo's corpse, what might not Arnoul himself expect should any chance place him within the reach of Herlouin? Arnoul was not without some apprehension of the King's power, should he be supported by the Normans in his enterprizes against the rich Flemish towns, and therefore sought a reconciliation. He proceeded with his usual astuteness.—Arnoul was most anxious to appear before Louis and make his peace. He would have repaired to Louis in person, but his inveterate complaint, his tormenting "podagre," kept him at home.

Arnoul's ambassadors made great efforts on his behalf. Louis having presented himself to the Normans as the avenger of the murdered Duke, it was needful that appearances should be saved, and a decent deceit continued, to

942—954

944—945

Arnoul ex-  
cites Louis  
against  
Richard.

942—954 prevent the artifice from being too clearly ex-  
 posed. The Count of Flanders declared he would  
 944—945 prove his innocence by submitting to the ordeal-  
 trial in any form—the glowing iron, the scalding  
 caldron, or the deep-chilling pool—but his main  
 object was to combine with the King for the  
 expulsion of their common enemy, the Norman  
 Pirates.—Was it not a disgrace that the Neu-  
 strian territory should be thus usurped by the  
 foul Barbarian? The tenure of the Flanders  
 March-lands only bound Arnoul to defend his  
 country against the Danes;—from all other ser-  
 vice the Lord-Marcher was free. But Arnoul  
 was willing to encrease that service; he would aid  
 King Louis whenever he should require, and also  
 render an annual tribute of ten pounds of gold  
 to his Seigneur's Treasury. Moreover, the Amba-  
 sadors enlarged upon the affronts which Louis  
 had sustained at Rouen.—Would he bear in  
 patience the disgrace inflicted by the Rebels?—  
 Could he ever be sure of his own kingdom or  
 his own life, if the now caged cub-wolf were let  
 loose to roam at large?

Louis  
 places Os-  
 mond and  
 Richard  
 under ar-  
 rest at  
 Leon.

The King's Counsellors received these sugges-  
 tions favourably, persuading Louis to unite with  
 Flanders against the Northmen; nor did they  
 shrink from exhorting Louis to detain the young  
 Richard in perpetual captivity. Forcibly were  
 these appeals addressed to Louis as a statesman.  
 That Louis should seek to preserve his conquest

was a desire which human nature could not abandon, and the detention of the young Prince might be represented as affording the means of effecting that end in the most merciful way. A rigid policy might, in effect, prove most consonant to humanity. He contented himself for the present with charging Osmond that, unless by his, the King's, special permission, Richard was never to go beyond the city-walls.

This constraint was ungracious and severe. Which of the two, Pupil or Tutor, Osmond or Richard, was most annoyed by the humiliating arrest, it would be hard to say. Penned up in Laon, how could the young Duke receive due training in the accomplishments so needed for the adornment of his rank, the sports of stream, or wood or field? It was not from the lesson-book that the Bachelor could learn them.

However attenuated his Royal Estate, the Rex Francorum was still the Supreme Judge of his People, Leader of the Nation, Lord of the Land. He had ceased to manifest himself as their Legislator: no Capitular was issued in the Sovereign's name for the general government of the Realm, yet the King still gave the law between man and man, judged the right and redressed the wrong. Louis administering justice beneath the antique canopy in his only city of Laon, might feel that, despite of his misfortunes, he was not an unworthy representative of the great Emperor.



942—954

944—945

Osmond  
and Rich-  
ard break  
their ar-  
rest.

Now it chanced that in the calm autumn season, when the fresh air and the clear sky invited to sport and pleasure, Louis was compelled to deny himself the recreation he would so gladly have enjoyed—he had to labour in his calling, being required to employ himself in the Tribunal. It was the Session-day of the King's High Court, a busy day of contention and vexation; the jostling litigants crowding the Hall, each Suitor impatient to plead his plea, and each Pleader loud and fluent. Stunning was the strife of tongues, and when the Sovereign took his Seat, it was plain that many an hour must wear away, before the Royal Judge could rise. Osmond could not resist the temptation of disobeying the irksome injunction—the King set fast upon the bench—when could such a chance recur?—so he minded not the breaking of bounds, but rode forth with the boy. Much did Richard need good practice in the art of falconry, how to fly the gentle bird, to loose the leash and sound the lure.—The day was long, the sport delightful, and the long day ended ere the truants had returned.

The Court broke up, and the first intelligence with which Gerberga greeted her husband, worried by his weary work, was that Osmond and the boy were absent from Laon.—Evening drew on, had they not escaped?—the King fretted in extreme anxiety. Spitfire Gerberga exasperated her husband's impatience, reproaching him

with his carelessness in leaving the prisoners unguarded; and Louis continued silent for very rage, until Osmond and Richard, having returned without apprehension, were brought before him.

Louis, overcome by passion, assailed the offenders with bitter threats and disgraceful contumely. Osmond, the "vile fool," was threatened with the loss of his eyes. Scurrilous as the language employed by Louis towards Osmond might be, his vituperations of Richard were even more ungenerous. Louis insulted the child by degrading his mother, bestowing upon Espriota the worst name which can be applied to woman, a lewd harlot, who enhanced her guilt by seducing Guillaume Longue-épée from his lawful consort. If the Bastard ever repeated the attempt of escape, he should be effectually secured, laid fast like a log. The warning monument of the Merovingian princes in the Abbey of Jumièges foreshadowed his destiny—he was threatened with the horrible operation which state prisoners sustained by the commands of those whose consciences forbade them from shedding blood, yet allowed them to inflict a living death,—the stiffening of the victim's sinews by the actual cautery. Osmond and Richard were in danger of life and limb, and Louis in a paroxysm of indignation shouted that he cared not if all the world should know it. Additional Warders were appointed; and the two French knights, Gerard and

942—964

944—945

Anger of  
Louis—he  
threatens  
Osmond  
and Rich-  
ard.

942—954 Rosceline, were told to consider themselves personally responsible for Richard's safe custody. If he  
 944—945 evaded, they might expect to be burnt or hanged.

§ 16. Through this undignified outbreak, Richard was ultimately saved. When Louis declared his wish that the perils impending over the Heir of Normandy should be universally known, his anger threw him off his guard.—The brief fury made his foot slip, and the slip ultimately brought on his fall.—Osmond easily found the means of conveying the intelligence to Couci, the friendly Castle of Bernard de Senlis. The wary and powerful kinsman transmitted the intelligence to Bernard the Dane : and, repeated by the grey-bearded Chieftain, the sad report was rapidly diffused throughout Rouen and the Terra Normannorum, exciting deep indignation and deeper terror.

Diligently did the Normans counsel amongst themselves how they might best guide their course, but no earthly succour could be found. Herlouin, now wholly devoted to Louis, and the insolent French garrison, retained Rouen in bondage. Any attempt to deliver Richard from Laon Tower by force, was utterly hopeless—who could batter the citadel's walls?—any insurrection against the royal authority would be worse than futile. Richard was the hostage for the obedience of the Normans. The mere rumour of any insurrectional movement reaching Laon would

have been the signal for summoning the Executioner and his Assistants to lay hands upon Richard. Normandy therefore continued outwardly tranquil, and yet the Normans had found the means of testifying their sentiments most impressively and forcibly: submitting themselves to the Oppressor, they sought aid in prayer.

During three days, a Solemn Fast was observed throughout the Terra Normannorum, processions pacing along the streets and highways, the doleful litanies resounding, alms amply bestowed and masses said and sung; and, month after month, was the Fast repeated, and the intercession made. It was not within the power of Louis to prohibit these religious observances, neither were they susceptible of misconstruction. Every verse of each penitential psalm brought Richard before the people's mind; they were helping him in the only way they could, and their supplications testified that they were prepared and ready to give him succour in any other way, when way should open:—" *Le bon temps viendra*," thought many besides Bernard.

Indeed, all parties were kept in check. Louis held up the dart, but dared not strike, restrained perhaps by compunction, and in some degree by fear, whilst Osmond sedulously attended to the education of the intelligent and docile Richard. But no help came. Time wore away heavily. The sense of danger increased,

942—954  
944—945

The Normans express their griefs by devotional offices.

942—954 until, at length, the anxiety became unbearable  
 to the imaginative boy. His earnest entreaties  
 944—945 induced Osmond to attempt his rescue; and  
 there was one in that dungeon-tower with whom  
 Osmond could well mature his schemes, the noble  
 Yvo de Creil, the renowned father of Guillaume  
 de Belesme.

Symptoms  
 appear of  
 Richard's  
 declining  
 health.

§ 17. Hitherto, the young Richard had continued in the enjoyment of exuberant health. Gerberga used to hate him for his good looks; but now, as he waited at the royal board, many symptoms of declining vigour began to be discernible. His ruddy cheeks were pale and wan, his hitherto cheerful countenance, triste and worn. When he presented the cup the wary Queen was compelled to observe how thin his poor hands were becoming, and his plump and rounded limbs were falling away. Richard's ghastliness could not efface Lothaire's ugly freckles, nor did the shrinking of Richard's members straighten the legs of crook-shanked Lothaire; but the contrast between the two lads was in some degree diminished, and so far Gerberga may have rejoiced therein. However, more weighty matters could not fail to be brought before her mind. Richard was sickening for want of fresh air and exercise—what course ought to be pursued? Richard declined rapidly,—food does not nourish the gentle Bachelor, nor sleep refresh him, said all who saw him,—he could hardly stand for very

weakness; and took to his bed, from which it seemed he never could be enabled to rise.

942—954  
944—945

It would have been a moral miracle if Louis and Gerberga had not speculated eagerly upon the probable consequences of Richard's death.—Louis received important advantages from Richard's life. The Normans were held fast by the grip which Louis had upon Richard, and, Richard dying, that resulting security would be lost.—On the other hand, if Richard did die, then there would be an end of Norman sovereignty, and Louis would obtain his full intent, without the discomfort of committing any act which conscience might whisper to be a crime.

Louis therefore, in conjunction with Gerberga—or, far more probably, Gerberga taking the lead—formed a scheme of which the development, reserved for the Capets, exercised in future ages a most powerful effect upon the French Monarchy—the creation of appanages.—Three sons already had Louis by Gerberga, and she was promising more. According to the principles hitherto prevailing in the Carlovingian Monarchy, the rights of primogeniture were never exclusive; the younger branches had some provision. But there was no longer stuff enough to continue the system of partition; the morsel was too scanty to be divisible. The less they would have to share, the more fiercely they would dispute; a quarrel between Lothaire and

942—954 his brothers for the city of Laon would extinguish  
 the dynasty.—Supposing, however, that Nor-  
 mandy should escheat to the crown by Richard's  
 death without issue, an event, which humanly  
 speaking seemed to be almost inevitable, then and  
 in such case, could not the universal aspiration of  
 the Normans, that their country should be pre-  
 served as one State under one Ruler, be rendered  
 subservient to the best interests of France? A  
 son of Louis and Gerberga might become their  
 Duke, and the Normans be allowed to retain the  
 show of independence within their own borders,  
 without impairing the stability of the French  
 Monarchy.— —

944—945  
 Richard's  
 death con-  
 sidered  
 certain,  
 Louis and  
 Gerberga  
 determine  
 that Nor-  
 mandy shall  
 become an  
 appanage  
 for a Son of  
 France.

The symptoms of Richard's danger became more threatening—doleful were the lamentations of his attendants; and Osmond never departed from the scene of sadness—so soon to be closed by the young Prince's death.

Meanwhile the King and the Queen were absorbed in joyful expectations. They treated the reversion as indefeasible; as for Gerberga she could not enjoy a moment's tranquillity until the glad intelligence should be brought to her,—incessant were her inquiries at the sufferer's door—is he only dying? All the French fully participated in the belief that Richard was about to breathe his last. What possible reason could they have to doubt the fact, or deem that the debility was feigned?—Nor was the debility

feigned:—no artifice could have blanched Richard's rosy hue or wasted his comely frame. Yet though the whole was a sham, the symptoms were real, the results of resolute self-denial. Osmond's hint, "make yourself ill," was spiritedly and patiently carried out by Richard; he "made himself ill" in right earnest, stinting himself of food, and denying himself his needful rest; and so he persevered until the continued abstinence brought on positive danger;—he was clemmed by self-imposed vigils and starvation.

942—954  
 944—945

The sorrow of the sick room had filled the Palatial Castle with hilarity, and the King's grand banquet, celebrated on the evening when Richard seemed to be at his last gasp, was the public manifestation of this feeling. All Laon, so to speak, had been bidden to the feast, the Streets and Places were deserted. Whether as guests, or as attendants, or as spectators, all the inhabitants had been drawn away by the festivity. During the progress of Richard's illness the Warders had gradually relaxed in their diligence, and now, if Richard had not actually expired, he was as good as dead, and therefore, joining the general merriment, they relieved themselves from their duty altogether.

The auspicious moment had arrived, and Osmond seized it. Brief were his and Richard's orisons invoking the help of Saint Leonard, the captive's Liberator—and ere King Louis and

Richard's  
 escape  
 from Laon.



942—944 Queen Gerberga had risen from the board,  
 Osmond and his precious charge were safely  
 944—945 lodged in Couci Tower.—The commemoration of  
 the feat is found in the symbolical bearing, the  
 wings displayed, the honoured heraldry of the  
 Cent-villes family; and if we enquire how the  
 escape was effected, we shall be told, that Osmond  
 adopted the very device through which Ogiva  
 rescued the infant Louis. He had wrapped the  
 boy in a truss of forage, and thus conveying  
 him into the stable, both mounted the horse,—  
 and off.— —

§ 18. Couci was reached speedily, where the  
 discreet Châtelain gladly received the young Rich-  
 ard into his care. Osmond continued coursing on  
 to Senlis, where he arrived before the grey of the  
 morning. The sudden apparition of Osmond ex-  
 hausted by anxiety and fatigue appalled Count  
 Bernard; but the feelings of surprize and alarm  
 were speedily and joyfully removed by the in-  
 formation of the rescue. Who was to be their  
 champion? There was but one, Duke Hugh.—  
 Soon as the morning broke did old Bernard de  
 Senlis consequently bestride his courser, and  
 accompanied by the smallest number of attend-  
 ants, ride straight forward to Hugh-le-Grand at  
 Paris.

Bernard did not however make more haste  
 than good speed, for he bethought himself as he  
 journeyed, how he must deal with his crafty Liege-

lord. Abstractedly from the general condition of those times, that no man trusted his brother, there was a special reason why the Count of Senlis needed to be cautious when treating with the son of King Robert. Bernard suspected that, efficient as Hugh-le-Grand's aid would be in supporting the cause of the legitimate Norman Duke, it would not be a superfluous caution to protect the young Prince against such a Protector.—Should young Richard's enlargement produce no better effect than an exchange between the Tower of Laon and Duke Hugh's Palace at Paris, small would be the gain.

942—954

944—945

Richard  
under the  
protection  
of Bernard  
de Senlis.

We now enter into a strange and complicated series of intrigues amply detailed, yet blindly told. The confused narrative of the communications which ensued between the parties concerned, is however in some degree elucidated by the subsequent events, and, acting like impatient visitors, who, provoked by the intricacy of a garden maze, force their way through the quickset walls, we shall at length arrive at the sought-for centre of the labyrinth, the entire emancipation of Normandy,—that most important passage in the annals of the French, slurred over by their historians, and blurred by the garrulous eloquence of the Norman Herodotus.

The conversation with Hugh-le-Grand was opened by Bernard de Senlis. He commenced by a few politic ambages, or,—to speak more plainly,—lies. What the Count professed to seek was

Negotiations between Bernard de Senlis and Hugh-le-Grand on Richard's behalf.

942—954 the advice of Duke Hugh. The young Richard  
 was in great peril, still incarcerated by the  
 944—945 French King; and now he claimed Hugh-le-Grand's advice; how could the Captive be best freed? Hugh broke out in loud exclamations against the wicked King's perfidy. Could Richard be delivered, Hugh would employ every exertion for his restoration. Instantly did Bernard clench the offer, and, throwing himself at his Seigneur's feet, he disclosed the circumstances of the young Duke's rescue, and craved that Hugh would confirm the voluntary promise by his solemn oath. The Relics,—so painfully rendered the habitual witnesses of untruth and fraud,—were brought forth as usual, and the oath being sworn, Bernard hastened back to Couci as speedily as he had ridden to Paris, but in a very different guise, surrounded by a noble escort, and, fondly embracing his nephew, the boy was removed to Senlis, where he abode until the period of his restoration arrived.

Vexation of  
 Louis. His  
 endeavours  
 to effect  
 the re-capture of Richard.

§ 19. Gerard and Rosceline, the unfortunate Warders, were the first to experience the King's indignation. Louis placed them in close confinement and threatened them with death—an unprofitable ebullition of anger, and a useless severity, had he inflicted the punishment.—Osmond owed them nothing; Louis might have burned them or hanged them, Osmond would not have cared.

Louis was driven to despair by the calamity. In the conduct of the Norman enterprize, he had

deserved great praise and incurred heavy censure. At the onset, the Warrior's exertions and the Statesman's craft had been amply rewarded with success, and now all his wiles and toils were wasted, all the fruits of the glorious "battle of the rescue" lost. Richard's guardian had disclosed himself as Richard's most dire enemy. The amicable occupation of Normandy was exhibited under the true but odious aspect of a conquest, effected by a clever, but disgusting, combination of force and deceit. His character was gone : and this consideration unquestionably decided his future conduct. Dissimulation was useless, he discarded all quibbles and pretences : Normandy was his, and he would defend his dominion with the sword. But he could not disguise to himself that the escape of the young Pretender would prove a great annoyance. Never could the title of Louis be secure, so long as young Richard was at liberty.

The first endeavours of Louis, counselled by wise Gerberga, were therefore directed for the purpose of recapturing the young prince. A confidential messenger was dispatched to the Duke of France, praying the Senior that he would exercise his authority over his Homager, and compel Bernard de Senlis to restore the ward whom Osmond had "stolen ;" a degrading expression, but strictly warranted even by our old English common law. Hugh-le-Grand answered grimly,

942—954

944—945

Hugh-le-Grand refuses to compel Bernard de Senlis to surrender Richard to the King.

No such thing will I do; I will not expel Count Bernard from Couci and Senlis, or from Creil, or from Thuri, nor distrain him to surrender his dear nephew. And not merely did Hugh refuse, but he, forthwith, *defied* the King.

Conference between Louis and Count Arnoul at "Restibulis."

This act rendered Louis exceedingly anxious, dreading possibly lest the *defiance* given by Hugh should be the signal of inveterate hostility. Louis possessed a most discomfiting knowledge of the consequences which had ensued to his father from the *disfidatio*, the casting of the hawk at Soissons. Whether Hugh performed this symbolical ceremony or not, the intent of the speaker was the same. In this stress, Louis turned again to Arnoul, and, for once in his life, Arnoul was free from gout when he was wanted. A clandestine conference took place between Louis and the Count of Flanders at "Restibulis," an obscure village in the Vermandois, which has wholly disappeared from the map. Arnoul advised that Hugh-le-Grand should be brought over, or rather, bought over, by the so-often contemplated cession of the Basse Normandie. Arnoul's arguments were plausible. Louis, surrendering Normandy "beyond the Seine," would only renounce a territory which he could not retain without difficulty, and thus, freed from the burthen, be the better enabled to defend the Haute Normandie on this side the river; but the greatest gain to both parties would be found in the extinction of the Norman Com-

monwealth. Once divided, Normandy would  
 cease to exist. Doubts might certainly be raised, <sup>942-954</sup>  
 whether such an accession of power obtained by <sup>944-945</sup>  
 Hugh-le-Grand under the pressure of circum-  
 stances might not prove somewhat disadvanta-  
 geous to the King, yet it was the most eligible  
 compromise, and Louis prepared to pursue this  
 plan, but making, of course, the accustomed  
 mental reservation, that, if it were needful, Duke  
 Hugh should be deceived.

Having therefore determined, as suggested  
 by Arnoul, that he would bid high for Hugh-  
 le-Grand's co-operation, a second summons was  
 issued, repeating the injunction that Hugh was to  
 repair to the King upon his faith and liegeance;  
 and a reverend deputation of Bishops conveyed  
 the mandate to the Duke of France. Louis now  
 appears stationed at Compiègne, where, royally  
 crowned, he was accustomed to receive the  
 homage of his lieges. A pleasant place also for  
 recreation was Compiègne: there were the  
 King's stables, the King's kennel, and the King's  
 mews. Louis carried his head high, nevertheless  
 it seemed that, when dealing with the Duke of  
 France the King could hardly decide whether he  
 was addressing a superior or an inferior; for the  
 message was conveyed somewhat timidly, though  
 speaking the language of command. More re-  
 liance was placed upon the influence of the  
 Bishops who presented the Precept, than on the

Conference  
 between  
 Louis and  
 Arnoul at  
 the "Bourg  
 de la  
 Croix."

942—954 potency of parchment and seal. Hugh complied,  
 though proudly asserting his independence; he  
 944—945 would come because it pleased him to come.

Not therefore would Hugh repair to the Palace, where he might have had to linger at the portal of the presence-chamber until the stately Usher should be pleased to open the door. The King was necessitated to go forth and meet the Duke, and the interview ensued, as between man and man, at the Bourg de la Croix. Hugh-le-Grand was surly and disrespectful. Why or wherefore—he asked—had he been summoned? there he was, yet merely because he wished to render due respect to the venerable Bishops who had solicited him. Louis was, on his part, peremptory and ungracious, repeating the words he had previously employed. Hugh-le-Grand must restore the ward, Richard, whom Osmond had “stolen.” Hugh’s answer was fully to the purpose; he could not compel the restitution except by a forcible seizure; an assertion hardly susceptible of a denial. Louis then urged the tempting proposition for the partition of Normandy upon the most favourable terms. Louis would not insist upon an equal division, share and share alike. Hugh should have the better portion, more extensive than the King’s land on this side the Seine, whilst the inestimable advantage accruing to both of them would be the complete suppression of the Pirate sovereignty.

Hugh immediately accepted the offer, cancelling all his engagements in favour of the young Richard:—they were not worth a thought; Richard was the son of Guillaume Longue-épée, grandson of the robber Rollo. Who could dream there was any obligation to observe a covenant entered into for the benefit of a Dane? Hugh and Louis then determined the plan of invasion;—Whilst Louis advanced to Rouen, Hugh should march concurrently to Bayeux and reduce that stronghold;—these simultaneous movements would completely liberate France from the proud and insolent Northmen; scattering them like drift to Denmark beyond the sea—curse all who hold with them—curse them all!

942—954

944—945

Treaty between Louis and Hugh for the partition of Normandy.

If the encouraging promises previously made by Hugh-le-Grand to Bernard de Senlis, that he would support the young Richard had been rapidly promulgated amongst the Normans, the news of his subsequent tergiversation now reached the Normans, and Bernard even more speedily. It came in letters, it came in talk, and Bernard burnt with indignation. Rapidly, as was the Veteran's wont, he rode away to Paris. Facing the Duke, the respect due to the Liege-lord restrained, for a brief interval, the outraged Vassal's tongue. But this reticence could not last. Bernard mingled rebukes with warnings, upbraiding the Duke's treachery and sneering at his folly.—The Duke of France was working to strengthen his royal rival. Would the Carlovingian refrain

Bernard reproaches Hugh-le-Grand for the violation of the pledge he had given on the behalf of Richard.



942—944 from resuming the ceded Provinces as soon as he  
 could exert the power?—With some degree of  
 944—945 contrition Hugh-le-Grand confessed the charge,  
 scarcely attempting to excuse himself. He had  
 made the covenant with King Louis, and the  
 covenant he would keep, provided the King  
 proved true to him; but, should Louis endeavour  
 to over-reach the Duke, then the covenant  
 should be held as null.

The two  
 Bernards  
 agree upon  
 a plan for  
 separating  
 Hugh-le-  
 Grand  
 from Louis.

§ 20. Further consultations ensued between Bernard de Senlis and Bernard the Dane, and the vivacious plot budded forth into a new ramification. Acute as were the two Bernards, they could not discover whether, on the whole, Hugh-le-Grand anticipated more advantage by helping Richard than by acting in combination with the King. But they fully ascertained that the preposterous alliance between the King of France and the Duke of France held them together only by a thread. Let Hugh receive any rebuff from Louis, let any suspicion be excited in Duke Hugh's mind, and the confederacy would be at an end. For the purpose, therefore, of gaining the positions which would respectively enable them to embarrass Louis and embroil him with Hugh, the associate Statesmen adopted a further ingenious device. It was settled between these two venerable intriguers, that, whenever the contingency for action arose, Bernard the Frenchman should deceive the King by truth, that is to say, appearing openly in his real character as the

King's enemy, whilst Bernard the Norman should make a demonstration of being the King's friend : not merely separating themselves, but even carrying on war against each other, should occasion require ; and each arranged his part accordingly.

Bernard de Senlis, whose strength was in the Isle of France, planned to make a diversion in favour of the Norman cause, by directing his attack against the core of the King's dominions. For this purpose he formed an alliance with Thibaut le Tricheur, whose power had been rapidly increasing since the death of Herbert of Vermandois. Thibaut enjoyed the distinction of bearing the worst character in France, being also one of her greatest potentates ; for it is said that about this period five noble Counties obeyed him as their Lord—Tours and Meaux, and Beauvais, and Blois, and Chartres ; and with him, Bernard de Senlis formed an alliance. But so thoroughly rotten were such compacts, that, although this co-operation was proposed and accepted for the benefit of Richard, Thibaut was planning, under the influence of the implacable step-mother Liutgarda, that it should, somehow or other, tend to Richard's harm.

Bernard the Dane, honest after his fashion, and praiseworthily consistent in pursuing his great object—the young Richard's restoration—availed himself of the results produced by the dubious

942—964

944—945

Thibaut  
le Tri-  
cheur con-  
federates  
with Ber-  
nard de  
Senlis.

Bernard in-  
vites the  
aid of Ha-  
rold Blaa-  
vand.

942—954 } policy which Guillaume Longue-épée had adopted  
 944—945 } towards the conclusion of his reign. When Guil-  
 laume had settled Harold in the Cotentin for the  
 purpose of counterpoising the Romane interest  
 by the Danish power, he had also secured the  
 alliance, not merely of a political partizan, but of  
 a trusty friend. We can, on the whole, hardly find  
 the match of Harold Blaatand in this historical  
 era; but the honest though unscrupulous Sea-  
 king had cruised away, and he was now in his  
 own realm. To Harold therefore Bernard imme-  
 diately applied himself, conveying to him the  
 intelligence of Richard's rescue—a joyful event,  
 however miserably darkened by the usurpation of  
 the Heir's inheritance—and inviting him over for  
 the purpose of supporting the rights of the orphan  
 Sovereign. Harold immediately responded. He  
 launched his keels and hoisted his sails prepara-  
 tory to a new passage of arms.

944      § 21. Armorica was at this period suffering  
 Alain severely under the chronic plague of the Celtic  
 Barbe-torte and Juhel race—inveterate dissension.—Alain Barbe-torte  
 Berenger— was no longer the wild man of the woods, wielding  
 Civil wars of Armo- his club against the brute beasts, yet instead of  
 rica which attract the drawing his sword against the enemies of his  
 Daues. people, he was now raging against his old friend  
 Juhel Berenger.—Beudic, the Count of Cornou-  
 aille, became mixed up in the quarrel—He was  
 one of the powerful obscure, concerning whom,  
 as is the case with many of his contemporaries,

we know nothing more than the sound of their names in the dynastic genealogies. At this juncture the Danes were directing their course towards the confines of the Terra Normannorum, and they appeared close upon Brittany when the civil war began. It would have been as preternatural in an antient Ostman as in a modern Milesian, to witness an affray and abstain from joining in it, whether there was any chance of profiting by the turmoil, or whether there was no such chance. But, in the present case, over and above their general delight in pugnacity, the Danes had a special incitement,—the desire of visiting upon Alain Barbe-torte the affronts they had received from him, when, after his return from the greater Britain, he had regained his Land.

The first port made by the Danes was the port of Dôl.—Disgracefully had the Northmen been worsted at the drunken bride-ale there; and now they more than compensated themselves for the shame. They surprized the City, perpetrating their habitual atrocities. Dôl was at this era a very important See, contesting the Metropolitan rights of Tours. The unlucky Bishop retreated to his Cathedral, indulging the vain fancy that the sanctity of the structure would repel the Pagans; but such numbers of the panic-struck flock poured in after their Pastor, that he was deplorably suffocated in the crowd. The Bretons

942—954



944—945

Successes  
of the  
Danes in  
Armorica.

rallied, regained the City, and, chasing the Northmen to the water's edge, boarded the "Long Dragons," and slaughtered the crews—an enterprise worthy of Alain Barbe-torte's best days. No permanent advantage however resulted to the Breyzad cause. Further conflicts ensued, in which the Bretons were thoroughly defeated. Again the victorious Danes spread themselves over the whole breadth of Armorica. Whether they captured Nantes or not is somewhat doubtful, the fact depending upon the critic's delight—a various reading. The annals of this interesting nation and country are so exceedingly scanty that each minute event commands more than usual attention when presented amidst the dearth of details. However, it is certain, that the Danes continued masters of Armorica during many years. Alain Barbe-torte was enabled to expel the enemy: but the Bretons emigrated in large numbers; and this occupation of the country, which was reiterated in the times of Alain's successors, unquestionably accelerated the decline of Breyzad nationality.

Harold, however, re-established his headquarters at Cherbourg, where he awaited the summons of Bernard during more than two years. But the Danes, whether Harold's followers or independent adventurers, occupied various strongholds in Normandy, and encouraged the populations who were preparing to reject the royal authority.

§ 22. Harold Blaatand's invasion, followed by the brilliant successes which the Danes were obtaining, gave great alarm to Louis.—Sufficient reason had he for consternation; much more was threatened than the loss of Rouen and the Terra Normannorum. Since the reign of Charles-le-Simple, the Gauls had been spared, but at the expense of England. England now, however, was recovering strength: the battle of Brunnaburgh had given a staggering blow to the Raven standard. The "magnificent Edmund," the Uncle of Louis, Ogiva's brother, had subdued the "five Burghs"—that most formidable Danish confederation; nay, had expelled the Northmen from the whole Mercian region.

942—954

944—945

Alarm created by the Danish invasion. Vigorous measures adopted by Louis.

The obstruction thus given to the stream of devastation might very possibly repel the flood into the earlier channel, and France again become a Danish battle-field. Louis, therefore, rousing all the energies of his Realm, determined for action. The Count of Flanders had hitherto decidedly rejected all compromise with the Count of Montreuil. So long as the envious grudges subsisted between Herlouin and Arnoul, Louis could not satisfactorily avail himself of their services, and his first motion therefore was to effect a reconciliation between them. This measure proved very advantageous. Herlouin had kept Rouen quiet—a great test of his talent:—and Arnoul, now exceeding fourscore years of age, came forward with marvellous vigour.

Louis determines to oppose the Danish invasion, and to keep Normandy in subjection.

942—954

944—945

Invasion of  
Normandy  
by the  
combined  
French and  
Flemish  
forces.

Most energetically did Louis commence his aggressive operations against Normandy. Again and again have we to remark the strange flashes of power exercised by the occupant of the tottering throne. Much assistance in this case was afforded by the Bishops, who abounded in the camp, heading their military levies. It was their duty as subjects that they should furnish their quota of troops, and equally against their duty as Christian Priests to shoulder their lances in war: but secularity was gaining fast upon the Church; and the spectacle of the two fighting Archbishops, Hugh, the quondam Parvulus, and the active Artaldus—could not fail to offer a deleterious example.

Arnoul, neither limping, nor halting, nor complaining of the gout, came on with his sturdy squadrons—none could surpass the Fleming in those days. The muster of the combined forces, French and Flemish, probably took place on the border, in or near the Ponthieu territory, whence they marched to Rouen, taking the south-west route. Arnoul's contingent constituted the vanguard of the royal army. Arques, which had offered such a stubborn resistance in Rollo's time, was the barrier of the Terra Normannorum on the north-east. This stronghold was occupied by the insurgents, but they lacked the pluck of the old Berserker garrison. Arnoul assailed the Normans, and, having completely routed them, marched forward, clearing the way for the King.

The battle of Arques decided the campaign.

Arques  
taken by  
Arnoul.  
This suc-  
cess opens  
the coun-  
try to the  
French.

Louis followed up the success, leading on the French, who prosecuted the war with unwonted fierceness. All their traditional hatred was revived against the fierce Normans, the false Normans, the filthy Normans; the French were repaying the affronts and injuries which their ancestors had sustained. The troops of Louis expanded over the Pays de Caux, burning and destroying all before them; the inhabitants fleeing away in terror, utterly unable to stand against the fury of the invaders.

Concurrently with these operations, Hugh-le-Grand, crossing the Seine, probably below Paris, pursued his course through the Evrecin. Advancing towards the north-western districts, seven hundred full-armed knights constituted the centre of his formidable army, principally raised from the Duchy of France, and recruited by the Burgundian levies. The Burgundian Prelates also contributed their forces. Under other circumstances very many of the Normans might have sided with Hugh; but it was now evident that he was combining with Louis in the scheme of partition intended to terminate the political existence of Normandy. Throughout the whole of this contest, all other feelings were merged in the universal determination, which pledged the Norman people to maintain the unity of the Norman Monarchy. Hence, an obstinate resistance was offered to Hugh in the once friendly Evrecin.

942-954  
 944-945

Hugh-le-Grand enters France concurrently with Louis.



942—954 The Hiesmois also rejected the Duke, and beat him off.

944—945

Hugh-le-Grand besieges Bayeux.

The chief fortress of the *Pagus Oximensis*, the renowned castle of Falaise, claiming Julius Cæsar as her founder, is not distinctly mentioned in the narrative. However we can scarcely doubt but the point d'appui afforded by Falaise, and the rocky *fells* from which the name is derived, aided the sturdy warriors of the regions in foiling the invader. Hugh and his troops fully emulated the cruel vigour displayed by Louis; they infested the whole country as far as the Mont Saint Michel: and the Duke, having fought his way onwards, presented himself before Bayeux. We have good reasons for conjecturing that Harold Blaataand's men had thrown themselves into this Danish city. It was foreseen, from the onset, that the acquisition of Bayeux would prove a difficult enterprize; and this probably, was one of the reasons which induced King Louis to furnish Hugh with occupation by the promise, that, should he win the place, the conquest should be his own. Bayeux was, in fact, valiantly defended, and Hugh's protracted operations seemed to have been limited to a blockade.

Bernard the Dane—his plot for enticing Louis into Rouen.

§ 23. The country suffered dreadfully. Louis and Hugh acting in union, or at least acting with a common intent, were too strong for the Normans. Bernard the Dane therefore now felt himself committed to the full extent of the

scheme propounded by him to his namesake of <sup>942-964</sup> Senlis. Louis must be lulled by a show of <sup>944-945</sup> complete submission, and brought into Rouen ;— means might then be found to baffle him, entrap him, may be, enthrall him. Nevertheless Bernard's object at the present crisis was to effect a speedy termination of the distressing warfare which the French were waging against the Normans, not merely in the spirit of conquest, but of vengeance. —Stout-hearted Bernard never doubted of success. He relied upon the ample resources he could command. Harold Blaataud was always in readiness. Let Bernard but give the word, and the Danes—the prime Pagan Danes—would gird themselves for the liberation of Guillaume Longue-épée's land. Bernard could count the swords which would clash and the bucklers which would be raised.

Our English proverb, "diamond cut diamond," is emphatically localized by a French parallel adage, "*à Normand, Normand et demi.*"—Of the *Normand et demi*, the Grey-beard Bernard was the absolute personification : his task required an extra allowance of subtlety, inasmuch as his plot involved a double contrivance. Louis was to be enticed to lead himself into the snare, and the Normans were to be enticed to spread the snare, by submitting to a course apparently so dangerous, that, were it suggested in the first instance, they would assuredly refuse to incur a risk calculated,

942—954 as they would think, to bring on their ruin. It was  
 in such intricacies that Bernard's soul delighted,  
 944—945 and he began with the cheerfulness of a May-  
 game. Indeed the triumph of gaining an advantage  
 by superior astuteness, unquestionably prompted  
 no small proportion of the crookedness which  
 distinguishes this era. The pleasures of imagi-  
 nation not unfrequently instigate the sinner by  
 giving a zest to sin. The absence of the excite-  
 ment resulting from the danger of the constable's  
 staff, has a share in making the clever rogue feel  
 flat in any honest calling.

Bernard  
 professing  
 to act in  
 the name of  
 the Nor-  
 mans, offers  
 their sub-  
 mission.

Bernard, professing to speak the sentiments  
 of the Normans, but without having had any com-  
 munications with them on the subject, opened a  
 negotiation with Louis in the character of a Ple-  
 nipotentiary, earnestly beseeching him to spare  
 the country. Why should King Louis waste and  
 destroy the domain which was his own? Ready  
 were the Normans to enter into his obedience,  
 and bow to the King's august supremacy. Their  
 delusion had been dispelled. Normandy depre-  
 cated the calamity denounced against the land  
 whose Ruler was a child. Normandy needed a  
 Judge, a Protector, and a King, nay, a Crowned  
 and Imperial Sovereign. The Normans craved the  
 King's mercy. Let him stay the chastising sword,  
 so that the plough should speed again, and the  
 people live in quiet; and therefore Bernard  
 urged him to repair to Rouen with his Bishops,

Bernard  
 invites  
 Louis to  
 Rouen, of-  
 fering an un-  
 conditional sur-  
 render.

and his Courtiers, and his Court, and his Princes; and, if wise Gerberga rode beside the King, the greater would be their joy.—Leave the little one safe at Senlis, quoth Bernard—enough are three arrows and a musket-hawk, for such a lad as he :

Moult souffrons bien ceste fée—  
Que Dan Bernart l'ait à Saint-Liz :  
Trop est encore assez petiz ;  
De treis fleches e d'un moschet  
Doit assez avoir tel vâlet.

In opening this negotiation with Louis for surrendering the Capital, Bernard acted entirely upon his individual responsibility. The Normans had not any knowledge of the transaction until Louis was marching towards Rouen at the head of an army, reckoned in round numbers, at ten thousand men. Therefore, when the Normans received the information that the King though promising peace had required their unconditional surrender, nay, that Richard was to be completely discarded, great was their grief, greater their surprise. The conduct of Bernard appeared inconceivable to them. Through Bernard's agency they saw the young Richard contemptuously disinherited, and Louis brought in by Bernard's counsel. Bernard the Dane, young Richard's guardian, recklessly abandoning the Infant's rights,—all was lost !

942—954

}

944—945

Helas! comme sont à deuil menez  
 Nul comfort ont ne nul conseil  
 Moult ont de Bernard grant merveille.  
 Deseritez, est à sa vie,  
 L'enfant Richard de Normandie!

Some alleviation however was practically imparted by the conduct of Louis and his army: the devastation of the country was immediately stayed: the villains returned to their cottages, the cattle were driven back to the fields, the plough sped again.—Amidst all their anxiety, the Normans could not really make up their minds to distrust old Bernard; therefore no murmur was uttered, no demur made.

§ 24. From whatever quarter of the Haute Normandie, Louis could approach Rouen, the City was protected by the thick-grown forests constituting the country's pride. On and on he proceeded, quite unmolested. The Normans were true to old Bernard's bidding, but had they been determined upon resistance, the march would have been very perilous; the tangled and massy zones of thickets and trees affording such ample ambushments against an enemy. Those forests were the more important in a military point of view, as being the barrier against France. Nor could any other communication be had to or from Paris otherwise than upon the tracks penetrating these living circumvallations. On the East, the traveller had to encounter the renowned "Foresta

de Leonibus," a locality with which we have, so to speak, become personally acquainted. On the North, Rouen was covered by the woodlands composing the *Forêt Verte*, still marked on the map, and the *Forêt de Bichorel*, of which the greater portions have been long since essarted, through which Louis had to descend from the Flemish border. These outstretching woods were conjoined, or nearly so, to the forest of Lions and its growths, and had also to be traversed by those who proceeded Rouen-ward from Paris; and all the main roads, as well from the Northern parts as those running through the forest of Lions, joined the great thoroughfares which led to the Porte Beauvoisine athwart the rich and verdant open meads spreading between the woodland margins and the City-walls.—These fields constituted a noted and much-admired feature of the environs.

All that Bernard promised to Louis concerning the hearty welcome he should receive at Rouen, was fully realised to eye and ear.—When Rouen was scarcely discernible in the far distance, Louis received his merry greeting, spoken from every church- and chapel-tower, which boasted of a bell.—And when Louis drew nearer, then arose the full-toned solemn chant, swelling in the air as he rode along the road. And when, ambling through the pleasant meadows, he came close upon the Porte Beauvoisine,

942—954

944—945

Louis enters Rouen.

942-954 he was prevented by the long processions of the  
 944-945 Clergy robed according to their order and degree,—Archbishop and Canons in their richly-broidered copes, holy banners borne aloft, and gold and silver censers swinging;—and lastly, thicker and denser as he advanced, but most of all, after passing beneath the well-known archway he entered the narrow street, the vast crowd hailing him as King.—A blessing on their honest voices!—had they dared, they would have toppled him into the Seine, rushing with delight to the river's banks, enraptured with the sport of seeing and hearing him fall splash into the water, struggling, sinking, shrieking, drowning: and truly if Louis, according to the popular code of retribution, had to be punished for his inward thoughts, this treatment would have served him right: he was just as eager for their destruction.

When Louis had, after the Battle of the Rescue, made his glorious entry through that same Porte Beauvoisine, he was in some degree enabled to excuse his assumption of authority by asserting a species of vicarial right, consequent upon the non-age of Guillaume Longue-épée's Heir.—No need now for such delicacies and pretences. He was Lord and Master.—Yet, great as was the success, the triumph would have been comparatively insipid, had it not been accompanied by the anticipation of sweet revenge.

How had these Normans and their Ancestors insulted and enslaved the French, rendered them tributary, robbed the Monarchy!—Here in Rouen had he been villainized, disgraced, hooted, imprisoned, bullied, degraded!—Here had they put him in fear of death, compelled him to display his cowardice, shamed him before the world!—Was not the roar of the multitude when they compelled him to come out with the vile bastard, yet sounding in his ears? And with these recollections fermenting in his brain, Louis made his stately entry into Rollo's Palace, and feasted in Rollo's Hall.

Outrageously riotous was the banquet on the evening of that joyous day. Whether by chance or by intent, the worst and most debauched of his Camp were assembled at the Board, and it was the custom of the French, as told by themselves in the tone of nations who glory in their own vices—and what nation is there which does not?—to lengthen such feastings late into the night, revelling in the enjoyment of their rude and scoffing talk, and their gibes, and their jeers, and their scurrilous merriment, at the expense of all the world and of themselves.

Without stroke stricken—*sans coup ferir*—Rouen was virtually a city taken by storm, and the discourse which passed amongst this boisterous crew was such as might have ensued had they won the Norman capital by force of arms. In-

942—954

944—945

The feast  
in the  
palace on  
the evening  
of the  
king's  
entry.



942—954 toxicated equally by success and by intemper-  
 944—945 ance, the language into which Louis was betrayed  
 disgraced his exalted station. The threats he  
 poured forth against the Normans proclaimed  
 the full extent of his previous abasement. Had  
 it not been for his own confessions, no one but  
 himself could have known the unseemly secret,  
 that his accusing conscience made him feel the  
 insults of the mob so keenly and so deeply. He  
 boasted he had stamped upon the Pirate's nest—  
 now shall the sons be punished for the insolence  
 of their filthy forefathers. If perchance permitted  
 to abide in the land, let them rot each day in mi-  
 sery—"our subjects, our tributaries, our slaves."

The ban-  
 quet of  
 triumph.

The jovial companions whom Louis addressed,  
 responded most cordially to these sentiments, and  
 reckoned, like their Sovereign, upon the gains of  
 their enterprise. Rouen had been exempted from  
 the dire calamities consequent upon a successful  
 assault.—The comely women had not been aban-  
 doned to the lust of the captors;—no wealthy  
 burghers tortured into the surrender of their  
 hoarded gold;—no houses sacked or fired;—no  
 Rebels strung up, and their broad lands granted  
 to the Conquerors.—Such were the accustomed  
 concomitants of successes like those which the  
 French had obtained; therefore, although the  
 gratification was postponed, yet the victors antici-  
 pated ample satisfaction when the season of  
 fruition should arrive.

A tranquil morrow ensued;—the soldiery entered upon their garrison duty. Instinctive prudence restrained the inhabitants. All parties were consistent dissemblers, and pitched their notes in harmony. The invitation which Bernard had given to the King was his own device—the Normans had no share in it. Not a word in his address had been prompted by them, not a thought was theirs; yet, though filled with perplexity, they could not renounce their traditional trust in Bernard. Therefore Bernard professed to explain, on their behalf, the reasons inducing their ready submission to the Carlovingian supremacy: and, when required by him to take their part in the drama, the Leaders and Nobles spoke according to the cue which the chief actor gave.

Bernard solemnly declared to Louis that the Normans, taught wisdom by experience, now entirely renounced that boy whom Osmond had stolen away—they had in nowise sought his liberation—he was gone, and they were rid of him. Let the Count of Senlis appoint Richard to be his heir—they would have none of him if they could help. Wretched is the realm whose ruler is a child.—Not were the Normans disloyally unmindful of past sorrows; yet these sorrows were irreparable. Arnoul's treachery had deprived them of their Duke and defender; but, by accepting Louis as their King and their defender, they accomplished a fortunate exchange.

Bernard  
and the  
Normans  
declare the  
reasons of  
their sub-  
mission to  
the King.

942—954

944—945

Hitherto had they obeyed the progeny of Rollo, now would they be ruled by Charlemagne's imperial race—no longer vassals of a minor power, but members of an Empire. The pride of Louis was gratified by an explanation thus motivated. It might be accepted as an apology for the affronts offered to his Dynasty, and, without placing any trust in their professions, or mitigating his intent of bringing Normandy into servitude, he graciously accepted the submission thus made.

Bernard  
the Dane—  
his machi-  
nations for  
setting  
Louis and  
Hugh-le-  
Grand at  
variance.

§ 25. Bernard's work, however, was only beginning. In order to comprehend the development of his elaborately complicated plot, it must be borne in mind, that though his firm expectation of ultimately entrapping Louis was grounded upon Harold Blaaland's co-operation, yet the immediate object he sought, was the dissolution of the confederacy between the Duke of all the Gauls and the French King. Bernard courted his Royal master—for such he fully acknowledged Louis to be—cleverly and assiduously. Foremost did Bernard stand as he presented himself in the royal circle, fresh and ruddy, nobly attired in his costly damask robe, over which his long grey beard was flowing. Despite of Bernard's age, none more jovial than he. His agreeable gifts,—humble tokens of affectionate obedience—were pleasantly welcomed by the Sovereign. Ample supplies of wine came in from Bernard's stores, and copiously was that

wine poured out at the Monarch's festive table. 942—954  
 The rich spiced claret was excellent, and delighted the King. He quaffed enough, and more than enough; and his brightening countenance shewed it.—Merry were the King's words, and merry was his heart; every vein in his head throbbed with good liquor. 944—945

The effect of the potations had been attentively watched by the Norman guests:—though they kept their wits, they partook of the mazer-cup quite as freely,—and when the King was thoroughly mellow, Bernard, motioning away the others, slid up, and sat next to him on the high dais at the head of the table.

The persuasions with which Bernard plied the King, for the purpose of exciting him against Hugh-le-Grand, were offered and repeated at various opportune seasons. His argumentations were supported by the Norman nobles, with many variations in the passages of their discourses, but always consistently adhering to the theme. These clever machinators all agreed in seeking to anger the King against his own conduct, holding up a mirror before him which reflected his countenance in the character which they sought he should ascribe to himself,—a witless prodigal.

The Banquet.—The Normans lead the King to distrust his own judgment.

Most inexpedient—as Bernard urged—was the treaty which Louis had concluded with Hugh, admitting that insatiate rival as a partner in the Terra Normannorum, increasing the strong man's strength, and imparting additional powers of

943—954 mischief to his most potent enemy.—Hugh, so  
 944—945 full of hatred and envy, cruel and proud.—Hugh  
 seeking the King's destruction, aye, and for ever.  
 —Hugh Duke of all the Gauls.—Hugh peerlessly  
 potent, whose shadow overspread the realm.

How full of warning, continued Bernard, was the testimony borne by common speech to Hugh's transcendancy!—The epithet which the universal consent of Christendom had hitherto exclusively appropriated to the great Emperor, was now no longer the prerogative distinction of his memory. *Charles-le-Magne* was matched by *Hugh-le-Magne*—he shared the distinction with a competitor—would not the son of King Robert be placed by posterity in the same rank of worthies as the son of Pepin—the Founder of the Dynasty? "*Carolus Magnus*" and "*Hugo Magnus*" included in the same category; and truly did the Lord of Paris, ruling half the realm, deserve this honour.

The taunts were grievous to Louis. But there was another important element in the transaction, which, when descanted upon by Bernard, darted through him with a consciousness not less painful, of the mischief he had occasioned to himself by his rashness and his ignorance. Louis had entirely neglected to calculate the value of the subsidy promised to his inveterate enemy. Austrasia contained the chief demesnil towns and cities, and almost all the palaces of the Carlovingian Sovereigns. The

west and far west of the Seine had rarely been visited by them: even at Rouen they were almost strangers. It is more than doubtful whether Louis had ever extended his progresses beyond the Evrecin and the Roumois,—the Pagus including the Capital,—or crossed the bounding Risle. No accurate knowledge of the country could be acquired otherwise than by sojourn and experience; and though Louis was familiar with the Haute Normandie, he was totally unacquainted with the wide-spread territories he had granted away to his consuming competitor.

Bernard, a consummate adept in the art of ingeniously tormenting, rang the changes upon the details evidencing the importance of the ceded provinces, proving the delusion under which Louis had laboured when he struck his blind bargain. Louis had shut his eyes when he opened his hand. Bernard overwhelmed the King with disagreeable information concerning the countries he was annexing to Hugh-le-Grand's duchy.—A ready tongue, a keen sight, and a pregnant wit, were amongst the many gifts of Bernard; and the clever old crafty blade spoke out with all the fluency arising from a thorough knowledge of his subject, warmed by the energy of a deeply-interested partisan, enjoying at the same time the dear delight—so exquisite even when profitless—of teasing. He reckoned the countries and named the towns; pointed at the hills, and called attention to the waters; travelling with Louis, in

942—954

944—945

Extent and  
value of  
the Basse  
Normandie  
impru-  
dently  
ceded by  
Louis to  
Hugh-le-  
Grand.

942—954  
 944—945

imagination, over the splendid dominions he was sacrificing,—the whole breadth of the Evrecin, and thence unto Sees—Lisieux, and the Lieuvin; the Hiesmois and the Cinglais, Bayeux and the Bessin; Coutances, and the Cotentin; the secluded Valley of Mortaigne, graced by the only natural cascade which antient France—France by herself France—contains; and then down to Domfront; and then up to Avranches, from whence you look forward and onwards to the Archangel's Mount, and the sands, and the bay, and the rolling waves;—Normandie-outre-Seine, fertilized by the intersecting streams, where the ports are most apt for commerce, and fit for defence;—Normandy beyond the Seine, peopled by the most prudent and powerful chieftains, and the most valiant race, so preeminent for their endowments of body and mind.—Had such a thing been ever heard of, that any Prince, not being demented, should do as he, King Louis, had done—sport away ten thousand fighting men, and place them at the disposal of his direst enemy; and when the Normans chimed into the concerto they mocked Louis with the same taunting melodies, summing up the results by the employment of colloquial expressions, belonging to that emphatic class of terms, not rendered substantially less truthy by exaggeration,—Louis had not retained one-seventh part of the Terra Normannorum; he had not left for himself threepenny-worth a year.

Bernard  
 and the  
 Normans  
 taunt Louis  
 with his  
 impru-  
 dence.

The Norman nobles having thus engaged in

the discussion, the arguments expanded, for they presented themselves as complainants, who, by the sacrifice of their interests, had been deeply aggrieved. If Louis thought fit to despoil himself of the dominion, that was his own concern ; but Normandy belonged to the Normans, and it behoved them that they should take due care of themselves.

It was the fundamental principle, that the Norman State was one and indivisible. Whoever might be Normandy's Ruler, the integrity of Normandy must be preserved. A partition of the Terra Normannorum would ruin the whole. The strength of the Haute Normandie was found in the Basse Normandie, which Louis had so wastefully abandoned. Rouen was provisioned from and through three of the ceded districts—one inland, two maritime—the Hiesmois, the Cotentin, and the Bessin; and, if the supplies which they afforded were cut off, the deprivation would be a death-blow to Rouen's prosperity. The remonstrance was wound up by an unexpected menace. Should Louis persevere in his intention of making the cession, the Normans would act for themselves. They would put out to sea, reach Denmark, rally the Danskermen,—return,—establish a Frankish Danelagh;—and, fairly rid of Louis and of Hugh, be their own masters in their own land.

In the main, all these political and statistical views and statements were accurate ; yet no

942—954  
 944—945

The Norman nobles oppose the partition of the Duchy.



942—954

944—945

deception more insidious than truth told fraudulently. Bernard and his Chorus were not enlightening Louis with the intent of enabling him to guard against the consequences resulting from his imprudence, but in order that, perplexed in judgment, his conduct might bring on a rupture between him and his formidable ally.

Hugh had declared to Bernard, that if Louis broke faith with him he would sever himself from the deceiver; and it could not be doubted but that he would be as good as his word.

Louis,  
upon the  
instigation  
of the Nor-  
mans, re-  
vokes the  
grant he  
had made  
to Hugh.

They succeeded, for the worried Sovereign, unable to extricate himself, solicited the counsel of his betrayers. Pursuant to the scheme concocted at Senlis, an immediate recall of the concession so unadvisably made, was suggested by Bernard the Dane, as the only practicable remedy. Louis was thus placed between the horns of a dilemma. If he followed this advice, he might greatly fear that the disappointed Hugh would openly become a desperate enemy. Even to rescind a parchment grant would, under any circumstances, have been a very hazardous proceeding; but Hugh was now actively employed in reducing the grant into possession, and it was a desperate venture to snatch the morsel from the jaws of the devourer. If Louis did not make the venture, he could not conceal to himself that Hugh, as much an enemy as ever, would, sooner or later meet him with vastly augmented re-

sources. The King's choice was, however, supported by the courage of despair, and he elected the plan of revocation. If he refused, the Normans would assuredly turn against him, and therefore he made the plunge. Two Knights, in due form of law, bore the message to the Vassal, preparing themselves to be enabled to "bear record," should he prove contumacious; and Hugh-le-Grand was strictly enjoined, not only to raise the siege of Bayeux within the term of three days, but also to evacuate the whole Oultre-Seine territory.

Silenced by surprise, Hugh broke that silence, exclaiming, "It is the crafty *two* who have worked upon the King."—Fierce anger ensued. Loudly inveighing against the King's treachery, he unquestionably bethought himself of revenge. But the name of the King possessed a magical power. Hugh-le-Grand, at the head of his troops, Duke of France and of Burgundy, and of all the Gauls, dared not contravene the royal command. The retreat was sounded, and he forthwith marched back to Paris, his good city.

Negotiations however recommenced speedily. Louis, almost startled at his own audacity, excused himself to Hugh, upon the ground that he could not resist the inflexible will of the Normans.—All plans of dismemberment must be renounced—the Normans would submit only to one Sovereign.

Bernard, the Count of Senlis, next presented

942—954 himself to Hugh at Paris—the old man making  
 the journey with his habitual fiery speed.—He  
 944—945 earnestly urged the Duke to support the young  
 Richard's cause; Hugh-le-Grand however, hesi-  
 tated, probably wishing to consider how he  
 might render the support of Richard profitable  
 to himself; and, for the present, the general  
 tranquillity remained undisturbed.

Normandy  
 apparently  
 thoroughly  
 subjugated  
 by Louis.

§ 26. Louis, established in the Norman capi-  
 tal, as much his home as Compiègne or Laon, had  
 now attained the culminating point of his power;  
 he luxuriated in the successes he had gained.—  
 Hitherto, it was merely the prestige of royalty  
 which had enabled the crowned son of Charles-  
 le-Simple to resist the uncrowned son of King  
 Robert; but the territorial acquisitions which  
 rewarded his exertions, were turning the balance  
 of power. Could Hugh-le-Grand's Paris, pent up  
 on the narrow island in the shallows of the Seine,  
 really compete with the commanding Rouen, strong  
 in her ramparts, and watered by the tidal stream?

The scanty remnant of territory which Louis  
 had hitherto ruled, scarcely extending beyond the  
 horizon seen from the tower of Laon, now ex-  
 panded to the furthest maritime borders of the  
 northern Gauls?—Louis might boast that he had  
 healed the wound which the Kingdom had re-  
 ceived. He had crushed the Pirates. Had he,  
 instead of being a Conqueror, governed the  
 Normans and ruled over Normandy, by the un-

qualified right of ancestral inheritance, the People and the Country could not have been more thoroughly his own. 943—954  
944—945

Their dutiful obedience bordered upon servility. "Not a Prince, or a Baron," as the Trouveur tells, "who did not bow before him,—all subjected to Charlemagne's Heir." None could contradict the King of France,—none oppose him.—Nay, they dared not gainsay even the meanest Frenchman who had followed the King.—The omen of his keeping his seat on the curvetting steed seemed to have been completely fulfilled.

§ 27. But this could not last. His luck had turned.—When the Master is about to lay on the last feather—then ought the Horse to kick, but not till then. If the Horse misses the moment, you break his back, and he is done for; but if his nostril smells your approach, then, dear Good Master, look to his ears, and lighten the burthen, or you are flung.—The "mass-book," "rownd in the lug" of Jeannie Geddes the loose limmer, followed by the stool hurled at the Chaplain's head, capsized the Scottish Prelacy.—The sight of the Seven English Bishops boating to the Tower drove out the Stuart Dynasty. Collapse  
of Louis  
d'Outremer's  
prosperity.

Increasing gloom succeeded to the factitious cordiality which prevailed when Louis entered upon the government. Possibly, no prominent

<sup>942-964</sup>  
<sup>944-945</sup>
act of oppression could be quoted, but Louis never pretended to sympathise with his new subjects. He never could forget the shame they made him sustain. Drenched with ignominy by the Rebels, he was possessed with the Spirit of hatred against the People over whom he had won the sovereign power.

Absolute  
 power of  
 Louis in  
 Normandy.

As Duke of Normandy, that power was uncontrolled. The law of Normandy was breast-law. To this, the primary element of autocracy, he added the rights of conquest, and Louis dealt according to his discretion in the administration of the country, altering and changing as pleased him best. The easy task of exercising uncontrolled self-will required no adviser: nevertheless, it was an urgent necessity that he should obtain the aid of some trustworthy Minister for the management of the public revenues and the Ducal domains.—Count Herlouin must have known Rouen thoroughly; but it should seem that he was employed in military service. Bernard the Dane was too powerful to be trusted in the royal Cabinet. Gerberga could in every way assist her husband, but he had left her in command at Laôn: besides which, at this time, it would have been attended with great personal inconvenience, and perhaps danger to the nation, had she attempted so long a journey. Louis therefore made a choice, which, at first view, appears dictated by prudence, and

justified by expediency. He selected that experienced Statesman, with whose name we have become very familiar, though as yet we have not heard anything concerning his idiosyncrasies: and Raoul Torta, albeit the antient colleague of Oslac and of Bernard the Dane, was now most willing to accept office under the Carlovingian Monarch, who appointed this new favourite, Treasurer and Seneschal of Rouen.

842—854  
844—845  
Raoul  
Torta, the  
king's  
prime mi-  
nister.

Hitherto, however frequently the name of Raoul has appeared in our history, no facts or circumstances are recorded concerning him whereby we are enabled to estimate his character: but, when enjoying the confidence of Louis, he is exhibited to us as a stern, able, and merciless financier, whose local influence supported him in the exercise of his delegated power. The laws and customs of Normandy are enveloped in dim obscurity, until the light is reflected upon them from England. Antecedently to the accession of William the Bastard, we do not possess any information, beyond the smallest crumbs and mites, whether concerning the territorial economy of the Duchy which sent us the Conqueror, or the privileges, rights, duties, or burdens of the various classes of society. We must therefore guide ourselves mainly by the indications collected from subsequent events. These lead us to suppose, that, at the period when Louis occupied Normandy,

Absence of  
informa-  
tion con-  
cerning the  
early laws  
and cus-  
toms of  
Normandy.

942—954 the fisherman could cast his net, and the rustic  
 944—945 sportsman spread his snare, more freely than  
 in the next generation, when great inroads  
 were made, or at least attempted, upon the rights  
 of the villinage. Probably also, the common  
 enjoyment of the extensive unappropriated lands  
 was not jealously restricted. The administration  
 of justice was rigid, and the Sovereign's pre-  
 rogative uncontrolled; though it does not appear  
 that the Peasantry, if guiltless of actual trespass,  
 were often brought into contact with the Ducal  
 officers. Our knowledge relating to the material  
 resources of the country is equally scanty, yet  
 the general tenor of history implies a flourishing  
 condition amongst the agricultural population,—  
 the thankful praises bestowed upon the national  
 prosperity, and the complaints of the transient  
 evils by which that prosperity was injuriously  
 affected, conjointly leading us to this conclusion.

Heavy  
 taxes im-  
 posed by  
 Raoul  
 Torta.

But Raoul Torta's administration was marked  
 by vexatious novelties. A heavy direct tax  
 imposed upon the land, crippled the Lord and  
 the Vassal;—and the new Minister also exacted  
 various corvées unknown before. Towards Louis,  
 Raoul did his duty faithfully. The Royal coffers  
 were replenished, and the military expenditure  
 which Louis was now able to encounter, affords  
 us in some degree the means of estimating  
 Raoul's talents for raising the supplies. His  
 services were most valuable to the Sovereign at

the same time that he became the object of universal detestation. Though the father of a Bishop, Raoul was singularly disinclined towards the clergy, conducting himself as though churches, and, consequently, churchmen, were superfluities. The people cried out shame, Raoul was worse than any Saracen, but Raoul troubled himself not by any popular cry. The fortifications of Rouen were dilapidated; Raoul quarried for their restoration at small cost. Most of the Monasteries and consecrated edifices on the borders of the Seine had been injured or ruined during the Danish incursions. Sound or damaged, Raoul swept them away, employing the materials in the repairs. The blow fell heavily upon Jumièges. Guillaume Longue-épée's meagre kindness to Jumièges had excited more liberal contributors:—the claustral buildings had been extended and the Church completed. These structures were forthwith demolished, and Raoul's workmen who had reached the topmost summits were wielding pickaxe and crowbar when the "wise clerk Clement" opened his purse and redeemed the two noble Towers by paying their value—and, thanks to Clement's liberality, we now behold them, together with some fragments of the Basilica as rebuilt by Lanfranc, standing firm, though pitifully degraded as Hand-book show-rains, adorning a trim flower-garden.—Would

942—964

944—945

Ecclesiastical buildings  
demolished  
by Raoul  
Torta.

Jumièges—  
how partially  
redeemed.



942—954 { that the desecration had been rendered less  
 944—946 { nauseous by employing the relics of the choir as  
 a pig-stye,—for *that* would be reality, thought  
 we,—when reading the poesies and ejaculations  
 scrawled upon the fool's album, the walls.

Discontent  
 occasioned  
 amongst  
 the Nor-  
 mans by  
 the insol-  
 ence of the  
 French sol-  
 diery.

§ 28. Nations will draw and drag heavy loads with marvellous patience, provided they be not fretted by the harness. The fiscal exactions of the intrusive government were very grievous, yet insignificant when compared to the constant irritation arising from the shameless impudence of the French roisterers who swarmed in the City. The vilest French varlet domineered over the Norman. A foreign usurpation, galling even under the most mitigated form, was exacerbated to the highest degree by the rapacity and insolence of the victorious party. The worst passions of human nature, excited by the subjugation of an enemy equally detested and despised, had been left ungratified. Normandy in general, and Rouen in particular, abounded with every object which we are tempted to covet from our neighbour. According to the usages of war, most or all these stimulants of sinful appetite might have been appropriated by the French as their legitimate prize-booty. They therefore felt universally provoked by the persuasion, that they sustained gross injustice, so long as they were kept out of anything which the Normans enjoyed—their

lands and their houses, their cattle and kine, <sup>043-064</sup>  
 their daughters and wives. <sub>044-045</sub>

To the French army, the subjugation of Normandy had hitherto proved an unsatisfactory and tantalizing triumph: they had not even reaped the baleful harvest of pillage and plunder. The successes crowning their Sovereign's enterprise, were wholly profitless to those through whose exertions he had obtained them,—and they assailed him loudly with mutinous complaints that he had treated them most scurvily. Nothing except their meat and drink had they got from the King, and they insisted upon their due reward. <sup>The soldiery complain that the King has not given them their due reward.</sup>

We may easily reproduce the arguments by which the growling soldiery convinced themselves that the claims they preferred were grounded upon policy—nay, upon justice. Normandy, according to their construction, had been re-transferred to the French by conquest: the ancestors of the Normans had rendered the Neustrian lands their own by the sword; and the descendants of the conquerors lost their lands because their swords had failed to defend the usurpation. On the recent approach of the invading army the Normans had made an unconditional surrender. In the same manner, therefore, as the Arch-pirate Rollo had divided the lands of the evicted Franks amongst his Pirate gang, so was it the duty of Louis, by a

943-964  
 {  
 944-946

like partition, to reward his faithful lieges out of the robbers' spoil. The Danes had no legal title. —They and their descendants, from generation to generation, were aliens,—and Louis, confirming his dominion by ejecting his natural enemies, would, at the same time, effect a righteous retribution.

Louis unable to refute the claims of his soldiery.

Louis could not condemn such reasonings of his followers, even had he sought to do so. On his lips and in his heart, his and their views were identical. Entertaining the same opinions, he had declared them. Who could forget the enthusiasm of vengeance which had animated him during the debauch, when he rattled the chains he destined for the Normans, and swung the scorpions with which he would scourge them? No good whatever would have been gained if the Normans, seeking a remission of the hard sentence passed upon them, had appealed from Louis drunk to Louis sober. Bacchus had done his duty. The wine had brought out the truth. Louis had opened his mind with cruel sincerity. His indignation was not feigned, nor his desire of avenging his disgrace either. He had manifested that dire intent which he would effectuate as far as practicable, and whenever he could dare.

It would not have been prudent, nor indeed was it needful, that Louis should give any direct sanction to the scheme of appropriation. The

French proceeded upon the general understanding which prevails, when, in the merciless conflict waged between Race and Race, the stronger extrudes the weaker beyond the pale of "civilization."—In its present sense, that fatal word dates only from yesterday, but the doctrine which it now connotes, is the running commentary of history. Had not Charlemagne acted upon this principle gloriously when rooting out Sclavonian or Saxon; or Cromwell exterminating the Milesian? Kelt or Caffre, Colonist or Crusader, it is just the same.

§ 29. It was reckoned in round numbers that a thousand French knights might be competently enfeoffed out of the Norman possessions. The French therefore commenced a survey of the country, riding the boundaries, inspecting the towns and vills, picking and choosing, and otherwise arranging the division of the Norman lands. Assuredly, there was no one Norman whose domains were eyed more earnestly than old Bernard's. The seizure of his estates would be the beginning of the end. Bernard overthrown, all Normandy would be paralyzed. Bernard treated like a traitor, whether *in posse* or *in esse*, what Norman could dare to resist? Employing therefore the vile expression so familiar during the Elizabethan era in the purlieus of corrupted Whitehall, it was quite according to the proper order of things that

942—954  
944—945

Bernard  
the Dane  
the first  
who was  
"begged"  
of the  
King.

942—964 Bernard should be the first whom some greedy  
 French Courtier-knight “begged” of the King.  
 944—946

Promises and concessions of the like nature, or hopes of obtaining them, now became rife; and the unease thereby occasioned was exceedingly enhanced, when general belief superadded the intelligence that the King had not only decreed to enrich the dominant race with the Norman wealth, but that he would abandon the Norman women to the conquerors.

Rumour  
 that the  
 King had  
 granted to  
 the French  
 the Nor-  
 man wo-  
 men as  
 well as the  
 Norman  
 lands.

Extravagant as such an anticipation may appear, it would be difficult to deny but that there may have been some authority for the rumour, some living germ, however minute, from which it spread so widely. Evil reports propagate themselves, like the blight-fungus, in geometrical progression; a single microscopic globule multiplying by division, until it poisons every root, and every stem, and every leaf in the field. The brilliant profligacy which we admire as characterizing the “Age of Chivalry” had not begun to dawn; yet it cannot be considered as a calumny on the French national spirit, nor otherwise than a due tribute to the Norman fair ones, if we suppose that their charms had won them wooers,—aye, and successful wooers,—from amongst the flourishing garrison. We can readily imagine how the King’s gallant knights discreetly exulted or merrily complained that they had been the tempted as well as the

tempters. Nor can we reject an equally probable but more grievous supposition, that cases occurred in which the military licence of sentiment, as well as the rough courting of the French, degenerated into brutal violence.

042—054  
044—046

The wretched annals of the “Holy wars” fully warrant this last supposition. Such acts may not have been directly authorized by Louis; but, if the ungracious Ruler, in whom all judicial power was concentrated, withheld redress, the outrages would have been legalized by impunity.

Lastly, it would have been consonant to the Law of Conquest, had many of the fair Daughters of the Norman nobles been enjoined to espouse the King’s military followers; nay, many a Widow, smiling or tearful, well inherited or amply endowed, could scarcely forfeit the privilege or escape the danger of being embraced in the same category. The vague and general suspicion of the possibility that the victors should thus enforce their right, would have been sufficient to suggest a conspiracy against the wanton oppressors: but these distressing anticipations acquired a peculiar sting from their specific application to the most eminent individual amongst the Norman community. Greyheaded Bernard’s young and beautiful wife was conspicuously attractive; and it was universally believed that she would become the enforced paramour of

Bernard’s  
wife parti-  
cularly  
marked  
out.

942—954 the impudent knight to whom Bernard's do-  
 944—946 mains had been graciously granted.

The veritable existence of such an outrageous concession is scarcely possible ; but that Bernard's Lady should become the subject of much indecorous talk, is a circumstance of which the high probability may be readily admitted ; and if French flesh and blood actually resisted the temptation of desiring to appropriate the celebrated beauty, we may easily understand the bad jokes which circulated concerning her, as thrown away upon the Greybeard.—“ Win her and wear her ” may have been the King's ready reply, when, perchance, the successful petitioner for Bernard's estates facetiously inquired whether she should pass amongst the appurtenances of the lands.

These imminent apprehensions of spoliation and dishonour, excited universal dismay and terror. Bernard's wife,—as we are told,—wrung her hands and tore her hair ; she would flee beyond the seas, or find protection in a Monastery. Under the same influences, we have reason to suppose, from the age which Espriota's wise and valiant son had attained when he first appears in history, that Guillaume Longue-épée's Relict, more collected and provident, adopted the course of seeking her second protector—steady Sperling, the rich miller.

A general insurrection would have immedi-

ately ensued had not the fermentation been checked by old Bernard.—“*Le bon temps viendra.*”—The good time for casting off the yoke was no longer coming. The good time had come. As is usually the case, not exactly such a good time as the expectants could have wished, yet sufficiently opportune for accomplishing the work of liberation, provided the resources possessed by the Normans could be brought to bear effectually upon the enemy. Bernard’s influence tranquillized the Nobles, and they curbed the impatience of the villainage, preventing any premature explosion.

§ 30. The key of Bernard’s operations, military and political, was Harold Blaataand’s camp, wherever that Camp might be; and a plot was now organized by the confederate accomplices for the purpose of entangling the King in a direct conflict with the Danes. In these machinations, Bernard the Dane, and the Normans generally,—Bernard de Senlis, and the Verman-  
dois interest,—Thibaut le Tricheur and Liutgarda,—and Hugh-le-Grand, all concurred. Hugh-le-Grand entered heartily into the Norman cause, convinced that it would be best for him to renounce all pretensions to Normandy beyond the Seine, and to win the cordial alliance of the Normans, by supporting the House of Rollo. The Normans might have contented themselves with the complete extrusion of the

942—954

944—945

The Normans prepare to rise against the French.

Bernard the Dane organizes his plans for bringing Louis in conflict with the Danes.



942—954  
 944—946
 
 French, accompanied by a solemn renunciation of all the onerous rights in and over Normandy which Louis had usurped or claimed ; but Hugh-le-Grand was peculiarly anxious to make a capture of the King's person. He was labouring for the attainment of a great object which he could not otherwise expect to accomplish, and the language he employed when the design was brought to a satisfactory conclusion, was such, as to shew that he felt himself under obligations to the Normans for the help they gave. And in truth he deserved it.

Sullen tranquillity prevailed. Louis however, well convinced that,—like Thurmod the type of the nation,—the crouching Norman would make a spring upon him, should he ever be found off his guard, continued stationed at Rouen watching the state of affairs so jealously, that when Gerberga for the tenth or twelfth time was again *en gésine* at Laôn, he, paying a hasty visit to the bedside, returned to Rouen as soon as the poor feeble baby “Carloman” had been christened. Notwithstanding the briefness of the span of life allotted to the infant Prince, he was destined to be commemorated in an important passage of his father's history.

Inasmuch as the success of the whole scheme depended upon the *coup de main* to be accomplished by Harold Blaaland, it was needful, that

whilst preparing for the invasion of Normandy, <sup>942-954</sup>  
 Louis should be furnished with occupation else- <sup>944-945</sup>  
 where, so that he might be compelled to divide his  
 forces, and withdraw from the Norman Capital.—  
 Hugh-le-Grand threw off all reserve. Joined by  
 Bernard de Senlis, the assailants suddenly burst  
 into the ever-harassed Diocese of Rheims. Mon-  
 tigny, that recent reacquisition so much prized  
 by Louis, was insufficiently guarded; Compiègne, <sup>Compiègne</sup>  
 tempting and pleasant, wholly undefended;— <sup>twice plun-</sup>  
 and these were the points against which the <sup>dered.</sup>  
 Confederates first directed their annoying hos-  
 tilities.—The better day, the better deed.—On <sup>6 April,</sup>  
 Easter Sunday, Montigny was occupied and <sup>945.</sup>  
 burnt. They then dashed at Compiègne, break- <sup>Hugh-le-</sup>  
 ing open the Treasure-chamber and clearing <sup>Grand and</sup>  
 out the regalia. In a literal sense therefore, <sup>Bernard de</sup>  
 Louis was now sceptreless and crownless.— <sup>Senlis burn</sup>  
 Severe was the loss, yet even more mortifying <sup>Montigny.</sup>  
 another insult which he experienced immediately  
 afterwards. When Bernard enjoyed himself at  
 Compiègne, he fancied the King's hounds, and  
 the King's horses, and the King's sporting gear.  
 So Compiègne had to mourn another raid, for  
 Bernard emptied the King's mews, the King's  
 kennels, and the King's stables.

This was insufferable.—Louis could not pos- <sup>Louis quits</sup>  
 sibly sit quiet at Rouen; and having, as it <sup>Rouen, and</sup>  
 appears, dismantled certain portions of the forti- <sup>marches</sup>  
 fications which would assist the Normans in <sup>against</sup>  
 the confederates.

942—954  
944—945

making fight if they ventured to become rebellious during his absence, he collected his forces and entered the Vermandois, which he ravaged cruelly. Archbishop Hugh, whom,—through our long acquaintance with him since his boyhood,—we shall hardly be able to help calling the “Parvulus” to the end of his days, was in possession of Rheims, Artaldus being expelled from See and City. Louis again took up the old quarrel, and having summoned Count Arnoul and Herlouin, he laid siege to Rheims, pillaging Champagne, which, though Saint Remy’s Patrimony, was not indulged with any immunity.

Harold  
Blaaland  
begins the  
war of de-  
liverance.  
Advan-  
tages re-  
sulting to  
him from  
his posi-  
tion in the  
Cotentin.

§ 31. Whilst Louis, thus enticed away, was compelled to waste his strength in an unprofitable expedition, Harold Blaaland began the war of deliverance.—Had Guillaume Longue-épée granted the bold and massy peninsula of Cornouaille to Blaaland with the express intent that the Danish settlement should command all Normandy, he could not have selected a position better calculated to answer that object. The tradition assigning the foundation of “Cæsar’s Burgus” to the Roman Hero may be doubtful, but though the opinion that he there prepared for the conquest of Britain cannot be accepted as an historical fact, it evidences the popular appreciation of the importance possessed by a position, giving the mastery over all the adjoining coasts, whether by land or sea.

Harold  
Blaaland’s  
head-  
quarters at  
Cher-  
bourg.

At Cherbourg, therefore, Harold fixed his head-quarters, whilst a squadron of the Danish fleet assembled at Barfleur, which, during the mediæval period, was one of the most frequented ports of Normandy. The vessels then sailed round to the estuary of the Dive, the stream which divides the Lieuvin from the Bessin, the latter being the district immediately adjoining the Baillage of Caen.

942—954

944—946

The estuary of the Dive entered by a Danish squadron.

The whole of this coast has sustained great alterations. To the west of the Dive, pirogues and semi-fossilized human bones have been excavated at a depth of more than twenty feet; and, above them, the ploughshare discloses the memorials of comparatively recent generations, coins of the Antonines, and other relics, dating from the Empire. It has been calculated that the alluvial soil deposited by the agency of the adjoining rivers, raises the surface of the coarse meadows under which these objects have been discovered, at the rate of about half a foot in each hundred years. The river Dive, now sluggish and narrow, and flowing to the east of the salt-marshes of Corbon,—the latter almost desiccated at present,—then fell into the open sea at Bavent, near Troarn, above Warville. It was up to Bavent that the Danish vessels sailed. The shore has advanced more than ten English miles beyond the points which marked the mouth of the river, so late as the

Great alterations on the coast.

942—954

944—945

Position of  
the Danish  
army near  
the salt-  
marshes of  
Corbon.

General  
rising of  
the inha-  
bitants of  
the Basse  
Norman  
against the  
French.  
They sup-  
port and  
join the  
army of  
Harold.

twelfth century. These local details, not unimportant to the geologist, acquire considerable historical value as evidencing the accuracy of the narrative whence they are collected or deduced.

At Corbon, on the left or western bank of the Dive, in a situation protected by the salt-ings, but nigh to a convenient ford, the Danish Standard was raised. Bayeux had already received Harold as a Commander, perhaps as a Sovereign. His advent had been hailed as a general jubilee.—No need to kindle the beacons or send round the summons. From every district and region beyond the Seine the Normans crowded in.—High and low, gentle and simple, peasant and burgess, rich and poor, clerk and clown.—Most profusely were provisions supplied for the welcome deliverers: bread and flesh meat, fish, salt and fresh, brought and carried by skiff and boat, pack-horse and wain.

How accurate were the statements made by Bernard when worrying the perplexed Louis by descanting upon the advantages he had so imprudently cast away! From the whole of these territories did the inhabitancy rise and rally, from Mortaigne and the Passeis, from the Avranchin, and the wide forest-land of Cinglais, the cradle of so many noble families: but, excelling all the rest, the men of the Cotentin and the Bessin, arrayed in the brightest armour, girt with the sharpest steel. In after times the

Normans boasted that amongst the ancestors of <sup>942-954</sup> their Baronage, you would not have found three, <sup>944-946</sup> who failed to aid the Danish Harold. Indeed the conflict was national. They were combating for their despoiled Monarch, their lands, their liberties, their honour. Thronging round Harold, they besought him to rescue them from degrading servitude. Their enthusiasm became contagious. Danes and Normans exulted in the expectation, not merely of regaining Normandy, but subjugating the adverse Realm.

§ 32. Thoroughly master of himself, deep in dissimulation, Bernard the Dane, during the whole of these transactions had not manifested any discontent or anger. A good subject to Louis had he been, and a good subject would he be, to the very last. He acted as though he were the only man in Normandy ignorant of the ignominy preparing for him. Feigning great alarm at Harold's approach whilst chuckling with joy, Bernard despatched messengers to Louis, earnestly exhorting him forthwith to furnish succour, or else Normandy would be lost.

Common fame had prevented the message. All France was shaken. The greatest panic was excited by the invasion of the Pagan army, reported to exceed twenty thousand men; but the sudden burst of patriotism which contributed so potently to the success of the Battle of the Rescue, far from subsiding, had become an

942—954

944—946

Energy  
displayed  
by Louis  
and the  
French.

active sentiment. The French accepted the Danish challenge, and were enthusiastically seeking to engage in the war. Louis, the conqueror of Sithric and Thormod, again glowed with desire to wield his sword against the barbarian enemy. He exulted in the assured expectation of winning another triumph. He marvelled at their ignorant insolence. Better would it have been for Harold to have attempted to sue for terms when skulking behind the swamps of Hungary, than thus to beard the son of Charlemagne in his own land. No pardon for the Pirate should he be caught: rope and gallows would be ready for him, his fitting reward.

Powerful  
army as-  
sembled by  
Louis.

The French fully participated in their Sovereign's ardour. Never had the summons for the *arrière-ban* been more cheerfully obeyed. In the lost Latin chronicle which the Trouveur carefully quotes, ten thousand knights were recorded as having been assembled. Count Herlouin and his brother Count Lambert were the chief commanding officers under the King. And if we assume the number of nobles whom the catastrophe left stiff and cold upon the field, as affording reasonable data for calculating the amount who, bright and hearty, joined the army, it should seem that the whole earldom of France obeyed their Sovereign's call.

§ 33. Louis went forth to the battle as to a festival. The campaign opened when the

weather was of the finest. He marched to Rouen, but he made no stay, and, without entering the City, he advanced rapidly against the enemy, taking his position opposite the Corbon marshes.

942—954  
944—945  
Louis en-  
camps near  
Rouen.

So formidable was the front presented by the French, that, if the Normans began to doubt whether they might not perish through their own device, their transient timidity would have been excusable. Fair play and an open field, granted to the French, might be Harold's ruin, and there are circumstances slightly indicative of a desire, on his part, for a pause. Neither was Louis quite so bold as he seemed. And, whether seeking to make a shew of magnanimity, or perhaps weighing the consequences which might attend a conflict with the combined forces assembled under Harold, he would not have been quite unwilling to retard actual hostilities. The simple diplomacy of the Middle Ages does not offer the refinements, which, in modern times, characterize that great science of equivocation and tergiversation. But their negotiations were conducted on the same principles; and we may harmonize the somewhat inconsistent and not always probable narratives, by adopting the conviction that either party was trying to overreach the other. So far however as the affairs of Normandy were concerned, it is sufficient for us to ascertain that the plot concocted

Louis  
marches  
against  
Harold.



942—954 between Harold and Hugh-le-Grand and the  
 944—945 Normans had been most considerably planned  
 and fully answered its end, the desired result  
 being obtained, though not by the exact pro-  
 cess which the Parties had proposed.

The French  
 encamp-  
 ment on  
 the Dive.

We will not therefore examine whether the proposition for a conference originated with Louis or with Harold. When accepted, each Sovereign maintained his station, and it was therefore agreed that the discussions should, according to the ancient and almost invariable custom, be conducted upon the borders of the stream. The French encampment might be seen spreading and stretching along the eastern bank of the Dive. In their rear, was that fine and fertile mixture of hill and plain extending to the pleasant vicinity wherein the abbey of Valricher was subsequently founded by the devotion of Archbishop Harcourt, old Bernard's descendant. Magnificent was the spectacle exhibited, the tents and pavilions, their stuff fresh from the loom, unfrayed by use, undimmed by rain, their bright colours unfaded by the rays of the Sun in whose light they were for the first time shining. Amidst these thousand tents, snow-white and azure and scarlet, the golden pavilion of Louis, emulating Oriental splendour, arose conspicuous, surmounted by the radiant eagle, the heir-loom of Charlemagne's Empire. An hundred heavy bezaunts counted out on the

table would not have equalled the worth of that precious ensign. Never had there been seen a more unsparing display of noble armour, spirited horses, and a more brilliant and imposing army.

942—954  
944—946

The gorgeousness of the Court was conjoined to martial dignity. The Camp was furnished with all the appliances of luxury. Rich tapestry; silken hangings and chests filled with robes of estate; salvers and beakers, and drinking-horns mounted in gold and silver. The banquets were continued, as usual, until late in the night; and the French were exalted to the highest state of ominous enthusiasm by this last and fatal flash of the expiring Carlovingian glories.

Very different was the sober aspect of their opponents assembled on the opposite bank, around or nigh the salt-marshes of Corbon. No movements had taken place on the part of Harold. There were the mixed hosts of Pagan Danes and Norman Danes, and all the levies of the "Oultre-Seine." Their tranquillity might inspire greater dread than any cry of war.

The French exulted loudly, yet it may be doubted if their hopes were really so sanguine as the anticipations entertained by the gravely taciturn Danes. Our trusty Trouveur terms the conference a "Parliament;" and the Danes fully expected that this same Parliament, commencing with a debate, would terminate in a battle. Assuredly, the flowing river severed the

12 July,  
945.  
Conference  
between  
the Danes  
and the  
French on  
the banks  
of the Dive.

942-954 } antagonistic Hosts, and it had been agreed that  
 944-945 } each Monarch should abide on his own border ;  
 but we may be certain that the Danes who  
 courted the conflict and knew the country well,  
 had fully ascertained the points and positions  
 where they might most easily cross over.

The transactions between the Powers were opened by the intervention of their respective representatives. Messages were transmitted and answers returned, but conveyed in language so intemperate, that the proceedings can hardly be termed negotiations. The Monarchs mutually exchanged volleys of vituperation. Harold upbraided Louis with all his treacheries ; neither faith nor covenant had Louis kept, never had any King dared to commit so foul a wrong or perpetrate such an outrage as Louis, against his sworn and faithful liegeman, the murdered Guillaume Longue-épée. The proud French Monarch retorted by angry threats : Harold, even if he escaped from Normandy, would have reason to repent him of his audacity. However, after these silly scoldings it was agreed that the conference should be adjourned unto the following day, the Kings again to meet on the eastern side of the Dive ; Harold apparently repairing to Louis as his superior.

Want of  
 military  
 precaution  
 on the side  
 of the  
 French.

So confident, or rather foolhardy, were the French, that Louis, a General, renowned, and justly, for vigilance and strategic skill, though

in the very presence of a wily and audacious enemy, had not thought of adopting any of the ordinary precautions which ought to be almost intuitive in a soldier: he had completely neglected the examination of the country. The French heeded not the vicinity of the rueful ford. No outposts were stationed, no scouts sent out, no sentinels set to make the rounds; but, as soon as the eve came on, the tables were spread, and the French prepared by their usual jollities for whatever the morrow—the feast of Saint Eugenius—might bring forth, whether for good, whether for evil. Such was not the bearing of their keen enemies. With them, “boot and saddle” had sounded ere the faint twilight had begun to peer in the verge of the clear and placid horizon. At the hour of tierce, whilst Louis and his merry men were still deadened by the potency of their wine, Harold and his forces had long since crossed the Dive.—Old Bernard also, awaiting the deliverers of the Land, had he not been watching to greet the bright dawning of the glorious summer-day?

Firmly and briskly were the Danes advancing, battalion following battalion. No check offered, no obstacle opposed, no challenge given, no alarm sounded. The dank margins, the rushy splashes and the dewy meadows, were silent before them. And Bernard’s heart beat high with joy, when in the distance he first saw the armour of

942—964  
944—945

Vigilance of  
the Danes.

13 July,  
945.  
The Danes  
cross the  
Dive.

942—954

944—945

Slothful  
negligence  
of the  
French.

the Cotentin Vanguard, glistening and flashing with the marching men's tread, as they met the horizontal rays of the rising sun. The heedless French, overpowered by debauch—for otherwise such a sottish sluggishness is inexplicable—were totally unprepared. Not a soul was stirring. Louis was droning in his bed, and Bernard let him enjoy his slumber: but when the Danes were fast approaching, he roused the King with malicious pleasure.—Sleep on, Sir King, if you choose to sleep, but seven hundred bright helmets are drawing nigh to attend you at your levée.—A hasty gathering of the army ensued,—their royal Commander, sorely dispirited. How ill had he begun the day! Sure he was that a battle would ensue, and he had a presentiment of impending calamity.

But the die was cast.—And Louis with fated imprudence advanced to the tryst, Harold on the spot near the ford, thoroughly prepared, eagerly expecting him. Great was the following on either part; Louis, accompanied by Herlouin, Harold's choicest troops surrounding him. The men of the Cotentin stood closest to the Danner-konge as his body-guard, armed to the very teeth, their shields braced, their lances planted, hardly able to restrain their impatience for the quarrel, or for seizing any opportunity of making a quarrel with the enemy.

In nowise had the Monarchs abated their

ire, not a word spoken of peaceful import, no semblance even of friendship: they faced each other as the fiercest foes. Harold re-iterated his accusations against Louis the assassin; whilst Louis, on his part, expressed his determination that he never would quit Normandy until Richard should have surrendered all claim to the Duchy. Herlouin interfered, and most unseasonably. Amongst the men of the Cotentin there was a knight, who having served under Guillaume Longue-épée, was too well acquainted with the favourite. Embued with the popular enmity against the Count of Montreuil, he angrily reproached the ungrateful Herlouin as the cause of the calamity. Heavy as had been his offence against the dead, still greater was his trespass against the living; was not he now co-operating against Guillaume's son?

942—954  
944—946

Herlouin's  
imprudence  
brings on  
the catas-  
trophe.

The words were heard. The slogan was raised. A furious tumult gave the response. Danes and Danish Normans spurred up, surrounding the wretch so universally odious to every loyal heart.—The Dane who enjoyed the good fortune of being driven closest, grasped his good Poitevin sword, and stabbed the victim between the ribs. Herlouin's bowels gushed out, and, death-stricken, down he dropped to the ground. Count Lambert, infuriated, rushed upon the Danes with his men, slashing away. A scuffling butchery ensued. Lambert avenged

942—964  
 944—945

Total de-  
 feat of the  
 French  
 army.

his brother, but was overpowered by numbers. Harold attacked the French with his Dansker-men. Then joined him the Norman forces. Foremost, the warriors of the Cotentin, whose charge decided the battle. The French were dispersed in all directions, seeking safety by flight but finding none. Whether in close conflict or skirmish, equally were they worsted. Every Danish spear pierced. Every Danish arrow hit. Every Danish battle-axe struck home. No Frenchman could keep his saddle, the pride of Carlovingian France perished before the Dane.

Louis  
 taken pri-  
 soner by  
 Harold  
 Blastand.

His army thoroughly routed, Louis at full gallop ran away. Harold had eyed him and spied him, and overtaking the fugitive, hugged him, grappled him, wrenched the sword out of his hands, tore the scabbard from his side, pulled off his helmet, and cut the reins of his horse; conquering him and mastering him by mere animal strength, not by prowess or martial skill. Harold then gave the King in charge to a detachment, and returned to the strife; roaring to Louis as he left him, that double the revenues of Normandy should hardly purchase his liberty. The rout became a massacre. Sixteen Counts were killed, and now the victors reaped the bloody harvest. It was for the Danes that the French had brought into camp and strife the steeds and the standards, the bravery and the

finery; never again did the Eagle crown the Sovereign's pavilion, or was seen as his har-binger on the march, displayed aloft before him.

The field was scoured by the Danes. The spoil secured. The dead brought out. The foe-men stripped. Their own, buried—but where was the King? Thoroughly had Harold triumphed. He had gained the proudest of victories. The Danskermen had beat the French, but Harold had beat Louis man to man—Harold, Harold Blaaland, by tug and grip had made himself the master. His business now must be to realize the prize, and demand the Dane-gelt for the King's ransom: but when he sought for Louis, no Louis was to be found. Louis was gone. Where were his guards? they had disappeared. What had become of the trusty men who had the captive in charge? Alas! they came forth with sorrow and with shame, for it was a sorry tale they told. When the booty-gathering was going on, they feared lest they should lose their share, and so they dropped off three at a time, and two at a time, till at last only one remained, and that one left to himself, and left alone, he abandoned his charge like the rest.

So vexed, so thwarted, so angry, so mortified was Harold by thus losing, as it seemed, the whole result of the victory—flower and fruit, trophy and gain, that he was almost crazed.

942—954  
944—946

Escape of  
Louis by  
the negli-  
gence of his  
guards.



942—954  
944—945

Bernard was equally vexed or more, but he did not lose his wits, he preserved his presence of mind.

Upon the turf Bernard could not trace the horse's hoofs; but human intellectual astuteness helped him better than the sleuthhound's instinctive sagacity. Careful enquiry soon furnished to Bernard indications, not cognizable by sight or scent, of the direction which the fugitive had pursued. Amongst the Danish army was a Rouen Knight, a man possessing large property near the Seine, a man of mark, owning a splendid mansion, a married man, the father of a family, familiar to Louis, his liegeman, nay, so old, before Louis entered Normandy. Now, this Knight did not appear either dead or living, his corpse had not been discovered, neither was he rejoicing amongst the victors. Since the battle, he had not returned to his Manoir, and his wife and children were apparently deserted. Bernard felt that he had caught the loose end of the clue. Summoning all his most zealous and active friends and retainers, his troops, heavy and light, occupied both banks of the Seine, he and they incessantly traversing and examining the country all about and around, wood and plain. These searchers, however, were not successful. No trace of the fugitives could be discovered. Bernard's soldiery therefore ravaged the Knight's property, gutted and plundered his house, and

Bernard's  
exertions  
for the  
recapture  
of Louis.

then burnt it, and seizing his Lady and the children, they were cast into Bernard's prison at Rouen. 942—954  
944—945

Bernard's calculations of probabilities were scientifically correct. The Rouen Knight was really and truly the agent through whom the King had evaded. It should seem that when Louis was left alone he immediately attempted to escape, and jogging on heavily, moved away from the field of battle. But the Rouen Knight had recognized him, and, according to the narrative which, on the whole, we accept as the King's version of his unhappy adventure, galloped up to him, sword in hand, seized the bridle, and made him prisoner.—We may further collect, that, in the first instance, the Knight, rejoicing in his capture, determined to make the most ample profit which could be extracted from such a prisoner. Louis appealed equally to the loyalty and the avarice of his liegeman, imploring his pity and promising profusely. Made by  
which  
Louis had  
escaped.

These entreaties and offers prevailed, and the Knight, well acquainted with the country, determined to aid the King in his escape, and escort and guide him to a place of safety. But the way was long, the enemy powerful, the soldiery had overspread the country, and therefore the Knight conducted the King to one of the well-wooded islands which adorn the Seine, an island near his mansion, secluded and yet

942—954  
 944—946

constantly in sight, thicket and tree in full summer leaf furnishing a lair in which the King could lie, help close at hand, though thoroughly concealed from his pursuers.

The Knight  
 surrenders  
 Louis to  
 Bernard,  
 by whom  
 he is cast  
 into prison  
 at Rouen.

But the Knight could not hold out any longer under the distress he sustained by the destruction of his property, and the sufferings inflicted upon his wife and children. The Knight surrendered, repaired to Bernard, and cast himself at Bernard's feet, confessing his connivance and imploring mercy. So incensed was Bernard, that the suppliant's life was endangered. The Knight's transgression was, however, effaced by the revulsion of joy with which Bernard was filled when he had recovered the King. The King, squalid, weary, and broken down by anxiety, was dragged out of the bush, treated as a felon, chained and fettered, and placed in custody at Rouen to await his destiny.

945—946  
 Captivity  
 of Louis  
 and its  
 results.

§ 34. There were three parties vitally interested in the results of the capture.—Harold Blaaland—Bernard and the Normans—and Hugh-le-Grand.—Considered with respect to the advantages which might be touched in money, Harold had unquestionably the strongest claim, whether according to the courtesy of the chase, or the laws of war, or the general principles of jurisprudence. He by his own strength had first bound the beast in his toils.

Nevertheless no question was ever entirely

without a knot, or at least without the possibility of tying one. Louis was now bodily in Bernard's holding; and, had any analogous case been discussed amongst the noisy Sportsmen at their meet, or argued by the Civilians before the Earl Marshal sitting in the court of Chivalry, or mooted as an Exchequer plea to be decided by the Barons, the leading allegation—to wit—that the game, lost in the first instance through the culpable negligence of Harold's keepers, had been recovered by the means of Bernard's diligence and activity,—might have supplied a strong basis for his demand.

942—954  
945—946  
Conflicting claims of Bernard the Dane, Hugh-le-Grand, and Harold Blaataud, to the custody of Louis.

Lastly, Hugh-le-Grand could adduce very plausible grounds in supporting his pretensions. He had waged the war for the restoration of the young Richard; and, chief in rank as well as possessing the most efficient means of safely guarding the prisoner, it was Hugh-le-Grand to whom the Prize appertained, in order that he might best work for the Common Weal.

Hugh-le-Grand entitled to claim Louis as his captive.

The Norman Rulers assembled themselves in Council at Rouen, summoning Bernard de Senlis to co-operate as Richard's nearest friend. Under the first excitement of success, the idea of the profit to be derived by bargaining for the King's redemption, glanced athwart Harold Blaataud's mind. Du Guesclin would not have disdained the motive: Harold was justified in entertaining it. Moreover, his popularity,

942—964 superadded to his military resources, would have  
 945—946 enabled him to retain, not merely the Cotentin peninsula, but the whole Terra Normannorum.

Harold  
 Blaatand's  
 magnani-  
 mity. He  
 restores the  
 authority  
 of Richard  
 and returns  
 to Den-  
 mark.

Harold, trusty and true, withstood all such temptations; every selfish feeling had passed away, and he simply devoted himself to the cause of Guillaume Longue-épée's son. Making the circuit of the country, Harold took legal possession on the young Richard's behalf. Had Blaatand been Richard's own father, he could not have conducted himself with more affection and energy. In the name of the Duke, he exacted the universal obedience of the Norman people.—Clergy and Laity, Knights, Citizens, and Peasantry, all were required to perform fealty to the absent Sovereign. The fortifications, dismantled or destroyed by the French for the purpose of ensuring the subjugation of the inhabitants, were repaired according to Harold's directions: the breaches built up and the palisades replanted, so as to be fully defensible in case the French should ever again insult the Norman land. He expelled the enemy in every shape; for, when we are informed that Harold re-established the laws of Rollo, we easily translate the phrase into the fact, that all the agents of the intrusive government were removed. But dangers were impending in the North; and therefore the wise and honourable Dane, having satisfied his conscience and thoroughly fulfilled his

duty towards Normandy, returned home: ready to give help again, should Richard ever require.

§ 35. Harold's abandonment of all the personal advantages which he might have gained, left Bernard and the Normans in the undisturbed possession of the royal Prisoner, and they luxuriated in their vengeance.—Louis, who had assented to the spoliation of their property and the defilement of their wives and daughters, —Louis, the perjured cheat, the tyrant who had betrayed them, baffled them, deceived them, was now in their grasp. Now was the full opportunity presented to them of recovering all that they had lost since the dark day of dishonour, when their Nobles smiled and bowed whilst the French King, triumphing in his paramount supremacy, was graciously granting the *Terra Normanorum* to the half-caste Mamzer. These recollections had assuredly acquired additional bitterness from the consciousness that the degradation was self-inflicted. Had they not in the very presence of their young and helpless Sovereign become the homagers of the intrusive Monarch? It was therefore their firm resolve, that, unless and until Louis consented to relinquish every injurious superiority which he might claim over Normandy, never again should he walk abroad beneath the sky.

The views entertained by Hugh-le-Grand were substantially identical with theirs, or

949—954

945—946

Bernard and the Normans determine that Louis shall never be released until he has surrendered all his rights over Normandy.

942—954 rather comprehended therein. Whilst Hugh's  
 945—946 ambition constantly acquired more ardency, he  
 was nevertheless always able to restrain himself,  
 always looking towards the summit, pace by pace,  
 making each footstep sure; never desisting, never  
 hastening, and the long desired goal appeared  
 to be hard by. Few, very few in number were  
 the surviving representatives of the Carlovingian  
 race; and, deepening his designs, Hugh now  
 planned to bring all the throne-capable members  
 of that family into his actual power.

Hugh-le-Grand's plans for bringing the whole royal family into his power.

In the meanwhile, Gerberga, overwhelmed by sorrow though never unnerved, continued safe with her children in the Tower of Laôn. Louis had habitually associated Gerberga to himself in the exercise of government, so that, in fact, she was Regent. But Hugh-le-Grand assumed that the authority of the King, instead of being transferred to the Queen, was annulled by the restraint of the dungeon, which cut him off from all intercourse with the outward world. The King's imprisonment was construed as equivalent to civil death. The Duke of all the Gauls therefore comported himself as the Protector of the Realm during the interregnum. He summoned various conventions of the Nobles, amongst whom the Vermandois Princes,—Eudes, and good Albert, and Herbert the handsome, and their connexions,—were pre-eminent. However, he dealt at the same time with the Normans

as though they had been working with him and for him, so that when he repaired to Rouen, where he found the King in confinement, he thanked them publicly for their exertions on his behalf. Gerberga was therefore compelled to sue for mercy, and she did so, not through the intervention of others, but by repairing to the Duke in person, acting therein with the approbation of the Prelates, always the chief Counsellors of the Realm.

Pursuant to the Queen's earnest solicitation, Hugh offered himself as a mediator between the Normans and the French, and a conference was held at Saint Clair-sur-Epte, when the negotiations were opened for the King's liberation. Bernard de Senlis came forward also as a peacemaker. But the Normans, prompted by the Duke, refused to entertain any proposition, unless all the King's surviving male children were surrendered as hostages for the performance of such conditions as should be imposed. Gerberga recoiled from this demand. What had been her mind towards the young Richard at Laôn?—Interpreting the sentiments of the Enemy by her own, she might well anticipate that the same lethal incarceration which had been devised by herself for the Norman boy, was preparing for the extinction of her own lineage. Therefore, however anxious to obtain her husband's freedom, Gerberga would in nowise part with their

942—954  
945—946

Hugh-le-Grand offers himself as a mediator between the French and the Normans.



942—954

945—946

Gerberga  
having re-  
fused to  
surrender  
Lothaire,  
other  
hostages  
given in  
his stead.

elder child, the Crown Prince Lothaire; but she consented that they should take the recently born, the delicate Carloman.

A hard trial this, but there was no other remedy. Gerberga's sagacity prevailed; the French Prelates and Nobles cordially agreed with her in resisting the Norman demand, fully estimating the danger of exposing the royal race to destruction. The Normans, (or rather Hugh-le-Grand), then professed that they would be content with the infant, provided some other personages of sufficient importance amongst the French should be substituted for Lothaire. Guido, the Bishop of Soissons, offered himself; Hildegarius, Bishop of Beauvais, also; and several knights and nobles were delivered into their hands.—When the hostages were received at Rouen, lo and behold, the Normans treated the agreement as null. It was not kept, indeed there had not been any intention of keeping it. Instead of liberating Louis, they merely shifted him from jail to jail. He was given over to Hugh-le-Grand, who had concocted the device, for the purpose which Gerberga and the French, guided by their well-grounded suspicions of his perfidy, had, in some degree, been enabled to countermine.

Louis  
fraudently  
detained  
by Hugh-  
le-Grand  
and the  
Normans.

Gerberga  
solicits the  
aid of Ed-  
mund the  
Magnifi-  
cent.

§ 36. Heavy were Gerberga's trials. The power of France was utterly prostrated; neither help nor succour had she at home, yet Laôn

remained to her as a stronghold, and the lion-<sup>942—954</sup>  
 hearted lady, her firm mind unshaken by ca-<sup>945—946</sup>  
 lamity or misfortune, sought assistance from  
 Anglo-Saxon England and Germany, truly her  
 natural allies, their Kings the kinsmen of her  
 unfortunate Consort and her own. It might  
 have been expected that Ogiva, great Athelstan's  
 daughter, Edmund's sister, the sister equally of  
 pious Editha the German Queen,—Ogiva, who  
 had so boldly rescued the babe Louis at the  
 danger of her life—Ogiva, who had so tenderly  
 trained the boy in her paternal home—Ogiva,  
 who had so wisely counselled her son during  
 the first critical years of his reign,—would  
 have co-operated earnestly on his behalf. But,  
 whilst Gerberga's piteous letters are quoted  
 emphatically, we hear nothing concerning the  
 once active Ogiva. Possibly, the proverbial  
 jealousies between mother-in-law and daughter-  
 in-law severed them, even during this season of  
 common affliction; or Ogiva, intent upon her  
 own enjoyments, may have shrunk from any  
 trouble tending to diminish the luxurious ease  
 enjoyed by My Lady Abbess in her Royal  
 Monastery. At all events, Gerberga was left  
 alone in her labour of love, when a dawn of  
 success revived her in her desolation.

No exer-  
 tions made  
 by Ogiva on  
 the behalf  
 of her son.

Edmund the Magnificent seemed destined to  
 effect a complete renovation of the Anglo-Saxon  
 Commonwealth. Mercia, wholly subdued, the

{ 942—964 } happy contingency of Olave's death had not  
 { 945—946 } merely restored Northumbria, but given to the  
 Basileus the whole of England: and, at the same  
 time, the Scottish kings, having acknowledged  
 the supremacy of the English Crown, Edmund's  
 Imperial authority extended over the whole  
 Island. The Anglo-Saxon navy had acquired  
 great efficacy, and Edmund prepared for the  
 rescue of his nephew and foster-brother, em-  
 ploying all the resources of his Realm.

Edmund  
 promises  
 help, but  
 offends  
 Hugh-le-  
 Grand by  
 the haugh-  
 tiness of  
 his tone.

An embassy therefore was despatched by  
 Edmund to the Duke of all the Gauls, demand-  
 ing the King's deliverance. Elated by success,  
 Edmund's message was conveyed in an arrogant  
 tone, injudicious under any circumstances, but  
 gratuitously offensive when addressed to his  
 father's friend and a member of the family.  
 Hugh-le-Grand, on his part, was becoming vain  
 and boastful; he retorted in the same spirit: he  
 cared not for the threats of the Englishmen.  
 If the proud English dared attempt the menaced  
 invasion, they might one day have full cause at  
 home to repent them of their audacity.

This is a memorable passage.—The relations  
 between the Anglo-Saxons and the Gauls had  
 hitherto never been otherwise than very ami-  
 cable, and the first distinct expression of rivalry  
 between the nations was thus elicited by the  
 communications exchanged between an English  
 King and the father of the Capetian dynasty.

But Edmund had no leisure to justify his words, <sup>943-954</sup> for the steel of the malefactor was sharpening <sup>945-946</sup> to shed his blood; and the Sovereign who seemed destined to renovate the Anglo-Saxon Empire, perished in an ignoble scuffle with an outlaw.

§ 37. Equally encouraging, in the first instance, were Gerberga's dealings with Otho, her <sup>The help of Otho also sought by Gerberga.</sup> aspiring brother. He, so sagaciously combi-  
native in his political views, could not, any more than Edmund, be an unconcerned spectator of the events which were occurring in the Gauls. The Danes who had so often invaded the German land were dangerous neighbours. Charlemagne and his successors had often to maintain, and always to expect, hard collisions with them on the Holstein border. Moreover, the advantages which the Norman vassals of Louis had usurped over their Sovereign might be the source of fresh political contagion; the restless Scлавonians, more encouraged to emulate the examples given by the Northmen, and the Magyars stimulated to fiercer enterprises. We may be amused at the uncouth display of geographical ignorance exhibited by Louis, when he figured to himself the Northmen taking refuge beyond the Hungarian marshes. But the error was grounded upon the clear perception of the truth, that a common feeling against Western Christendom subsisted amongst the Barbarian races, who were

<sup>842—864</sup>  
<sup>845—846</sup> all substantially engaged in the widely-waged conflict.

Otho un-  
 able to as-  
 sist Louis  
 at this  
 juncture.

Otho was willing to forget his feuds with Louis. Strange in blood to Charlemagne, yet Charlemagne's successor, Otho, assuming Imperial grandeur, enthroned at Aix-la-Chapelle, ruling all Germany, and advancing towards Italy, was now beginning to comport himself as the Protector of France. Possibly, the offer, hinted or made by Gerberga, that the restoration of Louis, if satisfactorily effected, might enable him to requite Otho's friendship by an irrevocable surrender of Lorraine, encreased his desire to assist his brother. But, for the present, Gerberga was disappointed. Much employment was given to Otho at this juncture by the unruly Bohemians; grievous trouble fell upon him in consequence of the sainted Editha's death, and the expectations of succour were frustrated. Hugh-le-Grand was therefore fully enabled to avail himself of all the successes he had gained, whether for furthering the cause of the Normans or his own. Throughout these singularly complicated transactions, Hugh-le-Grand and the Normans were in partnership, conjointly interested for profit or loss, for fame or shame.

In some degree however, Hugh's position was weakened, and by a cause which no human forethought could have averted. The nefarious

schemes which Hugh-le-Grand had astutely formed for the extirpation of the Carlovingian race, by possessing himself of all the King's children, had been partially frustrated by Gerberga's resoluteness. Lothaire had never come within the Tyrant's reach, and now the infant Carloman, wrested from the mother's embraces, died. Still, though this collateral assurance was lost, Hugh held the King entirely within his grasp; and he evinced that consistent inconsistency which characterized all his transactions with his Sovereign. Hugh would not touch a hair of the King's head, but he locked the King's legs in bolts and fetters. Hugh would not secure the Crown for himself, but he despoiled the King of all the means whereby he could recover or assert his dignity.

942—954

945—946

Death of  
the babe  
Carloman.Hugh-le-Grand en-  
creases the  
rigour of  
the King's  
captivity.

Hugh's extortionate demands were conveyed in terms of affected conscientiousness and offended feelings. He upbraided the King with his errors, he accused him of want of gratitude. How had the King treated him?—How great had been the King's imprudence in violating that constitutional compact which had been concluded, when, through Hugh's exertions, he was enabled to resume his ancestral power? Had the son of Charles-le-Simple followed the counsel of his Protector and Guardian, would he not have escaped the misfortunes which had fallen upon him?—"I have made thee King, what

<sup>942—954</sup>  
<sup>945—946</sup> hast thou given me in return?"—was the insulting interrogatory addressed by the Jailor to his Prisoner.—"I have given thee Burgundy, and my royal rights in all the Gauls," Louis might have replied :—but Hugh, counting these gifts as nothing, peremptorily demanded the City and Tower of Laôn. Louis resisted with the obstinacy of despair. Laôn was the sole refuge remaining to his wife and family; he refused compliance, and, placed by Hugh-le-Grand under the charge of Thibaut-le-Tricheur, he continued steady in his determination during a whole weary year.

Laôn sur-  
 rendered.  
 Command  
 of the place  
 given to  
 Thibaut-le-  
 Tricheur.

A sad and miserable season.—Sleeping or waking, the iron entered into his soul. His thoughts would be of the cell at Saint Médard, prepared to receive him, or he might dream of the dungeon at Peronne, where his father's life and captivity ended. So, at length, the apprehensions of death increasing upon him, he consented to surrender Laôn. Gerberga opened the gates and descended from the rock, and Hugh-le-Grand marched in. The command of the Fortress was entrusted to Thibaut, an appointment testifying the satisfactory manner in which the Trickster had performed his duty on the Duke's behalf. Additional fortifications were erected, and the Tower and City occupied by a formidable garrison.

§ 38. After this tremendous hurricane of

desolation, Louis was re-united to Gerberga at Compiègne, a joyous and yet a doleful meeting, their little child dead, friends and nobles slaughtered, the royal honour tarnished, the nation humbled to the dust, Laôn, the last stronghold, lost. All things adverse, but, comforted and supported by Gerberga, his spirit confident as ever.

942—954  
945—946  
Louis released, he having agreed to Hugh-le-Grand's demands.

It was by Hugh-le-Grand that Louis had been recalled from his exile beyond the sea to occupy the throne. It was through Hugh-le-Grand that the royal authority was bestowed. He had been the means of depriving the heir of Charlemagne of that throne; and he now restored the heir in such a manner as to proclaim, that by virtue of his concession, the Sovereign was to resume his reign: he, Hugh-le-Grand, the arbiter of the fate of King and Kingdom.

Pursuant therefore to the policy which guided him, and at the same time asserting the pretensions he had never concealed, Hugh-le-Grand, again standing forth as Protector, formally "renovated" the King's authority. He did so in the most explicit terms, treating the liberation of Louis from personal and physical restraint as a new accession. This accomplished, Hugh consented to descend into the rank of a subject, being the first to "commend" himself to the King, in which act he was followed by the rest of the Nobles. And thereupon ensued the de-

Hugh-le-Grand "renovates" the Royal authority.



942—954  
 945—946

finitive, and—according to the professed intention of the parties—the final settlement of the relations between the sole Sovereign of the Norman Duchy and the French Kingdom. The sting of all or any of the homages which the “Leader of the Pirates,” or the “Son of the Breton Concubine,” had performed, was to be taken out, and a perfect reciprocity established between France and the “Norman Monarchy.” The Normans delighted in decorating themselves with this title and style, making the State bear testimony to the unity of the Sovereign power.

Again, the Epte became the living witness of the compact; and, on her banks, the Potentates met and the Nobles assembled.—Young Richard, fresh, and bright, and fair, his aspect intelligent and acute, his presence royal. Louis, unarmed and in peaceful guise, and Hugh-le-Grand their common Patron. — Where Robert Duke of France had stood, there stood his son, directing the solemn ceremony.

The renewal of compact between Normandy and France.

The Shrines, so often the accusing witnesses of perjury, were brought forth, and the oath which Louis had taken when trembling at Rouen, was renewed, and in more stringent terms.—That Dominion which Rollo the Grand-sire had won by so many battles, Richard shall henceforward have and hold, owing service to none but God.—Should any enemy attempt to disturb the right of the Norman Sovereign, the

King of France shall be his help and aid in all things.—No other service shall Normandy render unless the King should grant the Duke some Benefice within the Kingdom of France. Therefore, as it was explained in after-time, the Duke of Normandy doth no more than promise faith and homage to the King of France. In like manner doth the King of France render the same fealty to the Duke of Normandy; nor is there any other difference between them, save that the King of France doth not render homage to the Duke of Normandy like as the Duke of Normandy doth to the King.

942—954  
945—946  
Richard  
declared  
independent.

In these transactions, not recorded on roll or parchment, or confirmed by seal or charter, the Normans gloried, and on the battle-field of Hastings they erected their trophy. For then did William exhort his Normans to emulate those ancestors who had kept the King of France in ward and bond, until he had restored the young Richard to his land, and submitting to the condition (imposed as a penance), that whenever the King and the Duke should meet in pacific conference on the Border, the Duke should stand forth girt with his sword, whilst the King should present himself wholly disarmed, not having even a scrape-trencher blade or whittle-dagger, hanging by his side.

The Con-  
queror en-  
courage his  
troops at  
the battle  
of Hastings,  
by appeal-  
ing to the  
humiliation  
of the  
French  
King.

The covenant was rendered national.—First swore the King. Prelates, Bishops, Counts,

<sup>942—964</sup>  
<sup>946—948</sup>
 and Barons were called over, name by name, to give the like confirmation. Hugh-le-Grand followed the clergy, foremost amongst the secularity, and then, the nobles and the knight-hood of the realm; but a clenching security was to be given, the same as had been given to Rollo. In the presence of King Louis and by his direction, Hugh-le-Grand and his Baronage, and also the Norman Nobles and the Breton chiefs, renewed to the Duke of Normandy their pledges of service and amity.—Richard was conducted with surpassing pomp to Rouen; and thus did they three separate,—Richard, a Ducal Monarch; Hugh, a King without a crown; and Louis, a King without a Kingdom.

§ 39. The well-spring most distant from the river's mouth does not invariably deserve the Pilgrim's visit, when he seeks to venerate the source of the stream. Though furthest up in the course according to map-measure, the rill may in fact be merely a feeder: such as would have disappeared in the soil, had it not been conducted as a contributor to the flowing current issuing from the real watershed on loftier ground. In the hierarchy of human glory the Founder of a State shines in the most exalted sphere; yet it is not necessarily the Warrior whose right hand laid the first stone of the walls, or the Hero whose left foot first landed him upon the shore, by whom that transcendent honour should be

Which is  
 the real  
 Founder of  
 the State?

claimed. Progress is ever a complex process; growth, ever the result produced by continuous impulses; mutually independent, yet inseparable, each partial, all indispensable. He who waters could have done nothing without him who plants, nor he who plants without him who waters.

But, whether in the supernal or the nether world, the world of spirit or the world of matter, the universal scheme of causation overwhelms our powers of conception: all moral and physical agents, the desires of the heart and the winds of heaven, being alike the instruments fulfilling the Lord's eternal will.

It is not however merely consonant to our natural inclinations, but most helpful for the co-ordination of the recollections, which, manwards, constitute history, that we should canonize some one individual as the Founder of the State. And, perhaps, if we consider the doctrine in its full breadth and depth, seeking to assign that pre-eminence to the Leader who, so far as we are enabled to distinguish, was pre-doomed to be the more special instrument in executing the Divine decree, we should say, Peter Michaeloff rather than Ruric; Numa in preference to Romulus.—The Sage, or the Fortunate, or the Bold, who established and effected the political and moral conformation of the State, rather than him, who, numbered first in chronological

942—954  
945—946

Richard  
Sans Peur  
to be con-  
sidered as  
the real  
Founder of  
the Duchy  
of Nor-  
mandy, not  
Rollo.

{ 942—964 } sequence, appears at the head of the Fasti or  
 { 945—948 } the Dynasty. The stem of the Norman Dukes  
 ascends from Rollo, but, it is Richard Sans Peur  
 whom we must accept as the first organizer of  
 the Norman Duchy; nay, through that Duchy,  
 as the Parent of the British Empire. During  
 Richard's long reign, and through his acts, the  
 Normans became imbued with that peculiar  
 energy, which distinguished them ever after-  
 wards so long as they retained a national exist-  
 ence. By Richard's deeds and doings the  
 Duchy was fashioned and framed.

This most successful and magnificent experi-  
 ment had commenced with the renunciation or  
 dissolution of all the antient engagements sub-  
 sisting between Normandy and the Carlovin-  
 gians, in place whereof was substituted the  
 recent illusive compact, whereby a mere hono-  
 rary supremacy was reserved to the French  
 Crown.

After these transactions, succeeded, as we shall,  
 ere long, have occasion to narrate, that new con-  
 nexion with the House of Robert-le-Fort, which,  
 in process of time, enabled the Norman Duke to  
 write himself Premier Temporal Peer of France,  
 highest amongst the Nobles of the Monarchy.  
 His people rose with him. It was through the  
 institutions introduced or devised by Richard,  
 and which his personal influence vivified, that  
 the rude agglomeration of Danes and of half-

Formation  
 of the  
 national  
 character  
 of the  
 Normans  
 principally  
 due to  
 Richard  
 Sans Peur.

Danes, and men of the Romane tongue, acquired their distinct and homogeneous national character. Had it not been for Richard Sans Peur, never could the son of Tancred de Hauteville have engraved the vaunting epigraph upon his sword,—“*Appulus et Calaber, Siculus mihi servit et Afer*,”—never could William the Bastard have won the field of Senlac.—It was Richard’s plastic talent which raised those Normans, whose vigour, infused into the fainting Anglo-Saxon race, has girdled them round the globe.

§ 40. Gloriously was the young Richard restored to his own country and his own people, he, rejoicing in their affection, they, exulting in his prosperity. A splendid array of Chieftains and Nobles, Normans, Bretons, and Frenchmen, escorted him from Saint Clair-sur-Epte.—But, when he approached his own City, and drew nigh the Porte Beauvosine, that eloquently silent record of so many mutations and misfortunes, the stately cavalcade was absorbed by the thickening multitude—crowds heaping upon crowds, in the very denseness of suffocation:—clergy and laity compressed into one vast moving mass,—all notions of dignity or regular order lost in the tumult of thankfulness.

945  
Richard’s  
triumphal  
entry into  
Rouen  
after his  
liberation.

Richard was borne away by the living stream into the Cathedral: his Father and his Grandfather were lying there, and, in that Quire had

942—954  
945—948

he been acknowledged as their successor. And he knelt before the high altar, and he and his subjects prayed, that he might be enabled to govern the country justly and peaceably, as he should give account at the great Judgment-day. And then, proceeding to the Palace, he entered upon the exercise of that authority to which he had been almost miraculously restored.

Age of  
Richard at  
the time of  
his restora-  
tion to  
authority.

So rich is our Norman history in events, so various and manifold the succession of incidents, that even to me myself,—*moy l'escrivain*,—it seems a very long time since I have had to tell you about Richard's birth at Fécamp.—How old do you suppose Richard was when he re-entered Rouen?—Make him as old as we can, he cannot have been older than thirteen years of age—indeed hardly so old. But, called upon by necessity to perform the duties which had devolved upon him, the sharp, clever boy appears suddenly matured into full intellectual maturity.

Majority  
and  
minority.

“Years of discretion:” how vague is the import of that term!—Nature, in a manner, prescribes a period; yet, when defined by rule, the line of demarcation becomes evanescent or hypothetical. The thoughtless, beardless spendthrift may commence his debauch on the eve of his natal day, unable to perform any valid act concerning his estates; let him, however, awaiting the chime, grasp the dice-box in his hands, and he becomes fully competent to play them

away, from the instant that the stroke of the midnight clock has sounded. We must not be startled at the uncontrolled assumption of authority by Richard, neither at the species of metamorphosis which the lad suddenly sustained. Our antient English Constitution ignores, theoretically, the possibility of a Sovereign's infancy. In the judgment of the law, the monarch is never a minor or under age, but born in full perfection. It is only pursuant to Parliamentary statutes, comparatively modern, that a King remains in a state of pupilage until eighteen; whilst the precocity of the female sex is acknowledged by investing the Queen with full possession of her regal functions two years earlier.—The ripening Heiress of the Crown wields the sceptre at the age when her meanest maiden cannot of her own free will contract the matrimonial vow.

942—964  
945—946

Theory of the  
majority of  
Sovereigns.

Other examples of such a development accompanying the early acquisition of supreme power are noticed in history. This phenomenon may be reverently accepted as a special Providence; yet, when viewed by us, beheld only as working through the inevitable impress given to our fallen nature by circumstances over which we have no control. The talent exhibited by Richard, is simply a salient example of the process, whereby each child of Adam obtains the conception of moral personality, concurrently with the earliest dawn of reason. We receive



942—954  
 945—946
 
 our first objective knowledge of good and evil,  
 and learn our relations to others and theirs to  
 ourselves, not by intellect, but by instructive  
 sympathy,—the hiccuping drunkard's reel, the  
 blasphemer's clenched fist, the low-murmured  
 blessing, or the knee bent in prayer.—The infant  
 Princess, pure as the morning May-dew, intuitively  
 gracious, who has breathed the atmosphere  
 of homage since the moment when she first  
 gazed upon the light, who may not adventure  
 for delicateness to set the sole of her foot upon  
 the ground, presents her plump little hand to  
 be kissed, from the perfumed lap of the silken-  
 robed matron: whilst the beggar's hollow-eyed  
 starveling brat, with pitiful eagerness, stretches  
 out her long, stringy, scurfy arm, over her  
 frowsy mother's ragged shoulder, clutching at  
 your proffered half-penny,—that filthy copper,  
 which no born lady would touch with a pair of  
 tongs.

Historians used to be profuse in bestowing  
 encomiums upon Sovereigns; homages quite *de  
 rigueur*, just as they were accustomed to flow  
 from the pen of the florid Herald poetizing the  
 preamble of the peerage patent, or his rival the  
 droning Chaplain groaning the funeral sermon.  
 We have generally abandoned these modes of  
 dispensing laudation, or, at least, we do the  
 needful to the living, with more tact and de-  
 licacy.

Richard, however, honestly deserved the popular praises he received:—a splendid specimen of his noble race, robust yet delicate, his complexion clear, his eyes beaming, and his handsome countenance decked by his golden hair. Many members of his family abused or neglected their intellectual gifts: yet, we can hardly name any amongst Rollo's flourishing progeny undistinguished by talent, excepting the few, who disappear so speedily or mysteriously as to deprive us of sufficient acquaintance with them. And those innate talents were always fostered and aided by considerate and careful rearing. This zeal for the promotion of mental cultivation became the most precious amongst the family traditions. No one father amongst the Dukes of Normandy is liable to the censure of having wilfully neglected the secular education of his offspring. We have seen how sagely Rollo had taken thought concerning Guillaume Longue-épée, and how Guillaume Longue-épée had been equally mindful of and for our Richard. However unforeseen the misfortunes and persecutions which fell upon the child, the scheme elaborated by parental affection, and the sufferings inflicted by an inveterate enemy, had each respectively co-operated in preparing Richard for the tasks he was destined to perform, and enabled him to blend the Norsk and the Romane elements into an harmonious unity.

942—954

945—946

Richard's  
personal  
and mental  
gifts, edu-  
cation and  
talents.

Care be-  
stowed by  
the Norman  
Dukes upon  
the education  
of their chil-  
dren.

942—954

946—948

Fortune helped, where prudential foresight might have failed.—Possibly, the predilection evidently manifested by Guillaume Longue-épée on behalf of the Danish ethos, might, when transmitted to his son, have become so exaggerated as to impede the thorough incorporation of Normandy into the Romane commonwealth, had not that heathen tendency been corrected by the captivity which the young Richard sustained. Truly had the words been fulfilled which Louis spake with false intent, when he insisted upon the advantages which would result from the young Richard's instruction amidst the courtesies of his palace: for, it was at Laôn that Richard became perfected in all those accomplishments which he could not elsewhere have acquired.

All these external means of improvement were aided and fructified by a good disposition, a kindly manner, a liberal sentiment, supple activity, sturdy strength and practised dexterity. Excelling, he delighted in the huntsman's sports and in all gentle games, bones, or chess, or tables, and in every bodily exercise, athletic or warlike, the foot-race or the gallop, single-stick or thwack-stave, spear or sword.

Richard's  
Court and  
household  
—joviality  
and ex-  
travagance.

§ 41. Richard's Court and household, from the nature of things, could not fail to become a rough, dissipated, and joyous assembly. Normandy yet abounded with the coarse-grained

sturdy Danes, very diverse in character and bearing from Rollo's Romanized chieftains,—such as sagacious Botho,—who had formed themselves during the first settlement. But French civility was, however, unquestionably penetrating amongst the younger branches of the more opulent Norman families: whilst, at the same time, very many individuals belonging to the inferior classes, rose or forced themselves into influence and power.—As yet, there did not exist any hard-marked line of demarcation between the Noble and the Roturier. Low birth did not oppose any obstacle to Ducal patronage and favour. The full development of the aristocratic principle was retarded until the subsequent generation.

Guillaume Longue-épée, at the fair-weather commencement of his reign had a good word from everybody,—not so at its conclusion. But the young Richard, who also began by having a good word from everybody, retained the general affection during the whole of his long life. Bountiful in the extreme, all classes shared his comprehensive liberality, clerks and clergy, chevaliers and chivalry, every one having a chance of being the better for coming in Richard's way. Trains of young knights were harboured in the Ducal Court; merrily also did the minstrels rejoice there, rote and rebeck sounding;—and, to the poor and needy, what

942—964  
945—946  
Richard's  
universal  
bounty  
towards all  
classes.

942—954 store of food and victuals, distributed with the  
 most unsparing hand!

945—946

Richard's  
 favourites  
 and  
 friends.

Thus Richard Sans Peur started; but his exuberant dispenditure speedily received a check. Richard, when he began to rule, was steadily and sagaciously guided and directed by those, who, having so faithfully protected him during infancy and youth, had also reinstated him in his dominions; Bernard de Senlis, and Bernard the Dane, Osmund de Centvilles, and Yvo de Bellesme, all of whom enjoyed his friendship so long as they lived. And, when the old men passed away, Richard bestowed his highest confidence, and most deservedly, upon Raoul, Count of Ivri, his half-brother, his mother's son by Sperling the rich miller. Besides these, we may be certain that the great land-holders were energetic in supporting the interests and courting the favour of the young and ductile Prince, whilst his coevals, of every degree, would most willingly muster under a master so germane to them.

Raoul  
 Torta—his  
 usurpation  
 of the  
 Ducal re-  
 venue.

But there was one personage about the Court virtually above them all, detested by all, from the scullion upwards to the sovereign, and this was Raoul Torta.—“Be it better, be it worse, be ruled by him who rules the purse,” is the expression of a social law, universal upon earth as the law of gravitation.—Possessed of the purse, and tying the purse-strings as tightly as

tight could be, Raoul Torta kept every member of the State in subjection, for most eminently was the prepotent Seneschal supported by the all-commanding power of money. King Louis was expelled, but Raoul, through whom the French King had earned so much obloquy, remained at Rouen, firm as ever, in the position he had acquired during the foreign ascendancy. Since the death of Guillaume Longue-épée, Raoul had been Normandy's manager, nay, a species of independent governor; and young Richard, to use the legal phrase, could not obtain livery of his inheritance, for Raoul retained the whole usufruct in his own hands.

Raoul was tenant in possession of the ducal domains, Raoul received the Duke's rents, Raoul reaped the Duke's corn, mowed the Duke's meadows, milked the Duke's cows, rode the Duke's horses, sheared the Duke's flocks, stuck the Duke's pigs, and slaughtered the Duke's beeves. Sparing might have been excused, but Raoul's stinting was intolerable. The prisoners, deprived of their accustomed doles, starved in the gaol; the knights lost their pay; and, rote and rebeck silenced, the mournful minstrels wandered disconsolate, lacking their usual guerdon. Thus was the Court reduced to penury; and, if we accept the expressions employed by historians literally, the sum allowed by the Minister of Finance to the young Duke

942-954  
945-946

Raoul  
Torta  
usurps the  
Ducal prop-  
erty.

Raoul  
Torta's  
economy.

942—954

945—946

Raoul  
Torta  
reduces  
the ex-  
penditure  
of the  
Court.

Enmity  
excited by  
Raoul  
Torta.

Richard out of his Ducal Treasury, for the support and maintenance of himself and his whole household, was ultimately reduced to eighteen sous per diem, or, as some authorities assert, twelve. If, during the French usurpation, Raoul Torta had rendered himself hateful to the villanage, he now incurred the peril of becoming infinitely more odious to the higher classes. All ranks and parties coalesced for the purpose of effecting his expulsion. It has been surmised, and not without some appearance of probability, that in the main, Raoul Torta sought to be a faithful administrator. His conduct, according to this view, was honest and conscientious:—Raoul earnestly desired to husband the Ducal revenues, particularly since, as his partizans might plead, he laboured under the apprehension that the resources of the State would be exhausted through the extravagancies of the youthful Richard's boon associates, and that the offence he gave resulted simply from his adherence to principle.

Richard  
impeaches  
Raoul  
Torta, who  
is banished  
from the  
Duchy.

However, such was not the opinion entertained either by the monarch or the majority. Raoul Torta's fall was decreed. Normandy must cast off the incubus, yet not by violence, and proceedings were conducted in judicial form. Richard convened his Lieges, and made careful enquiry into the extent of his rights. The Treasurer, it was alleged, had juggled

himself into the possession and exercise of all the property as well as the power which appertained to the Sovereign; not merely destroying the Duke's influence, but bringing him to shame. Raoul was solemnly summoned to appear before the Duke, and answer for his misdeeds. Whether trusting in his own rectitude or struck by terror, Raoul endeavoured to gain time by delay, and humbly implored the Duke's mercy. Richard did not peremptorily reject the supplication. Raoul was the head of a formidable faction; it suited Richard's purpose to temporize: and, for this reason, the defendant was peremptorily ordered to quit Rouen, repair to a hamlet about a league off, and there abide his judgment. Richard declared, that, should any show of resistance be manifested on the part of the fallen Minister or his adherents, he would invoke the aid of all his subjects and allies. Raoul Torta dared not stand his trial; he fled from Normandy, and, taking refuge at Paris, placed himself under the protection of his father the Bishop, nor did he ever return to plague the Normans again.

§ 42. Amongst the untruths which insinuate themselves into the very marrow of history, few are more detrimental to truth than the epithets vulgarized upon Sovereigns. Show the Tiger as the beast who alone would have supplied an appropriate emblem for *Richard Cœur-*

942—954  
945—946

Popular epithets of Sovereigns, —injurious moral effect produced by them.



943—954  
 {  
 945—946
 
*de-lion.* The real temperature of the love inspired by *Louis le bien aimé* would have been marked somewhat below the freezing point; and, as for *Louis le désiré*, who more glad than the French to be rid of him.—With respect to the prostituted epithet of the *Great*, count on your fingers the names of the few Rulers who have earned this denomination honestly and righteously before God and man.—Will Prussia ever be enabled to expel the poison she has imbibed from “Friedrich der Grosse?”—Nay, even “good Queen Anne” has no peculiar claim to that adscription of benignity, which possibly arose in the first instance, from a confused reminiscence of the Bohemian Queen.

Richard—  
 why called  
 “Sans  
 Peur.”

Richard enjoyed the reputation of being an ardent lover of adventure, constantly in search of the excitement which danger afforded,—a very dare-devil, like his grandson, the Conqueror’s father. It was believed he could see in the dark, and many a tale is related concerning him, full of grotesque horror.—How,—for example,—when watching during the dark hours in the way-side oratory, grim and ghastly rose the dead man from the bier, and how the Demon-possessed corpse, wrestling with the Duke, was thrown and stilled by his antagonist’s nerve and power. Hence the traditional appellation by which we have distinguished him throughout this history. Yet scarcely more than one single

deed is definitely or distinctively recorded concerning Richard, fairly justifying the epithet "Sans Peur;" nor are any examples of military prowess ascribed to Richard, exceeding the usual average of knightly hardihood.—If, therefore, we are to suppose that any particular exploit was so prominent as to confer upon him the designation of "Fearless," we are driven to the necessity of electing between the combat with the Vampire and the undaunted resolution which enabled him to plan and perfect the sudden and final expulsion of an over-masterful Minister.

Certainly, this bold and determined coup d'état exercised the most decided influence upon the popular mind, and it is specially commemorated by the family historian as having produced such effect,—"*videntes autem Seniores Normanniæ, quod tam prudenter exterminasset principem malitiæ, timuerunt eum valde.*"—Henceforward, Richard's terror was always upon the Norman nation; no one dared to contest his authority; and, his absolute sovereignty being unchallenged, his power encreased, so to speak, day by day.

§ 43. Here, however, let us pause, and re-examine, more particularly, the social and political station of those three personages in whom, at this eventful crisis, we are most interested. All alike, kings; all, wearing a king-like semblance, yet none completely so.—Young Richard, the

942—954  
945—946

Richard—  
his trium-  
phant  
position.  
"The  
Norman  
monarchy."

942—954

945—946

King without the royal title; Hugh-le-Grand, the King without a crown; Louis, the King without a kingdom.

First, as to our story's present Hero. The Duke had recovered his Duchy, and the Duchy her political station, whilst the most satisfactory reciprocity was restored between the Carlovigian realm and the Norman "Monarchy." Nothing had been conceded by Richard beyond that honorary precedence which the crowned and anointed Sovereign had a right to demand. And, indeed, the Normans could reasonably maintain, that the abandonment made by the French of their pretensions, was only an act of justice. The condition of military service imposed upon the Danes, might be construed as the covenant of an ally. Rollo, whilst acknowledging, however contemptuously and ungraciously, the ceremonial distinction due to the successor of Charlemagne, held his land in perfect freedom;—that noble Terra Normannorum and all Armorica, from the stream-diyiding eyot whereon he stood, even unto the furthest western shore.—The Neustrian territory had passed from King Charles to Rollo-Robert as his allodial March-Land; and then, Rollo-Robert, as a man, came back to the King.

Construction of the previous homages rendered to Louis.

The Norman diplomatists would further argue that the homages rendered and broken by Guillaume Longue-épée did not prejudice the

independence of their State, even admitting the acts to have been in some degree binding upon the individual's honour. Guillaume Longue-épée's vacillating conscience induced him to seek the "renovation" of the dignity; but, when the young Richard, Rollo's heir in the second degree, was conducted before Louis, and received the humiliating re-grant of his father's dominion, the act was instigated by those who were liable to the condemnation of having abused the authority, which their Sovereign's helpless infancy gave them. Even if exonerated from the charge of corruption, they had, at all events, reprehensibly neglected Richard's interests and their own.

But the false step had been completely retraced. No earthly superior could now claim obedience from Richard: his, was the "Terra Normannorum"—a free and allodial Sovereignty; he, Duke Richard, governing his monarchy as a King.—*Tenet, sicut Rex, monarchiam Northmannicæ regionis.*—This phraseology must not be slighted as the unmeaning effusion of an affected grandiloquence. The terms, so employed, were dictated by a consistent train of thought. Richard's nobles, his advisers, his people, rejoiced in proclaiming his quasi-royal title, insisting upon his regal rights; and, as they deemed, always in season.

942—964  
945—946

Normandy  
a "Mon-  
archy"—  
Richard  
governs as  
a King.

The enhancement of monarchical authority

942—954

945—946

Predilec-  
tion of the  
Normans  
for the Mo-  
narchical  
principle.

amongst the Romane populations in the Gauls, has survived through all chances, changes, ages, and revolutions. It is a constant phenomenon.

Licence may have been agreeable to the Normans, but, we shall be disappointed, if we expect to discover amongst the ancestry of the Conqueror's baronage, any strong affection for constitutional liberty, in the modern sense of the term. By exalting Richard, and rendering him by their worship the centre of the political system, they obeyed their guiding doctrines of state-unity and territorial indivisibility. — Possibly also, the employment of the term "Monarch," may have been connected with the imperial principle, so eagerly accepted throughout the mediæval States, that the Sovereign was, or ought to be, sole lord of the soil.

Obedience  
rendered to  
Richard by  
Alain  
Barbe-torte  
and the  
Bretons.

Whilst the Terra Normannorum was thus condensing into the Duchy of Normandy, Richard rightly assumed the title of "*Comes Northmannorum et Britonum*." Turbulent Armorica submitted to the young Duke's suzerainty without effort, or rather rejoiced when she could rest in subjection. Alain Barbe-torte, quieted, or perhaps tired out, by long-continued exertions, now began to lean upon his ponderous club instead of wielding it. Subsequently to the Danish invasion, Alain's matrimonial concerns, his unedifying conduct towards his wrinkled wife, the Angevine Princess, his marriage with

her successor Gerberga, Thibaut-le-Tricheur's daughter—but, worst of all, his amours with the Lady Judith,—are the only incidents recorded concerning him. Generally speaking, the Bretons who had so cordially joined in renewing their homages at Saint Clair-sur-Epte, yielded with equal gladness their implicit obedience to Richard; the younger folk being especially ambitious of his favour, and reckoning his protection as an honour. We shall not in anywise attempt to re-open that much vexed question concerning the tenure of Britany, but, as an historical fact, it must be recollected that the supremacy of Normandy, though sometimes questioned, was never cast off.

§ 44. Turn we next to the proud crownless king, the prouder because he repudiated the diadem.—From Paris, Hugh-le-Grand's Capital, his authority overshadowed the Realm.—From Paris northward to the Somme, and beyond the Somme; from Paris, southward to the Loire, and beyond the Loire, to that narrow Vienne whilome choked with Danish corpses; from Paris eastward, climbing up the Jura ranges; and from Paris westward, till you reached the Norman and Breton boundaries and Marchlands,—the greater part of the antient *Francia Romana* sought Hugh-le-Grand as patron, dreaded his power, deprecated his anger, courted his favour, owned him as master.

942—964  
945—948

Hugh-le-Grand—  
extent of  
his do-  
minions.

942—954  
 945—946

Enumera-  
 tion of the  
 Countries,  
 &c. sub-  
 jected to  
 Hugh-le-  
 Grand.

We cannot distinctly delineate the continuous frontiers of all Hugh-le-Grand's dominions. Occasionally, they were enclavures or fragmentary. But, if we seek to describe them in more strict geographical terms, (these terms themselves being, nevertheless, for want of information, somewhat vague and indefinite,) we should say, following the most competent investigators, that they may be grouped as follows.—The Duchy of France, including the Counties or Duchies of Paris and of Orleans, the Vermandois, the Pays Chartrain, and Blois and Chartres.—Anjou, Touraine, and Maine, and the Gatinois.—The Beauvoisis, and much of the Amiennois.—The Pays de Sologne—the threshold of the Midi,—and the whole of Burgundy,—Langres, Avalon, and Dijon, Burgundian Dukedoms three, and the County of Macon. Peculiarly distinguished, however, amongst all these wide possessions, was the acquisition which Hugh-le-Grand had so recently made, the Laônaï and the tall Tower of Laôn, the latter, a fulcrum of power by its material strength, yet far more formidable as an organ of moral influence,—that huge trophy, rearing her crest so high in the sky, signalling how the son of Robert-le-Fort had triumphed over his masters.

Proprietor, Protector, Inheritor, or Usurper, Lord, Land-holder, Abbot, Abbacomes, Count Abbot, Seigneur, or Suzerain, the strictly legal

extent of Hugh-le-Grand's royalties might vary ; <sup>943-954</sup>  
 but the recent concessions extorted from Louis, <sup>945-946</sup>  
 the charters by which Hugh-le-Grand was cre-  
 ated Duke of all the Gauls, supported practically  
 by the energy of the Ruler, in addition to any  
 other sources or bases of title, levelled all con-  
 flicting rights or pretensions, and few were the  
 attributes of sovereignty which Hugh-le-Grand  
 had to desire.

§ 45. Last of all in the group stands Louis.  
 —Humiliated, insulted, despoiled,—you might  
 fancy the squalor of the prison yet steaming  
 from his garments. The drear story of his  
 degradation and misery eaten into his flesh.  
 His limbs indented by the blue bruises of the  
 fetters. Not a single fortress whose walls could  
 defend him ; not a mansion where he could be  
 sheltered, except melancholy, dilapidated, empty,  
 silent, lifeless Compiègne. The treasure vault  
 open, no yelp in the kennel, no lure in the  
 mews, no litter in the stable. His reputation  
 damaged by the disclosure of his faithlessness  
 and cruelty, but far more by his failures. Yet,  
 with the affectionate, active, indomitable Ger-  
 berga by his side, not one whit of his aspirations  
 had Louis abated ; his hope as ardent as when  
 he bounded on Boulogne's shore.

Louis—his  
 resolute  
 spirit.

§ 46. The restoration of Normandy, this  
 vigorous Commonwealth flourishing in the midst  
 of the decaying realm, affected no one more

Hugh-le-  
 Grand—his  
 political  
 situation  
 much af-



942—954

945—946

affected by  
the res-  
toration of  
Normandy.

intimately than Hugh-le-Grand. Normandy,—Britany being always taken as appurtenant,—commanded all Hugh's Duchy of France. It was evident that King Robert, Hugh's father, originally contemplated obtaining support from Rollo, but Guillaume Longue-épée, Rollo's son, proved to be a dangerous rival. Had Hugh made good his footing in Normandy by virtue of his alliance with Louis, he would unquestionably have speedily subdued the whole Terra Normannorum on this side the river Seine; probably also the greater part of Normandy *Oultre-Seine*, and the Duchy of France would have been rendered round and sound. But that opportunity was entirely lost,—Normandy had manifested her strength, Hugh-le-Grand found he could not pursue the contest against her, and his most prudent policy would be to avail himself of such support as he could gain by connecting the Norman fortunes with his own.

Hugh-le-  
Grand's  
present  
family.  
Hugh  
Capet and  
Emma.

Hugh's views and schemes, his heart and his soul, were all bent upon securing for his boy the Crown which he himself dreaded to wear. That burly boy still continued Hugh's only son,—and the son and the sire remained, as yet, the only male representatives of Robert-le-Fort, the lineage so often declining, but never dying. A daughter, however, had also been born unto Hugh. Whether older or younger than her brother we know not. We could not

keep Emma's *fête* if we would, for when the little damsel came into the world, the event appeared so uninteresting, that no French Chronicler thought it worth his while to breathe a word concerning her. But Emma had now become a personage of importance. Such are the praises bestowed upon her beauty, that, allowing the utmost latitude for adulation, we must needs suppose she was more of a girl than a cradle-baby. And Hugh's steadiness of purpose having dictated to him the expediency of abandoning, once and for ever, all plans tending to the direct appropriation of Normandy, his acute political perceptions also revealed to him, that, for ensuring the fortunes of the young Capet, far more advantageous would it be to command the Norman Duke's friendship, than rule over a whole nation of recalcitrant subjects, who could neither be coerced nor persuaded against their will.

No danger could be so threatening to Hugh as any contingency which, after his death, might place his young family within the French King's power. Many distressing anxieties clouded the prospect, but the general outline of the chances presented by the future was clear. The enormous dismemberment of France, created through Hugh's own domination, would ultimately necessitate a great political catastrophe. King Robert's reign must return. Either the Duchy

942—954  
945—948

Importance  
of Nor-  
mandy to  
Hugh-le-  
Grand.

Perplexities  
of Hugh-  
le-Grand  
as to the  
future.

943—964  
 945—946

of France must be re-united to the Crown of France, or the Crown of France must be re-united to the Duchy of France,—upon no other condition could the Monarchy stand.

Other interests were, however, also to be considered. So far as consanguinity exercised any influence, Otho and Otho's children would, supposing the sentiments of family affection continued unaltered, be attracted equally to Louis and his children, and to Hugh and his children. But, it was impossible, that such a Mahomet's-coffin state of suspension could be permanent; and the conflict between the antagonistic forces—the sacred ancestral right of the antient line, assailed by the vigour of the new,—constitutes the last act in the sorrowful, yet majestic, drama of the Carlovingian history.

Nor-  
 mandy's  
 encresing  
 political  
 power.

Under these circumstances, Normandy acquired great importance: Normandy might decide the contest between the rising and the declining dynasties. Normandy, with the appendant Britany, were as buttresses supporting the Duchy of France. In the *Langue d'oc*, beyond the Loire, Richard's partizanship would possibly also avail, for though his brother-in-law, the Count of Poitou, Guillaume Tête d'étaupe, had been compelled to acknowledge Hugh-le-Grand's superiority, still it was a recognition which grated against the grain. Robert-le-Fort, and

the family of Robert-le-Fort, and the descendants of Robert-le-Fort, were odious throughout the southern Gauls; and Normandy could menace or persuade these flourishing regions.

942—954  
945—946

If Hugh-le-Grand was perplexed for the future, neither could Richard nor Richard's friends avoid entertaining gloomy apprehensions. In the first place, Flanders menaced him incessantly. Bernard the Dane and Bernard de Senlis were equally conscious, that such protection as they, living, afforded to their young Prince, could not endure long. Arnoul, haunted by the bloody vision of Picquigny,—the bleeding corpse stretched on the swampy sward,—was incessantly bent upon preventing vengeance by vengeance. The Marquis of Flanders would assuredly persecute Richard to the end of his life; and he was so singularly vigorous, that it seemed as though he defied the ordinary chances of mortality.

Dangers nevertheless to which Richard was exposed from Arnoul and Thibaut,

Moreover, the old family feud was rankling. Thibaut-le-Tricheur was tormented by envy at Richard's good fortune. Liutgarda's spite against her step-son continued encreasing. Even if he had not been in her husband's way, she would have hated him for the very sake of hating.

France and Germany were frowning.—Louis, and more than Louis, Gerberga, boldly and yet warily, watching the opportunity, should

and from France and Germany.

942—954

945—946

Odium attached to Richard on account of his Danish ancestry.

any arise, of damaging or ruining the son of the Breton Concubine, the Pirate's bastard.

Lastly in the hostile array, Otho, jealous as ever of the Normans, fearing and detesting them, albeit Christians, no less than he would have done when they were yet Black Danes. Richard never could be purified from the stain of his Danish blood. Though in the third generation, Richard had inherited Rollo's obloquy. The French reckoned backwards to his hideous grandsire, and sneered at his courtesy and his bravery. The Pirate was not admitted *ad eundem* in the Romane Commonwealth; for though as fluent a "*latiner*" as any Frank could be, yet, was not the Dansk to him as a mother tongue? Richard had obtained a grand position; but if the Norman Duke owed no subjection, neither could he command any aid. Whether socially or politically, Richard wanted a Wife and a Suzerain.

Amongst all the convulsions and disorders of the times, there existed throughout France an anxious yearning for the preservation of organic unity. Borrowing from our neighbours an incongruous expression, which, like many contradictions in terms, performs a duty refused by the rigid orthodoxy of linguistic accuracy,—the Civil Hierarchy was deficient in systematic regularity.—Titles of dignity were vaguely applied or assumed, nor was there any settled scheme

of graduated subjection: yet, it was held as a normal principle, that no individual ought to live at large amongst the People, but that he should be connected upwards with the Head of the State, whether immediately or through some link or links of dependance.

Under the influence of this prevailing opinion, allodial lands, that is to say, lands destitute of an Over-lord, were considered as blemishes in the Commonwealth. There was no absolute law compelling an allodial proprietor to "commend" himself to a Senior. No direct blame could be imputed to him, yet he was tilting against public opinion. Though not positively stigmatized as a disturber of the body politic, he nevertheless offended against its proprieties. For the effect which this usage had in perfecting the Feudal scheme, I must refer to that venerated Teacher who first pointed out distinctly the importance of the custom as a most influential element in mediæval policy. It is sufficient to observe that "commendation," did not, at this period, necessarily imply the formal surrender of the soil from the Allodialist to the Superior, but the demand was satisfied by the simple acceptance of a Lord as a Protector, under whom the Proprietor could range himself in the social community.

942-954  
945-946

Custom of  
"Commenda-  
tion."  
Its in-  
fluence  
upon  
feudal  
tenure.  
(Hallam's  
'Middle  
Ages,' i.  
114.)

Dignified as was the station which Richard

942—954

945—946

Richard's  
isolation—  
need of  
connecting  
himself  
with the  
Carlovin-  
gian Com-  
monwealth.

enjoyed, a Prince freed from obedience to any earthly being, he was unsettled for want of the stability resulting from subjection; and how was the security to be found? He had released himself from this relation towards Louis, nor could he again place himself anywhere in the grasp of so untrustworthy a Ruler, one who had so constantly sought his life openly and covertly, and who, towards the Normans, was thoroughly engrained with treachery. If Richard now thought himself bound to seek a Superior, his Senior must be his real Patron, his real "avoué," supporter, and friend.

Yet further measures were needed for the purpose of engrafting Normandy upon the Carolingian Commonwealth. Richard was the sole representative of Rollo: in him, the recently founded dynasty might become extinct; ought he not to desire a fitting consort,—but whom, and where?—It was morally, or if we may venture to sport the expression, immorally impossible that such a Prince as the lusty young Richard should continue insensible to the charms of the Norman damsels;—the examples set to him by his Progenitors were more seductive than edifying.

The peculiar civil privileges attached to purity of blood had not yet acquired the stern acerbity which rendered that transcendent pre-eminence so hateful, when the Pageant Mon-

archs, the Kings at Arms, ruling in their fully developed gorgeousness, had elevated blazonry into a fantastic science.—Nothing was known in Carolingian times concerning “sixteen quarters,” the definition involving a principle, which, to the last, was disowned by the jurisprudence of France. Nobility came solely through the Sire. Glorious Athelstan, the son of the serving-maid, was as eligible to the throne as though his mother could have deduced her lineage from Cerdic. Nevertheless the institution of *Caste*, enforced by law, whatever harshness may ensue from its application, is so accordant with the most exalted as well as the vilest sentiments of human nature, that, if not positively enjoined, we are constantly striving to act upon the doctrine. During the mediæval period, a bonâ fide honest love-match, between the patrician and the proletarian classes, occurred as rarely as in our times. The romance of Griselda testifies how marvellous it was, or would have been, for a Prince to seek the hand of a Peasant’s daughter. The distinction between the greater and the lesser nobility was now becoming decidedly marked. Reigning or sovereign houses were more anxious than ere-while to pair amongst themselves; and it was the judgment of the Norman Councillors, that, amongst his equals, Richard must seek for her who was to be his companion in the palace of Rouen.

942—964  
945—946

Principle  
of ‘mésal-  
liance,’ not  
acknow-  
ledged by  
the law,  
though  
gaining  
ground in  
public  
opinion.



942—964  
 {  
 945—946

Political  
 and matri-  
 monial  
 alliance  
 between  
 Richard  
 and Hugh-  
 le-Grand  
 advantage-  
 ous to both  
 Houses.

§ 47. Arrange in parallel columns the statements of the troubles and difficulties under which Hugh and Richard respectively laboured,—compare the means on the French side with the wants on the Norman, and *vice versâ*,—and it will be seen, at the first glance, that the ways leading to a settlement, satisfactory for either of the parties, conjoined at the very point most desirable that both of them should attain. A secret conference ensued at Paris between the Duke of France and the two Bernards,—the two acute statesmen who had so cleverly outwitted Hugh-le-Grand in the earlier stage of these transactions,—but now, well contented to coalesce with him—Bernard, the Count of Senlis, head of Rollo's family, and Bernard the Dane, their adviser and supporter in all contingencies and disasters. The Bernards had been summoned to Paris, and they obediently attended accordingly. The course of proceedings intimates that, without having received any direct, or as we should say, any official communication, notifying the objects for which their presence was peremptorily required, they sufficiently anticipated the why and the wherefore they were called.

Hugh-le-Grand whispered in confidence, that overtures had been made to him on the part of those enemies who were conspiring against Richard and against Normandy,—Louis deter-

mined to revenge his disgraces,—Arnoul possessed with implacable hatred against the son of the father whom he had murdered,—others scarcely less inveterate.—The peril of foreign invasion was again imminent. Hugh-le-Grand rejoiced in acknowledging the dignity which the Ruler of Normandy could claim,—*Richardus nec Regi nec Duci militat, nec ulli nisi Deo obsequi præstat*.—Yet, whilst magnifying young Richard's independence, his freedom from all earthly subjection, Hugh lamented the absence of any support enabling him to oppose his enemies. No one was there who would stand by Richard; save his few old connections, none others who would circle round him.

The Count of Senlis and Bernard the Dane concurred in opinion, and besought the Duke's advice. Hugh then spake wisely and discreetly concerning the temptations to which Richard's youthful passions exposed him: a congruous marriage would secure his domestic comfort, and encrease his political power; and Hugh therefore very solemnly exhorted the Bernards to do their duty and exercise their wits, in devising how sufficient protection for their Prince against such dangers, could be obtained. Counsel proceeding from such a powerful adviser dictated a conformable reply; but it was the second point which elicited the first response. Seigneur, quoth the Count of Senlis, we know not whose

942—954  
945—946

Hugh-le-Grand insinuates his wish that Richard should marry the little Emma.

Bernard takes the hint and answers accordingly.

942—954

945—946

daughter could be so fitting as thine own, that lovely bright-haired Emma, gem and flower of beauty, peerless throughout the world.

Doncques respond Bernard de Saint-Liz :

De ce suis bien certains et fixe,

En nul lieu mieux en tout le monde

Qu'en vostre fille od la chevelure blonde.

Hugh-le-Grand assents, but upon condition that Richard should "commend" himself to his father-in-law.

Unhesitatingly did Hugh grant his assent, but, upon conditions, as he explained, equally redounding to his benefit and the benefit of Richard. — It is not the usage in France, spake Hugh, resuming his grave discourse, that any Prince or Duke, endowed with such possessions as the young Duke Richard, should continue all his days independent without submitting to some Suzerain, whether Duke, King, or Emperor, either through his own free will, or yielding to compulsion. For should, perchance, any such a Potentate, confiding in his own valour, or rejoicing in the extent of his possessions, obstinately persist in maintaining this affronting repudiation of the rules imposed by national feeling, he is constantly in danger of being engaged in quarrels and dissensions, and becoming involved in great disasters. — And what was the remedy? — If the young Richard, Bernard's nephew, would condescend to serve under Hugh, he, the Duke would forthwith concede his daughter in marriage, and, becoming Richard's counsellor, ally, and father,—assist

him in defending against all men, that land which he lawfully held.

942—954  
945—946

Et pour ceo, si agré lui vient  
La terre que il a et tient,  
Lui defendrai vers tout gent  
S'il seul ma fille vout et prent.  
Pere, conseil, et ajusement  
Lui serrai vers tout gent.

“Give him thy daughter. I elect and desire that he should serve thee, and not the fraudulent King,”—was the Uncle’s prompt reply to Hugh-le-Grand, who had thus proffered everything which Normandy could expect or desire. Bernard de Senlis took upon himself the whole responsibility of the transaction: he answered as if his nephew Duke Richard, and the Norman people, had conjoined in appointing him their plenipotentiary, and his assent to the Treaty was accepted as obligatory upon all.

Bernard de Senlis, on the behalf of Richard and the Normans, accepts Hugh-le-Grand’s proposition.

Richard and Emma were solemnly betrothed. The little bride’s tender age dictated the postponement of the marriage, a delicacy not always observed under similar circumstances. Hugh-le-Grand confirmed his promise by oath, that the union should be completed after the expiration of a specified period: and the espousals, thus contracted, were scarcely less binding than though the youth and the maiden had plighted their troth before the altar. Richard was fully accepted as the son-in-law of his great Suzerain.

Richard and Emma are espoused accordingly.

942—954  
 946—946

Upon such joyful occasions, expectations are exuberant,—it would be out of course if they were not,—and, in the sturdy healthy Richard, and the radiant playful Emma, the public already admired by anticipation, the fruitful parents surrounded by a numerous and flourishing progeny.

Not merely were the Normans satisfied with the feudal obligations which Richard had agreed to accept, but they were anxious that the compact should be speedily completed, graced by all the honours due to his birth and dignity. They considered, and sagaciously, that in proportion as the young Duke could be taught and brought to appreciate the respect rendered to his station, the more would he improve in discretion, and become formidable before the world at large.

The  
 Normans  
 request  
 that  
 Richard  
 may be  
 knighted  
 by Duke  
 Hugh.

§ 48. According to the pristine Teutonic usage, it was needed that the transition from youth to manhood should be marked by investing the Tyro with virile arms. In order therefore that Richard might possess the full complement of worship, he must be dubbed a Knight: and Hugh-le-Grand cordially seized the opportunity of conferring a distinction, which, binding him closer to the Norman Duke, redounded to his own superiority.

Hugh spared neither cost nor exertion whereby he could render the ceremonial worthy

of both parties, displaying the wealth and munificence of the *Parrain*, and, at the same time, thoroughly conformable to the genius and buoyant spirit of the young Prince, his son by military adoption and by marriage. Twenty Donzels of like age with Richard, the flower of Normandy and of Brittany, accompanied their Duke to Paris, and the remark that the youths were all born of noble lineage, must not be rejected as a statement merely inserted to complete a distich.—Clad in the mantles fashioned according to Hugh's peculiar taste, and of which the materials, precious silk and brilliant ermine, were supplied by his liberality, the Bachelors followed their young Sovereign.—Each in due order and assigned degree received from Hugh the trenchant sword. He duly bestowed the accolade, and the whole pageant was conducted with unprecedented splendour.

Hugh as-  
sents—  
splendour  
of the  
ceremonial.

“Unprecedented,”—at least in France,—We speak from the book when making this assertion. During the Carlovingian era, the creation of a Knight,—a transaction unquestionably of ordinary occurrence,—since it must have taken place, from time to time, in every family whose lands extended to the quota of *mansi* which cast upon the owner the obligation of full military service,—is mentioned only occasionally and rarely,—slurred over, when recorded, as a matter hardly deserving attention. The Chroniclers never

942—954

945—946

notice the event emphatically. The imaginative Charlemagne delighted in the lays of the heroic age, but no festivities are commemorated as gracing Louis-le-Debonnaire's investiture at Ratisbon.—Louis-le-Debonnaire, in like manner, performing the same office towards Charles-le-Chauve, conducts himself austere, without any peculiar adornment of stately grandeur. Not so in Britain, where the youthful Aspirant's admission into the fellowship of war, was accepted as the fitting opportunity of enabling the Sovereign to manifest his courteous magnificence. Of this national feeling, Alfred, when we behold him knighting the young and already glorious Athelstan, affords a picturesque example, dropping the purple robe upon his fair-haired grandson's shoulders, and belting the youth with the broad gemmed baldrick, to which was pendant the golden-sheathed Saxon sword.

Probability  
that Hugh-  
le-Grand  
followed  
the ex-  
ample of  
Anglo-  
Saxon  
England.

We are approaching the shadowy borders connecting history and romance, but we dare not linger in sight of Fairy-land, nor indulge in discussing the mysterious transmission of British traditions to their Conquerors. Neither pause we dreaming whether that Saxon sword ought not to be admired as the keenest of blades, forged by the "cunning smith," the mythic Welland—he whom Celt and Teuton equally claim—the weapon, which, after many translations, travelled

to the Treasure-vault of Winchester. But when we recollect how Hugh-le-Grand had been familiarized with the customs and usages prevailing in the Anglo-Saxon Court, it cannot be repro-<sup>942—954</sup>  
bated as an extravagant supposition, if we con-<sup>945—946</sup>  
jecture that the Duke of France was emulating the impressive ceremonials which he had witnessed in the Palaces of Imperial Albion.—England seems to have set the fashion in more ways than we are accustomed to suspect. The singularly remarkable adoption by the French, of the Anglo-Saxon coronation ritual, verbally and literally, affords an example, equally perplexing and irrefragable, of the influences shed forth from this Island.

Henceforward, the title of "*Princeps Francorum, Burgundionum Britonum atque Nortmannorum*" might be justly bestowed upon Hugh-le-Grand. The service of ten Knights, which the Norman Dukes rendered or refused to render, when the Kings of France took the field, may be imputed to the recognition whereby Richard placed himself under Hugh's suzerainty. Richard's homage to Louis may have endured during the life of the latter, but Richard ceased to be Louis's liegeman when Louis died. Upon the demise of Louis, Richard did not become the liegeman of Lothaire the son of Louis, nor did Richard recognize as his Lord, the last Louis of Charlemagne's line. But after Hugh-le-Grand's

Feudal  
dependance  
of Nor-  
mandy  
upon  
France  
under  
the third  
Dynasty,  
the re-  
sult of  
Richard's  
commenda-  
tion to  
Hugh.



942—954

945—946

death, then Richard became the liegeman of Hugh Capet, to whom the Suzerainty descended, and the Duke of Normandy stood foremost as the Premier Lay-peer of the fleurdelised crown, by reason that he had come in with the Founder of the third Dynasty,—Hugh Capet,—who came in himself, not by inheritance, but by conquest.

Richard  
introduces  
Feudality  
into  
Normandy.

§ 49. Hitherto, our information concerning the tenure of land in Normandy, does not extend beyond the general impression, that, although the title which Rollo's followers primarily obtained through military occupancy, had been sanctioned by his assent, yet the constitutional engagement was incomplete, their obligations were not accurately defined, nor did their rights originate in any law, except that hold-fast law which is strongest of all. The Tenants, were therefore more or less exposed, to the power which the Sovereign might exercise, discreetly or indiscreetly:—hence the Riulph rebellion. Even in Scandinavia, the Odal land-holders were not always effectually secured against the aggressions of their Sovereigns. Taking these circumstances into consideration, we shall therefore not be entirely unprepared for the intelligence, that, when Richard returned from Paris, supported by Hugh-le-Grand's suzerainty, he should have exerted his own prerogative in a manner very grateful to those who profited by it, though affording a warning evidence of the Sovereign's

Richard  
founds the  
Norman  
Baronage.

autocracy. — Whether upon the suggestion of Hugh-le-Grand, or otherwise, Richard forthwith enforced a most extensive conversion of allodial lands into feudal tenure. The Nobles being assembled in Rollo's Hall, the submission which Duke Richard had rendered to Duke Hugh was exacted by Duke Richard from the greater number of his Vassals: and the Baronage, as we may now henceforth designate the upper stratum of Norman society, either accepted their Sovereign's bounty upon his own terms, or received a new investiture of their lands.

942—954  
945—946

Very graciously was this great territorial settlement effected, although the process manifested most clearly to the Normans, that it depended entirely upon the young Prince's good will and pleasure, whether he should clench his fist or open his palm. Historical traditions have preserved the incipient paragraphs of the enfeoffment Roll.—Osmond de Centvilles was called up first, and obtained that ample endowment, which, during many generations, continued to enrich his progeny.

The three first Barons of Normandy — Osmond de Centvilles, Bernard the Dane, and Yvo de Belesme.

Next, Bernard the Dane,—Bernard, fully acknowledged as Premier Baron, yet, on this occasion, and for this time and turn, postponed by Richard's laudable, or at least, excusable, gratitude to the claims of Osmond, that vigilant, active, and affectionate friend, through whose exertions he was delivered from the gloomy cap-

942-954  
 945-946

tivity which had endangered, not merely his liberty, but his life.

Richard's  
 extensive  
 domains  
 afterwards  
 granted  
 away to his  
 children  
 and con-  
 nexions.

Yvo de Bélesme, third in order, received his endowment: and the assertion, that not one of those who had faithfully served under Guillaume Longue-épée was neglected, implies that the transaction should be viewed as being in the nature of a final establishment of territorial duties and obligations throughout the "Terra Normannorum." After making all these concessions, dictated equally by liberality, fair dealing, and sound policy, very extensive domains still remained to Richard. These, however, being subsequently alienated by his bounteous profusion, became the Counties, the Seignories, and the Baronies of his children, his half-brother, and his other connexions. And, certain it is, that the Norman system of tenure became developed with greater coherence and regularity than in any other province of Capetian France.

Apprehen-  
 sions ex-  
 cited in the  
 Carlo-  
 vingian  
 States  
 by the  
 alliance  
 between  
 France  
 and  
 Normandy.

§ 50. The alliances, connubial and political, concluded between Richard and Hugh-le-Grand, created great sensation throughout the Carolingian States on either side the Rhine. Much uneasiness was excited amongst all who were in anywise opposed to Richard. The new organization imparted to Normandy, glared portentously. No one could exactly predict how this re-formation of the Norman State would

work; yet, it was a patent fact, that the materials composing the hitherto imperfectly aggregated "monarchy" were now recast into the shape of a robust and compact military power, available for all the designs which the ambitious lineage of Robert-le-Fort might form. Hugh-le-Grand could afford to observe his self-denying vow, in order that it might be broken by that sturdy boy now growing up to manhood, who would advance with Duke Richard by his side.

Normandy constituted a middle term between Pagan Danishry and Western Christianity: and, alarmed by the union of the interests of Normandy with Hugh-le-Grand's interests, the Carlovingian States were preparing to meet their enemies. Hugh-le-Grand's revelations of the dangers imminently threatening Normandy, and upon which he grounded his arguments as to the expediency of Richard's alliance with him, were incontrovertibly correct. Louis, unflinching in the determination of regaining his ancestral rights, steadily contemplated another invasion: whilst Otho, distant as the Normans might be from his own territories, had sufficient reason to be rendered uneasy by their aggrandisement. And both Louis and Otho were kept in a state of constant irritation by the incitements of Normandy's evil genius, the Flemish Count Arnoul.

Seventy-six years of age, Arnoul the son

942-964  
945-946

Louis and  
Otho,—  
their en-  
during en-  
mity  
against  
Richard.

942—954

945—946

Arnoul  
the evil  
genius of  
Normandy.

of Baudouin-le-Chauve, demands to be honoured as a patriarch amongst all contemporary Chiefs, Princes, Rulers and Kings. From his earliest youth, had Arnoul been taught that his primary moral duty was hatred towards the Danes. Baudouin-le-Chauve could tell him how Baudouin-bras-de-Fer, his grandfather, the Lord Marcher, had received fertile Flanders from old Charles-le-Chauve, the Emperor, upon condition of defending the Empire against the Pirates: and Arnoul was perseveringly consistent to the last. In Arnoul's own estimation, Guillaume Longue-épée's slaughter was always a righteous deed. The antipathy he entertained towards Richard amounted, as the Normans said, to absolute devilry. It should seem that senescence had somewhat enfeebled Arnoul's firm mind; he was a brave man, a kind and sagacious ruler of his prosperous people, but he was unreasonably, nay, almost insanelly, haunted by the terrific apprehensions of the vengeance he might sustain from Richard.—Richard would conquer Flanders, hang him, flay him, burn him alive.

Arnoul  
excites  
Louis and  
Otho to  
co-operate  
for the  
destruction  
of  
Richard.

Under these impressions, Richard's destruction was a matter of life or death to Arnoul. For the purpose of accomplishing this deliverance, he was now employed, astutely and diligently, in negotiating a warlike coalition between Louis and Otho, such as would enable them to crush the enemy.

It might be urged that there was a moral obstacle to this alliance. Louis had just sworn perpetual peace to Richard at Saint Clair-sur-Epte: but oaths and pledges and promises did not oppose the slightest hinderance. There was however a real difficulty,—Louis had not the means, and unless Otho assisted strenuously, the war could not be continued with any reasonable prospect of success.

§ 51. Would Otho exert himself?—Gerberga, when she recently solicited Otho to help her persecuted husband, might have anticipated that he would make some active exertions on behalf of a brother Monarch: indeed, for his own sake Otho could not fail to sympathize, but no satisfactory result had ensued.

This slackness can, however, be sufficiently explained. Heavy was the blow which had fallen upon Otho. The pious, the wise, the tender Editha, had been borne to her tomb in the Dom of Magdeburg, leaving an only son, Liudolph, then sixteen years of age. All the love which Otho entertained for the mother he transferred to her child. He forthwith, by a solemn instrument, designated Liudolph as his successor; and the royal title was confirmed by the oaths of allegiance, which, in pursuance of Otho's command, all the Prelates and Nobles swore to their future Sovereign.—Why this uneasiness? No fraternal rival

942—954  
945—946

Otho  
apparently  
neglectful  
of Louis.

Death of  
Queen  
Editha,  
leaving an  
only son,  
Liudolph,  
whom Otho  
appoints  
his suc-  
cessor.

942—954

946—947

existed who might compete with Liudolph and contest his rights; but Otho had painful reasons to recollect the unnatural conflict which raged erewhile between himself and his younger brother, Henry the Porphyrogenitus. Henry was a powerful Prince, in full vigour, and according to all human probability would be Otho's survivor.—Might not the Saxon King therefore reasonably fear, lest Henry the Duke of Bavaria, son of the crowned King and crowned Queen, would seize the kingdom of which he had been deprived: inasmuch as Otho, his elder though usurping brother, not having a lawful title himself, could transmit none to his heirs. Therefore these precautions were adopted by the anxious father for the purpose of affording every constitutional guarantee which might ensure the dear Liudolph's accession, when he, the parent, should be removed.

Grudgings  
between  
Otho and  
Louis  
concerning  
Lorraine.

Another co-operating cause probably tended to enfeeble Otho's exertions on behalf of Louis, —the edginess subsisting between both parties by reason of the pretensions which they respectively asserted to Lorraine. All the accumulated traditions of discord, and bloodshed, and hatred concerning this debatable land, operated in fomenting their mutual ill-will. During the first flush of transient success, Louis had apparently made no inconsiderable progress in regaining the object of contention. He prided

himself when he could declare in his royal Characters that he had commenced the "re-integration" of the realm.—The process of re-integration had now been arrested.—The process of disintegration was advancing with fearful rapidity.—Yet Louis clung to his claims, and though unable to maintain them, they stood in Otho's way. Shadows are solidified into substances, and substances attenuated into shadows, by the inconsequence and inconsistency of man's head and heart. Louis, whenever any opportunity arose, plainly manifested that he reckoned himself the lawful Sovereign of Lorraine, a province appertaining to his paternal inheritance. Otho, who could not demand Lorraine through his ancestors, was therefore the more sensitive of the influence which an adverse right, so grounded, might exercise. The anxiety evinced by all parties to have their contested titles "quieted," as lawyers say, may be remarked throughout the whole of this period, showing, any how, that the abstract principles of justice were not entirely forgotten.

942—954  
 946—947

Otho  
 anxious to  
 "quiet his  
 title" to  
 Lorraine.

Sagacious Arnoul therefore earnestly urged Louis to abandon the quarrel. He suggested doubts whether Lorraine could be any longer conscientiously the subject of litigation. Arnoul argued upon the cession made by Charles the father of Louis to Henry the father of Otho, who would have been father-in-law to Louis had he



942—954  
 946—947

lived:—bold King Henry. Even if Lorraine really belonged to Louis, would it not be much more beneficial for himself and his family were he to bestow the dominion upon his faithful consort's brother, thus subsidizing Otho by a comparatively costless sacrifice. Let Otho and Louis concentrate all their strength against the two usurpers, Hugh and Richard. — Paris taken, their march must be directed to Normandy. If Louis could be enabled to obtain the actual possession of Normandy in exchange for his hypothetical Lotharingian sovereignty, he would strike a most profitable bargain.—Normandy so rich and full of resources!—Then Arnoul alluded to Gerberga's primitive project, concerted when she kept Richard in her custody at Laôn. — Normandy would furnish such a noble appanage for either of their sons.

Arnoul's  
 exertions  
 to effect  
 the coalition.

Arnoul, who had out-lived his gout, or perhaps had no more occasion for it, was indefatigable. He passed and repassed from despoiled Compiègne to splendid Aix-la-Chapelle. His arguments and energy prevailed with Otho. Affection for his own sister Gerberga, and the feeling that, in many respects his own well-doing was identified with the prosperity of Louis, conjoined to the opportunity of settling a long-continued dispute upon an advantageous basis, induced him to agree that he would combine with Louis in the enterprise.

§ 52. Having held his general muster at <sup>942—954</sup>   
 Cambray, it was in the midst of sultry summer <sup>946—947</sup>   
 that Otho commenced the campaign. Not will- <sup>946—July.</sup>   
 ing to expose his precious Liudolph to the dan- <sup>Otho mus-</sup>   
 gers of war, Otho was accompanied by a Prince <sup>ters his</sup>   
 of the Royal blood, an Edeling, a Nephew, a <sup>troops at</sup>   
 sister's son, who became a very prominent per- <sup>Cambray.</sup>   
 sonage in the expedition. And yet we do not <sup>He is ac-</sup>   
 know anything concerning him beyond the <sup>companied</sup>   
 incidental particulars recorded by the Nor- <sup>by his</sup>   
 man historians; and these are so desultory <sup>Nephew.</sup>   
 that they do not even mention the name of the   
 Edeling.—He was a rash and boastful young   
 man, much loved by his royal uncle, proud of   
 his sword, proud of his harness, proud of his   
 prowess, which, according to his own accounts   
 of his achievements, he had manifested in the   
 Sclavonian Marches against the barbarian,   
 Pagans.

Obedience   
 rendered   
 to the   
 summons   
 of Otho.

Obedying Otho's summons, the wide regions   
 acknowledging his sway, extending from the   
 Carpathian Mountains to the Jura, a Realm be-   
 ginning to deserve the appellation of an Empire,   
 sent forth their due contingent and service.   
 Amongst other vassals or dependants, we may   
 remark that Otho was joined by Conrad, "King   
 of Geneva," under which style we might have   
 some difficulty in recognizing the King of Bur-   
 gundy, yet the title is not undeserving of notice,   
 as embodying the very few remaining recollec-

942—954 } tions of a kingdom practically effaced from his-  
 946—947 } torical memory.

Numbers, discipline, arms and armour, equally contributed to render Otho's many-nationed Host very remarkable. The combined forces comprehended thirty-two "Legions." We are not furnished with any data enabling us to ascertain the numerical strength of the bodies so designated, but the expression suggests the idea of a regular military organization imposed by the great Commander.

Equipment  
 of Otho's  
 army,—  
 'the cha-  
 peaux de  
 paille.'

Their equipment, as we are told, exhibited one memorable feature. Save four individuals, all the troops appeared wearing hats of straw. Bovo, the famous Abbot of Corbey, and his three Knights who followed him to the war, were alone excepted. Their nonconformity to the regulations must have excited much remark, the fact being very specially commemorated by Widukind, or Wittekind, our primary authority during the Saxon reigns. *Et revera cum esset magnus valde exercitus, triginta scilicet duarum legionum, non est inventus qui fœnino non uteretur pileo, nisi Corbeius Abbas nomine Bovo, cum tribus sequacibus.*—The account of Otho's straw-hatted army constitutes a stock anecdote in his biography; and their rustic head-gear has given rise to much controversy amongst the German historians, perhaps rather more than the question is worth. The obstinate manuscripts

refuse to contribute any various readings offering a different sense. The learned and indefatigable enquirers, who guide us in this portion of our narrative, have therefore, by various versions, attempted to remove the presumed absurdity of the literal statement, and divers critical emendations of the text have also been offered.

942—954  
946—947

One conjectural commentary, not destitute of plausibility, may be quoted.—It is, that the soldiers were armed with metal helmets, shaped like the conical thatching of a barley-mow, such being the modern "*pickelhaube*" still commonly worn in the Prussian army; and that Otho, when boasting of his array, employed a sportive expression, which, accepted literally, gave rise to the notion that his warriors were thus simply provided. Had not so much erudition been expended on this historical problem, it might have been suspected that the convenience of a cool and light head-covering for the soldiery, about to commence a very long and fatiguing march during the Dog-days, afforded a sufficient reason for its adoption, possibly by Otho's prudent suggestions.—And the more so, since Abbot Bovo, as the Chronicle of the House informs us, speedily conformed to the rule, and donned a summer-hat like the rest.—*Ivit Bovo noster cum Ottone Rege ejusque immenso exercitu, gestans pileum æstivalem contra Capetum.*

Disquisitions concerning the straw hats.

Otho began the war by emphatically an-

942—954

946—947

Unwise  
arrogance  
exhibited  
equally  
by Otho  
and by  
Hugh-le-  
Grand.

nouncing, as his main and primary object, the redressal of the wrongs which Louis had sustained. No reparation did Otho deign to ask from Hugh-le-Grand; no further challenge given: in defiance he hastened onwards as an avenger.

How  
Hugh-le-  
Grand  
boasted of  
his men.

Otho's audacity provoked Hugh-le-Grand exceedingly.—The quantum of the antient Frankish blood actually subsisting in the "Regnum Caroli," as France was sometimes denominated by the Germans, may have been more or less diluted: but the French still contemned the Saxons as an inferior race. Hugh-le-Grand, influenced by this pretension, spake insolently of the foe. He swore by the soul of his father King Robert, who had perished on the battle-field when vindicating his Royal dignity, that he, Duke Hugh, would bring more troops to surround the vain-glorious Saxons than Otho had ever seen. Such were his people compared with Otho's, that each Frankishman would swallow seven Saxon spears at one gulp, and be no worse for what he had taken in.—Otho indulged in corresponding bravadoes. Tale-bearers seem to have fetched and carried the stories to and fro, and, of course, they were envenomed by transmission. It was during this exchange of idle and arrogant objurgations, that Otho boasted how his straw-hatted soldiers would appal Duke Hugh by the mere spectacle of their numbers.

Hugh's indignation, however, was not allowed by him to exhale in empty vapouring, nor did the Frenchman's rodomontade diminish the General's sagacity. Garrisons were placed in the principal fortresses of those districts through which it was apprehended that the enemy would march. Senlis received a large proportion of the Norman contingent, such as the antient city's importance deserved. At Laôn, so recently wrenched from the dominion of Louis, additional outworks were erected, particularly calculated to strengthen the huge tower. As for Rheims, being then in the possession of the Vermandois Archbishop Hugh, it was expected that the pugnacious Prelate, aided by his numerous partizans, could sufficiently resist any forces likely to be brought against him. Paris was put into a full state of defence. And Hugh also adopted various well-planned devices, for the purpose of resisting the enemy's progress.

942—954

946—947

Hugh-le-Grand's preparations for the defence of his dominions.

§ 53. Otho and Conrad having crossed the French border, Louis came forward and received his royal friends. The three Kings greeted each other cordially: and, confident in their military, as well as political strength, they determined to commence by attempting Laôn. Louis, so well acquainted with the position, would scarcely have joined in the movement, had he not been encouraged by a rea-

Meeting of Otho, Conrad, and Louis.

942—954

943—947

Otho and  
Louis at-  
tempt  
Laôn, but  
abandon  
the enter-  
prise.

sonable prospect of success. The cavalry occupied the undulating valleys, that pleasant country into which Richard had made his escapade, and they cerned the lofty fortress on all sides. Could Louis have recovered the antient royal residence, such a visible remitter to his pristine royal estate would have been very advantageous. He was, however, disappointed. Laôn looked down upon her old master with a frowning brow: Hugh - le - Grand's additional fortifications answered effectually in keeping Louis at bay: but, even more detrimental to the King's cause was the circumstance, that amongst the Citizens, many were becoming well affected towards his rival; and the enterprise was abandoned.

Siege of  
Rheims—  
Inhabitants  
unfavour-  
able to  
Louis.

Not disheartened by this mortifying repulse, the three Kings forthwith directed their march to Rheims. They encamped before the City. Gerberga joined her husband, and the allies energetically commenced the siege. Archbishop Hugh, as of yore, persisted in defying the royal authority, whilst he boldly asserted his pretensions against his ecclesiastical competitor. At Rheims also, Louis was losing ground. The Citizens, or their majority, generally held with their Archbishop, now the man of their choice:—so that in one sense their conduct might have been said to be loyal, and, in another, disloyal. The combined forces blockaded the City closely. Several of Archbishop Hugh's Vermandois rela-

tions or connexions, men of high estate, were serving in the hostile army. The Citizens defended the place valiantly. Frequent sallies ensued. During six days the walls and buildings were battered with the volleys of stones and missiles darted from the French and German artillery. The contest had become extremely bitter. Louis and Otho were infuriated, and loudly declared, that when they should regain possession of the antient Metropolis—an event upon which they confidently calculated—they would pluck out the Archbishop's eyes.

Examples of such brutal vengeance, exercised by the laity upon the priesthood, up to the Pope himself, were not very unfrequent. Archbishop Hugh, bold as he was, became anxious for his personal safety; and, consulting with his friends in the Camp, he solicited them to give him their honest opinion, whether, supported as he was, he should take the chance of resisting to the utmost, or surrender. These friends assured him, that should the City be stormed, Otho and Louis would certainly realize their declaration:—they were speaking the truth,—it was not a threat, but a resolve.—The Parvulus now again counselled with his friends within and without the City, and with his retainers, and the result was, that he thought it more prudent to avoid incurring such a desperate risk. Archbishop Hugh and his knights evacuated

942—954  
946—947

Rheims  
surrenders  
to the  
Allies—



942—954

946—947

Archbishop  
Hugh re-  
treats, and  
Artaldus is  
restored.

Rheims, and the City surrendered. Artaldus, his rival being thus expelled, was restored to his See: but his enthronement assumed the unpleasant appearance of being a military triumph, rather than an ecclesiastical installation. Nor, could it have escaped observation, that Artaldus was re-introduced to his clergy, and replaced in the exercise of his functions, without any regular process: merely by the ministration of two foreign Lotharingian Prelates,—Frederick Archbishop of Mayence and Robert Archbishop of Treves, Otho's Arch-chancellor,—neither of whom could pretend to possess any canonical authority within that Province of the Gauls.

Gerberga having been left by her husband in command at Rheims, further operations ensued. Emboldened by their success, the Kings advanced, and renewed their warfare against Hugh-le-Grand in his own territories and domains. Laôn, however, they dared not attempt again, so they stationed themselves before Senlis. Here however also they were thwarted. Large reinforcements of French and Normans had been thrown into the City,—the allies contented themselves with setting fire to the suburbs,—and then, having perpetrated other acts of violence, they marched straight onwards to Paris.

Hugh-le-  
Grand's  
prepara-  
tions for  
defence.

§ 54. Forewarned, forearmed,—Hugh-le-Grand cleared away almost all the large craft, twenty miles up and twenty miles down, except

about ten or twelve, which, floating in the pool, were moored, as it should seem, on the Saint-Germain bank. Some small boats also remained. But the Duke made proclamation, forbidding the hiring of them out to strangers under a heavy penalty. These measures were obviously adopted for the purpose of impeding the allies in their movements; whether they designed to cross the river or to use the water-way, by which they might convey either troops or stores towards Rouen.

This portion of our history is peculiarly hard to construe. The French and their Chroniclers were ashamed of the campaign's result. Their fortunes are indicated in a single phrase; and the Germans entirely ignore, or rather were ignorant of the French proceedings, whilst the Norman authorities overwhelm us by rhetorical and poetical exuberance. It appears, however, from subsequent transactions, that Hugh-le-Grand despatched an effective body of troops to Normandy: and then, having quartered a strong garrison in Paris, he retired southward, probably to Dourdon on the Orge, an antient domainial palace appertaining to his family. But we have no other certain intelligence concerning the Duke previously to our meeting him again at Orleans, where he resided till the conclusion of the war. He abandoned his Duchy to the inroads of the enemy, but, at the same time, unques-

942—954  
946—947

Difficulties attending this portion of Norman history.

Hugh retreats to Orleans, awaiting the event of the campaign.

942—954

946—947

tionably relying that Paris would prevent any permanent conquest.—Great caution and wariness had succeeded to his bravadoes. No more talk of bolting seven Saxons at a gulp;—and his ill-wishers perhaps began to boast, on their parts, that his courage failed him. Fully assured, however, may we be, that cowardice could not be the motive which induced Hugh-le-Grand thus to expose his country to disgrace and danger, but that he had calculated the cost. Therefore, we have reason to conjecture, that at this important crisis he considered the present protection of the young Richard the main object, and, for the future, trusted to the fortuities of war.—The allies might be defeated by the Normans, or some disagreement lead to the dissolution of the confederacy.

The German army comes up before Paris.

The German forces were reckoned at thirty thousand men when they came up before Paris. Such calculations can usually be accepted only as affording a very rough estimate of numbers. But Otho's military discipline was so perfect, and his troops so scientifically marshalled, that the enumeration was probably fairly correct. By this time the light straw hats had been exchanged for bright steel: the tall tough-grained ash-treen lances of the Germans were the most formidable weapons of the kind which the Normans had ever encountered, and the Germans—the warriors who shone in the steel

helmets and brandished the tremendous lances <sup>942—954</sup>  
 —in the highest spirits, yearning for adventure. <sup>946—947</sup>  
 Otho was quite cast into the shade by the Edeling.  
 We verily believe that he liked to be so. This  
 magniloquent young Champion, who ought to  
 have figured in an “Helden-buch,”—and may be,  
 does, under some romantic name—was the very  
 pink of the army, galloping about on his proud  
 Castilian steed, flourishing his “Flamberg,” and <sup>Chivalry  
 of the  
 Edeling.</sup>  
 exhilarating his companions and followers by  
 recounting the feats of arms he had performed  
 against the outer barbarians. No one could  
 delight in the Edeling’s glory so much as his  
 uncle. Otho loved the Edeling as a son.

The Germans were supported by the Flemish <sup>Flemish  
 and French  
 troops.</sup>  
 battalions under Arnoul, stout men and heavy  
 horses, the doughty combatants of Hainault and  
 Hasbey, and Flanders, and Tournay, well pro-  
 vided with all needful equipments and useful  
 appliances,—beasts of draught and beasts of  
 burden, wains and waggons, ample teams and  
 lengthened trains. Lastly came up Louis with  
 the French forces, lithe and blithe, active and  
 spirited. But the Eagle was lost. You must  
 seek the Imperial bird perched upon Charle-  
 magne’s Pfaltz—now Otho’s—at Aix-la-Cha-  
 pelle.

No pontoons having been prepared by the  
 allies, the precautions taken by Hugh stopped  
 the progress of the invaders when they reached

942—964

946—947

Device by  
which the  
troops are  
enabled to  
cross the  
Seine.

the Seine. Ten young French knights, however, concocted a scheme for effecting the transit. By the side of the river there was a famous Seigneurial corn-mill, which supplied the city with meal. It should seem that, disguised as pilgrims, the merry and active adventurers presented themselves to the dusty master of the concern, and who was also the manager of the Duke's fisheries, a boon companion, craving a lodging till the ensuing morning. They plied him with wine, offered money, and he, enchanted by their good looks and their liberality, unlocked a boat, and thus gave them the means of crossing the water.

They accomplished their object, not much minding the sacrifice of a small boy, whom they drowned, lest he should betray them; and the old miller, the poor child's grandfather, had to swim for his life. Seventy-two barges or keels were seized by these adroit young warriors. They made nine successive trips to the opposite bank, and at each return brought over eight vessels; by which means, during that very same night, a large proportion of the German army landed on the left-hand shore.

County  
of Paris  
ravaged by  
the enemy.

The County of Paris, Hugh's peculiar possession, was thus wholly surrendered to the enemy, who, greedy and pitiless, committed frightful ravages. Hugh's abbey of St Denis had been abandoned to the protection of the

Patron saint. Otho entered the precinct, the <sup>942—954</sup> Manse being in fact Hugh-le-Grand's Palace, <sup>948—947</sup> and Louis joined him there. Very grateful was Louis to Otho for the punishment he had co-operated in inflicting upon his arch-enemy the Duke. The two Monarchs exulted in their successes. They had damaged Hugh to the extent, as they estimated, of ten thousand marks in mere plunder. Now would be the time to strike a decisive blow by seizing his Capital. And Otho, still provoked by the contumely he had received from his brother-in-law during their discreditable flying, was the most desirous to inflict this chastisement upon him, so well earned by his bitter tongue.

§ 55. Whether successful or unsuccessful, such a diversion would ill have suited Arnoul's schemes, who, working to the utmost of his might and main, continued egging Otho's ambition, with the intent of stimulating him to subvert the Norman power. He argued that to attempt the siege of Paris, would merely waste Otho's strength.—Paris did not care a whit for all that Otho could do or bring.—The lofty walls, the steady garrison, defied him; the needful reinforcements could not be easily obtained from distant Germany. But Rouen would be the easiest of conquests. The Normans were already self-subdued, scared out of their wits by the apprehension that their great City would be

Otho excited by Arnoul to persevere in the enterprise.

942—954  
 946—947
 
 exposed to the horrors of an assault. Arnoul spake as one certified that no compulsion would be needed. In the imagination of the wealthy Rouennois, he declared to Otho, their fine houses were already flaming.—Days and days before the Norman capital could be approached, King Otho would be stayed by the supplicants, offering the big black keys of the Porte Beauvoisine, and humbly entreating mercy.

Otho  
 crosses the  
 Epte with  
 his troops.

Arnoul's arguments, enforced with rancorous energy, prevailed, and the conjoined troops moved forward to the northern border. Our notices concerning them are scanty. Otho and his Germans formed the van-guard; Arnoul the centre; the French, as it should seem, took the eastern bank of the Seine, covering the rear; and all the troops having concentrated themselves somewhat below Pontoise, they advanced to the well-known Epte. The narrow river, so renowned as severing the Duchy from the Kingdom, was forded by the invaders, and they encamped upon Norman land.

Eagerly expectant was the German King. He waited and waited, but in vain. No Normans appeared, presenting the symbols of submission or proffering seizin. Otho lost patience. He rudely bullied Arnoul, scolding and upbraiding as though the Count had rendered himself answerable for the success of the enterprise: Arnoul had promised the surrender of Rouen;

—why was not the engagement performed?—  
 Arnoul was possibly not less mortified than  
 Otho. Considering his conduct throughout the  
 transaction, we are much inclined to suppose,  
 either that he was acting in concert with some  
 section or party amongst the Citizens,—may  
 be Raoul Torta's friends,—or that he was misled  
 by false revelations made for the purpose of en-  
 ticing him to destruction. Arnoul was therefore  
 driven to his shifts.—Excuses were furnished  
 by the puzzled old man, the best that could be  
 imagined. The distance was great, the roads  
 were difficult, traversing through the dreary  
 forests infested by outlaws: but let Otho go  
 forward to the bright flowing Andelle, and en-  
 camp in the pleasant meads, where the way  
 would open upon Rouen.

942—954

946—947

No opposi-  
tion offered  
by the  
Normans.

Arnoul's advice was adopted. Indeed there  
 was no choice between advancing and a dis-  
 creditable retreat. The march recommenced  
 onwards and onwards.—All quiet.—No hin-  
 derance. Otho's army, cavalry and infantry,  
 covered the country. The Germans came up to  
 the Andelle, and pitched their brilliant tents,  
 gaily decked with orfray and sendal, an in-  
 judicious though oft-practised display, calculated  
 equally to affront and tempt an enemy. No  
 result ensued. The tranquillity was mortifying.  
 No Norman troops presented themselves to op-  
 pose the Germans; neither were they arrested



942—954

946—947

Otho's  
uneasiness  
—Arnoul  
again ex-  
cites him  
to advance.

by any deputation of robed citizens, dropping on their bended knees, appealing to Otho's clemency. Otho was rendered more uneasy by this neglect than he could have been by any demonstration of resistance. It would have been a relief to Otho's discomfort, had there been the slightest sound of active hostility.

Otho's perplexities thickened upon him. The repeated contradictions between present facts and Arnoul's predictions discouraged him: and he more than ever suspected that he might have been deceived by his hoary adviser. He held a Council in his Pavilion. Arnoul was summoned to explain the aspect of affairs. The "Saracen caitiff," as the Normans were wont to call him, reverted to his previous representations. —The Rouen citizens were so aghasted, that all idea of resistance was abandoned. The fear of an assault overwhelmed them. Arnoul was assured that the rich burghers, appalled by the impending danger, had no thought save concerning their wealth; some concealing their treasures, others packing up and scurrying away. Strike the blow speedily, and two hundred thousand marks would be the army's gain. —These arguments told upon the Germans. The Nobles urged that the Norman Duchy would supply a noble appanage to the King's valiant Nephew. If he, Otho, occupied Rouen, the City would virtually become a pledge for the

true performance by Louis of his engagements respecting Lorraine, and, however operating, such a signal advantage gained by Otho would accelerate the completion of the covenant.—  
 Let the King, Arnoul now resumed, taking up the discourse, only encamp in the meadows before the Porte Beauvoisine, his very presence will command surrender.

942—954  
 946—947

The proposition of continuing the march was carried by acclamation. The Edeling himself was worked up to the highest pitch of enthusiasm: how often had he combated against Goth and Dane, Alain and Magyar, and would he not with his long Lotharingian blade now also hew filthy Normans down?

Enthusiasm of the Edeling.

§ 56. These incitements prevailed. Otho, advancing towards the Terra Normannorum, prosecuted the enterprise with encreasing zest. Had any hesitation been previously manifested, it was not for the want of that good-will which hatred inspires. Bitterly hostile were the feelings spurring on the Danskerman against the Teutscher and the Teutscher against the Danskerman,—wounds poisoned by contempt on either side,—wounds, reiterated in subsequent ages,—which, even at the present day, are raw, and easily fretted to exasperation, as we have witnessed during the conflicts which have ensued in our own times, upon the very frontier where Otho's realm was most vulnerable.—

Mutual hatred existing between the Danes and the Germans.

942—954 {  
946—947 { “Call me a Caffre, call me a Bosjeman,” ex-  
claimed a friend, born beyond the Eyder, but to  
whom in conversation an erroneous national  
origin was ascribed,—“but do not call me a  
German,”—his eyes, usually so kind, sparkling  
with rage.

Exemplifi-  
cation of  
this anti-  
pathy in  
the murder  
of God-  
frey by  
Charles-le-  
Gros and  
the Arch-  
bishop of  
Cologne.  
See vol. i.  
p. 597-600.

No contingency, since the day when Charle-  
magne saw the black sails on the verge of the  
horizon, had been more dreaded, than the estab-  
lishment of any Danish power within Germany's  
antient borders. This feeling, combining pri-  
meval dispathies with recent injuries, had sug-  
gested the assassination of the Danish Godfrey  
by his own father-in-law, and seduced even the  
Christian Prelate of Cologne to co-operate in the  
nefarious slaughter. Yet they, to themselves,  
excused the dreadful deed by the statesman's  
plea of hard necessity. However deeply we may  
condemn the sanguinary act, the end was an-  
swered. Had Godfrey lived, he probably would  
have founded a State, whether Duchy or King-  
dom, a thorn in the side of Germany no less  
pungent than the Terra Normannorum had  
proved in the Gauls. Therefore, so far as Otho  
was concerned, he wholly surrendered himself  
to Arnoul's influence: or rather, since Arnoul's  
hatred subverted Otho's own inclinations, he  
waged the war with encreasing energy.

According to the first conception of the  
alliance, the assistance rendered to Louis was

the main object sought. In the subsequent stage, <sup>942—954</sup>  
the enterprise became inflamed into a silly, yet <sup>946—947</sup>  
ferocious, wordspite quarrel between Otho and  
Hugh-le-Grand: but now, all other intentions  
had merged in Otho's desire of crushing the  
Normans,—that their ruin should be a done  
thing, and a thing done for ever. Over and above  
the general antipathy to which the Danes were <sup>Otho's fear  
and hatred  
of the Danes.</sup>  
obnoxious, there was a special cause of offence.  
Otho, magnanimous as he really was, could  
nevertheless bear malice; nor does his general  
character compel us to discard the supposition,  
that the affront he received from Guillaume  
Longue-épée, when the Pirate jostled him out of  
the higher room at Attigny, though years ago,  
still rankled in his mind.—Richard was the  
filthy Pirate's son.—No sympathy was excited in  
Otho's breast by Richard's youth; and the Ger-  
man King prepared to prosecute the invasion  
in a spirit of mortal enmity.

When Arnoul expatiated upon the terror  
which Otho's hostility had excited among the  
Normans, his representations had some founda-  
tion. Soon as the enemy had passed beyond  
Pontoise, the intelligence was borne to Rouen;  
but the danger was vividly realized,—and the  
apprehensions of the Normans had instigated  
them to avert the menaced ruin by resistance,  
not by surrender. Cleverly and boldly had <sup>Prepara-  
tions made  
by the  
Normans</sup>  
Richard and the Normans been employed whilst

942—954 awaiting the besiegers,—arrow-heads forged  
 946—947 and arbalests mounted,—missiles stored and  
 for the de- fortifications strengthened,—and cunning heads  
 fence of and fearless hearts were devising the means of  
 Rouen. engaging in mortal conflict with their enemies,  
 and yearning for the joyful hour. Nay, so sanguine were the anticipations which Richard entertained concerning the success of his plans, that he not merely provided for the defence of his City, but had also stationed the outposts and devised the ambushments whence his men were to pounce upon the enemy when they should be hunted away.

Order of  
 march of  
 the allied  
 armies.

The allies went forward, retaining the same relative positions as erewhile. The Germans in the van,—Louis bringing up the rear,—and Arnoul and the Flemings interposed between the two other armies. Thus they encamped. The Normans adhered to their policy of entire quiescence, though the Germans were braving them immediately before their walls.

No movement ensued on the Norman part: no cognizance of the enemy's presence taken by the besieged. But the ordnance was ready: stones and darts heaped and stacked behind the battlements: troops assembled where they could harass the invaders when they should retreat, an event, not considered as hypothetical, but certain: the peasantry, instructed to rise throughout the country, whilst, all around, whether at a dis-

tance or near the City, scouts were placed, cleverly concealed;—this one on the hill, and that one amidst the long grass; and a third in the thicket; and a fourth, may be, mounted on a tree. And the walls were constantly guarded by the sentinels tramping the covert-way during the dark and during the light; and a very special watch stationed on the tower of the Porte Beauvoisine, commanding the main-road, whereby, of necessity, the combined armies must march.

942—954  
946—947

On the north-east of Rouen, the City was very strongly defended with walls and ram- parts. On the south-west, flowed the wide river, crossed by that long bridge, which, when carried away by the impetuosity of the stream, was renewed by Queen Maude, whose structure existed till recent times. Through this bridge, Rouen easily communicated with all the adjacent country. Thus had Hugh-le-Grand been able to throw in his contingent—a host of well-armed knights—to aid in receiving his brothers-in-law, both or either, on the keen cusps of their lances. And Rouen was so amply supplied with provisions, that the Citizens were in no danger of being starved into submission.

Situation  
and defences  
of Rouen.

Otho therefore now found himself entirely at fault: but there was no retreating, and the difficulties, instead of causing him to lose cou-

Otho's bit-  
terness—  
sentiments  
excited  
amongst the

942—944

946—947

Normans,  
as ex-  
pressed by  
Dudo de St  
Quentin.

rage, spurred him on more eagerly against the enemy. He now pursued the enterprise with aggravated bitterness, and the opinions which the gratuitous injustice of his conduct inspired, are so forcibly expressed by the poetical historian, that, however obscure and turgid his verses may be, they are in the highest degree interesting, as genuine exponents of the coeval Norman feeling.

Dudo's ex-  
postulation  
with Otho.

Otho rex magnus recolendus atque,  
Cur Richardum percelebrem sacrumque,  
Nobilem, justumque, probum, modestum,  
Marchionem patriciumque sanctum.  
Et ducem nunc, magnanimumque fortem  
Ambis infesto laniare cœtu  
Et maligno contaminare nisu,  
Et honorem tollere principatus,  
Quin potenti sistere cogitatu  
Nutui regis superique summi?  
Posse nullus nam supero resistet,  
Velle nec jam sidereum reflectet.  
Hic comes, dux, patriciusque summus,  
Marchio, sanctus, celebris, modestus,  
Legibus plebem moderabit almis.  
Torquet astutus laceros reosque,  
Atque justis præmia digna dedet.  
Moribus sanctis meritisque fulgens  
Sic poli splendentia scandet astra.  
Tu potens rex atque vicens valensque,  
Contereris numine sempiterno,  
Incubabis ridiculæque sannæ;  
Sicque Northmannis reprobatus ibis  
Ad tuæ sedis verecundus aulam.

Otho resolved that he would provoke the Normans to come forth from their fastness and give him battle, and the Edeling gladly besought or asserted the privilege of offering the challenge. Therefore, when the German troops, early, very early in the morning, were nighing the City, they marched in full chivalrous state,—and the Edeling, mounted on his Castilian steed, his shield braced, and his banderolle displayed, appeared at the head of the foremost battalion. But the scouts, on their parts, were enjoying the sport, and, whilst the Germans were progressing, their connected lines of signals conveyed the intelligence to the Warders on the Porte Beauvoisine Tower.

Accurately had the Normans calculated and anticipated the course which Otho would pursue. Seven hundred full-armed knights were marshalled within; and, amongst them, the young Richard, burning with desire to perform his first feat of arms.—The draw-bridge dropped, the iron doors opened, the Norman cavalry rushed out,—shouting (as we are told) *Dex aie*, their slogan, —and a chance-medley yet infuriate mutual onslaught ensued. Wherever the Edeling galloped, there was the fiercest fray. Wherever he wielded his gleaming blade, there, the brunt of the battle.—The long spears of the Germans, sharp-pointed and infrangible, did sanguinary execution amongst their enemies; and, during

942—954

946—947

Sally of the Normans—they are attacked by the Germans headed by the Edeling.



942—954

946—947

Exploits  
and death  
of the  
Edeling.

one collision, which might have been thought decisive, the Norman troopers appeared retreating through the Porte Beauvoisine, seeking shelter in the City.

The Edeling gave chase to the fugitives.—The confusion increased. He was seen prominent on the very draw-bridge, combating with marvellous prowess, cutting down Bretons and Normans. He was seen assailed by a tall Baiocassin Knight, and receiving the foeman's charge on his golden shield. He was seen engaged in single combat with the young Duke Richard.—He was never distinctly seen again alive, but was found lying dead on his back, his face turned towards heaven.—The death of the Edeling maddened both parties to wilder efforts, and the comparisons employed by the Chroniclers, whether in prose or rhyme, to convey an adequate idea of the struggle about the corpse, and for the corpse, and round the corpse, prove how deeply the events were impressed upon the national memory. As usual, they sought their standards of virtue in Holy Writ or the histories of the antient Empires.—Neither Cæsar nor Alexander ever shared in a more furious turmoil.—Since the old days when the mighty men of Israel fought the good fight for the Land of Promise, never a sterner strife, never a more desperate conflict.

Account of  
the battle  
from the

The basis of the narrative is said to have been derived from the testimony of an eye-wit-

ness; but portions, are almost necessarily contradictory. Accurate observation becomes impossible during such scenes of turmoil; and though we may doubt whether it was the young Richard who actually gave the mortal wound to the German champion; yet it is extremely probable that the report originated at the very time when the air was dimmed with the reek and dust of the battle. The slightest suggesting incident would suffice to propagate amongst the Normans the belief that the young Duke with his own good sword was working their deliverance.

942—964  
946—947  
narrative of  
an eye-  
witness.

We may regret the loss of the Latin history which preserved the ampler details; but we possess their substance in Benoit's version; and it would be the very prudery of criticism to reject the positive assurance, that the particulars were recorded by an actual observer. The main facts are incontestable. The Germans were completely discomfited; yet they continued defending themselves, and the Normans were busied equally in ridding themselves of their enemies, and gathering up the plunder. The number of prisoners was extraordinary. Fifteen of the most noble, and therefore the richest captives, the primest fruit of the harvest, were reserved by Richard for his own share; and, heavy were the chains and fetters with which they were loaded when they were let down into the deep damp dungeon-pit. The booty was enormous. Save

Complete  
defeat of the  
Germans.

942—954

946—947

Rejoicings  
in Rouen—  
Richard's  
dignified  
discretion.

and except the Battle of Hastings, never did the Normans gain so glorious a victory.

§ 57. Within the walls, thankfulness and gladness.—How the Normans admired their young Sovereign's aspect and bearing. His helmet battered,—hauberk dinted,—sword notched and jagged, but the edge not turned,—that sword which he had received for the defence of his people.—Their Supreme Magistrate in the curule chair, Richard was also their Commander in the field ; and his exertions during this day of days, complemented his inauguration. Unhurt, unharmed, but displaying every token of the risks he had run, he speedily exchanged the soiled acketon and cumbrous armour for the miniver robe. His first care was to visit and comfort the hurt and the wounded : and, after holding a Council, the brilliant banquet ensued. Three hundred Knights were seated at the board in the Hall, merry, yet soberly and discreetly celebrating the great success ; not a word of pride or folly : and, when they rose, the Council was resumed, and the young Richard, having made the rounds, saw the last watch set, ere he retired.

The corpse  
of the  
Edeling  
brought  
before  
Otho.

Without the walls, deep the grief and drear the mourning.—That fearful scene of desperation had ended by the recovery of the Edeling's corpse. So much of their good discipline did the Germans maintain, that, though dispersed, they did

not forget their duty. Whilst retreating, or rather fleeing to the Camp, they rallied, and, employing the broken weapons as a soldier's bier, they bore the corpse before the King. Until then, Otho had not known the full extent of the calamity. He fainted at the sight and dropped. When he revived, all the mortification occasioned by the defeat was absorbed in the sorrow he sustained. But now Louis came up as a comforter. Hard would it be to decide whether anger or dismay predominated in their minds. Their lamentations and complaints occupied their time. But they found relief amidst their cares. In any case of trouble, we resort instinctively to our first Parents' anodyne of blaming others.—And both the Kings soothed their sufferings by venting their indignation against the individual, whom they abominated as the primary cause of their misfortunes.

Whence came the evil, according to the judgment which the Monarchs formed unhesitatingly?—Not from Hugh-le-Grand, nor Hugh's fraudulent ambition; not from the young Richard, the Pirate's brazen-faced bastard; not from Bernard the Dane nor his astuteness. Still less would they have condemned themselves, as having merited the chastisement, by acknowledging in their present humiliation, the well-deserved reward earned by Otho's gibes, or the meed due to the bad faith of Louis.—No,—no fault of theirs,

942—954  
946—947

Louis  
joins him.

042—054

046—047

The Germans resolve upon renewing the attack.

—all came from that old villain Arnoul, who had seduced them into this hopeless enterprise : he must be visited by condign punishment. Yet present duties must be first performed. They must regain their honour, deliver their captives, avenge the slain.

The allies march up to Rouen.

§ 58. However diminished in numbers, the Germans continued in great force ; the French were invigorated, and Otho determined to renew the attack of Rouen.—A desperate venture, but the high-spirited warrior would try. The combined forces marched against antient Rothomagus and Rollo's towers : the Germans in the vanguard ; the Flemings in the centre ; the French forming the reserve or rear. They advanced rapidly, their horses' hoofs trampling on the yet unburied dead as they drew nigh. The ground where the conflict had chiefly raged was trodden into bloody clay.

They insult the Normans by the approach.

Ill-fated as the Edeling's scheme had proved, they tried the same device again. It was again their object to allure the Normans out from their stronghold, by placing them under the pressure of an affront calling for satisfaction. No longer had they the bold champion to tease and torment the besieged by gesture and voice, but they supplied his defiance by another insulting mode of approach. Deafening was the discordant din of aurochs-horn and sachs-horn, and cornet and trumpet, braying, blairing, pealing. As they

came nearer, their artillery and missiles did good service, and, despite the parapets, many a tall Norman was hit or shot upon the terreplain of the walls. The Porte Beauvoisine nevertheless continued shut, and the assailants began to fear that they might be disappointed in their expectation of coming to close quarters with the enemy.

Not so.—The Normans were incensed by the annoyance they received, and more by their enemy's systematic insolence. They could endure it no longer. A postern gate opened, Richard taking the command, the Normans, as we are told, raising their war-cry, "Dex aie!" and their standard-bearer, Roger de Toeny's antecessor, waving the scarlet Standard. A terrible carnage ensued in the fosses and in the meadows, Richard exciting the fury: his own men, and Alain Barbe-torte's men, and Hugh-le-Grand's Duchy men, all vying with Normandy. The butchery was outrageous, and heaps of corpses added to the heaps which were already festering on the ground. This sortie decided the fate of the day. The assailants fled, as angry as they were dispirited, and sought cover in the camp where Otho abided.

They were fairly secure there, for the French reserve now came into play, five hundred knights having been left stationed on the field, where they might watch the proceedings of the Nor-

942—954  
946—947

The Normans sally.

The assailants retreat.

Proceedings in the German camp.

942—954

946—947

Funeral  
services  
performed  
for the  
Edeling in  
Otho's pa-  
vilion.

mans. The position was selected by Louis, who spared this cohort, the élite of his army, without however neglecting the protection of his allies. On the whole, the Germans were in better plight than could have been anticipated. The camp was amply provisioned. The invaders had found good means of helping themselves. Fires were lighted, and burnt cheerfully, caldrons and kettles set and slung, and the soldiers enjoyed their ample meal, whilst Otho employed himself upon the preparations needful for rendering the last tokens of respect to the departed hero. Bishops and Barons being assembled, the corpse was deposited in the royal pavilion. Amongst the stores which testified King Otho's opulence amidst the perils of war, sufficient silk had been found to furnish a rich and ample funereal pall. The liche-wake was held;—tapers gleamed in the pendent "corona," and the suffrages were offered for the dead man's soul till the stars disappeared in the dawning.

Otho had not slept, and could not sleep; but the solemn duties which banished slumber, had tranquillized his mind. The day broke; the morning sky shone translucent; and the rising sun was simultaneously serenaded by man and by the fowls of heaven. All along Rouen walls, and all upon the platforms of Rouen towers, the Minstrels were sending forth their jocund notes and cheerful music; the tones of flute and

flageolette accompanying chofus and roundelay, and, as our Trouveur delights in describing, the birds vied with the musicians, greeting the glad light; and the air was filled with their sweet jargonings, the juggling and the piping, and the whistling and the twittering, and the cooing and the cawing, and the chattering and the calling of merle and mavis, finch and chaffinch, swallow and sparrow, ringdove and turtledove, pye or jay. And Otho's spirit was now thoroughly refreshed, his judgment became clear, and he determined to persist in wrestling against his ill-fortunes.

942—954  
946—947

Otho recovers his spirits, and surveys the vicinities of the City.

Unarmed, Otho hastily mounted his horse, rode the Rouen fortifications round and around; reconnoitering and surveying the whole site and City. Well acquainted was Otho already with the strength of Rouen walls and the massy height of the Rouen towers; but his attention was now particularly directed to the river, the chief source of Rouen's prosperity; yet nevertheless counterbalanced by some disadvantages. Otho noticed that the bridge was already thronged by passengers, and also by carts and wains, mostly laden with victual, which the Norman capital's population required. As long as the bridge remained open, there was no chance of reducing Rouen by famine. All this in favour of the City. But Otho also observed that the bridge was not sufficiently protected, the antient tête-de-pont,



942—964

946—947

the bridge-head, Ermondeville, now the extensive fauxbourg of Saint Sever, being then only a small village, through which an entry could be effected without danger.

Otho proposes a blockade.

The German captains do not agree to the scheme.

Otho adequately appreciated the various obstacles which would attend any attempt to take the City by storm ; but the estimate did not discourage him, for the allied troops were still very powerful, notwithstanding their losses. The French army, not having taken any share in the recent engagements, continued in full strength ; the Germans, unbroken, numerous and well-armed ; and therefore, estimating the heartiness of others by his own, it appeared to him, that, could the besiegers establish a strict blockade on both sides of the river, north-east and south-west, the City would be compelled to surrender. Were this scheme of operations adopted, he made sure of certain success. A Council of War was convened—the high Princes of Allemain and the choicest of his circle. But whilst the courage of the great Commander had risen, the spirit of his Captains had sunk ; they were startled by this proposition, which they deemed a desperate impracticability. They expatiated upon their difficulties. No vessels had they ; by no ford could the deep tidal river be crossed, even when at the lowest. The rushing flood was as dangerous as the sea. Too strong were the Normans—too clever—too mighty in arms.

But there were subtle perils more threatening than adverse elements, hostility more to be feared than the sword. The succession of calamities which the Germans had sustained, encreased their natural impatience to exonerate themselves from blame. Not venturing to accuse their own Commander of incompetency, they cautiously and gravely reiterated their surmises that they had been the victims of treachery. But, though their suspicions had assumed a definite shape, they hesitated to incur the odium of naming the betrayer. They only continued pleading that Otho must yield to insurmountable necessity. Let not Otho grieve himself by self-condemnation: his error had consisted in giving credence to a deceiver.

942—954  
 {  
 946—947

§ 59. Under this stress, Otho, he who had brought thirty thousand men into the field, was compelled to sue for a truce;—a supplication decently veiled under the disguise of a request, that he and his Nobles might be permitted to visit Saint Ouen's shrine. There did Otho desire to watch and pray,—and the Abbey would supply a decorous and honourable place of interment for his noble kinsman.

Otho solicits a truce under the plea of paying his devotions at St Ouen.

Courteously did Richard accede to the solicitation and grant the safe-conduct, the locality being peculiarly well calculated for the convenience and interest of either party. Saint Ouen was situated beyond the City walls, and Otho

942—954

946—947

The "Parlement" of  
St Ouen.

would be under the observation of the Normans, and, at the same time, protected against any surprise by the veneration which the consecrated precinct inspired. Thither Otho repaired, attended by his Princes and Captains and men of mark, an ample and important assembly, which the Norman Trouveur designates as the "*Parlement*," a term so comprehensive in the antient vernacular idiom and so familiar in our own. Full as the Meeting was, it might however be remarked, that a most influential member was absent, a member who had not been summoned, the hitherto animating spirit of the war—the Flemish Arnoul.

Otho never belied his reputation for liberality. A munificent gift to the Community, seven ingots of gold laid upon the altar, probably assisted the monks in preserving the tradition of these transactions, and the three rich scarlet carpets which covered the estrade, also remained as further memorials in the Abbey.

Otho, unsupported by his vassals, now cast the whole responsibility upon them. Would they adhere to the opinion that Rouen was impregnable? He had been deluded by the plausible representations which a false traitor had made; and there was no help for it. They had only a choice of evils; and let them reconsider and finally decide which course would be the more prudent, to prosecute or to abandon the

enterprise? Otho received the answer he had suggested, and somewhat more. Hitherto, all who believed that Arnoul was untrue, had spoken under their breath. None had dared expressly to charge so powerful a Potentate with treason. But they now opened their minds, declaring him to be the culprit; nor, was there any disgrace in confessing, that Otho's cause had been sacrificed by fraud.—Faithfully had Otho performed his covenant with Louis. Discouraged and troubled, the French, scarcely able to defend themselves, would be unwilling or incompetent to afford any farther aid. The Edeling had perished; the power of Normandy rendered the contest desperate; and Otho must retire.

942—954  
946—947

The German nobles name Arnoul as the Traitor.

Otho had now obtained what he sought—the impeachment of the Lord Marcher. But this success did not satisfy him: he wanted more, a complete and final deliverance from the Traitor. He therefore proposed that Arnoul should be given over into the power of Richard, who would deal, as became a son, with his Father's treacherous murderer.—Let Arnoul be seized, bound in chains, and surrendered to the avenger. The honest Germans had, however, a more acute sense of honour than their Sovereign, and protested against thus rendering evil for evil. Their opinion, however, was unaltered. The more speedy the retreat, the better; the longer they tarried, the more irremediable the danger;

Otho proposes that Arnoul should be surrendered to Richard; but the German nobles refuse, and insist upon Otho's retreat.

942—954 the City was impregnable; no proposals would  
 946—947 be made by the Normans; and further delay  
 would involve them in destruction.

Otho  
 abandons  
 Rouen.

The decision given, the members dispersed; but ere Otho departed, he reverently re-entered the Sanctuary, and once more knelt before the altar, and he then went forth right royally and solemnly. The Citizens flocked out to salute the King. Otho gave his last look at Rouen;—the day was a day of peace—no bow was bent, no weapon unsheathed; he repaired to his Pavilion: and though the anecdote be homely, it marks the tranquillity which had been restored to Otho by the determination he unwillingly adopted,—a determination related by the historian without any circumlocution,—how the King ordered his noontide meal to be made ready.

Arnoul's  
 uneasiness.

§ 60. Arnoul's cheek must have burnt whilst the "Parliament" was sitting in the Abbey of Saint Ouen. Otho's objurgations during the halt at the Epte, when he declared to Arnoul that he held him responsible for the result of the campaign, seem to have pressed grievously upon the old man's mind. It was upon his responsibility that Otho had undertaken the enterprise. Each successive disappointment which Otho sustained could not have failed to render him more ungracious: and the exclusion of Arnoul from the Council,—Arnoul, hitherto the constant satellite of the German

Sovereign during the campaign,—an insult humiliating him before all the world,—was also an indication that a sterner vengeance than mere disgrace was intended.

No secrecy of debate could silence the reporters. The King's proposition oozed out, but the reply of the Council was not known, and it was universally bruited that condign punishment was to be inflicted upon Arnoul. Otho, according to the universal rumour, had determined to surrender the assassin of Guillaume Longue-épée to Richard, and Richard would pronounce sentence that the criminal should be torn asunder by wild horses. Arnoul was exceedingly terrified by this intelligence; and, without a moment's hesitation, he determined to flee from the dreaded retribution.

942—954  
946—947

Arnoul,  
alarmed  
for his  
own safety,  
determines  
to retreat.

Rumour had revealed more and less than the truth,—an exaggerated account of the peril, but not the refusal of the Germans to concur in the vengeance. Though Arnoul's apprehensions may have been aggravated by morbid terror, yet his judgment was in nowise enfeebled when called into practical action. He had the whole day before him for the purpose of completing his preparations, and he instantly determined to decamp after nightfall, man and horse, bag and baggage, and, escaping the snare, leave Otho to his fate. A Netherlander, Arnoul did not compromise the steady and cautious character of his

942—954

946—947

Arnoul  
and the  
Flemings  
move away.

nation by making more haste than good speed. The rich tents were carefully taken down and neatly folded, and the valuables trussed in bales, and loaded on the steady sumpter horses. As cleverly, expeditiously, speedily, and quietly did the Flemings proceed, as thieves packing up their booty, and stealing out of a dwelling-house. This effected, Arnoul and his troops equipped themselves considerately, donned helmet and hauberk, and girt their swords, and directing their faces towards distant Flanders, moved off from the field.

Panic  
amongst  
the Ger-  
mans and  
the French  
—Com-  
mencement  
of the  
"Rout of  
Rouen."

Very opportunely for the Flemings there was no moon; but though unobserved they were not unheard. — Silently had they commenced the march, but silence could be no longer maintained. The clumsy wheels creaked. The stout Netherlandish waggons rumbled. The beasts trod heavily; and the dull tumultuous sound of the moving multitude, transmitted through earth and air, reached equally the Germans and the French, inspiring dire alarm. The belief spread simultaneously amongst both the encampments, that the Normans had made a sally. A contagious panic ensued, absurd, nay, almost insane. The night was pitch-dark, and, taken by surprise, when they were enjoying themselves at their ease, the allies absolutely lost their wits by terror. They cut the cords of the tents, they cast down the pavilions, they

scattered their furniture, they sounded their trumpets, they stumbled about as though they were blind. The sky was so black you could not see your hand before you. The panic demented them. Disarmed, half-armed, unarmed, neither vanguard nor rear-guard, flank nor battalion; the piéton helmet-less; the cavalier spur-less,—no idea of defence, no notion of order. No soldier sought his Captain, no Commander kept to his men.—And now succeeded the crowning confusion,—a fire blazed out in the camp.—Huts, bivouacs, and forage, all flaming;—no one could tell what he was seeking, save and except the rapsallions who had prepared for the plunder. Well they knew what they wanted and where to find it: the rich armour, damasked with gold, and all the precious articles which decked Otho's pavilion, they grabbed and got; nay, even the royal ornaments he brought with him were purloined. Suabian and Saxon, French and Lotharingian, Bavarian and Burgundian, all scared alike,—no thought but of safety, unknowing what roads they were taking,—all scurried away.

Whilst Arnoul was fleeing from his own shadow, and the French and Germans tearing after the Flemish fugitives who preceded them, the indwellers of Rouen were in a state of feverish excitement. Throughout the City the inhabitants could distinctly hear the continuous

942—954

946—947

Confused  
flight of  
the Ger-  
mans.The con-  
flagration  
in the  
German  
camp.Alarm  
amongst  
the Normans.



942—954

946—947

rolling and murmuring of the retreating enemies, indicating operations which they imagined were directed against themselves. Watching and waking, and expecting some terrible onslaught, the conflagration increased their perplexity. No creature could rest. The garrison turned out; but all alarm was dispelled by the dawning. The sentinels stationed on the summits of the tall towers distinctly understood the movement, and, with great joy, announced that the assailants had wholly abandoned their positions and raised the siege.

Rejoicings  
of the  
people of  
Rouen.

A general jubilee ensued, and the strangely uncouth numbers of the Laureate—for Dudo fully deserves the title quite as truly as that of Historian—may be read as recording the sentiments, and re-echoing the screeching voices of the exulting crowd,—how they hooted, and how they shouted, and how they scoffed at Otho's cowardice; how they scorned him, how they derided him, how they threatened him with shame upon shame.

Otho surge velocius, et fuge nunc citus,

Natalem pete glebam!

Vindex nam Superus tua territât agmina.

Surgens nunc cito cede!

Ductor subdolos evanuit tuus; en fuga

Te nunc erue præpes!

Contra velle Dei quid adhuc recubas? Fuge!

Nunc i, nunc fuge, nunc, nunc!

Cum Northmannica præpedient tibi et agmina

Heheu! turpius ibis.

Gressum nunc pete, nunc fuge, nunc iter arripe

Fidos cedere coge!

Rex nunc, ne pereas, fuge, cede, liquesceque

Septus labere cœtu!

942—954

946—947

Certainly, Richard's first impression was to head the Normans, and complete the dispersion of the allies; but his Counsellors suggested caution:—the apparent retreat might be a stratagem. However, when it was fully ascertained that the besiegers had really fled in right earnest, it was determined he should continue at Rouen for the protection of the City, whilst all the disposable forces were despatched against the enemy.

Arnoul and the Flemings having gained the start, they kept it, and were clear off, many hours before the Normans had put themselves in motion. They knew their business well; and so far as we can judge from the significant silence of all historical records, as well as from subsequent transactions, effected their retreat to rich Flanders without a cut from the Norman sword.

Flemings  
and French  
retreat in  
safety.

The French also departed in good order, and continued to elude or avoid the Normans. We scarcely hear anything more concerning them, either for good or for harm, except that they returned safely; and therefore the Transrhenane

942—954 } or German army alone sustained the chastise-  
 946—947 } ment which Norman courage and alertness in-  
 inflicted upon the unprovoked invaders.

§ 61. The Germans behaved so incau-  
 tiously that it seemed as if they courted dis-  
 aster.—Without guidance or enquiry, they  
 plunged into the forest, totally ignorant of  
 the ways, whilst every track and every road,  
 every path and every defile, every hill and  
 every hollow, every thicket and every dell,  
 was and were thoroughly known to the eye  
 and mind of the country's defenders. The  
 Norman troops were consequently able to spread  
 themselves over the ground much more speedily  
 than the enemy; and the first encounter is said  
 to have ensued at Bihorel, where a single farm-  
 house preserves, as we are informed, the name  
 of the now extirpated groves. But the news  
 had spread like wild-fire amongst the peasants  
 throughout the country; they sharpened their  
 scythes and mounted their pitch-forks; they  
 hewed their truncheons and ground their  
 hatchets; they hafted their pickaxes, and  
 weighted their clubs; diligently fashioning  
 every flesh-gashing and split-skull weapon  
 which rustic ingenuity could devise for the  
 butchery of the enemy.

Skirmish  
 at Bihorel.

Whilst the Germans were blindly plunging  
 into the thick of the forest, the self-organized  
 levies had assembled themselves to the number

of ten thousand and upwards, in a position whose name bespeaks its character,—the “Bad-pass,” “Mal-pas,” “Maupertuis,” “Malum foramen,” or “Maromme.”—An awful carnage ensued; many of the peasantry were cut down, but a detachment of the regular Norman troops came up and took their share in the conflict.

942—954  
946—947  
The ambuscade of Maromme.

The Germans suffered exceedingly, but worse was preparing for them. Two of Richard’s regiments,—we can hardly find a better name,—had stationed themselves further on, behind a crossing of the forest roads. The bushes were here dense and tangled, and the exuberant growth of hawthorn, which adorned the romantic valley, afforded peculiar facilities for concealment. When the enemies had fairly entangled themselves in the mazy intricacies of the forest, out burst the Normans from their ambuscade. Never was greater clatter of brands heard than during this sylvan affray, or harder blows hit, or brighter showers of sparks struck out from the shining helms. The conflict ended by the complete discomfiture of the Germans. Five hundred men perished, but far more stinging to Otho than the loss, was the shame. The Germans were so completely bewildered, that the greater number fell into the power of the peasantry, probably compelled to surrender by starvation. Unlucky was the churl who was not able to lead a leash or two of captives, with their hands tied

Shameful defeat of the Germans.

942—954

946—947

Flight of  
the Ger-  
mans—ex-  
posed to  
the inces-  
sant war-  
fare of the  
Normans.

behind them, to receive their lodging in the prison of Rouen.

The German army was now entirely broken up; no halt, no resistance;—"sauve qui peut"—was the universal sentiment, if not the outcry. The Normans continued hanging on their rear, constant skirmishing and some hard fighting. In Normandy and through Normandy and beyond Normandy, the trail of the Germans could be tracked by their corpses; nor did the "Rout of Rouen" terminate until the last encounter ensued not far from Amiens, on the Beauvoisine road. So great was the massacre in this final scuffling fight, that, according to tradition, the "Rougemare" received the designation, which, commemorating the bloodshed, is retained by the locality at the present day.

Thus ended the "Rout of Rouen,"—when the Norman troops returned triumphant from the most, perhaps the only, justifiable warfare which a Christian nation can wage. Richard came forward to meet Normandy's defenders,—two thousand citizens following in his train. Strange were the events and vicissitudes chronicled by that Porte Beauvoisine—few so satisfactory as the present, which ensured a long period of internal tranquillity. As for Arnoul, he returned safely to his own country, resumed his government with wisdom and energy, and improved the opportunity of displaying his activity by

recovering Herlouin's long-contested County of Ponthieu.

942—954  
946—947

§ 62. History may be resolved into a series of interwoven or perhaps cyclical epics. The poets obeyed the teaching manifested by the Almighty's dealings in the world,—human destiny, aided and guided, by Divine wisdom and power, to a definite end; our attention being always directed to the one man, through whom each several concatenation of events is to be completed. The first lines of the *Æneid* point out the course into which, whether we will or no, all history falls.

The main action of our tale now reverts to Louis and his antagonist Hugh-le-Grand. Hugh, his strength vastly increased by his Norman alliance, Louis determined to assert his ancestral rights, his spirit wholly unconquered. The transactions through which he had lost his liberty, and still more the extortions to which he submitted, and the concessions he made for the purpose of regaining it, seemed to proclaim the nullity of the royal power. Normandy, that Normandy which the Battle of the Rescue had reconquered for the Crown of France, was now, not merely an independent State, but a rival. He had been shamed equally by his subjects and by his enemies. His reputation, whether as a general or a statesman, tarnished. No roof over his head, except a stranger's. His body con-

Strenuous-  
ness of  
Louis—his  
bearing up  
against his  
misfor-  
tunes.

942—954  
946—947

stantly oppressed by the indwelling disease, and that now encreasing; and the Normans rejoicing in the belief, that the vexation he had sustained by the failures before Rouen, and the fatigue of the retreat, had exacerbated the infirmity. And yet thus troubled, thus desolate, thus borne down, he was girding himself for the fight. If the much abused, nay, mischievous epithet of "Hero" ever truly appertained to a Sovereign, surely, unfortunate as he may have been, none could more justly claim the honour than Louis d'Outremer.

Otho's en-  
creasing  
power—his  
influence  
over  
France.

Scarcely less conspicuous, however, in the annals of France than Louis, was the Saxon Otho, ere long to be denominated "the Great." Editha had left him only one male heir, the young Liudolph, a youth apparently of excellent disposition, and upon him, the Porphyrogenitus, all the father's affections were concentrated. Otho's attention had been much directed towards Italy, where the contests between the Kings and Princes of Lombardy, and the miserable calamities of the Apostolic See, invited the intervention of more efficient authority. But, as yet, Otho had never crossed the Alpine ranges. Full employment had he found in restraining the Slavonians, and, great as were the attractions of Italy, the Imperial Eagle on the summit of his palace looking to the West, never allowed him to forget his claims. Otho

was tacitly seeking to vindicate the supremacy which Charlemagne had enjoyed; Lorraine was yielding to Otho's influence; and, in France, the prestige of his authority, notwithstanding all occasional retrocessions, had been gaining ground ever since the homage performed by Hugh-le-Grand and the Nobles at Attigny; a transaction equally important and obscure.

Although the conduct pursued by Otho manifested his desire of exercising an influence approaching to superiority over France, Louis did not manifest any jealousy. The pretensions might be warranted by Otho's near connexion with the family; and Louis, ceasing to regard his brother-in-law as a rival, might view in him a guardian of the young Lothaire.—Valiantly as Louis continued the struggle, it was scarcely possible that he could be unconscious that his decaying health would probably occasion his early demise.

But more instant was the need of support against the great antagonist. Whatever semblances of amity between Hugh-le-Grand and Louis accompanied the King's restoration, they must be included in the copious category of the conventional deceptions required by society's decencies, analogous to the perplexing cases which constitute the delights of casuistry. Many a *Ductor dubitantium* might be tempted to decide that, humanly speaking, it was hardly

942—954  
947—948

Louis needs  
the support  
of Otho  
against  
Hugh-le-  
Grand.



942—954  
 947—948

right that Louis should be righteous. Louis, a man of the world, living in the world and for the world, could not decently condonate the injuries he had received, and still less than the injuries, the insults he had endured. Would Louis have been fit for a King, had he been gifted with the grace and forbearance enabling him to forgive such an enemy?

Historical  
 importance  
 of the con-  
 test be-  
 tween the  
 rival Arch-  
 bishops.

§ 63. The exemplary diligence of French historians might be well employed upon a monograph devoted to the running contest between the rival Archbishops of Rheims, which has accompanied us since the days of Charles-le-Simple, so worrying, so wearying:—commencing by murder, and, exhibiting in succession, samples of every abuse arising through the usurpations of the State and the heated passions of unscrupulous and unconscious competitors.

At this juncture, Saint Rémy's patrimony afforded the only refuge remaining to Louis throughout his dominions. Therefore it was of the greatest importance to him, that Artaldus should be protected in his See, both materially and morally, whilst the two Hughs,—Duke Hugh and Hugh the Parvulus,—were equally impatient to avail themselves of the King's political depression, in order that they might now effect the Carlovingian Prelate's final expulsion. Thibaut-le-Tricheur most willingly combined with them, and they all alaciously renewed

the quarrel. The pettiness of the numerous squabbles forbids many details. We may only notice, that, after insulting Arnoul's territory, Hugh-le-Grand and the Parvulus besieged Rheims, and failed. Louis on his part was equally unsuccessful in his attempt to gain possession of Mouzon,—the important border fortress of Champagne,—which held out firmly for the pretending Prelate. These operations were interrupted by a tremendous tempest, which ravaged Rheims, accompanied—as it is said—by an earthquake. Louis, however, partly carried on the war for the purpose of masking his proceedings, for he had, considerably, commenced negotiations with Otho, in order that the Archiepiscopal disputes might be settled by proceedings more conformable to the character and importance of the points at issue,—a course which would also result to his own advantage.

842—854  
847—848  
Military operations.

Louis negotiates with Otho.

§ 64. The Parvulus had incurred the censure of the ecclesiastical law, equally by his contempt of the Papal brief and his acts of violence, and, at the same time, Duke Hugh, despoiler of the Church, had in like manner exhibited himself as a delinquent. Moreover, the private claims of the competitors involved matters which concerned all the Churches of Germany and the Gauls.

Five successive Councils were therefore held, for the purpose of ventilating this great ecclesi-

Councils held for the pur-

942—954 } astical cause. Inasmuch as the Church was,  
 947—948 } under some aspects, the State, and the State the  
 pose of dis- } Church, it is not always practicable to distin-  
 cussing the } guish between a Synod and a Secular Assembly.  
 claims. }

Aug.—947  
 —Mixed  
 Council or  
 "Placi-  
 tum" held  
 near the  
 banks of  
 the Cher.

Yet, there is one test,—never did any truly ecclesiastical Synod or Council allow the Laity to discuss faith or doctrine. On the present occasion a mixed convention of Prelates and Nobles, for such unquestionably is the import of the term "Placitum," was held in the Royal encampment hard by the river Cher.

The two Kings presided; they treated each other as equals. Yet Otho always preceded Louis when they entered the place of meeting, whilst Louis did not always sit by Otho's side. Hugh-le-Grand was summoned; he approached the vicinity, but he did not come close, and jealously watched the result. He declined appearing before the Convention in person. Being, however, desirous at this juncture to avoid any semblance of contumacy, he despatched, as his Proctor, a household Chaplain or Clerk, sly Sigibaldus. But the main object which Sigibaldus sought to effect, was not so much the exoneration of Hugh-le-Grand, as the protection of the Parvulus; and with this intent he tendered an instrument purporting to be signed by Artaldus himself, whereby he resigned all his pretensions to the See, which said instrument Sigibaldus alleged he had brought from Rome. The mem-

bers of the "Parliament," for thus the meeting <sup>942—954</sup>  
 is incidentally denominated, were strangely per- <sup>948—949</sup>  
 plexed by such an unexpected plea in bar.  
 There was the document,—but they could not  
 believe in it,—and, evading the difficulty, they  
 adopted the prudent resolution that the matter  
 should be referred to a purely ecclesiastical  
 Synod, appointed to be held at Verdun.

Fully and solemnly was this Synod attended, <sup>948—18th</sup>  
 assembled in the Cathedral of Notre Dame. Ru- <sup>Jan.—Syn-</sup>  
 precht or Robert, Archbishop of Treves, presided, <sup>nod of Ver-</sup>  
 and the Primate of Germany thus assumed the <sup>dun—re-</sup>  
 right of sitting in judgment upon the primacy of <sup>markable</sup>  
 the Gauls, a token, slight, yet indisputable, denot- <sup>circum-</sup>  
 ing the encreasing ascendancy which "Eastern <sup>stances at-</sup>  
 France" was gaining, or striving to gain, over <sup>tending it.</sup>  
 the other members of the Carlovingian empire.  
 Amongst those who assisted, Israel Scotigena  
 from Ireland, the representative of the Celtic  
 Church, the greatest Greek scholar of his age,  
 he who had educated Bruno, King Otho's  
 youngest brother, might attract the public  
 curiosity: and here also was Bruno himself,  
 the future Archbishop of "Kœlln am Rhein,"  
 already distinguished by his talent and energy.  
 Hugo Parvulus was also cited, due respect being  
 rendered to the rank he claimed, although that  
 rank might be contested, inasmuch as Adalbero  
 and Goceline, the Prelates of Metz and Tulle,  
 were despatched to accompany and conduct him.

942—964

948—949

Jan. 948—

Synod of

Mouzon.

But the stout Parvulus would not come: therefore in his absence, an interlocutory decree was passed, empowering Artaldus to take possession of the See, and the Synod adjourned to Mouzon.

§ 65. When the time arrived, the Parvulus made a feint of appearing; he entered Saint Peter's portal, the Church where the Synod was sitting; but when he had proceeded thus far, he stopped, turned round, and marched back again; and Sigibaldus, now acting as his Proctor, presented another writing, a most suspicious bull, issued in the name of good Pope Agapet, purporting to enjoin the restoration of Hugh as Archbishop. Forgery flourished during the mediæval period. The fabrication of papal bulls was an established manufacture. When our venerable old London Bridge was demolished, a pair of forceps, of the same fashion as those which are used abroad to "*plomber*" your baggage, was found in the bed of the river, being the machine by which some ingenious artist in the old time had been accustomed to supply dispensations or pardons. Possibly some clever apparitor who may have lodged in one of the houses projecting from the bridge had accidentally dropped his tool out of the window.

Antient manuscripts contain rules for detecting the cheat, such as counting the dots which compose the borders of the reverse and obverse impressed upon the leaden seal; but in most

Sigibaldus  
propounds  
a forged  
Bull on be-  
half of the  
Parvulus.

cases the document is so clumsily penned, that <sup>942-954</sup>  
 the falsity is self-detected; and such was the case <sup>948-949</sup>  
 with the instrument propounded by Sigibaldus.  
 Had this alleged bull been genuine, it was so  
 informal that it would have been destitute of  
 legal validity, therefore the Prothonotary turned  
 down the face of the parchment when he  
 laid it on the table. And the Fathers of the  
 Synod having consulted the famous canons of  
 the Council of Carthage, they decreed that Ar-  
 taldus should retain possession of the See, whilst  
 Hugh, comporting himself as Archbishop, having  
 been contumacious, had incurred the penalties of  
 excommunication, and so should continue excom-  
 municate, unless he cleared himself of the  
 default in a general Council of the Gauls, to be  
 held at Engleheim on the Rhine.

§ 66. So deliberate and consistent was the <sup>Moral</sup>  
 system which Hugh-le-Grand, aided by the Nor- <sup>vigour of</sup>  
 mans, was pursuing against Louis, so dogged <sup>Louis.</sup>  
 the enmity of the King's opponents, that he had  
 no reason to expect they would ever cease from  
 concerting his destruction. But this prospect of  
 perils only excited him the more to exert his in-  
 ventive activity. Louis confided in the sanctity  
 of the royal character. Well did Louis know,  
 and thoroughly did he appreciate, the veneration  
 commanded by the crowned and anointed  
 Sovereign. He cheered himself by the dawn  
 of the support which he expected to obtain from <sup>Support</sup>  
 Louis ex- <sup>which</sup>

942—954

948—949

pected  
from vari-  
ous French  
Princes  
and Nobles.

the Aquitanian Princes. If their loyalty was tepid, the hatred they entertained towards Hugh-le-Grand was intense. The Abbot of Saint Martin was threatening the southern banks of the Loire. Other proud and prosperous rulers bordering on the Midi were expected by Louis to be amicable. Much he relied upon the friendship of the Count of Macon, Letholdus. But, most of all, were the hopes of Louis grounded upon the confidence he placed, and justly, in Otho. All jealousies between him and his brother-in-law had vanished. Whatever vast designs the German King was forming, they were perfectly consistent with the prosperity and stability of the French monarchy under his protectorate. Never did a Sovereign reign in whom prudence, courage, and ambition, wisdom and moderation, were more efficiently conjoined, than in him who was destined to terminate the abeyance of the Imperial authority.

§ 67. But Louis would not trust solely to the sword. The moral existence of the State could be sought only in the Church, and the Clergy were the only functionaries competent to guide the popular opinion, or by whom any sentiments of good order could be diffused. It was, therefore, through the medium which the organization which Latin Christendom afforded, that Louis determined to invoke the sympathy and rouse the conscience of his subjects.

In this distressing era of papal history, we

are relieved by the happy obscurity which attends the pontificate of the second Agapet, concerning whom scarcely anything is known except his piety and his charity. At the solicitation of Otho and Louis, the Pontiff despatched his Legate Marinus to the Gauls, for the purpose of presiding over the Council convened in Charlemagne's antient palace of Engleheim. None of the Prelates under Hugh-le-Grand's influence attended; and the great majority came from Lorraine and Otho's dominion. Nevertheless it was accepted as representing the Churches of Germany and the Gauls. Strictly speaking, this Council was anomalous, neither national nor provincial; but all irregularities were ignored, and the Synod, without compromising its ecclesiastical functions, also partially assumed the character of an Imperial Diet. When Otho and Louis were introduced, they took their rooms next the Legate. The business was opened by the Archbishop of Treves, who briefly stated the objects for which the Fathers were called together,—the restoration of lawful authority, and the tranquillization of the Commonwealth, in the first place:—and, in the next, the settlement of the claims between the rival Archbishops, by which the State had been so perniciously distracted.

Marinus replied on the part of the Holy See.—The re-establishment of the royal authority

942—954  
948—949  
June.—  
Council of  
Engleheim  
under the  
presidency  
of Marinus,  
the Papal  
Legate.

Otho and  
Louis are  
introduced  
into the  
Council.



942—954

948—949

Louis nar-  
rates the  
series of  
the inju-  
ries he had  
sustained.

was a necessary preliminary to the settlement of the affairs of the Church; and therefore, would it please the Council to hear and determine, in the first instance, the cause of the most serene King?

“Let him be heard,” was the acclaim.—Louis prepared to rise, but the Prelates requested him to continue seated, and he began his address,—a piteously impassioned summary of the misfortunes he had sustained since his birth,—even such as in this our history we have told them.—How Hugh’s father had usurped the royal authority:—how his own infant life had been saved by Ogiva’s device, when she concealed him in the bundle of hay:—how Ogiva was compelled to seek refuge for him, far away in the dark north:—how Raoul, after King Robert’s death, had continued the usurpation:—how Louis had been recalled to the royal authority, though his possessions had been withheld:—all the frauds and violences perpetrated by Hugh, of which he had been the victim:—the shameful treason which Hugh had concerted with the Norman Pirates:—lastly, the most painful extortion to which he submitted as the only means of escaping a miserable death,—the cession of the rock of Laôn.—Could Hugh deny the deeds? And as for himself, had he misgoverned? Had he abused his royal authority? Could any living creature prefer any just cause of complaint against him?—If so, let the accusers come for-

Louis  
challenges  
his ac-  
cusers.

ward. Let Hugh take up the challenge, and Louis would submit to the judgment of the Holy Synod and King Otho, or clear himself by the battle trial.

Archbishop Artaldus then recited, with much detail, the acts of violence committed by Duke Hugh, and the vexation and persecution he had suffered from that arch-tyrant. The impeachment preferred against Duke Hugh,—for to such the proceedings virtually amounted,—therefore contained two Articles, distinct, yet closely connected with each other—Hugh's offences against the Crown, and his violation of the rights of the Church—treason and sacrilege. Hugh-le-Grand acted as though he were entirely indifferent to the result. No one answered for him; no reply was made on his behalf. His Proctor Sigibaldus, however, whether employed by the Duke or employing himself, came forward, asserting the rights of the Parvulus, and boldly reproduced the rejected instrument. This impudent act excited the greatest indignation amongst the Gallican Prelates. Archbishop and Bishops rose up against him, crying out against the shameful imposition. The Proctor, therefore, now found himself placed at the bar in the character of a culprit: sentence of degradation was passed against him, and he was banished the country.

048—054  
048—049  
Impeachment preferred against Hugh, who does not appear.

Sigibaldus presents himself, asserting the rights of the Parvulus.

On the following day, business was resumed,

942—964

948—949

Hugh-le-Grand censured and summoned to obey the decree of the Synod.

the text-books were opened, and the various chapters of the canon law bearing upon the various charges made against the Duke were read. And, pursuant to the canons, and particularly the seventy-fifth canon of the fourth Council of Toledo, and the opinions and decrees of the Holy Fathers, Pope Sixtus, Pope Alexander, Pope Innocent, Pope Zosimus, Pope Boniface, Pope Celestine, Pope Leo, Pope Symmachus, and all the other Doctors and Fathers of Holy Church who had spoken and written in that behalf, he, Duke Hugh, the usurper of the royal rights, the persecutor of the See of Rheims, was warned that he would incur excommunication unless he should repent and make amends for his misdeeds.—Thirty days of grace were allowed to him for the purpose of declaring his submission to the decree; and the Synod was adjourned to another session, to be held, at the end of the said respite, in the Basilica of Saint Vincent the Martyr, at Laôn.

Session of the Council at Laôn and at Treves.

§ 68. The session was accordingly held, but no Hugh presented himself; he had derided all the Clergy's threats and monitions; he took no heed of the proceedings. Yet one further attempt was made to enforce, perhaps we should rather say persuade, this haughty delinquent to render a decent obedience to the ecclesiastical authority; and, after a further adjournment, the Synod re-assembled at Treves. The session was short.

Hugh-le-Grand continued contumacious. On the third day, he had failed to appear either in person or by any one in his behalf. Marinus proceeded in due canonical form. Upon the motion of King Otho's Procurator, Liudolph, the sentence of excommunication was fulminated against Hugh; but still only provisionally, and until he should appear before the Legate and offer competent satisfaction. If he still neglected to do so in due time, then the power of absolution was reserved to the Holy See,—he must repair to the Pope at Rome.

942—954  
948—949  
Hugh-le-Grand continuing contumacious, he is provisionally excommunicated.

But Hugh was not to be won over by the tenderness with which he had been handled. He would not bend before Bishop, Legate, or Pope; and, if we may be permitted to construe his actions into words, we might have heard him exclaim with a sneer, that he cared no more for the whole succession, living or departed, who had been evoked against him,—Pope Sixtus, Pope Innocent, Pope Alexander, Pope Zosimus, Pope Boniface, Pope Celestine, Pope Leo, Pope Symmachus, or any other Pontiffs, Doctors, or Fathers of Holy Church—than he did for their mosaic portraits, exhibited in gaunt procession, on the walls of the Basilica. To him their opinions or warnings were as chaff and straw when they stood in his way. He was the man who would defend his rights and his wrongs, without apprehension of bell, book, or

Hugh defies the authority of the Council.

942—954  
948—949 candle. Consistently, therefore, with these views, Hugh-le-Grand had never desisted from presenting a hostile front, and he prosecuted the war vigorously, whilst Synods and Councils were debating. What they were doing was naught to him. He renewed active operations; brought together kith and kin, and vassal and retainer, and more than all, his allies; and ravages and outrages were renewed in the same manner as before.

Ample  
sources of  
informa-  
tion for  
this portion  
of French  
history.

§ 69. We possess very ample details concerning these transactions, secular, ecclesiastical, and military. Artaldus himself, in the first instance, renders us the good service of amply and accurately reporting all the Synodical proceedings.—Next, Frodoardus, the Archbishop's Chaplain, much and often in the camp, yet as often accompanying his Principal, furnishes a consecutive narrative.—Lastly, Louis numbered amongst his suite an individual, who, though not a writer himself, has nevertheless transmitted to us most valuable information, which otherwise would have been lost. This was Raoul, an officer of noble birth, much in the King's confidence, from whose recollections we derive a large proportion of the materials which enable us to pursue the Carolingian history until its close.

Raoul, the  
father of  
Richerius  
the  
Chronicler.

Raoul was the father of Richerius the Monk, a Chronicler, for our purposes, invaluable, inasmuch as his work, embodying the paternal

traditions, enables the enquirer to bridge over <sup>942—954</sup>  
 the hitherto hopeless chasm concerning the <sup>942—949</sup>  
 events which established the Capetian dynasty.  
 A sturdy man-at-arms was the clever and astute  
 Raoul, who shared in many of the enterprises  
 related by his son, and a contemporary of the  
 circumstances to which he bears record. His  
 details may oftentimes be reckoned trifling, yet let  
 it be always kept in mind that even these minims  
 constitute integral portions of European history.  
 —Each skirmish, each foray, each device, each  
 success, each mischance, each retreat, was a trial  
 of strength between the rising and the expiring  
 dynasties.

§ 70. It might have been supposed, that <sup>The alac-</sup>  
 after his appearance before the Council of Engle- <sup>city of</sup>  
 heim, Louis would almost have been prepared to <sup>Louis en-</sup>  
 resign. He had narrated, and truly, the succes- <sup>creases,</sup>  
 sion of misfortunes he had sustained.—To con- <sup>whilst</sup>  
 fess before the world that you are unlucky, is <sup>Hugh's</sup>  
 nearly equivalent to a proclamation that you are <sup>popularity</sup>  
 ruined. But he presented himself as a man <sup>diminishes.</sup>  
 renovated in body and in spirit, casting off  
 his griefs, and resuming his operations with  
 innate alacrity. On the other hand, Hugh's  
 influence was somewhat diminished. Though  
 he defied the ban of the Church, his ad-  
 herents were not so sceptical. Many of his  
 knights and soldiers, dreading the excommuni-  
 cation, had deserted his cause, particularly the

942—954

948—949

knights who held military benefices in the patrimony of Saint Rémy. They were serving in Hugh's ranks on behalf of Hugh the Parvulus, but Artaldus had possession of their lands, and the expectation that by submission to the canonical Prelate they would be reinstated in their possessions, may have aided the conscientious scruples they were said to have entertained.

Importance  
of the sup-  
port given  
by Nor-  
mandy to  
Hugh-le-  
Grand.

The importance of Normandy also becomes signally appreciable. So nearly were the parties now matched, that, had not Hugh-le-Grand been supported by Richard's troops, he would hardly have been able to make head against the King. But the red shields were foremost in his ranks, and the keen Norman arbalisters always ready to garrison his towers. Guido, the Bishop of Soissons, had returned to his allegiance and his duty. Hugh, supported by the Normans, attacked the antient and much venerated Merovingian capital. By his missiles, he fired the Episcopal buildings and a large portion of the City, and then, spreading his troops widely over the Rhemois, committed terrible ravages.—Champagne wine must have become scarce during these wars.

Successes  
of Louis—  
Mouzon  
taken.

§ 71. In the meanwhile, Duke Conrad had been raising levies in Lotharingia for the King's service,—“three Cohorts,” as they are termed. The Parvulus, now deprived of Hugh-le-Grand's support, had taken refuge in Mouzon, on the

Lotharingian border of Saint Rémy's patrimony. 942—954  
 A great moral effect would be produced in 948—949  
 favour of Louis, could the pertinacious ecclesiastical offender be caught. French and Lotharingians joined and attacked the place. The scanty garrison surrendered, the pseudo-Archbishop escaped, but his soldiers were taken prisoners, and triumphantly conducted before the King.

Louis went on cheerily. Next to Hugh-le-Grand, Thibaut-le-Tricheur had been the King's greatest tormentor. Louis, determining to punish the Count's insolence, stormed Thibaut's castle of Montaigne. Encouraged by this success, Louis bethought himself whether it might not be possible to recover the last lost jewel of his crown. Accordingly, he forthwith marched to Laôn. He reconnoitred the fortress, and commenced a partial investment or irregular siege; Montaigne taken by Louis—he invests Laôn. his forces not being adequate for more decided operations. Frequent skirmishes were fought between the assailants and the garrison, the latter making manifold sallies. They fought on the slope of the rock and below the rock, and in the plains far and near. Nine close conflicts, hand to hand, are commemorated as having occurred; but this display of valour proved unprofitable; the royal troops were unprovided with artillery, winter was drawing on, and Louis, by the advice of Raoul, returned to his lowly but comfortable He returns to his winter quarters at Rheims. quarters at Rheims, where King and Confidant



942—954

949—950

A child  
born to  
Louis.

discussed the operations of the future campaign. During this season of quiet retirement, however, an event occurred, not a novelty, yet always gratifying—Gerberga was happily brought to bed again, presenting her husband with another male child, who replaced the lost Carloman. Archbishop Artaldus was the sponsor, the baby being named Louis, after the father. Great joy must this accession to the family have occasioned, for notwithstanding the numerous children which Gerberga's fertility had produced, none but Lothaire was now surviving, their spans of life probably shortened by some congenital infirmity.

April—949  
Gerberga  
visits  
Otho.

§ 72. Spring was advancing, the flower buds bursting, all parties in movement, Gerberga the busiest, and inasmuch as Louis could not quit the scene of military action, the nobly indefatigable matron repaired to her Royal brother at Aix-la-Chapelle, for the purpose of hastening his promised aid. Otho had delayed in rendering assistance, being employed in the Sclavonian marches. The Germans continued their bitter persecutions of this race, whom they crushed with inexorable barbarity, overwhelming them with contempt, and by that contempt justifying their tyranny.

22 April,  
949—  
Otho's Pas-  
chal feast  
at Aix-la-  
Chapelle.

Splendidly characteristic of the present and future was the Paschal feast which Otho celebrated in Charlemagne's Eagle-crowned Pfaltz,

where Gerberga received an affectionate greeting from her Royal brother.—He appeared invested with all the dignity of antient days. Stately was the presence, the nobles of the Belgic Gauls, as well as their Tudesque compeers, here reverently encircling the antient Imperial throne. Here also were the Representatives of the Nations and Powers seeking Otho's friendship or protection.

Edred, ruling the four-fold empire of Britain, testified his respect for Editha's widowed husband, cultivating the connexion as an additional honour decking glorious Athelstane's family.

Otho's court attended by ambassadors from England, Italy, and the Eastern Empire.

Lothaire of Provence, the husband of the lovely Adelaide, and Berenger, Marquis of Friuli and of Ivrea, were now the rival kings of distracted Lombardy, and yet conjointly reigning. They despatched their Legates—they might need Otho's assistance against the bloody Magyars, who were tormenting Italy from the valley of the Arno to the very heel of the peninsula, or possibly they sought to collect some information concerning his plans and designs.—Otho courteously cultivated his social and political relations with the Greek Empire, not as a rival of the Eastern Cæsars, but as though he were their equal. Perhaps, even now, Otho in his heart acknowledged none but an Emperor as being his compeer. Constantine Porphyrogenitus reciprocated in these courtesies. Rich were the

942—954  
949—950

gifts proffered by Constantine's splendid Ambassadors, their chief the beardless Protovestiarus, Count Solomon, whose aspect, declaring him duly qualified to have the care of an Ottoman Harem, might amuse the jeering Germans as a fitting representative of the luxurious and effeminate Byzantium. Gerberga, heartily welcomed by her brother, received assurances that sufficient succour should be given, and she cheerfully returned to her husband. Otho was sincere, yet some time elapsed before the Lorraine troops could be mustered, whilst Louis, hopeful as though he had never sustained misfortune, was impatient to take the field against the rebel Duke; and he earnestly desired not only the advantage but the honour of striking an effective and single-handed blow, before the German reinforcements should arrive.

949—Laôn  
captured by  
a stratagem  
suggested  
by Raoul.

§ 73. Raoul devised a plan for the surprise and re-capture of Laôn,—he was thoroughly acquainted with the City of the Rock and all its ways, the ascents and the descents, the nooks and the crannies, the streets and the gates, and, above all, the sentiments of the garrison and the citizens. A surprise was impossible; Hugh's powerful forces were supported by a large proportion of the inhabitants who had espoused the Usurper's cause. Hugh-le-Grand had, without doubt, spent much money there, and the fortifications which Louis had erected for the citadel's

better defence, were now bristling to oppose their Founder. 942-954

On either part the desultory warfare was conducted doggedly, and yet slackly. Laôn being ill supplied with provisions, the garrison were accustomed to send out stable-folk, upwards of sixty or more, for the purpose of gathering and collecting horsemeat, green or dry. This troop sallied forth daily. Now, according to Raoul's ingenious suggestion, an equal number of the King's men clad themselves exactly like the Laôn men, wearing also the same fashioned cap, by which, when the tall truss of forage was loaded before the Rider, his visage was almost entirely concealed. The Guisers, Raoul himself being one of the Party, carefully watched the proceedings of the authentic foragers. The Laôn true-men idled in their business. The King's folk rode up to the City, the gate opened to receive them. As soon as they had passed the Portal,—down with the trusses, out with the swords.—The Citizens, or at least a faction amongst them who demonstrated a desperate disloyalty, defended themselves valiantly in the narrow climbing streets: but the assailants, offering a compact front, were protected laterally by these defiles; and, threading their way between the city walls and the houses, they penetrated onwards, though with much peril. Possibly the Royal soldiery would have been

*The surprize  
of Laôn.*

942—954 beaten, had not reinforcements poured in. After  
 949—950 much bloodshed, the Duke's men effected a  
 retreat into the great Tower, but the City was  
 gained.

§ 74. This was an encouraging success. Louis rallied his friends, and Otho energetically supported the Royal cause. Moreover, his most inconsistent son-in-law Duke Conrad, he who had espoused Otho's daughter, the lovely Liutgarda of the silver spindle, joined Louis with a large Army of Lorrainers; and a rapid succession of alternate gains and losses excited both the contending parties.

949—  
 Louis at-  
 tacks Senlis  
 unsucces-  
 fully.

If Louis was thus aided, Hugh-le-Grand increased his battalions from the ranks of the never-failing Normans; and he stationed a powerful garrison in the neighbouring Senlis. Here Louis was unpopular.—The inhabitants of this antient City, however imbued with Carlovingian recollections, had become staunch adherents of Hugh. The showers of bolts darted from the Norman arbalests deterred the French, though they established their position before the walls; and Hugh was also enabled to victual the Tower of Laôn. But, by concentrating the Ducal forces in and about Senlis and Laôn, a large proportion of the modern Isle de France was left exposed. Louis promptly availed himself of this strategical error, and ravaged the undefended country as far as the Seine. There, however, he

was compelled to halt: his troops could not cross the river; the boats had been cleared away; pontoons had not been thought of; and the King returned to Rheims.

Hugh now tried to throw Louis off his guard. For this purpose he offered a settlement of their differences; but whilst the discussions were pending, he made an attempt to recover the City of Laôn by a coup-de-main. The scheme did not answer: and though the Normans fought on his behalf, the attack failed. The endeavours for a pacification were renewed, the Bishops of Auxerre and Troyes concurred with Duke Conrad as mediators, and a lengthened truce was concluded, to endure until the Paschal festival of the following year.

<sup>943-954</sup>  
<sup>949-950</sup>  
Hugh fails in attempting to recover Laôn.

§ 75. Notwithstanding the checks which Louis had received, he was acquiring support from public opinion. His undaunted perseverance, his unity of purpose, and the justice of his cause, all pleaded potently in his favour. Hugh-le-Grand boldly spurned the ecclesiastical censures: yet the excommunication, which damaged him before the world, was weighing upon his mind, and this sentiment possibly motivated his overtures for peace.

Agapet, though the most quiet of Pontiffs, could no longer delay asserting his authority. He summoned a Council to be held at Rome in Saint Peter's Basilica. The Acts of the

<sup>948-</sup>  
Hugh-le-Grand excommunicated by the Pope in Council unless he

942—954

949—950

shall  
satisfy the  
King.

Council of Engleheim were produced and read, sentence was pronounced condemning Hugh, the Pope subscribed his name, and commanded the Italian Prelates—for none other were summoned—to do the like; and he then promulgated the Excommunication against Hugh, the great disturber, unless and until he should have given satisfaction to his King. This Decree being transmitted to the Prelates of the Gauls, they exerted themselves strenuously in labouring to promote the much-desired restoration of tranquillity, addressing themselves to Hugh-le-Grand's conscience, and warning him against the impending peril:—the Apostolic Anathema was a sword piercing through body and soul,—and, at last, he agreed to treat. In fact, all parties, including Louis, were tired out, and he entreated Otho to co-operate. Duke Conrad was sent forward to open the negotiations; and Hugh-le-Grand gladly entertained the proposals of accommodation.

An interview ensued on the shores of the Marne, the parties being, as usual, separated by the stream. Hugh-le-Noir, of whom we have so long lost sight, also attended as a common friend.—Neither King Louis nor Hugh-le-Grand had much inclination to face each other: their reciprocal propositions and answers were exchanged by Conrad and Hugh-le-Noir, and by the Bishops Adalbero and Fulbert, crossing

and re-crossing the water. A peace was concluded, and all points which Louis could fairly demand were conceded. Hugh surrendered the object, so precious in his sight, the Tower of Laôn, which was forthwith evacuated by his garrison. The proud Duke of all the Gauls became the King's Homager, performing the ceremony which testified the Vassal's subjection to his Suzerain, renewing the oath of fealty, and clenching his oath by earnest declarations of friendship. It appeared as if their present love was no less ardent than their previous enmity; and Hugh-le-Grand's actions were consistently conformable to his words. He obeyed the King's behests, raising the forces which Louis required for the expedition he was contemplating. A complete and triumphant victory seemed to have been achieved by the King, and Louis entered Laôn, now all his own.—Tower, City, Gates, Walls, once more in his possession, without dispute or challenge, and he was preparing for the full resumption of his power.—But the hand of God was upon him; he became grievously ill, took to his bed, and his work was stayed.

§ 76. Louis laid by, fresh political troubles perplexed him. A harassing series of disturbances ensued, not exactly directed against the King, and yet as troublesome as if they were, being connected with the interminable dispute between Artaldus and the Parvulus. Compelled

942—954

950—951

950—

Pacifica-  
tion be-  
tween the  
King and  
Hugh-le-  
Grand: the  
latter per-  
forms hom-  
age and re-  
stores the  
Tower of  
Laôn.

951—

Louis afflict-  
ed by severe  
illness.



942—954  
951—952 to be inactive, Louis improved his enforced leisure. After nearly a year of illness, convalescence and languor, his flesh a cumbrance and a burden, but his spirit unsubdued, recollecting his past sufferings and disgraces and humiliations only as incentives to vigorous action, he again rose up for the purpose of completing the great stroke of policy which he had so long contemplated, the restoration of the Royal authority in the Kingdom of Aquitaine.

951—  
Louis  
causes  
Lothaire to  
be design-  
ated as  
King.

But even success in this important enterprise would be unsatisfactory, unless Louis could ensure the Royal Succession to the line of Charlemagne.—What claimants might not arise when the Throne should become vacant by his own death, an event possibly near at hand? Louis therefore, according to the antient usage of the Monarchy, caused the young Lothaire to be designated as King, but no evidence remains to shew that the act was followed by any solemn recognition.

Respect  
rendered by  
the Aquit-  
anians to  
the Royal  
authority.  
See p. 393.

The undelayed surrender made, erewhile, by the Aquitanian Princes of their charters to Louis, when, after his successes in Burgundy, he presented himself beyond the Loire, in order to obtain a legal renewal of their authority, afforded the most remarkable testimony of the respect commanded by that tower of strength, the King's name. Louis therefore determined to avail himself of their passive loyalty.

Could the supremacy of the Crown be again unequivocally acknowledged and actively obeyed by these important and semi-regal Potentates, Louis would be King indeed. Louis accomplished the journey alone, leaving Gerberga in the management of affairs.—Had not Louis effected his compromise with Hugh-le-Grand, his entry into Aquitaine would have been impracticable, for whether he proceeded by the route of Paris or by the route of Burgundy, he must traverse Hugh's dominions. He preferred the latter road, probably that he might confer with his trusty friend Lethaldus, the Count of Macon. It was in this country that Louis fixed his camp, being joined by Hugh's levies.—No force, no menaces were needed: wherever Louis appeared, he was joyously greeted and obeyed.

948—954  
951—953

Many of the Princes of Aquitaine eagerly prevented Louis at Macon, repairing thither to renew their fealty. First and foremost, Charles Constantine, Count of Vienne, the grandson of renowned King Boso,—Guillaume Tête d'étoupe,—Stephen, Bishop of Clermont,—and many more whose names are not recorded, also rendered due homage. In treating of French affairs it must always be recollected that the Aquitanian chronicles are few in number, very scanty and jejune; hence the history of half France is in a manner unknown.

Progress  
of Louis—  
submission  
of the  
Aqui-  
tanian  
Princes.

949—954

951—952

Louis falls  
ill again.

From Macon to Besançon, this city being also included in the dominions of Lethaldus, who forthwith performed homage and took the oaths of fealty, thus rendering himself the immediate subject of the King. Prosperity seemed to attend Louis: he was now preparing to march onwards beyond the Loire, and pursue his royal progress. But again, the warning was repeated,—again, his steps were stayed.—The leaves were falling—the season stormy and sickly. He fell ill—he was attacked by a bilious fever—no faithful Gerberga nigh to help him. However, her place was in some degree supplied, inasmuch as the sufferer was tenderly nursed by the affectionate Lethaldus. The army was disbanded, and as soon as Louis was able to move, Lethaldus being his care-taker and companion, the invalid returned home.

Troubles in  
Lorraine.

§ 77. To home,—but not to quiet. Whilst crossing the frontiers of Burgundy, Louis was encountered by unwelcome intelligence. Frederick, brother of Adalbero, Bishop of Metz, and soon to become son-in-law of Hugh-le-Grand, was advisedly seeking to gain a footing in Lorraine. There was a mean and obscure village called “Fanis,” near the source of the Ornain, adjoining a hill where the Romans had formed a camp commanding the surrounding country. We know how frequently and how advantageously these antique monuments of mili-

tary science were utilized during the middle  
ages. Frederick sagaciously followed the lead  
taken by the old masters of the World, and he  
began to raise a strong castle within the en-  
trenchment. This act gave great offence to  
Louis and Gerberga. Frederick had not cared  
to ask their permission, and when settled, he  
defied them, ravaging the country, which  
seems to have been in obedience to Louis, all  
around.

Louis appealed to King Otho, despatching  
a special embassy to speak on his behalf.  
Hugh-le-Grand did the like, probably fur-  
thering Frederick's interests; and, to conciliate  
Otho, his ambassadors brought with them a  
magnificent gift, two live roaring lions. Not-  
withstanding this nuzer, Otho decided in fa-  
vour of France, and enjoined Frederick not to  
raise any fortifications otherwise than by the  
assent of the French King. Whether this assent  
was or was not obtained, cannot be ascertained,  
but the building of the Castle proceeded, and  
the very important Town of Bar-le-Duc arose  
under its protecting shadow.

942—954  
951—952

951—  
Bar-le-Duc  
founded by  
Count  
Frederick.

But, however anxious to remain at peace,  
Louis was compelled to involve himself in fur-  
ther dissensions. Many of the nobles of the  
Vermandois were excited to acts of plunder. Old  
Arnoul of Flanders, who continued flashing up  
in activity, had ejected Roger, the son of Her-

942—954  
 951—953

lounin of Montreuil, from his county. Hugh-le-Grand mixed himself up in the quarrel—Louis mediated, and a peace was concluded until the following December.

951—  
 Abduction  
 of the  
 Queen  
 Ogiva by  
 Herbert  
 the Hand-  
 some.  
 (See vol. I.  
 p. 357.)

Louis  
 greatly  
 angered  
 by the  
 marriage.

§ 78. Amidst these State troubles and national misfortunes, there arose a family annoyance of that class equally provoking to subjects and to kings. Ogiva, the English Adeliza, Ogiva, the dowager Queen, Ogiva, King Edward's daughter, Ogiva, Athelstane's sister, Ogiva, Charles-le-Simple's grieving relict, Ogiva, Louis d'Outremer's tender mother, Ogiva, successor of Holy Salaberga, allowed herself to be carried off in broad noon-day by the Vermandois Prince Herbert the Handsome, fourth son of Herbert the regicide, and subsequently Count of Troyes. Louis was exceedingly nettled. He confiscated all Ogiva's possessions. He seized the palace of Attigny, her residence—which he re-united to his domain—and, dealing with the Abbey of Saint Salaberga as vacant, he granted her preferment to his own faithful Gerberga, who became lay Abbess in the place of her mother-in-law. It may be remarked that the successors of Louis d'Outremer misapplied their prerogative rights over this unfortunate foundation to such an extent, that the inmates degenerated from bad to worse, until the suppression of the Convent in the fifteenth century. All said and done, the Secular Lords were

chiefly to blame for these ecclesiastical irregularities, which were consequent upon the constant abuse of their patronage, whether usurped or lawful.—This position is emphatically exemplified by the sequel of the abduction. Herbert the Handsome, as yet possessing scarcely any estate beyond the expectations of a younger brother, was as needy as the heroes of his class usually are—he had little to give—and he therefore made a liberal provision for his mellow bride by granting her the Abbey of Saint Médard as a dowry.

942—954  
 953—954

§ 79. Many remarkable events now occurred in Italy and Germany, of which we shall hear more hereafter, inasmuch as they exercised very great influence upon the affairs of France. Bruno, elected to the Archbishoprick of Cologne, was also created Duke of Lorraine, a promotion pregnant with important consequences. Duke Conrad, having joined in the unnatural conspiracy concerted against Otho by his brethren and his son, sought and subsidized the Magyars, who joyfully obeyed the call, and to the vast detriment of the land. The Ogre Hordes, led on by their horrid Hetumogors, Botond, and Zultu, and Lelu, commenced their invasion by swarming into the northern parts of France, ravaging the Vermandois, spreading over the Laônnais and Champagne, and the Chalonnais, until they reached Burgundy,

Troubles in  
 Lorraine,  
 &c.—the  
 great  
 Magyar  
 invasion  
 instigated  
 by Conrad.

942—954  
 953—954
 
 whence they entered Italy. Wasting the country which they punished, they themselves wasted away. Many were slain, more perished by infectious diseases which probably had reached them from Asia. When they were cleared out of France, the pestilence which they had disseminated continued to desolate the country, and became, as is conjectured by nosologists, the European source of that dire visitation, which human science, during the youth of the generation now verging upon eld, having been permitted to moderate, nay, as we fondly fancied, almost eradicate, has been replaced by another sword, delivered by the Supreme into the power of the Destroying Angel for the chastisement of mankind. But the main body of these grimly terrific tribes directed their course to Germany, which country, as we shall afterwards have occasion to relate, they well nigh brought to destruction.

953—  
 Hugh-le-Grand re-  
 volts, but  
 submits.

§ 80. Troubles again and again teeming :—a renewal of the miserable discord in the Vermandois:—Louis and Archbishop Artaldus again marching out to repress the Nobles who had usurped various strongholds.—Hugh-le-Grand cancelled his engagements with the King, joined the Revolters, and had the worst of it, and so sorely, that he was compelled to sue for peace, imploring the intervention of the burthened Gerberga, who repaired to him, ill-qualified as she

then was for any journey. Yet she ventured, and mediated effectually. This transaction shews how rapidly the power of Louis must have been reviving; the great Duke of all the Gauls compelled to present himself as a supplicant. Gerberga returned safely to Rheims, and now, a great cause of joy!—We have seen how the Royal progeny had been smitten, so that Lothaire and the youngest boy, his father's namesake, had alone been spared to continue the lineage. But the anxiety was now much diminished, if not entirely removed, by Gerberga's fertility. Gerberga's fruitfulness relieved her Consort from the dread lest the august lineage should fail. She now was delivered of twins,—Charles, evidently so designated that the glorious name might be perpetuated, and Henry, after his illustrious grandfather;—but the stern avenging Nemesis was rapidly filling up the measure of misfortune. The newly-born babe Henry died very shortly after his baptism. Two, however, still lived, and the parents might comfort themselves with Lothaire, albeit not of a very promising constitution, and Louis, now five years of age. But, shortly afterwards, the little lad was carried off,—probably a victim to the prevailing contagion,—and the eldest and the youngest of the Royal progeny, Lothaire and Charles, alone remained. Charles, the descendant of Charlemagne, and of Egbert, and of Otho

942—954  
953—954

958—  
Twin sons  
borne to  
him by  
Gerberga,  
—Charles—  
and Henry:  
the latter  
dies.



<sup>942—954</sup> the Magnificent, survived. Better for him had  
<sup>954</sup> he been removed from the evil to come.

<sup>954—</sup>  
 Strange  
 accident or  
 delusion  
 befalls  
 Louis.

Yet the King, unquestionably supported by his heroic Queen, would not relax in his efforts: he quitted Laôn, and fixed himself at Rheims, intending to exert himself in the defence and restoration of the Realm. It chanced that when riding near the river Aisne he suddenly turned his horse out of the straight road, and dashed across the fields; but, as far as can be collected, without any definite object in view, or any adequate reason to instigate the gallop. The ground was very rotten. The horse stumbled. Louis was taken up by his attendants grievously bruised. He told them that a wolf, or something like a wolf, or which he imagined was like a wolf, had crossed before him, and he had given chase to the phantom animal. He had received some severe internal injury by the fall, which occasioned great pain; and to this was superadded further affliction. After lying ill for a considerable period, a disease, unconnected with the bodily hurt, broke out—as the Leeches described the symptoms—into a horrible elephantiasis, his body covered with purulent tubercles. Consumed by this frightful malady, Louis died on the fourth of the Ides of September, in the thirty-third year of his age, and in the eighteenth of his reign, so lengthened in the narrative by his unwearied energy and activity. He was buried

10 Sep. 954  
 —His  
 death and  
 burial.

in the Basilica of Saint Rémy. The Tomb has  
 been long since destroyed, but the Psalter of  
 Queen Emma, his son Lothaire's Spouse, pre-  
 served in the Abbey library until the revolution,  
 contains a copy of his epitaph, undoubtedly  
 composed within a short time after his death.  
 The uncouth and barbarous verses conclude with  
 a bootless prayer for the preservation of the Car-  
 lovingian dynasty.

942—954  
 954  
 Tomb and  
 Epitaph of  
 Louis.

Sanguine Cæsareo jacet hîc excelsa propago,  
 Francorum populo prodita de Carolo,  
 Dum sibi ter-denos et très floreret in annos  
 Augustum nomen Rex Ludovicus erat.  
 Remigius Regum sanxit consulta priorum :  
 Huic dederat sceptrum : præstat hic et tumulum.  
 Octavum-decimum regnando subegerat annum ;  
 Quadris September Idibus exit iter.  
 Lector, posce Deum, Francorum posce salutem,  
 Hoc regale genus servet in orbe Deus.

## CHAPTER IV.—PART II.

LOTHAIRE AND LOUIS—OTHO AND HIS SONS—RICHARD  
SANS PEUR—ACCESSION OF THE CAPETS.

---

951—987.

The Fourth  
Empire—  
its develop-  
ment into  
Civiliza-  
tion.

§ 1. TENDIMUS IN LATIUM.—Various as are the constructions which these deeply significant words may receive, the Poet himself unconscious of the full import conveyed by his strain, yet they primarily may be accepted as predicting to all Mankind the direction taken by all history, even from the hour when the Servant of God declared the avenging task entrusted, by the Eternal decree, to that dreadful Nation, fore-doomed to be brought from afar, from the very ends of the Earth.—That Nation, swift as the eagle flies, and devouring as the Eagle by which they were self-symbolized; the noble bird emblazoned upon every shield and embroidered upon every banner, borne or unfurled by every Potentate,—Cæsar, Czar, or Keiser,—who has assumed an Emperor's name.—That Nation of fierce countenance, neither regarding the person of the old, nor shewing favour to the young;—destined

to found the great Fourth Monarchy, diverse from all Kingdoms which had previously prevailed amongst men, appointed to devour the whole Earth, and break her in pieces, and tread her down, and through whose transmitted authority, the Populations of the terraqueous globe are now ruled.—The reek of Civilization is œcumenical.—Even, already, in this our Generation, is there any portion of the human race, however barbarous or remote, which is not governed by the Civilized races, or affected either directly or indirectly by the influences comprehended under the idea of Civilization?—so all-commanding, so undefinable, and of which we can only guess at the specific characteristics by pursuing the negative process of exhaustion. It is the boast of philosophical history, and a truth undeniable, that, from Rome, all modern Civilization is derived.

At the era, however, which we have reached in this our narrative, the looking Rome-ward must be construed with reference to the great achievement reserved for Otho, namely, the actual revival, in the person of one individual, of the Imperial succession amongst the Latins, virtually in abeyance, since the fated Eight hundred Eighty and Eight, the mortal crisis of the Carlovingian Empire. Otho effected this restoration, and the goal he attained becomes the starting-point of modern history. The conformation given to Western Europe by the

951—987  
951—962  
Fourth Mon-  
archy—its  
subsistence in  
the civilized  
Common-  
wealth.

951—967  
 951—962  
 “Holy Roman Empire”  
 founded by  
 Otho, and  
 dissolved by  
 Francis I.

“Holy Roman Empire” which Otho founded, subsisted till the second phase of the great revolutionary crisis which now convulses civilized society.—Whatever aspect the European Commonwealth may assume, will be grounded upon the platform of Otho’s Empire.

Intimate  
 connexion,  
 during  
 Otho’s life,  
 of the affairs  
 of Germany,  
 Italy, and  
 France.

Importance of  
 Otho in the  
 history of  
 France and  
 Normandy.

§ 2. An author sins against good taste,—or is thought to do so,—if he preconizes the importance of his self-imposed labour, but he may be permitted to allude to its difficulties as a plea for indulgence, should he fail. Let me therefore sue for a lenient judgment upon the present passage of my work, indispensably needful if we seek to obtain a right understanding of the subjects I have chosen, and offering extreme perplexity. If we seek the complement of German history during Otho’s reign, Italy and the affairs of Italy must be considered as holding a station scarcely secondary to those of his ancestral Realm. The converse of the proposition is equally undeniable. The history of Italy is utterly unsusceptible of a satisfactory development, otherwise than engrafted upon the history of Germany. Lastly, in the histories of France and of Normandy, Otho is a primary personage, whilst his family became deeply involved in the dissensions and the plots, the crimes and the misfortunes, which developed and consummated the Capetian revolution.

This is one of the periods when the interlacements of events baffle the endeavours and

mock the skill of the synoptic historian. Never can his work assume a symmetrical form. The mass becomes amorphous. There are over-many centres of crystalization. But the task, impracticable to the historical narrator, is fully within the sphere of the historical biographer. Take your Man as the centre, and the perplexing cycles and epicycles will combine in harmonious unity.—The individuality of the Soul is the foundation of all history.

951—987  
951—982

Individuality  
of the soul  
the founda-  
tion of His-  
tory.

No delusions in ethical science are more fraught with danger than those nominal abstractions which conceal from us the reality, that all the judgments we pass upon the aggregates of human society are only estimates of individual responsibility. It is only through those individuals whose acts become known to us, that our miserably imperfect conjectures respecting the secondary causes of human events can be sustained. Yet, never render worship to any Man as a Hero. View the most sinful, or the least, amongst those whom the World celebrates, but as rebels suffered, or servants chosen by the Almighty.—Leaders, only because they are permitted to guide—not Creators, but working out the will of the Creator.

Old words with new meanings originate new ideas. None perhaps in our days, more detrimental to the highest interests of mankind, or more fatal to our temporal or eternal welfare than the trivial term “masses;” seducing us not

951—987  
 951—982  
 merely to forget, but to ignore, the tremendous truth which our imperfect faculties can only humbly confess, though incomprehensible, that, in His book were all our members written before the Worlds were made,—each single Child of Adam as distinctly known by the Maker of all things, the Judge of all men, and as much the object of His anger or His love, as if that Child of Adam floated alone in the boundless infinity of space.—“Every one of all the Millions that live, or have lived, is as wholly an independent Being in himself as if there were no one else in the world but he.”—And therefore every Child of the Protoplast, who, since he was formed out of the ground, has returned or shall return to the dust from which he was taken, is, if we may dare to speak as though we could scan the Omnipotent Mind, more important before the Eternal than all the orbs or stars or planets in the Cosmical Universe.—They were made for time, but man for eternity.

Chivalrous  
 tendency  
 of Otho's  
 character.

§ 3. Otho's life, as yet unwritten, would supply materials for a monograph no less interesting and instructive than the historical portrait of Charlemagne, to whose era the same observations respecting the difficulties arising from richness of subject and complexity of plot equally apply.—No Monarch perhaps ever more fitted to his task, more varied in talent, more attractive from his idiosyncracies and from the

opportunities which were offered for their display and exercise. 951—987  
951—982

To posterity, Otho presents himself almost as a Knight errant, flourishing anterior to the era when this brilliant character of the mediæval drama was potentially realized; and most particularly does he assume that aspect, whilst engaged in the memorable adventures which connected a persecuted Beauty's deliverance with the acquisition of an Empire.

German writers have not been unwilling to acknowledge this resemblance. Chivalry, even in Otho's father's time, is said to have been matured; and very curious antient memorials are extant, claiming an archaic date, testifying, how, under the auspices of Henry the Fowler, the first Tournament was celebrated with great solemnity and magnificence in the Maiden's borough, the mythological Magdeburg. There are books ambiguously dubious between truth and figment, which constitute essential portions of history. Turpin may be instanced, and our Geoffrey of Monmouth also, and, in this category, we are fain to include the record which, in the early part of the sixteenth century, we identify as having been in the custody of Hans von Hueburg, "Erbtruchsetz" or Hereditary Seneschal of the Archbishopric of Salzburg. This precious tome, Hans lent or presented to Max Wirsung, a rich merchant of Augsburg, an active partner in the printing office

"Chivalry" said to have arisen under Henry the Fowler.

The famous "Turnerbuch."



951—987  
 951—962  
 1518.  
 Mysterious  
 publication  
 of the  
 "Turnier-  
 buch."

established by Sigmund Grim, a Physician in that Imperial city ; and the Merchant, undertaking the task of editorship, published the book at his own expense, and dedicated the volume to the noble functionary from whom he had received the same.

Some few years afterwards, Johann Kirchner, Administrator, or "Vicarius," of Saint Maurice's Collegiate Church at Magdeburg, became possessed of another exemplar of the antient muniment, but much more ample in details. Emulating the liberality of the Truchsess, the Vicarius bestowed the valuable Codex upon the "well-known George Ruexner," who, causing the contents to be printed, tells us that the manuscript itself was burnt : but whether by accident or design does not clearly appear.

Such is the somewhat suspicious manner in which the famous "Turnier-buch" was first presented to the world. But, corroborative evidence has been adduced in an instrument, advancing considerable pretensions to authority. As far as the reputation of Goldastus, the most distinguished amongst the juridical antiquaries who have illustrated the constitutional history of the Empire, can impart confidence, we ought to consider the "*Statuta et Privilegia Ludorum equestrium sive Hastiludiorum*" as authentic. On the face of these Ordinances and Grants, they fully confirm the Turnier-buch. No small proportion of the antient German nobility discover the names of

Statutes of  
 Tournaments  
 ascribed to  
 Henry the  
 Fowler.

their ancestors in these statutes, prescribing the regulations of the Lists and the Field, and purporting to be the enactments promulgated by King Henry in the presence of all his Peers summoned from Germany, from Gaul, and from the Slavonian lands.

In our more critical age, the Book of Tournaments and the corresponding Statutes have been discarded as apocryphal, yet the learned individuals who are now diligently compiling the "Year Books" of the Teutonic Empire, notice, that passages may be found in early and indisputably genuine chronicles affording support to the documents in question. Perhaps the most charitable mode of dealing with these problematic productions may be to consider them as somewhat similar in character to our Battle Abbey Roll—which we are willing to accept as an expanded rifacimento of an authentic original, including many noble personages who would have had a right to appear there, had they taken a part in the proceedings.

Extent to which the Turner-book can be admitted.

The venerable science of Heraldry and the artificial institutions of Chivalry mutually assisted in imparting shape and form to each other. The armorials of Germany and the Germanized Slavo-Wendic States possess a very peculiar character.—Grim half-fleshed skulls, Devil-like wiverns, thorny dorsal-finned serpents, fiery-tongued crested dragons, and very many other bearings are therein exhibited which Menestrier

German Heraldry—its peculiar character.

951—987  
 951—962 or Ferne or Guillim would abandon as non-descript and undescribable, and seeming to indicate a remote origin. These are found abundantly also in Italian blazonry, because it was mainly from Imperial concessions, or by reason of their Teutonic descent, that the Italian nobility received or displayed their *scudi gentilizii*, of which the learned Bartholus expounded the law.

§ 4. If Henry really patronized any customs or martial exercises of the before-mentioned nature, Otho may in some degree have inherited his marked predilection for those combats, which, though more immediately dictated by Teutonic customs, have been frequently adopted as tests of truth amongst all antient races, imparting their animating spirit to chivalrous enterprise; when the appetite for “passages of arms”—not unseldom, however, approximating to conventional fanfaronades—became contagious.

Battle ordeal discouraged by the Church.

Discouraged by the Church; as a temptation of Providence, the Battle Ordeal had been declining in estimation. Where the *Lex Romana* prevailed, it was indeed only partially admissible; but Otho, receding from the advance of enlightenment, gave inordinate encouragement to this rough process. Abstract principles were to be defined by animal strength. Such was the case when Otho ordained that celebrated Duel which settled the conflicting doctrines of lineal representation in the second degree, and of proximity in the

first;—the one motived by the natural feelings of affection, and the other grounded on the technical principles of law.

951—987  
951—982  
981—

The conflict, so prominent in the history of mediæval jurisprudence, ensued at "Steil," in Westphalia, and constituted a species of episode in a private war, which, raging between two great Saxon nobles, Everhard and Bruning, had disturbed the whole country. For the purpose of terminating the bloody feud, a great Convention of the People was held. The mission of the Folkmoot concerned the whole Community, but the parties in a private suit profited by the opportunity of bringing their case before the national tribunal.—A dispute had arisen with respect to a partible inheritance; to wit, whether the sons of a son dying in the lifetime of his father and their grandfather, should or should not be excluded by their uncles, the grandfather's surviving sons. Pursuant to custom, the Assembly directed that the question should be submitted to "Scheiderichter,"—"Arbitrators" as we must call them in modern English, but, according to the original idea—lost in our own language, though emphatically retained in some of the Teutonic as well as Semitic dialects,—"Dividers."

Duel ordered by Otho for the purpose of deciding the principles of hereditary representation.

Otho, however, would not hear of it. Never would he abide that men of noble birth, chiefs of the people, should be treated so disrespectfully.

951—987 } A combat between “Gladiators”—a singular  
 951—982 } term, and raising points for consideration—  
 was,—as Otho declared, the only decent process  
 for settling disputes compromising Estates of  
 high degree. The sword of the grandchildren’s  
 sturdy advocate triumphed in the debate; and  
 judgment being given accordingly, the prin-  
 ciple that the share of such a Feud should de-  
 scend as a vested interest to the deceased Father’s  
 issue, became the established law.

Otho com-  
 pels his  
 daughter  
 Liutgarda,  
 wife of  
 Conrad of  
 Lorraine,  
 to clear  
 herself by  
 the battle  
 trial.

Otho was sternly consistent in his pre-  
 ference for the Battle trial. He risked the  
 reputation of his only daughter, by compelling  
 her to abide the result of this perilous and  
 fallacious process. A villanously false accusation  
 having been preferred against the royal lady, she  
 earnestly entreated to be allowed to clear herself  
 by canonical compurgation, and her imperial pa-  
 rent denied the request. The Accuser was dis-  
 gracefully vanquished, but her husband, Duke  
 Conrad, continued to withhold his love from his  
 innocent consort. Liutgarda patiently endured  
 her tribulations until her death. She was interred  
 in Saint Alban’s Basilica at Mayence, and her  
 silver spindle, perhaps a nuptial present, or the  
 symbol by which she received seizin of her  
 “Morgengabe,” was suspended over her tomb.

Furthermore, to Otho’s fostering we may also  
 attribute the renewed development of a custom  
 then almost forgotten in usage—the challenge

given by a single Champion against a whole host of enemies. The Edeling's defiance of the Rouen Normans affords a memorable exemplification of this practice; and we shall have to describe another combat, nearly parallel in circumstances, which came off before the gates of Paris. Similar demonstrations of devoted courage or vapouring bravery, may be traced equally to the scriptural, the mythological, and the classical ages. Yet Otho's general encouragement of such appeals to the sword is not the less illustrative of the process whereby so many divers elements and modes of thought, ultimately combined in generating the splendid pageant, equally real and unreal, of Knighthood feasting in Saint George's Hall, or tilting in the field of the Cloth of Gold between Guisnes and Ardres.

951—987  
951—962

§ 5. Although we may correctly assert that the Imperial dignity had fallen into abeyance, we must not suppose that the culminating honour of the Christian world could have passed out of sight, or been forgotten out of mind. When the Imperial succession had failed under Irene's female reign,—for who could acknowledge a woman to be Supreme Head of the Christian Commonwealth, — it was held that an interregnum had occurred. Rome therefore asserted her rights, and her Senate and her People, assuming to act as the virtual representatives of the Western Empire, concurred with Pope Leo in

Theory of the Imperial dignity in connexion with the Catholic Church. (See Rise and Progress of the English Commonwealth, vol. I. p. 450).

951—987  
 951—982  
 The Empe-  
 ror the  
 Defender of  
 Christianity.

placing the Diadem on the brows of the Frankish Sovereign. In theory, the Imperial authority was an Ordinance grounded upon the most exalted Christian principles, but amalgamated with the policy of the world. If the sectaries of Mahomet were combined in defence of their false faith under their Caliph, was it not equally incumbent on the followers of the Cross to confederate under one Temporal head, whose mediation should prevent the shedding of Christian blood, and whose power should protect them against every infidel enemy? Accompanied by this solemn admonition was the sword delivered by the Pontiff to the successor of the Cæsars; and such the call which Charlemagne obeyed.

A glorious hypothesis, but involving mutually destructive interferences and insuperable contradictions; irreconcilable to Divine Faith, and irremovable by human ability. Yet piety and policy, the purest aspirations and the most selfish views, are all found at various periods to have encouraged this majestic vision; and after the dethronement of Charles-le-Gros, the encreasing confusion of affairs in Italy in general, and in Rome in particular, where the most profligate of men had been promoted to Saint Peter's Chair by the violences of the ferocious and profligate nobles, called loudly for a remedy.

Encouraged by these openings, various Sovereigns had laboured to obtain the Imperial dig-

nity. Such reverence was rendered to Charle-  
 magne's renown, that, however imperfect the  
 protection afforded by his memory to his des-  
 cendants, when on the Throne, yet any remote or  
 indirect link of kindred was factiously or fondly  
 construed to impart an inchoate claim. Thus the  
 "August Berenger"—grandson in the female  
 line of Louis-le-Debonnaire, had been nominally  
 invested with the Imperial dignity. From a pa-  
 ternal ancestor, the Lombard Eric, Berenger had  
 inherited Friuli, a Marquisate or a Duchy,—the  
 terms are nearly convertible,—a most powerful  
 member of the Lombard realm: not conterminous  
 with the narrowed limits of the Austrian  
 province now so named, but extending from the  
 neighbourhood of Verona far into the Tridentine,  
 and comprehending all those Sub-alpine districts  
 on the northern side of the mountains, or in-  
 cluded in their ramifications, whose antient  
 unity with Italy is still manifested by their  
 employment of the Italian tongue.

Berenger possessed brilliant talents, nor  
 were his competitors, Lambert, and Guido, and  
 the unfortunate Hugh of Provence, destitute of  
 merit or valour. Yet these abortive revivals  
 were so fragmentary and unconsequential, that,  
 during their spasmodic existence, they only  
 mocked the Majesty of the Western Common-  
 wealth:—none of these Sovereigns or Pretenders,  
 acknowledged as Cæsars in any Transalpine

951—967  
 951—969  
 Emperors  
 in Italy  
 after the  
 dismem-  
 berment of  
 the Carlo-  
 vingian  
 Empire.  
 (See vol. I.  
 p. 626-630).

Berenger I.  
 and his com-  
 petitors.  
 889—928



951—987

951—962

Henry the  
Fowler,  
"Advoca-  
tus Roman-  
orum,"  
sometimes,  
but errone-  
ously, reck-  
oned as an  
Emperor.

state,—none, obtaining any permanent Cisalpine authority as legitimate Emperors.

Henry the Fowler, seated on Charlemagne's throne at Aix-la-Chapelle, wielding Charlemagne's sceptre, and wearing Charlemagne's Imperial diadem, is supposed to have contemplated the full acquisition of Charlemagne's power. The son of the Saxon Conrad rises before posterity invested with so much grandeur, and clothed with such dignity, that he has been not unfrequently quoted as an Emperor; and though he never positively employed the Imperial title in his official acts, yet the style of "Advocatus Romanorum," which he assumed, approximates closely to the assertion of such an authority, possessing at the same time a happy or unhappy ambiguity.

Otho seeks  
to obtain  
the supre-  
macy over  
the whole  
Carlovin-  
gian Em-  
pire.

Otho, inheriting his father's dominions, spirit, and wisdom, entertained, from the beginning, designs even more ample. Since the homage of Attigny he had been steadily, though quietly, gaining influence in France. A supremacy over the whole Carlovingian Territory throughout Germany, and throughout the Gauls, would open the road to the portals of the Capitol, and his dealings with the Oriental Cæsars testified his anxiety to be deemed an Emperor's Peer. But the fratricidal conflicts which attain such melancholy importance during the earlier periods of Otho's reign, the

strenuous warfare he waged against the Slavonians, and the need of resisting the Magyar devastations, had hitherto allowed him but small leisure for pursuing such an enterprise. Thus embarrassed, however ardently Otho may have encouraged the hope of emulating his father, and whatever devices or plans for awakening the Imperial authority from slumber may have flitted before his fancy or occupied his thoughts, it is very possible that he might have postponed the attempt indefinitely, had he not been stimulated by a combination of circumstances equally persuasive to the statesman, and inviting to the warrior, consonant with his exalted feelings, and attractive to his imaginative mind.

§ 6. The Italian Peninsula, in the age immediately succeeding the cessation of the Carolingian imperial authority, may be viewed as including three leading political divisions.

Lombardy, often (and perhaps more diplomatically) styled the kingdom of Italy, threatened or commanded all the rest. That sweetest bidding of repose, "*felicissima notte*," whose harmony first rejoices the weary and benighted traveller at Airolo as he descends the Saint Gothard, is a living announcement that he has entered the frontier of the Lombard conquests, far more emphatic than the neighbouring ruined tower which failed to guard them. The boundaries of Lombardy girdled all the regions where the dia-

951—987  
951—983

Political divisions of Italy.

Kingdom of Lombardy.

<sup>951—987</sup>  
<sup>951—982</sup>
lects which Dante would have acknowledged as appertaining to the “*Volgare eloquenzia*” are still spoken, from the North and Northward into and beyond the Alps, and the Saint Bernard and Mont Cenis passes; and Southward unto the Apennines; and beyond the Apennines unto the frontiers of the Exarchate and the Pentapolis, and the Duchy of Rome.

Lombard  
 Duchies,  
 Marqui-  
 sates, Coun-  
 ties, &c.

Lombard  
 Feudality.

These lands had been partitioned by the Barbarian victors, Autharis and Cleph, and their successors, amongst thirty-four Dukes; and many Marquises, those of Friuli, Tuscany, and Spoleto being the most important. Moreover an hundred Counts were placed in the several Cities, whose numbers were encreased by divisions of their territories, as well as by farther creations under the Carlovingians. A vast array of “*Gastaldi*” and “*Capitanei*,” obtained their *sortes* or allotments, the various ranks constituting altogether a crowd of Nobles, all claiming Gothic or Teutonic origin.—No aristocracy in the West so truly realized the feudal idea, none so powerful against their Sovereign, or more intent upon controlling his authority. During three generations and four they retained their long beards and their laws. The latter, though gradually modified by the Roman jurisprudence, they never positively abandoned; for even until the Revolution a text from the “*Leges Longobardorum*” might be occasionally quoted, at

Florence or Milan, with reasonable pertinence, in forensic proceedings. Yet, in all other respects, subdued by the magic influence of Italian soil, and Italian sky, and above all of the Italian tongue, the Lombards became a thoroughly Italian population. Proud as they were of their descent, they wholly forgot their ancestral language, and exhibited, in their general character, all the talents and all the vices which adorn and pollute the Garden of the World.

The second group of Ausonian dominations included Rome—Rome, disgraced and tyrannized by the ferocious and profligate Nobility and the debased citizens who composed the Republic,—and the Exarchate of Ravenna; the latter territory having fully reverted to the Byzantine Empire.

Lastly, Apulia and the adjoining regions, where the Lombard Dukes reigned with independent authority, each a Sovereign in his own Duchy or City. Naples however was still claimed by the Byzantine Emperor, though much annoyed by the Saracens.

§ 7. Lombardy was at this juncture divided between Lothaire, son of Hugh, late King of Italy and Count of Provence, and the second Berenger, grandson of the first, and who, in addition to Friuli, held the Marquisate of Ivrea, a very important territory, inasmuch as it gave him the keys of the Saint Gothard and Mont Cenis passes.

951—957

951—962

951—  
Lothaire's  
death—  
persecution  
of his widow  
Adelaide.

Lothaire, a prince of promising virtue, had espoused the lovely daughter of Rodolph, King of Transjurane-Burgundy. Adelaide's youthful charms were of small import in estimating her worth, when compared with her wisdom, her discretion, and her piety. One child, the infant Emma, destined to obtain such unhappy importance in French history, was the only fruit of the marriage.—Berenger laboured under the general suspicion that, instigated by his wicked wife Guilla, the daughter of Boso, Duke of Tuscany, he had removed Lothaire by poison; and both Berenger and Guilla were extremely desirous that the widowed Queen should marry Adalbert, their son.

Aug. 20,  
951—  
Adelaide's  
escape from  
prison.

Adelaide peremptorily refused. Berenger and his wife endeavoured to overcome her resistance by gifts, by anger, by menaces—all failing, they realized their threats, for she was entirely in their power. They stripped off her garments—they tore her hair out by the roots,—they beat her,—they kicked her,—they cast her into a foul dungeon, beneath a Castle hard by the Lago di Garda, one poor little serving-maid being her only companion. Aided by a kind Priest, the faithful Martin, Adelaide escaped from prison. Many were willing to believe that the Queen had been delivered by the energetic little serving-maid, who, unprovided with spade or mattock, excavated the earth under the dungeon door with her own hands. All authorities, however, concur in representing that

Adelaide's most efficient helper was the faithful Martin. If Martin ever quitted her side, it was with the intent that he might work more effectually in Adelaide's cause.

951—987  
951—982

Adelaide was tracked by her enemies. Amongst other adventures we are told how the fair fugitive became entangled in the marshy borders of the lake. The Sun rose and the Sun set, and rose and set again, and she would have been death-starved by hunger and misery had she not been rescued by a fisherman.—At one perilous juncture, chased at full gallop by her savage tormentors, they raised the view-halloo, and were gaining upon her, till she baulked them by plunging down amongst the tall stalks of the growing corn; and though, dashing after her, they searched the field with their lances, she continued undiscovered by the perverse diligence of her hunters, and they lost their prey. But soon a brighter fortune dawned.

Through the intervention of Adelhard, Bishop of Reggio, his brother, Albert Azzo, had accepted the hazardous duty of standing forward as Adelaide's protector and defender. Prince of the sacred palace, Marquis of Modena and Reggio, Albert Azzo, adopted as an ancestor of the house of Este, figures prominently in the magnificent vision raised by the prophetic Melissa before the spell-bound Bradamante in Merlin's cave.

951—  
Albert  
Azzo, the  
Marquis of  
Modena  
and Reg-  
gio, pro-  
tects her.

951—987

951—982

Vedi qui Alberto, invitto Capitano,  
 Ch' ornerà di trofei tanti delubri  
 Ugo il figlio è con lui, che di Milano  
 Farà l'acquisto, e spiegherà i Colubri.  
 Azzo è quell' altro, a cui resterà in mano  
 Dopo il fratello, il regno degl' Insubri.  
 Ecco Albert Azzo, il cui savio consiglio,  
 Torra d' Italia, Berengario, e 'l figlio.

E sarà degno, à cui Cesare Otone  
 Alda sua figlia in matrimonio aggiunga,  
 Vedi un' altro Ugo, ò bella successione,  
 Che dal patrio valor non si dilunga.  
 Costui sarà, che per giusta cagione  
 A i superbi Roman l'orgoglio emunga,  
 Che 'l terzo Otone, e il Pontefice tolga  
 De la man loro, e 'l grave assedio sciolga.

Value of  
 Ariosto's  
 historical  
 pictures.

This ideal representation diverges widely from the facts; but the bright tints of Ariosto impress upon our minds many an historical picture which fades from our memory after we have dozed before the groupe as delineated by the veracious and lifeless pencils of Saint-Marc or Muratori:—Truth is not always true to Nature.

Powerful, however, as Albert Azzo may have been, he could not carry on the contest against Berenger, whose strength earned for him in Italy the strange epithet of the "Rhinoceros," and Albert Azzo would have been unable to oppose a permanent resistance against the Tyrant.

This task was reserved for Henry's son.

The tale of Adelaide's sufferings resounded throughout the Carlovingian states. Even in the most secluded monasteries the inmates were excited to wonder and to pity. Her beauty, her virtues, Berenger's unpopularity, the disturbed state of Lombardy, all concurred in stimulating Otho to recover Charlemagne's inheritance. The Princes and Vassals of the Empire were summoned, and the Saxon King declared the causes and the objects of the enterprise in which he determined to engage;—he would humiliate the pride of the tyrannous Berenger, liberate the oppressed Widow, win at one and the same time Adelaide's hand and the sceptre of Italy, and then present himself in the antient Capital of the world.

951—987  
951—982  
951—952  
Otho determines to conquer Italy and espouse Adelaide.

§ 8. The valley of the Etsch, or Adige, that poetical stream, that cerulean stream whose Teutonic and Italian denominations exemplify so forcibly, by their contrast, the unsubdued harshness of organization in the one race, and the sense of harmony bestowed upon or acquired by the other, affords the most accessible military road from the Schwaben-land to Ausonia. Otho commenced his march with a mighty force, accompanied by Liudolph, Editha's son, his only son, in whom all the father's hopes and affections had hitherto centred; but who, from very obvious and excusable, however illaudable, motives, already contemplated his father's roman-

951—  
Otho enters Italy through the valley of the Adige.



951—987

951—982

tic combinations of love and war with bitter vexation and anxiety.—Next in station, Henry of Bavaria, still revelling in unforgotten jealousies, unallayed and scarcely concealed;—Conrad, Duke of Lorraine, Otho's valiant but turbulent son-in-law;—Frederick, Archbishop of Mayence;—and a vast number of other Nobles and Prelates.—No more fancies about hats of straw, but an army of ardent warriors fully equipped in a manner befitting high enterprise.

All the results of the hostilities now commenced, and which continued fitfully, until Otho fully accomplished his designs, are clearly established. But the details relating to transactions in a far country, obscurely known to the chroniclers, are related with corresponding confusedness. It should seem that the grieved and affronted Liudolph separated himself from his father, pursuing his own course for the purpose of thwarting the expedition. Otho, however, advanced, heading his vast army of Saxons and Bavarians, Franks and Lotharingians. No opposition was offered in the plains of Lombardy. Otho's triumphant progress is traced, not by battles or conflicts, but by the promulgation of his charters. Proud Milan opened her gates, and Otho's occupation of the City as Lord and Master, was commemorated by the tiny coin, the *Ottelini*, struck by his orders during his residence. The diminutive denomination, popu-

Liudolph's  
grudges  
against his  
father, from  
whom he  
separates  
himself.

Otho's tri-  
umphant  
progress—  
he surprises  
Milan.

larly given to the mintage, testifies the smallness of the pieces, possibly also the baseness of the metal. These continued in circulation long after Otho's line had passed away, and, when Frederick Barbarossa commenced his reign, the Citizens in their daily dealings, might have been usefully reminded of their subjugation to the Saxon Cæsar.

951—967  
951—962

Berenger retreated to Pavia, taking refuge in the strong fortress whose site is still marked by the gigantic castellated Palace of the Visconti; now equally the monument and memorial of past splendour and modern Vandalism. But the Lombard King could not maintain his position, and he fled before the face of the enemy. Otho, thereupon, forthwith assumed the royal authority, and, proclaiming himself as King, issued his royal Precepts, dated in the first year of his reign in Italy; the style, however, being singularly curious. The Titles of "*Rex Francorum et Longobardorum*" and of "*Rex Francorum et Italicorum*," are equally adopted in separate instruments. This variation can scarcely be ascribed to accident, and may be construed as testifying, not only to the much dominion he had gained, but to the more he asserted.—Otho, King of the Franks West or East, or East and West, as he chose to construe the ethnological name—Otho, not merely King of the Lombards, but of all the populations to whom the enchorial denomination of "Italians" appertained.

Oct. 951—  
Berenger  
retreats to  
Pavia, but  
abandons  
his position.

Otho enters  
the City,  
proclaim-  
ing himself  
King, and  
Eastern  
Emperor,  
issues his  
royal Man-  
dates and  
Charters  
in that  
character.

951—987

951—982

Dec. 951—  
Adelaide  
conducted  
to Pavia,  
and married  
to Otho.

Otho ranged victoriously throughout the plain of Lombardy, which passed completely under his power, save and except some strongholds retained by Berenger or his lieges. But, in the meanwhile, Otho's brother Henry had been despatched to Canossa, for the purpose of bearing the Royal wooer's offer. No hesitation on the part of the illustrious Messenger to perform the office,—for Henry and his nephew Liudolph happened now to be at variance,—no reluctance felt or affected by the blooming Widow; she was conducted to Pavia, where the Victor was presented to the Bride whom he had won. The nuptials were celebrated with exuberant magnificence, and doubly joyful was the Christmas festival, the wedding, and the holiday. But scarcely had Otho begun to sip the honey when he was compelled to quaff the gall.

Indeed, what must have been the undutiful thoughts, but, humanly speaking, the uncontrollable thoughts, which distracted the young, the ambitious, the energetic Liudolph, when he beheld the lovely Adelaide upon the throne, seated by his grey-headed father's side,—she so fitted, through age and station, to become the consort of the son? What plan more politic, or more conformable to nature and to reason, than that Adelaide, as the wife of Liudolph, the designated successor to the German Empire, should unite in their descendants the kingdoms of Germany and of Italy? Nor

was it possible for Liudolph to forget that, though designated by Otho as his successor, his very title to that succession had become defeasible. <sup>951—957</sup>  
<sup>951—952</sup>  
 Eldest he always must be, but the son of Otho and of Editha was not the son of a crowned King and a crowned Queen; and, were such an heir to be the fruit of the nuptials, his claims might be completely annulled. Liudolph could scarcely have concealed his vexation, nor did he care to conceal it. He again severed himself from his father and hurried on to Saxony, <sup>952—</sup>  
<sup>Liudolph joins in organizing a rebellion against Otho.</sup>  
 where he took up his abode at Saalfeld in Thuringia, “the place of fatal counsels,”—and, according to tradition, there was the plan of rebellion arranged.

Necessity compelled Otho to make his Queen acquainted with her barbarian dominions much sooner than he had anticipated. Having hastily <sup>952—</sup>  
<sup>Otho returns to Germany.</sup>  
 returned with her to Germany, he despatched Duke Conrad to Italy for the purpose of defending the country. But Conrad himself was unfaithful. Conrad was combining with Liudolph and with Henry of Bavaria against Otho,—a son, a brother, and a son-in-law,—concerting his ruin. Berenger retained sufficient power to enable him to co-operate with Otho’s domestic enemies: and, it should seem, that they sought to restore the Lombard to his dominions, in order that he might unite with them against Otho, their common foe. This consummation could not be accomplished by

951—987

951—982

force; but an appeal to the Victor's clemency might have some effect, and Berenger, upon Conrad's advice, submitted to the humiliation with the double intent of recovering his power, and of aiding in the plans which Otho's envenomed kindred were concocting against a brother, a father, and a Sovereign.

Great discontent excited by Otho's Italian marriage.

Discontent was prevailing widely. The ultramontanes, whether of the Romane tongue or the Tudesque, equally hated and despised the "Italians," for they merged the personality of the dominant Teutonic race in the general idea of the regions which they ruled. In their opinion, Adelaide was an Italian though she had not a drop of Italian blood in her veins: her Emma, Lothaire's little daughter,—and fated to become another Lothaire's queen,—was an Italian *bambina* likewise, and, when she grew up, her local nationality contributed much to the aversion she encountered. As for Adelaide, her exemplary virtues, aided by her beauty and pleasant manners, ultimately conquered all hearts, but, at the first blush, the marriage was very unpalatable to the German multitude.

952—  
Berenger determines to appeal to Otho's mercy, and repairs to Germany. He is received un-

Berenger, repairing to King Otho at Magdeburg, was received with frigid respect. A deputation of Palatine nobles came forth to meet him, and he was conducted to the lodging which had been prepared for him. But Berenger found that he was treated rather as a prisoner

than as a guest. Three days elapsed ere the Lombard was admitted to see the King's face; and, though permitted to return to Italy, promises and pledges were exacted from him, that he would appear before the Convention summoned to be held at Augsburg on the seventh day of August, the seventh of the ides of the month, being the Saturday before old Saint Laurence his day.

The Assembly possessed the combined character of a Parliament, or Placitum, and an Ecclesiastical Synod. All the nations subjected to Otho,—Saxons, Bavarians, Suabians, Lombards;—were represented by their Nobles. The Ecclesiastical Estate was solemnly imposing. The names of the principal Prelates of Germany and Italy, from Mayence laved by the broad Rhine, to the Etruscan hill-forts of Cortona and Arezzo, shew how Otho's mandate was obeyed far and nigh. The representatives despatched by Constantine Porphyrogenitus again bore witness to the interest excited in the Eastern Empire by the affairs of the West. And this constitutional Council, so memorable in European history, is connected with an incident not without importance in the annals of science, for, during the Session a large stone, its magnitude most marvellous, fell from the heavens upon the earth amidst a raging storm—hail, rain, and thunder.

Before this solemn and venerable Senate, Ber-

951—957

951—952

graciously,  
and returns  
to Italy.

952—

7 August—  
Great  
Council  
or Diet  
of Germany  
and Italy  
convened at  
Augsburg,  
attended  
also by the  
embassadors  
from the  
Eastern  
Emperor,  
and before  
which Ber-  
enger and  
Adalbert  
appear.

951—987

951—982

enger, and his son Adalbert, humbly appeared as suppliants, soliciting King Otho's peace. The prayer was granted, but upon hard terms. Surrendering the Lombard kingdom to Otho, they received the same back again from him, not as an independent Sovereignty, but as a Benefice, of which the successor of Charlemagne, by delivering the golden sceptre, gave them seizin. The father and the son placed their hands between the hands of Otho, and commended themselves to him as vassals, taking the oaths accordingly. Berenger was then saluted as King of Lombardy, but with contracted boundaries ; inasmuch as the Conqueror enforced an important cession. Otho retained the Marches of Verona and Aquileia, the best part of the Friulian duchy. This district was placed under the government of Henry of Bavaria, to the end that the high road to Italy should be always kept open and free.

Lombardy,  
the Crown  
land of the  
German  
Empire.

Thus did the whole soil of antient Lombardy and its appurtenances, with some few exceptions, grounded upon antient rights or claims, such as allodial Monaco and the doubly dubious republic of the Lagunes, become vested in the Imperial crown, and an integral portion of the Holy Roman Empire ; and so continued according to the theory of the "Reichs-verfassung," until the era, still distinct within the recollections of many surviving amidst the present generation, who lived when that Empire was dissolved.

§ 9. A period ensued, abounding with events equally contrasting and interesting, during which Otho's sorrows were scarcely counterbalanced by his triumphs. It would be my delight to narrate them minutely, but time presses, space decreases, old age advances, and, amongst the details which I reluctantly avoid, I can only glance at some few prominent incidents bearing upon the personages who figure in the History of France or Normandy, or who contributed to the development of the Empire.

951—957  
951—952

Liudolph's vexation was becoming unbearable. Blooming Adelaide did not disappoint the expectations which might be most reasonably entertained; and, in due time after the nuptials, she brought forth her eldest son. The delighted Husband bestowed upon the child of his new love the name borne by his own noble father, Henry, the crowned King. But this first bud of the *Sachs Lombardey* branch was prematurely blighted, and the wailing rival removed, Liudolph became somewhat more easy—but—alas and alackaday!—not for long. The months during which the heir whilome apparent, but now presumptive, enjoyed the absence of a competitor, were numbered.

952—3  
Liudolph's  
jealousies  
of his half-  
brothers,  
the three  
sons of  
Otho and  
Adelaide—  
Henry,  
Bruno, and  
Otho (after-  
wards  
Otho II.).

More hopes, gossips and rockers, full-fed nurses and knowing matrons, were again congregating in the burthened Queen's apartments. Adelaide did well, and Otho was able to compli-



951—957

951—952

ment his brother Bruno by bestowing upon the new Nephew the name of the Uncle, who probably lifted him up from the font.

In essentials, all distinctions of rank are obliterated by the opening and the closing events of human life ; the bosom as much as the grave, —under equivalent circumstances, the temptations identical. The same mean, sordid, and selfish sentiments are inspired by the chances of succession to the greedy grandame's grimy rag-wrapped guinea, the gilded Coronet, or the golden Crown. We may fancy Liudolph collecting all the cradle reports, and the earnest interest he took in his tiny brother's teething. For the encouragement of Liudolph, the baby Bruno was a dwindler, being evidently destined soon to drop from the bough ; but any cheerful anticipations thus arising were again dashed ; and a third child was born, upon whom paternal, or perhaps the more prescient maternal, affection, conferred the father's name. Youngest and last of the legitimate children begotten by Otho, the boy prospered—fine and healthy ;—and, unless gained or regained by force, Liudolph might be all but certain that the covenanted inheritance would be denied to him.

Otho II. :  
jealousies  
excited in  
Liudolph  
by his  
birth.

Hatred, malice, and every bad passion now raged amongst the Royal family. Liudolph, Conrad, and other nobles were fiercely incensed against Henry of Bavaria. Liudolph headed a

conspiracy against his father, and this sinful act pacified his Uncle, who, never fully renouncing his enmity against Otho, readily joined. But if these kinsmen mutually were at variance, they nevertheless merged all differences in their common feeling of dislike and enmity against the glorious King. The dethronement of Otho was the object distinctly avowed. So contagious was the discontent—so bitter the antipathy entertained by the Germans against the Italianized Adelaide—that even Bruno, so loudly lauded for learning and piety, is suspected to have been momentarily seduced into the revolt. It is said he invited Conrad, Otho's son-in-law, to usurp either the kingdom of Lorraine, or, as it is alleged, the very Empire. The unnatural war was pursued with so much enmity and energy, that it seems to have been merely by chance that father and son were not brought into actual and personal conflict. Yet, during this most melancholy period, Otho achieved a victory which may almost be considered as having rescued Western Christendom from destruction.

951—987  
951—982

Confederacy  
of Otho's  
family  
against  
him.

Liudolph's cause was popular, especially amongst the young, and general sympathy was elicited by the apprehension that his claims would be defeated by the new passion which had fascinated his father.

Bruno's culpability may be a dubious imputation, but there is no uncertainty concerning the guilt incurred by the other conspirators.

951—987  
 951—962  
 952—3  
 Conrad and  
 the confederates  
 invade the  
 Magyars.

Conrad and Liudolph, taking the lead, concurred in an act of treason, not only against Germany, but the Christian Commonwealth. Doubting whether they could make head against Otho, the desperate animosity of his kinsmen induced them to invoke the Magyars, and to bring upon their own people the enemies who prided themselves in deserving the epithet bestowed upon Attila, "The Scourge of God." At this period Zulta Duke or King of the Magyars, Zulta, who fixed the circling boundaries of the kingdom. As if the desire of conquest and the prospect of plunder were not sufficient to set the savages in movement, large gifts in money were transmitted to Zulta by Conrad. And the foul misdeed, which might perhaps be doubted, at least as to the full extent, if we had no other voucher than the French and German Chroniclers, is proved uncontestably by the statement of the anonymous historian, who, simply designated as the "Notary of King Bela," is the only authority for the primeval periods of Magyar history. This insane instigation brought on the great inroad of the Magyars into France, Burgundy, and Italy, and the miserable desolation which we have already noticed as having ensued shortly before the death of Louis d'Outremer.

952—  
 The Magyar  
 invasion  
 of France,  
 Burgundy,  
 &c.—(See  
 p. 619.)

Conrad's subsequent repentance, in which he was consistent till his death, shows how deeply he felt his guilt. But Liudolph's angry feelings

hardened him against the truth. It was he, who <sup>951—987</sup>  
 had sinned most deeply, not merely toward his <sup>954—955</sup>  
 Father but as a public enemy. For Liudolph  
 furnished the Magyars with the guides, who en-  
 abled them to effectuate their desolating invasion.

The melancholy feud between Otho and his <sup>954—</sup>  
 nearest of kin, having raged during nearly three <sup>The Paci-</sup>  
 years, a pacification was concluded in the Diet <sup>fication of</sup>  
 of Arnstadt: and the incidents which accom- <sup>Arnstadt.</sup>  
 panied the restoration of peace, were not without  
 a touch of sweetness. Whilst Otho was chasing  
 in the forest near Sonnen-feld in Thuringia, be-  
 tween Cronach and Coburg, a locality whose name  
 bespeaks the connexion thereof with the antient  
 Teutonic belief,—a suppliant, bare-headed, bare-  
 footed, cast himself upon the ground before the <sup>955—</sup>  
 Royal Huntsman. It was Liudolph, humbly ap- <sup>Liudolph's</sup>  
 pealing to his Father's mercy. As for Conrad, <sup>humiliation</sup>  
 he was deprived of his Duchy, and all other the <sup>and Conrad's</sup>  
 possessions derived from Otho's bounty; nothing <sup>repentance.</sup>  
 left to him beyond his paternal inheritance.  
 The bold, the generous, yet stiff-necked warrior  
 submitted meekly and contentedly to this im-  
 poverishment and humiliation. His heart was  
 wholly changed; and he henceforward desired  
 life, only that he might be spared until he could  
 testify his repentance.

But the mischief could not be undone. The  
 Magyars cared nothing for the reconciliation be-  
 tween King Otho and the recreants who had

951—957

955—962

sought their alliance, and were determined to accept the invitation they had received, to its fullest extent. The attack upon Northern France was only their first campaign.

955—  
Fraudulent  
embassy  
despatched  
to Otho  
by the  
Magyars.

§ 13. Not long subsequently to the Pacification of Arnstadt, certain Legates or Ambassadors, despatched by Zulta, appeared most unexpectedly before Otho, professing friendship, nay, obedience. Otho at once guessed the truth;—they had come to spy out the state of the Country.—Indeed, the device was very clumsy, inasmuch as there was no one previous time or era, when amicable relations had subsisted between Teutscher and Mogor, and, there was no call now for any alteration of sentiment. Otho treated the cunning intruders with civil contempt; and, having been well feasted, they received some inconsiderable gifts, and were sent away.

955—  
The great  
Magyar in-  
vasion.

Scarcely had Otho thus freed himself from them, when intelligence arrived, transmitted with great alarm by his brother Henry, that the allies whom Conrad had set in movement, were come. The Barbarians were pouring into the land. The Magyar Hordes, when they re-entered Germany, were more fiercely determined upon rapine than ever before.—Botund the son of Culpun, Zobols the son of Eleud, and Ircun, or Urcun, the son of Eugee, were, according to the Mogor chronicles, the chief Commanders:—Magyar scholars must decide as to the accuracy of their un-

couth names. The desire of avenging the shameful death inflicted upon Lelu and Bulzu exacerbated their native fury. Wasting the country as they advanced, they halted to the east of the river Lech, not far from Augsburg, the residence City.

951—997  
955—992

Otho rallied his vassals and subjects, preparing most energetically for the conflict; and the Germans of every rank and degree ought to have been thankful that such a national Chief had been raised up to be their Leader during this most arduous and justifiable war;—truly justifiable—for it was wholly defensive.

The Magyar multitudes were enormous. The main body, according to report, numbered a hundred thousand, and from the full stream of the Danube to the haunted Hartzwald and the sylvan Schwartzwald, the whole country was darkened by the swarms of the fiendish foes.—The Magyars boasted, that, unless the Earth should open her mouth and swallow them, or the sky fall and crush them, all Germany must become theirs.

Being probably well acquainted with Otho's plans, for the Magyars were craftful in gaining intelligence, they attacked Augsburg; nor were they repulsed but with great difficulty. Otho had appointed his muster to be held near that City. Thither he marched his troops, the Magyars pestering them like hornets all the way.

955—  
The Mag-  
yars attack  
Augsburg,  
but are  
repulsed.

The scantiness of Otho's forces was remarkable, and testifies how shamefully the treasonable

Comparative  
scantiness of  
Otho's forces.

951—957 family dissensions had debased the national spirit.

955—962 —The army, embodied scarce ten years then since, for the purpose of satisfying a silly rivalry, —the proud army which had been routed before Rouen,—mustered two-and-thirty Legions; but, in this extreme urgency, only one-fourth of that number, to wit, eight Legions, could be raised. And yet the invasion of Normandy was a wanton aggression, whilst, in the present time of peril, all the Germanic tribes ought to have been incited to the utmost exertions by the righteousness of their cause.—No provocation had been given to the Magyars by the Germans; but simply for the protection of their land, their liberty, and their faith, was their conflict waged.

955—  
Conrad joins  
the army—  
Enthusiasm  
excited by his  
presence.

When Conrad joined the army, universal cheers resounded from the ranks as he rode by, such confidence did they place in his valour. Their joy, however, at Conrad's approach, was a sorrow to him; their eager jubilee bespoke the danger into which he had brought his native country; and dolefully did their greetings fall upon his ears, deepening his contrition for the evils he had caused.

The Magyars  
advance—  
skilful or-  
ganization of  
Otho's army.

The Magyars were advancing towards the "Lech-feld,"—a district so denominated from the river by which it is watered,—evidently intending to occupy the tracts to the eastward of the stream. Otho forthwith marched in a parallel direction, but on the opposite side. Three Legions of Bavarians, and a fourth of

Franconians, headed by Duke Conrad, composed the right wing.—The Suabian Legion, under Duke Burchard, supported by the Bohemian Legion, to whom the baggage was entrusted, formed the left. But the Royal Legion, a thousand warriors elected and selected from the whole Army, constituted the centre. Before the ranks and above Otho's head waved Saint Michael's banner—Saint Michael, the celestial warrior, who, when the gorgeous institutions of Chivalry assumed their full development, was generally honoured throughout the greater part of Western Christendom as the tutelary Protector of the Order.

In the legendary symbolism of the mediæval era, the hieroglyphical representation, so significantly portraying the power of evil subdued by the sword of faith, may be considered as identical with the mythic Saint George: who, amongst many of the German nations, usurped the honour previously assigned to the Archangel. The Suabian *Ritterschaft* peculiarly claimed Saint George as their Patron; and it is a curious example of the meandering inter-lacements of history, that the Vicariate of the Empire, our third Edward's transient pride, probably introduced this creation of oriental hagiography to the notice of our triumphant King. The connexion he thus formed with Germany and the Germans induced him to favour their minstrelsy, their language, and their decorative

951—987

955—963

Saint Michael's banner a symbolical representation, identical with Saint George—Influence of German chivalry in England under Edward III.



951—967

955—962

arts. These tastes were inherited by his descendants. — Teutonic legends, *Ich dien* and *Hochmuth*, adorn the trophied tomb of Cressy's Hero, who, when living, actually signed his letters by employing the latter epigraph as a confidential substitute for his name. In like manner, his son, the unfortunate Richard, by an ingenious arrangement, made the words of the German motto, appropriated to the Ostrich feather, bespeak his affection for his German Consort, the good Queen Anne. This pleasant fancy, preserved in Richard's own handwriting in a very singular volume catacombed amongst the treasures of our great National Library, constitutes the most curious amongst the few remaining autographs of our antient Sovereigns.

9th August,  
955—Otho  
takes his  
station to  
the West  
of the Lech.

§ 14. Having indulged in this flight to distant Windsor, Windsor's Round Table, and Windsor's Tower, we must return to the heroic Otho, who had taken his station westward of the Lech. Through his scouts, he had ascertained that the Magyars were approaching, but he seems to have expected, as we infer by comparing the relations given by our Chroniclers—accurate Witikind, and ambitious Ditmar—that they would come up in about the space of four-and-twenty hours. Well did Otho know the nature of such agile foes : many a time and oft had he discomfited and slaughtered Slave and Wend, and Zech and Avar. But the Magyars moved more rapidly than even the experienced General had anticipated. Suddenly crossing the water, and

filling the air with elrich screechings, they stormed the German host. The Bohemians were scattered—many a knight caught and pinioned by the grinning Ogre,—and all the baggage became the plunder of the enemy. The stout Suabians fled, and the disorder was extending throughout the whole Army.—“Forward, Conrad,” — was Otho’s command ; and Conrad bravely performed his duty ; the Barbarians were cut to pieces and dispersed, the booty recovered, the Prisoners delivered, and Conrad returned with banners displayed.

951—957  
955—962  
Sudden assault of the Magyars, who surprised the left wing of the German army. But Conrad drives them back.

The Germans re-encamped, and prepared for the morrow by fasting and prayer. That morrow was the feast of Saint Laurence—the well-known periodical season of the astral streams. The natural philosopher will be interested by the notice of the awful thunder-storms which spread terror throughout Northern Germany,—but not alone the storms,—for the other portents, by which the tempests were accompanied, created extreme terror.

955—  
9th August,  
Eve of the battle.

Early in the morning Otho rose and sought strength for the conflict by appealing to the Lord of Hosts, prostrating himself in supplication upon the ground. Having then received the Holy Communion from the hands of his Confessor, Adalric, afterwards canonized, he addressed the soldiers, his companions in war. He reminded them of their former successes, which he ascribed not to their own right hands, but to the Divine protection. They had to wage a conflict for life or death ; and

955—  
10th August,  
Morn of the battle.

951—957

955—962

10th August,  
955—  
The great  
battle of the  
Lech-feld.  
Total defeat  
of the  
Magyars.

955—  
Death of  
Conrad.

Vengeance  
of the Ger-  
mans.

Otho, his speech concluded, bracing his shield, and brandishing the Holy Lance, led on the charge.

The battle, fought under the unclouded rays of the burning sun, lasted from the dim day-dawn until the evening star shone resplendent in the darkening firmament. Conrad's exertions were worthy of his reputation, but, suffocated by the sweltering heat, he lifted up the visor of his helmet to take a breath, when the Magyar shaft, speeding on her errand, gave him a mortal wound.

Thus was the prayer of Conrad granted, for he besought that, as a warning chastisement, he might be slain by the enemy whose aid he had invoked against his own people, his own blood, his own kith and kin.

The Magyars defended themselves desperately; but their light-horsemen could not stand against the solid masses of the German cavalry, or resist the heavy trenchant blades wielded by the doughty foe, and, though fighting with desperate pertinacity, they were utterly routed. Otho was foremost in the chase of the fugitives;—no quarter given;—the victors merciless;—the field clothed with the harvest of carnage.—Botund escaped, though Urcun, or some Hetumogor whom the Germans supposed to be the King, was killed; more fortunate than the three who, suffering the same vile punishment as had been inflicted on Lelu and Bulzu, were hung like dogs by the victors. Many were drowned in the river; others rammed and jammed in the hor-

rible charnel pit; all mingle-mangle,—quick and breathing, alive and bleeding, struggling and fainting, dead and dying; others suffocated by the smoke or consumed by the flames in the buildings where they defended themselves,—all were cleared away.—It was a done thing—once and for ever.

951—987

955—962

Faithful to the old Roman traditions still living throughout Europe—not conned as a dreary lesson out of the thumbled school-book, but gravely told by grisly eld for the instruction of the eagerly listening boy—the German Legions, ere they moved away from the Lech-feld,—truly deserving to be called the *Leich-feld*—the field of corpses, the Suabian “Lichfield,”—hailed Otho as father of his Father-land, and saluted him as Emperor.—*Triumpho celebri Rex factus gloriosus, ab exercitu Pater Patriæ Imperatorque appellatus est.*—The cry was raised by a general and uncontrollable sympathetic feeling. Henceforward, Otho was never addressed in Germany otherwise than as Emperor,—Emperor designate, until duly elected by the temporal and spiritual powers, possessing the exalted prerogative entitling them to name the successor of the Cæsars.

955—  
Otho saluted  
as Emperor  
by his troops  
on the field  
of battle.

Fully as the victory was appreciated throughout the antient Carlovingian Empire, yet Otho's contemporaries could scarcely be conscious of the high import belonging to the event. If Charles Martel may be said to have rescued Western Christendom from Moslem slavery when he exterminated the Saracen Host on the field of Tours,

Importance  
of this  
victory to  
Christendom  
at large, and  
its advan-  
tageous re-  
action upon  
the Magyars.

951—957,  
955—962

Conversion  
of the  
Magyars.

The three  
anointed  
Kings of  
Western  
Christen-  
dom—  
France,  
England,  
and Hun-  
gary.

and repelled the Mahometan deluge, not less is the honour due to Otho's memory. Had not the Magyars succumbed in this conflict, it is probable that all Europe would have fallen under their destructive domination. The consequences were scarcely less beneficial to themselves. They desisted from their inroads. The labours of Saint Adalbert commenced their conversion. Geisa, their King, together with his wife and son, accepted the Sacrament of Baptism through Adalbert's ministration; and that son, Stephen, became the first Christian Monarch of Hungary. From the second Pope Sylvester,—enigmatical Gerbert of mysterious fame,—Stephen solicited and obtained the rich Byzantine-fashioned crown still so highly prized by the Magyars as the symbol of the sovereignty which has departed from their land. Stephen also received the title of "Apostolic" from the Supreme Pontiff, the earliest example of those distinctions which even our own Sovereigns are proud to retain. Moreover, Stephen was anointed upon his Coronation, and the King of Hungary was one of the three Christian Kings, distinguished by that Imperial rite; the other two being France—now awaiting the celebration of the solemn ceremony—and Anglo-Saxon Britain;—and Hungary expanded into one of the most brilliant European monarchies.

§ 15. Berenger's submission to Otho did not oust him from his royal rights. The extensive privileges enjoyed by the Prelates and

great Feudatories of the Lombard kingdom had always been the exciting cause of dissensions and jealousies between them and their Rulers. Soured by vexation, Berenger greatly abused his legitimate power. He sought to harass and encroach upon his Vassals in every way. Sufficient reason had Berenger to hate Albert Azzo,—assuredly no one better deserved his enmity than Albert Azzo—the warrior through whose gallantry his schemes for securing Adelaide and Italy had been marred. Triple-rampired Canossa, stoutly besieged by Berenger, defied him; but, at length, the Marquis was compelled to crave the aid which Otho was bound to afford, whether as a duty towards an ally and friend, or in the character of Suzerain, to whom the aggrieved Lieges of the Mesne Lord might appeal for justice.

951—987

955—956

955—  
Italian  
affairs re-  
sumed—  
Berenger  
abuses his  
authority;  
attacks  
Albert Azzo.

During the German troubles, Otho's attention was diverted from Italian affairs. He now despatched Liudolph for the important purpose of relieving Canossa, and restraining Berenger's misrule. The young Prince acted energetically, but not by reason of any love he bore his Father. He pursued the war so vigorously, that Lombardy passed almost wholly beneath his power. Adalbert, Berenger's adventurous son, gave battle to the German Prince, but, he, defeated and captured,—all Lombardy submitted. Outtake the warmer partisans, there does not seem to have been at this period much fighting blood amongst

956—  
Otho de-  
spatches  
Liudolph  
for Albert  
Azzo's relief.

Liudolph, his  
successor.  
Adalbert is  
defeated,  
and Berenger  
surrendered  
to Liudolph.

951—987

955—982

the Lombards. Berenger fled to his stronghold of San Giulio, a fortified island-rock in the smiling yet solemnly beautiful Lago d'Orta, rising from the blue waters, not far from the shore,—the rock in whose centre still stands the church, containing the rudely sculptured uncouth marble ambo, whence Berenger may have heard the Gospel—the pleasant villa-covered rock—then converted into a fortress, walled and towered and almost impregnable.

Berenger's own garrison surrendered him to Liudolph, but Otho's rebel was Liudolph's friend. Instead of profiting by this great advantage for his Father's benefit, he forthwith enlarged the royal Captive. Berenger resumed his authority. Fresh disturbances ensued, but Liudolph's miserable career suddenly came to an end. Some say Liudolph fell in honourable conflict with Adalbert; others, that he was poisoned by Berenger; but, according to the third and more probable version, a fever carried him off. Liudolph's history, beginning in love, and ending in the most odious form of hatred, descends like a mournful cloud upon the aureole by which Otho's majestic head is surrounded. Had he lived longer, the shade might have become deeper. Liudolph's death, preserving him from further disobedience and sin, may be viewed as a mercy to all parties. Adelaide might have displayed herself in the normal character of a spiteful step-mother; but, fortunately for her fair fame, the temptation was removed: whilst

987—  
Liudolph's  
infidelity  
towards his  
father—his  
sudden and  
somewhat  
mysterious  
death—6  
Sep. 987.

Otho was equally spared the obloquy of sinning against Editha in her grave, by disinheriting her only child, and the dishonour of violating the paternal promise and the national compact which secured to Liudolph the reversion of the Crown.

§ 16. Berenger, freed from Liudolph's presence, and Otho, far distant, conceived himself to be entirely exempted from control; and the Prelates and Nobles, his vassals,—his outrageous violations of law and justice having become intolerable,—addressed their letters to the laurelled "Imperator," praying him to deliver them from the "Tyrant's" oppressions.

The request, made in writing, was impressively repeated by a solemn deputation.

Walbert, Archbishop of Milan, Oberto, or Obizzo, whom we are called upon to honour as the Founder of the great Marquisate of Este, and Waldo, Bishop of Como,—these three appeared on behalf of the whole Lombard Community, having also to complain of individual wrongs. The Archbishop was aggrieved by Queen Guilla, who, having sold the See to a certain Manasses, was labouring to install the simoniacal intruder. Obizzo had stood very high in Berenger's confidence, and his greatest friend; but Berenger was now seeking his life. And the Patrician Octavian, raised to the Pontificate as John the Twelfth, and equally persecuted by Berenger, earnestly concurred in imploring the aid of Otho against the common enemy.

Of Otho's three sons by Adelaide, two were

951—987  
955—962

960—  
Berenger  
provokes his  
subjects.

960—  
Otho in-  
vited by the  
Lombards  
to deliver  
them from  
the oppres-  
sions of  
Berenger.



951—987

955—982

Death of  
Bruno, the  
eldest of  
Otho's re-  
maining  
children by  
Adelaide.

left, but immediately after Otho had received the intelligence of Liudolph's death, the elder of the two, sickly Bruno, was taken away, and the puisne, his father's namesake, was his only remaining heir. Otho was therefore at full liberty to accomplish his heart's desire, the transmission of his authority to the child of that second Consort, who had so completely obliterated the memory of the first. Forthwith Otho summoned all his lieges from the various German populations to a general Convention at Worms : and, in this Assembly, the Porphyrogenitus, all rivals removed, was unanimously accepted as King. The Second Otho had scarcely attained his seventh year, and, though the postulation of his Royal Father was implicitly and cheerfully obeyed, the Germans were astounded at the tender age of the new Monarch. But there was no hesitation either in giving assent or completing the inauguration ; the boy was conducted with great reverence to Aix-la-Chapelle. The Crown was dropped upon his infantine brows by his uncles, the Archbishops Bruno and William ; and now, Otho set forth for Italy, complying with the call he had received.

980—  
May 26. —  
Otho's only  
surviving  
son by Ade-  
laid (Otho  
II.) accepted  
as King by  
the Germans,  
and crowned  
at Aix-la-  
Chapelle.

980—  
Otho's entry  
into Italy.  
Berenger's  
army under  
Adalbert  
refuses to  
fight for  
him.

§ 17. The younger Otho's Coronation perfected, the Emperor designate, conducted his army southwards, entering Lombardy through the Tridentine Marches. Adalbert, prepared to meet him, had assembled formidable forces. It was reported that they amounted to sixty thou-

sand men, but, the larger the army the worse for Berenger. The nobles under Adalbert declared they would not any longer obey his father. Abdication, effected or promised, might have been prudent; but Berenger's conduct in this strait, compels us to render an honour to his valour, which we deny to his moral character. He made a brave defence, nor was his Consort less resolute.

951—967  
955—962

Compelled, as we are, to view the scene from a distant point, we may faintly discern the deposed King and the deposed Queen, keeping Otho at bay, in the fastnesses protected by lake and mountain where they respectively took refuge. Adalbert also, apart from his father, continued to comport himself bravely. But the contest was hopeless. They were compelled to implore Otho's mercy. Berenger, his wife, and his daughters, were considerately, nay, kindly treated by their conqueror, and Berenger died in honourable retirement at Bamberg. As for Adalbert, he took to the sea. He made for congenial Corsica; and seems to have become a Captain of Pirates. His first exploit was the abduction of King Otho's chaplain, and we are almost tempted to believe that his felucca may have been partly manned by Scandinavians. But, ultimately, Adalbert settled quietly in France, marrying Gerberga, the daughter of Lambert, Count of Chalons, and by her he had a son, Otho, or

Berenger's  
courageous  
resistance  
—he is  
ultimately  
deposed,  
and dies at  
Bamberg.

Adventures  
of Adalbert  
—he settles  
in Burgundy,  
and marries  
the daughter  
of the Count  
of Chalons.

951—987

955—982

Otto-Guillaume, who afterwards became sole Count of Burgundy and King of Arles, and of whom we shall hear something more hereafter in connection with Norman history.

The last-mentioned events were speedily though not immediately accomplished, and we must now wind up the main skein of this story. Adalbert's forces dispersed, Otho presented himself in Lombardy, not as a foreign invader, but as the successor of the Cæsars, coming to his own.—Otho, who had repelled the Magyar flood; —Otho, the great defender of the Christian Commonwealth.

The constitutional distinction between King of Italy and Emperor was carefully maintained so long as the Holy Roman Empire subsisted, and, it was in the first capacity that Otho appeared at Milan. Received by the Archbishop Walbert in the Basilica of Santo Ambrogio, the ceremonial testified the rights appertaining to the Lombard Monarchy. The Royal insignia, battle-axe and baldric, lance and sword, were displayed upon the altar, whilst the Crown was imposed upon the Sovereign's head by the Archbishop. All the Dukes and Princes and Marquises, Nobles of higher estate, and Capitanes and Vavassors of lower degree, rendered their homage to Otho as their immediate Sovereign. The festival of the Nativity was celebrated at Pavia, and Otho and his Queen then proceeded to the City of the Seven hills.

955—982  
Otho advances into  
Lombardy  
—crowned  
at Milan—  
homage  
rendered  
by the  
Lombard  
Nobles.

Accompanied by the Clergy, the Senators and Magistrates of the Republic came forth to accept their Emperor. We are told how, upon these solemn occasions, the revered standards of the Legions, treasured, without doubt, in the massy-walled *Ærarium* beneath, were brought out from the Capitol, such as we see them imaged on the winding spirals of the sculptured Column or the frieze of the triumphal Arch. The vast, many terraced, mountainous Palace of the Cæsars—here, deeply caverned by the gigantic vaulted halls, such as might befit the brethren of Enceladus—and there, emulating Babylon's Seven-zoned tower, decaying, yet glorious, stood ready to receive Otho and his lovely Adelaide. We yet read, in the very remarkable ritual of these solemnities, that, pursuant to traditionary usage, the yet uncrowned Cæsar should be lodged in the stately chamber of Augustus, whilst the more splendid apartment of Livia, still adorned by the tarnished reliques of past magnificence, was assigned to the Empress. Thundering acclamations welcomed Otho and Adelaide as they traversed the City. The successor of Saint Peter advanced to greet the successor of Charlemagne: and the Coronation, the Feast of the Purification coinciding, was celebrated with unprecedented solemnity. By the Pope, Otho was proclaimed Emperor and Augustus: and, from the Pope's hands, he received the Imperial

961—967  
 961—962

962—  
 Jan.—Feb.  
 Otho and  
 Adelaide  
 enter Rome.

962—2 Feb.  
 —Otho ac-  
 cepted by  
 the Republic  
 —is crowned  
 by Pope John  
 XII.

951—957  
951—952

The Pontiff  
and Roman  
people take  
the oath of  
fidelity.

Crown. The Pontiff, as well as the whole Roman people, took the oath of fidelity; and Otho reciprocated, by granting and re-granting to the Papal See all the dominions which the Primatial Chair of Christendom had at any time held, and more.

952—  
Otho rec-  
iprocates by  
confirming  
the Pope's  
authority  
over Rome,  
reserving the  
Imperial  
Supremacy.

All the endowments bestowed by Pepin and Charlemagne, and Louis-le-Debonnaire, were confirmed,—Rome, to wit, and the Exarchate of Ravenna,—various towns and regions of the Pentapolis,—numerous cities and domains in the Campagna, and the Lombard Duchies of Spoleto and Benevento.—Corsica was added, Sicily also, as appurtenant to the Empire, though occupied by the Saracen. The Election of the Pontiff was to be conducted according to the Canon law; banishment being denounced as the punishment of any offender who might disturb the freedom of suffrage.

But the Emperor vigilantly asserted his rights. Only the usufruct of the ceded territories passed to the Pope. A mixed Commission, composed of Imperial Judges adjoined to the Pontiff's nominees, was permanently established. All complaints of maladministration were to be examined before this Tribunal; and, if the Pope did not afford a congruous remedy, the duty of rectifying the abuse was to be exercised by the Emperor. This appellate jurisdiction afforded the strongest testimony of the Imperial superiority. The reservation was clenched by the concluding clause of the Charter, that nothing therein contained

was to derogate from the Emperor's prerogatives. The original document, written in characters of gold, and whilom deposited in the Castle of St. Angelo, has disappeared, and the very antient transcripts preserved in the Vatican may not be faithful to the letter: but notwithstanding the acute objections raised by Catholic critics, or the stern judgments passed by Protestant antagonists, we must admit that the "Diploma Othonis Magni" affords satisfactory evidence of the relations then subsisting between the Pontiff and the Paramount Sovereign.—

§ 18. OTHO was thus pursuing his eventful career during the last agonies of his Brother-in-law's anxious reign.—Had the King's demise occurred whilst the family dissensions were raging, Otho, however urgently required, could not have taken any share in the affairs of France. As yet, he had not triumphed: but, the pacification of Germany effected, he was fully able to answer Gerberga's call.

954—  
Death of  
Louis occurs  
at the juncture  
when  
Otho was  
able to in-  
terfere in  
French  
affairs.

Louis, sometimes rallying, yet slowly sinking, long must his death have been anticipated by friend and foe. Indeed, the Normans had been awaiting the event, day by day, ever since the Rout of Rouen. Even then, they boasted that the disappointment had as good as killed him. The vaticination was tardily accomplished, but it was something to look for. The discomfort of suspense, when our desires are delayed, is

954—957

954—955

not always without compensation. Amongst the pleasures of hope, that of auguring ill fortune to those we hate, is not by any means the least ; and the King's protracted decay had enabled all parties to prepare for the contingency.

Gerberga  
claims the  
aid of her  
brothers and  
of Hugh-le-  
Grand.

Gerberga's forethought, affection, talents, all appeared instantly in action. — Soon as the funeral rites had ended, swift messengers were despatched on their several roads to Otho and to Bruno, and equally to Hugh, praying their conjoint countenance and fraternal support. — Otho, though he had not yet attained the culminating point of his prosperity, really commanded the fortunes of France. Hugh-le-Grand had become his vassal. Could or would Otho forget the homage rendered in the Palace of Attigny ? He might maintain, and not unreasonably, that Charlemagne's pre-eminence appertained to the Monarch who literally occupied Charlemagne's Throne. Otho styled himself *Rex Francorum*, a title so happily ambiguous, that it could be consistently construed as challenging the dominion of the Gauls, and yet as easily explained away. But deeds, however, speak more decisively than words : and, through the whole tenour of his conduct, he distinctly asserted his ascendancy over the Realm.

Otho's vast  
influence in  
and over  
France.

Many previous movements made by Otho had been dictated by the apprehensions now realized ; and he immediately adopted efficient

measures for securing Lothaire's succession. Pending these transactions, Bruno, though scarcely of canonical age, but recommended by his illustrious birth, his brilliant talents, his extensive learning, and his indefatigable energy, was called by the unanimous voice of the Citizens to the Archiepiscopal Throne of Cologne. Otho truly rejoiced in this elevation, probably suggested it. If Bruno had transgressed against Otho, the noble minded Sovereign not only forgave the error, but accepted his brother as his most confidential friend and minister.

954—987  
954—955

Bruno  
appointed  
Archbishop  
of Cologne.

In these capacities, the newly appointed Archbishop, as directed by Otho, forthwith proceeded to the appointed place of meeting, accompanied by the chief Princes and Nobles of Lotharingia, nay, some also from Germany; and supported by a military force sufficient to inspire respect for his authority. Either now, or shortly afterwards, the young and strenuous Archbishop received a commission from Otho to maintain tranquillity in the French Kingdom, an order given so stringently, that he felt he was personally responsible for the same. This important fact is collected from an incidental notice given by worthy Rudiger, who composed the Archbishop's biography, or rather eulogium, about ten years after his death.—Whilst performing his labour of love, this valuable writer affords ample particulars concerning his Patron's life and conversation as a Prelate, yet the very active share the Prince-Archbishop

Otho  
despatches  
Bruno as his  
Lieutenant  
in France.



954—957

954—955

took in secular affairs is related obscurely and perfunctorily. Concerning the many—very many—portions of the Archbishop's career, which a grateful friend, jealous for the honour of his Patron, might wish to forget, Rudiger is discreetly silent.

Sept. 954.  
Assembly of  
the Nations  
of the Gauls  
for the pur-  
pose of  
electing the  
King (see pp.  
159—169).

§ 19. Such was Gerberga's moral and political influence, that all conformed to her wishes, or obeyed her commands. The Three Nations of the Gauls, according to the antient Tripartite division—represented by the "Princes and the Leaders of the Realm"—such being the phraseology employed by the Chroniclers—were assembled at Rheims for the purpose of affording their sanction to the accession of their Sovereign.

Concerning the "Presence," our notices are, as usual, very brief and obscure. The circumstances being matters of universal notoriety, the Chronicler probably considered that details were not needed,—a mistaken economy, which has often deprived us of valuable historical information. Gallia Celtica is, on this occasion, quoted under the name of Burgundy, for the latter appellation, taken widely, was considered as a modern denomination of the antient Province. The ecclesiastical divisions of the Archiepiscopal and Episcopal Sees, presented the archaic administration continuously before the public mind. Moreover, other forcible traditions of pristine nationality were preserved in that Region.

Thus the Chief magistrate of Autun, the *Vierg*, <sup>954—987</sup> or *Vergobret*, continued to be designated by his Celtic title—a title retained through every convulsion—even until the Revolution. <sup>954—955</sup>

In these States-general of France, Gerberga presided. The proceedings are hinted rather than reported. As a Burgundian Count, we may conjecture that Letholdus, he who had so carefully nursed the suffering Louis, cordially supported the cause of his son.

The loyalty of the Aquitanians, though tepid, was tolerably steady, partly elicited, however, by their opposition to Hugh-le-Grand. Their Princes unquestionably gave attendance.

Belgic Gaul might have been adequately represented by Hugh-le-Grand alone ; though we can scarcely doubt but that the Vermandois Princes were present. As for the Norman Richard, he did not concern himself about the matter.

But a fourth Electoral College—perhaps more influential at this juncture than any other, though completely unprecedented—was constituted by the Princes of Lorraine. As now held by Otho, Lotharingia included a very extensive section of Gallia Belgica : and he, without enquiring whether the more or the less of that Royal Duchy appertained to Charlemagne's descendants or to Charlemagne's political successors, treated the Lotharingian Magnates as fully entitled to share in the transaction. At their head, ap-

Unprecedented concurrence of the Princes of Lorraine, introduced by Bruno.

954—987

954—955

peared Archbishop Bruno, Duke or Governor of Lorraine, and Lieutenant of the German King, and the Lorrainers were reinforced by a deputation selected from the Princes of the German tongue. They therefore took their seats in the Convention for the purpose of acting with the French as their compeers, or rather to turn the election. Thus, as the Council of Engleheim, before which Louis had pleaded, exhibited a novel incorporation of the great Ecclesiastical Councils of Germany and of France, so here, in like manner, did Otho commence a fusion between the Temporal Estates of the two Realms.

Doctrine  
as to the  
elective  
character  
of the French  
Monarchy.

There was much to debate. The claim of the young Lothaire was not irrefragable. Neither theoretically nor practically had the French renounced the doctrine, that the right of the Sovereign resulted primarily from the popular will; and we know, that in order to keep up their continual claim, the form of voluntary choice was retained, even when the reality was abandoned.

There is not a single example adduced in "Franco-Gallia," that precious constitutional volume, so weighty, though so concise, which is not quoted accurately. Grave authorities flourished in this last age of the Carlovingian domination, who could and did argue, from the very events which had introduced the Dynasty, that the rights of legitimacy might be defeasible

by incompetence, and we shall hear this doctrine inculcated from the mouth of the highest Prelate in the Realm. Descent imparted a most powerful inchoate right, yet, if the inheritance was in danger of falling, or had fallen, to an unworthy individual, it was the privilege and the duty of the Nation that he should be rejected. Admit that the Sovereign might be allowed to designate his Successor, yet the King could not reign otherwise than by the consent of the Chiefs of Church and State.—Rather let them refuse assent and repudiate the nomination, than afterwards condemn and despise the Sovereign whom they had made.

Many feelings adverse to the succession were lurking amongst the Prelacy or the Aristocracy, but they were repressed, if not suppressed, by Otho's intervention. The actual elevation of Lothaire to a partnership in the Royal authority, made by the departed Louis, was neither acknowledged nor contradicted. And thus through the favour and countenance of Hugh-le-Grand and Archbishop Bruno, supported by the acclaim of the assembly, was the young Lothaire, then somewhat about fourteen years of age, called to the throne: and accordingly, his charters of donation, testifying his veneration for Saint Remigius, bear record, how in the Primatial Basilica of the Gauls, he was elected by all the Peers of France, and crowned with the royal

954—957

954—956

Rights of  
legitimacy  
might be  
defeated by  
the incom-  
petence of  
the party.

12 Sept., 954.  
Lothaire  
accepted as  
King, and  
crowned by  
Archbishop  
Artaldus at  
Rheims.

954—957

954—956

diadem, by Archbishop Artaldus. The first act of state performed by Lothaire was very significant. He granted to Hugh-le-Grand the Duchies of Burgundy and Aquitaine: and Lothaire and Gerberga were then solemnly and honourably conducted to their Royal City, the Rock of Laôn.

954—955  
The Royal  
family at  
Laôn—  
Gerberga,  
Lothaire,  
and the  
young Prince  
Charles.

It should seem, that Lothaire and the Queen-mother continued at Laôn till the ensuing Spring. The once flourishing Royal family was now reduced to three individuals—Gerberga the Widow, Lothaire the Youngster, and the infant Charles, the only survivor of the youngest babes. But the little child, the heir to misfortune, was carefully nursed by Gerberga, whose maternal tenderness must have often rendered her thoughtful concerning his future position. The once favourite project of a Norman apanage had vanished.—No provision made even for the young Prince's sustenance, and Gerberga was compelled to abide in uncertainty concerning his future destiny.

955—956  
Position  
taken by  
Hugh-le-  
Grand.

§ 20. Bruno returned to Lorraine. Nobles and Prelates each sought his home; Hugh-le-Grand remained, and, without any effort, resumed ostensibly the same position he had held when Louis, having been recalled from beyond the sea, obtained the Crown by Hugh's preponderating advocacy;—Hugh therefore stood forward before the Nation as the young King's Protector,—keenly vigilant,—his inward feelings disguised by his outward demonstrations of

affection. Towards Gerberga, a sister-in-law, and a queen, Hugh conducted himself in a manner be-<sup>954—957</sup>seeming her station and his own. He pre-<sup>955—956</sup>sented himself as thoroughly devoted to Lothaire and Lothaire's cause; wisely and courteously guiding the youthful Monarch, and never quitting his side.—But Lothaire was fully able to walk alone, and he offers the same example of precocious talent which had been exhibited by Richard.

The ill-favoured young King never could become handsome to look upon; his sallow cheeks never filled out; nor could his limp limbs be made to move with grace: yet, though beset by enemies foreign and domestic,—treachery without,—treachery within,—treachery in the gate,—treachery in the way,—treachery perhaps by his own hearth-side,—and some say still nearer,—this unfortunate Monarch during the worried reign he was now commencing, manifested powers fully proving that he was not to be contemned as an unworthy son of his energetic Mother and his spirited Sire.

Hugh advised with Gerberga, courted her, declared his anxiety to testify his loyalty: and, displaying his power, though somewhat ostentatiously, for the benefit of the Royal authority, urged that Lothaire, accompanied by the Queen-mother, should effect his royal progress throughout his domains. Circuits of this description were customary upon an accession—

April—May,  
955, Lothaire  
under Hugh-  
le-Grand's  
guidance  
makes his  
progress  
through his  
domains.

<sup>954—957</sup>  
 {  
<sup>955—956</sup> useful, as being the means of gracefully introducing the King to his people. The Bishops might speak on behalf of the Communities who had elected or accepted them; and whether for the objects of being observed or of observing, it was very expedient that the Sovereign coming to each, should make his *joyeuse entrée* into the several Cities of the realm.

<sup>956—</sup>  
 April—May  
 Lothaire  
 at Paris.

Hugh-le-Grand was apparently seeking to prove, that, notwithstanding his vast possessions and privileges, he did not plan any usurpation upon the royal supremacy. First, the Sovereigns repaired to Hugh's good city of Paris, and Hugh-le-Grand, during the Paschal season, entertained his illustrious guests, probably in his Abbatial Manse of Saint Denis, for many days.

Orleans next welcomed the Royal party, and, consulting the map, we may imagine that Hugh, during their route, did not omit to display his dutiful hospitality at his Palace of Dordogne.

Thibaut,  
 of Chartres,  
 performing  
 homage to  
 Lothaire.

Most of the principal Cities and Towns in those regions were visited by the King; but our attention must be especially directed to Blois, and Tours, and Chartres. Here Lothaire received the homage of the crafty Thibaut, whose vigorous old age, like that of the Flemish Arnoul, was a proof that the fatigues of government are not incompatible with extraordinary longevity. Lothaire must have shuddered when he met his

father's cruel jailer ; but it was needful that these grudges should be forgotten, and their common interest suggested not only reconciliation, but alliance.—Liutgarda, erewhile the widow of Guillaume Longue-épée, was as savage against her step-son as ever.—Constant in hatred as in love, time had not diminished Gerberga's passionate antipathy ;—and, against their common enemy the Norman, there was thenceforward a thorough consentaneousness of feeling between Gerberga and Lothaire, and Liutgarda and Thibaut.

954—957  
955—956

This portion of the royal visitation having been accomplished, Lothaire, with Hugh-le-Grand by his side, prepared to cross the Loire into Aquitaine, at least as far as Poitiers. Guillaume Tête-d'étaupe ought to have been loyal to Lothaire ; but two disturbing, though contradictory causes probably made him recalcitrate against the King, the latter now identified with the Duke of France,—his near connexion with Richard through his excellent wife Adela, and the strong aversion which Aquitaine entertained against Hugh-le-Grand.

Guillaume  
Tête-d'-  
étoupe, his  
disobedience.

On approaching Poitiers, Tête-d'étaupe was duly summoned to certify his submission. The sturdy Duke made default. The Royal army therefore advanced, and when they presented themselves before the City, Tête-d'étaupe was not there. Having supplied the Place with ample means of defence, he retreated, but for

June—July,  
955, Lothaire  
and Hugh-le-  
Grand invest  
Poitiers.



954—967  
 955—956  
 955—  
 June—July  
 Siege of  
 Poitiers  
 continued.

the purpose of ulterior movements. Poitiers was very strong, and the spirited inhabitants fully prepared for defence; and we may be assured that the great Cathedral of the Patron of the City,—Saint Hilary, who, as Bishop and Confessor, still retains his commemoration-day in our Anglican Calendar, rendered so familiar by the *Term* which it designates — was thronged with votaries. Whatever expectations the French might have formed of success, by capturing Duke Guillaume's person, were therefore baulked. But they assaulted Poitiers the more fiercely, and Poitiers was as valiantly defended.

Confagration of the Monastery of Saint Radegund.

The noble Monastery of Saint Radegund was not then included within the walls, and the structure had been converted into a fortress. Any ecclesiastical immunity which the Cloister might claim was suspended by the military character enforced upon the Sanctuary. Lothaire's troops surrounded the stronghold, which was taken and burnt. Yet no advantage was gained. During two months and more had the siege continued unavailingly, degenerating into a very sluggish blockade; provisions began to fail in the camp, and the French were compelled to suspend their operations. In the meanwhile, Guillaume Tête-d'étoupe was in full activity, ranging the country and collecting troops, till he was able to become the assailant. This movement, though bold, and not inconsiderate,

failed. Lothaire and Duke Hugh gave battle to the Poitevins, whom they routed, whilst Tête-d'étoupe saved himself by flight. 954—957  
955—956

Lothaire, having fully assumed the command, he, the young General, determined to follow up the advantage by renewing the siege. The weather was extremely sultry; a terrible thunder-storm burst upon the leaguer. This was the very season when Otho was slaughtering the Magyars on the Lech-feld. Darkness came on; and during the dark, a driving hurricane.—Hugh-le-Grand's pavilion rent asunder by a whirlwind.—Besieged and besiegers believed that Saint Hilary was protecting his flock. The troops were terrified by the portent, which imparted fresh courage to their opponents. The dog-days' heat brought on disease; and Hugh-le-Grand, much disheartened, but concealing his depression by affected magnanimity, induced Lothaire to grant very advantageous conditions to his opponents—the siege should be raised.—Lothaire, accompanied by the Duke, returned to his Rock of Laôn, and Hugh then wended heavily to Paris. August 955.  
Second investment of  
Poitiers.

§ 21. Hugh-le-Grand might be thought to have continued advancing in prosperity. Never had he stood so high.—No longer dreaded and hated by the Royal family in the character of a traitorous enemy, but accepted as the loving kinsman of the young King. About this time, Gilbert, Count of Dijon, Hugh's brother-in-law, who 955—956  
Hugh-le-Grand's  
madness.

954—987  
955—956

had so cordially agreed with him, died, and bequeathed his County to Otho, Hugh's second son,—an important consolidation of power,—yet, after the retreat from Poitiers, no good fortune could cheer his heart. Men said that, since the siege, Hugh-le-Grand was never seen to smile. The storm which carried away his pavilion was accepted by him as a bad omen, and such it was ; for, being concurrent with declining health, this casualty—if the word casualty can ever be used indifferently—by working upon his mind, increased his malady and accelerated his decline.

956.  
Signs and  
portents.  
Hugh-le-  
Grand's  
increasing  
debility.

Although Otho's triumphant sword had expelled and exterminated the Magyars, yet they left behind them a legacy of evil. As usual, their past presence had dispersed the seeds of future contagion. Destructive pestilences spread throughout Germany and the Gauls. A marvellous sign appeared in the heavens—a fiery Dragon swept through the sky.—Hugh's illness became alarming. Time had gained upon Hugh. His existence had become a ceaseless strife—never slackening the intensity of purpose with which he pursued the one object to which his life had been devoted. All his mental and bodily powers kept on full stretch ; now in the dark, and now in the light ;—plotting, planning, truckling, fighting—a continued agony, never knowing peace or rest. His weary course was ending, and yet it was through the very ending of the course that he con-

templated accomplishing his heart's desire. From <sup>954—987</sup>  
first to last, Hugh-le-Grand had adhered with in-  
vincible firmness equally to his ambitious yet self-  
denying vow, and to the determination that his  
posterity should inherit the Carlovingian throne. <sub>954—986</sub>

The Son of a King, the Nephew of a King,  
the Brother of a King, who had never desired to  
become a King, held the firm and unchangeable  
belief that he was appointed to be the father of  
a King: yet, despite of that belief, perplexed  
by doubts and fears.

Astute, intelligent, crafty, silent, his son, the  
young Capet, had not quite attained the age which  
would enable him to demand his predestined  
Monarchy. No sufficient party had yet been  
organized in his favour.—Chances are growing  
adverse.—Gerberga, Otho's favourite sister,  
always claiming and obtaining his aid, the  
chroniclers display her in constant connexion  
with that royal brother,—Hadwisa never ap-  
pears upon the scene.—At the German Court,  
no notice is taken of Hugh Capet, whilst Lo-  
thaire, the favourite nephew, appears shielded by  
the Uncle's supremacy. Otho respected the  
rights of Charlemagne's descendants, and thereby  
really enhanced his own dignity. Crowned  
with the laurels culled on the Lech-feld,  
such moderation rendered the victorious Com-  
mander a more efficient defender of the young  
King's position, even than his military power.

Hugh-le-Grand's fears  
lest  
the Capet  
should fall  
to win the  
throne.

Hugh-le-Grand became weaker; he could

954—957  
 956—960  
 Hugh-le-Grand's illness en-creases.  
 He retires to his palace of Dordogne.

scarcely take meat or drink. During the most pleasant season of the year, the spring-tide ripening into summer, he was removed from Paris to his Palace of Dordogne on the Orge, but he knew his last hour was rapidly approaching, and he ordered his worldly concerns.

Delay of the marriage between Richard and Emma.

After the Rout of Rouen, it does not appear that the intercourse between the Duke of France and the Norman Richard had encreased. Abiding in undisturbed amity, and neither needing the other, they had not drawn nearer. Hugh-le-Grand could address the Duke of Normandy as his *bel-fitz*, whilst Richard might speak respectfully of Duke Hugh as his *bel-père*. But the connexion had not been realized. Whilst the fair-faced Damsel was growing up to woman's estate under her mother's care, Duke Richard had fully reached man's estate in his Grandsire's Palace at Rouen. It is more than doubtful whether the young and amiable couple, so solemnly betrothed, had, since the festive betrothal day, ever met again.

Richard endured the lengthened absence of Emma with very great patience; abstaining from manifesting any ardent wish that the French Princess should share his couch at Rouen. And if any friend had pledged himself to the assurance that, during the long meanwhile, the fine young Duke had always conducted himself with strictly edifying propriety, we should say,—reasoning by induction from the facts registered

concerning Duke Richard's progeny,—a bold mainpernour was he.

954—967

956—960

Notwithstanding this deficiency of affection between the Bridegroom and the Bride, no offence arose on either side. No coolness ensued between the Duke of Normandy and the Duke of all the Gauls. Their mutual friendship continued undiminished. Hugh-le-Grand felt assured that Richard would prove himself the young Capet's faithful and honourable Guardian.

Having therefore called together Wife and Children, Friends and Vassals, Hugh-le-Grand opened his mind to them. Anxiously directing their attention to the espousals between his daughter and Richard, he besought them to expedite the completion of their marriage. His eldest daughter, Beatrice, had recently espoused the audacious Frederick, the founder of Bar-le-Duc. Hadwisa and his boys he placed under the protection of his future Son-in-law, and besought that Richard might govern and manage the inheritance until the steady and sagacious Hugh should be old enough to receive the degree of knighthood, when his nonage would be considered as ended. During such minority, Hugh-le-Grand earnestly entreated their obedience to Richard, who would assuredly fulfil his trust affectionately and honourably.—And he breathed his last breath. The Royal Abbey of Saint Denis received his corpse. He was entombed by the side of his father Eudes, in a sarcophagus of marble-stone.

Hugh-le-Grand enjoins his nobles to accelerate the marriage, and appoints Richard to be the Protector and Guardian of his wife and children.

16 June, 956, Hugh-le-Grand's death and funeral.

964—967

956—960

Richard  
administers  
Hugh-le-  
Grand's  
dominions  
during the  
minority of  
his children.

§ 23. The testamentary disposition which Hugh thus made took immediate and full effect. It was indeed a clever and bold stroke of policy on Hugh-le-Grand's part, so to oust Lothaire from the right of wardship which, pending the children's legal infancy, he, as Hugh-le-Grand's Suzerain, would have been entitled to claim. Richard assumed the administration of the Provinces constituting Hugh-le-Grand's domains : and, as we collect from the language of his foes, the primal Duchy of France, no less than the distant Burgundy, submitted to the authority, or at least the control, of the Guardian whom the father had appointed for the heirs.

Richard  
delays the  
completion  
of his mar-  
riage.

Yet, notwithstanding all these encouragements, the vigorous young Richard did not glow with desire to "pree" blonde Emma's roseate lips or press her lily hand. We can calculate the very tepid temperature of his amatory feelings, or rather appreciate the extreme difficulty of fanning the spark into a flame, by the inducements and the provocations, and the representations and the persuasions, with which friendly Advisers beset and besieged the apathetic Bridegroom, actuated by the laudable intent of spurring him on to accomplish the promise he had made :—such as the long-enduring friendship between him and his Protector, the late Duke Hugh,—the calls of conscience,—the obligations of honour,—Emma, in the full pride of ripe virginity,—her accomplish-

Richard  
urged to  
fulfil his  
engagement.

ments, piety, talents,—above all, the danger menacing Normandy, should, in consequence of Richard's death without issue, the Ducal lineage fail.

954—987  
986—990

The latter argument was assuredly a proper form of speech — very proper to be used — though in all human probability unnecessary. We have every reason to apprehend that, even at this period of Richard's adolescence, adequate security existed against such a national calamity as his demise without some one or more lineal heir or heirs.—Heirs of his body, who would have been fully acknowledged as heirs according to the liberal standard of Norman morality, and the easy laws of inheritance which the Normans, unfettered by Code or Canon, enjoyed according to the antient liberties of their Danish ancestors.

Richard received the counsel graciously, and, promising conformity, was ultimately as good as his word; but he did not proceed with passionate alacrity. A considerable halt was interposed before he assented. When he made the plunge, the marriage was celebrated with due solemnity. All the high Nobility of Normandy and Britany attended according to the bidding; and Emma was conducted with great pomp to Rouen. We mainly owe all the particulars of early Norman history to the Dean of Saint Quentin's diligence and care. But Dudo, recording this matrimonial passage, labours under a distressing embarrassment. Whilst expatiating upon the magnificence of the

960—  
The marriage  
between  
Richard and  
Emma at  
length con-  
cluded.



954—987  
 956—987  
 alliance, and duly lauding the beauteous Bride, he is compelled to pause, and, altering his strain, warns his readers against indulging in the expectation that Emma was to become the future mother of Richard-le-Bon, our Richard Sans Peur's namesake, son, and successor, under whose patronage he penned his prose, and received the inspirations for his verse.—

§ 24. We are now approaching an exciting era, but, ere we return to Richard, we must episodically relate many signal events which, either directly, or by their reaction, exercised potent influences upon Normandy and Normandy's destiny.

*Affairs of  
 Flanders.*

First, as to our old acquaintance, Arnoul, who, after the Rout of Rouen, returned, as you have been told, safe and sound, men and cattle, bag and baggage, to his own country, which he continued to govern with encreasing ability. Time matured his wisdom, yet left his energy unimpaired. He displayed his shrewdness, as well as his generalship, by recovering Herlouin's County of Ponthieu, for which he had so long warred, thereby extending the frontier of his Flemish dominions up and home to the Norman border.

About three years after this exploit, being then nearly eighty-eight years of age, Arnoul resigned his County or Marquisate in favour of his eldest son Baudouin, thus named after his illustrious ancestors, Baudouin-bras-de-fer, and Baudouin-

le-Chauve.—Very touching was the ceremony. <sup>984—987</sup>  
 Clad in his golden robe of estate, Arnoul came <sup>986—987</sup>  
 forward, and presented himself to the Burghers  
 who had assembled before his Palatial Castle;  
 the *Oudebourg*, at Ghent, wherein Charles-le-  
 quint was born :—the towered portal-gate of this  
 venerable edifice, dingy and crumbling, is still  
 standing.—Arnoul declared his intention, that <sup>988—</sup>  
 thenceforward he would dedicate his remaining <sup>signs his</sup>  
 days to the duties which should alone engage the <sup>County in</sup>  
 thoughts of those, who, like him, bowed down by <sup>favour of</sup>  
 age and pain, were awaiting a speedy summons <sup>Baudouin,</sup>  
 from this transitory world. To his natural suc- <sup>his son.</sup>  
 cessor, the third Baudouin, Arnoul therefore relin-  
 quished all his rights in and over Flanders, and all  
 the dependencies thereunto appertaining; beseech-  
 ing only that he might be allowed to retain the  
 small means needed for the support of a poor old  
 man. And, divesting himself of the splendid man-  
 tle, and investing his son therewith, he appeared  
 attired in mortuary sable of the saddest die.

The silence,—as we are told,—was inter-  
 rupted only by the lamentations and wailings <sup>988—</sup>  
 of the multitude. Baudouin, historically de- <sup>Baudouin-le-</sup>  
 nominated “Baudouin-le-Jeune,” was then saluted <sup>Jeune pro-</sup>  
 and proclaimed as Count of Flanders; the <sup>claimed</sup>  
 Nobles performed homage, and the multitude <sup>Count of</sup>  
 dispersed, some affected with sorrow, but others <sup>Flanders.</sup>  
 not without satisfaction at the novel prospect of  
 a jolly young master.

Could they, however, have foreseen the

954—957

956—957

The promising character of Baudouin-le-Jeune.

Dec. 960—  
Baudouin-le-Jeune dies of the small-pox.

961—  
Arnoul-le-Jeune, son of Baudouin, accepted as Count of Flanders, under his grandfather's wardship.

future, they would have known that there was no urgent call at the then present moment either for much grief or much exultation. Assuredly Baudouin gave promises of good government. He acquired additional possessions, encouraged trade and commerce, established fairs and markets, and introduced the woollen manufacture in his chief cities, thereby laying the foundation for their future opulence. But, scarcely during thrice ten months, did he enjoy his sovereignty : and it is a curious pathological fact, that Baudouin, like Louis d'Outremer, fell a victim to the variolous contagion disseminated by the Magyar Hordes.—His disposition was genial, and his premature loss was mourned as a national misfortune.

One child only, did the lamented Baudouin leave, Arnoul the Second, then scarcely ten years old, who, upon his grandfather's nomination was accepted as Count of Flanders ; but, during his grandson's tender age, the energetic veteran, though racked by pain, acted as Regent on the infant's behalf. Arnoul had then exceeded his ninth decennary,—and it is quite possible that he might have numbered a century, had he submitted to the operation boldly suggested by his chirurgeons, who fully anticipated a successful result. Calculous complaints seem to have been common in the Country, and it was thought that he would have received encouragement from the example of sixteen fellow-sufferers, completely

relieved by lithotomy. But Arnoul refused. The old man's resolution failed; he dared not encounter the agony. The consequences were fatal. And, having attained the patriarchal age of ninety-two, he died, and in the Abbey of Saint Pierre-lez-Gand he was buried. In his Charters he was somewhat boastingly accustomed to style himself Arnulphus Magnus, but posterity did not ratify this assumption; and it is by the epithet, so truly applied, as resulting from his longevity, that *Arnoul-le-Vieux* is commemorated in history.

954—957  
956—957  
965—  
27 March—  
Death of  
Arnoul-le-  
Vieux, and  
full accession  
of Arnoul-  
le-Jeune.

§ 25. Renewed activity in France,—the consequence of the cordial understanding between Otho and Lothaire. So long as Hugh-le-Grand lived, Hadwisa, the mother of his children, is rarely named. But we now find her closely consorting with her sister, noble Gerberga and her young nephew; whilst Gerberga became more and more dependent upon Archbishop Bruno's aid. The French Court was miserably impoverished.—Save starved Compiègne, Lothaire did not hold, beyond the walls of Laôn, a Mansus he could call his own.

Poverty of  
the French  
Court.

Reinier, Count of Hainault, third of the name, brother of Count Gilbert, grandson of Reinier Long-col, no less aspiring than his Ancestor, had despoiled his sister-in-law, Gerberga, of the ample dotal domains bestowed by her first husband, the bold swimmer. The recovery of this property was an important object; and the

Gerberga de-  
prived of her  
endowment  
by Reinier,  
Count of  
Hainault.

954—967

956—967

Alice, Countess of Hainault, Mons, or Bergen, entrusted to her by her husband.

mode whereby Gerberga regained her rights constitutes an episode upon which Richerius dwells with characteristic pleasure, inasmuch as the feat was effected by his wily father, Raoul.

Alice, Countess of Hainault, daughter of the Count of Egisheim, was one of the many wise, pious, and helpful matrons who abounded during this era. There is a complete galaxy of such ladies in France, and in Germany, and in Anglo-Saxon England. To this Alice, Reinier had confided the government of his Capital, "Mons," as the Romanized Belgian gave the name, but known by those of the *Vlaemsche-taal* as "Bergen."

Countess Alice occupied the Castle with her two little children. The fortifications needed additions, and she had undertaken the double duty of superintending the erection of the new Buildings and also exercising the needful military command. A respectable body of troops, two "Cohorts," had been entrusted to Raoul's command, but the strong and advantageously situated Castle defied these forces, and he was probably the better pleased to be under the necessity of exerting his ingenuity.

The Castle being very vigilantly guarded, two of Raoul's merry men, accustomed to such pranks, disguising themselves as rustics, craved work, got it, and were employed with hod and basket to carry stone and mortar. Once in, they had full opportunity of spying about.

Amongst those most tender precepts given by the Almighty, protecting the rights of poverty, many then enforced by the Church, and which, if obeyed by Civilization, would relieve the miseries now rendering the life of the modern Proletarian a protracted death-anguish, none more applicable in all stages of society than the injunction, that the Sun shall not go down upon the Poor man's hire, prohibiting the withholding of the earnings on which he sets his heart, the means of obtaining his daily bread. Each Workman received his denarius day by day. Moreover, in conformity to the kindly spirit, which, dictated by pious feeling, alleviated the harshness of aristocracy, the Countess headed the board where the Workmen took their food ; and, all labour ceasing on the eve of the day of rest, the Workmen departed.

954—957  
 956—957  
 956—  
 Strategem by  
 which Raoul,  
 the father of  
 Richerius,  
 gains possession  
 of Mons.

Her benignity was ungratefully requited ; but Raoul's men were bound to stand faithful to their own master. Having become well acquainted with all the entries and all the sorties of gates and towers, Raoul, instructed by his agents, surprised the Castle, fired the City, captured the garrison, seized the Countess and her children, whom he placed in Gerberga's custody ; and, possessed of these pledges, Archbishop Bruno compelled rapacious Reinier to disgorge his prey, and he died a pitiable exile.

The Prelate passed on to an enterprise of greater magnitude, from which important

954—967

956—967

Bruno's  
government  
of Lotharin-  
gia.

European relations germinated, centuries after. Much had he trusted, in troublesome Lotharingia, to Immo, an old adherent of the Saxon line ; but discontent was surlily arising.

Without being able to ascertain the exact legal or political cause, we know, that even in comparatively modern eras, the Lotharingian Nobles enjoyed greater independence than their compeers in any other Circle of the Empire. Prelate, Statesman, and Warrior, Otho's brother determined to bridle their power, and he dismantled their fortresses. The Owners were deeply aggrieved. The common people, though probably not very sympathetic with the aristocracy, were nevertheless equally excited. Like the Deer, scenting the Stalker, they sagaciously snuffed new taxes in the wind.—A great rebellion broke out. Immo headed the insurrection. Sternly decisive was Bruno, and the movements which threatened the Imperial authority were completely put down.

Historical  
geography of  
Lorraine—  
its diffi-  
culties.

Battles and treaties—acquisitions and cessions—losses and gains—risings of the waters and depressions of the land—political and natural alterations and disturbances combining,—have rendered the historical geography of Lorraine exceedingly complicated,—very difficult either to delineate or to describe. We do not possess much literary assistance in this portion of our task ; for the fragmentary history of “Lotharingia,” whether we accept the name in the wider, or the more limited sense, has not received the elucidation

tion which the theme deserves; and a region important alike to the Germans and the French has been neglected by the indefatigable diligence of the first, and the critical and acute assiduity of the last.

954—987  
956—987

Stating the matter roundly and broadly, we may say that the territories bestowed upon the Archbishop by Otho, gained through policy, or conquered by generalship or valour, consisted of the mediæval and modern Duchies and Counties of Alsace, Lorraine, Bar, Luxembourg, Limbourg, Juliers, Hainault, Namur, Guelderland, Zealand, Holland, and Friesland; and the Provinces of the “Trois Evêchés,”—Metz, Tulle, and Verdun,—so famous in the age of Louis-Quatorze. Another mode whereby those who are somewhat familiar with the territorial organization of the antient German Churches, may obtain a general notion of Bruno’s government, will be to consider his authority as extending throughout the Archbishoprics of Cologne, and Treves and Mayence. Also the whole magnificent Arch-diocese of Utrecht; then including the entirety of the United Netherlands, and also “free Friesland”—that Anglo-Saxondom beyond the Sea,—yet not as they now exist, but then including vast submerged tracts, which neither the natural shores nor the failing dykes were adequate to defend against the devouring waves.

Extent of  
Archbishop  
Bruno’s  
dominions.

These acquisitions constituted a Duchy com-



954—987 manding the whole Rhine stream,—narrow,  
 956—967 widening, or widest—mouths and banks and  
 Bruno's ac- estuaries;—from the rapids and echoes of spec-  
 quisitions the tral Lureley, even until the disappearance of  
 principal barrier of the the mighty but divided flood, amongst sands  
 Continent against the and shallows and shoals, and the surging seas.  
 Danish inva- Bruno was in effect March-Warden of the whole  
 sions. maritime coast, from the Scheldt to the Sea-  
 lands and the Islands, so far east as the mouth  
 of the Weser.

Bruno, governing the great battle-field of modern Europe, was placed in a situation of peculiar responsibility. His vigilance was not only specially due to the conterminous countries, but also, generally, to the Christian Commonwealth at large. He was entrusted with the litigious outposts, liable to bear the brunt against the most dreaded enemy: and, upon his vigilance, depended the security of the extensive littoral and the numerous adjoining islands within the channels claimed or owned by Germany or by France. Whether on the sea-board or the fresh water shores, the dread of the Danes was never wholly absent, their outrages were ever-living traditions; any day or any night might the Noble or the Peasant talk or dream of the summer harvests burning in the ricks, or the rigid corpses swinging on the frozen boughs. And the terrors which haunted the Italian and Spanish shores in the days of Dragutte and Barbarossa

Constant apprehensions of danger from this quarter not unreasonable.

were tolerable, when compared with the horrors still excited by the representative of the old Sea-Kings—Harold Blaaland in full vigour, his people always ready for the fight, their battle axes slung. Some of the Danes are said to have been converted by Bruno, but such hungry Neophytes required to be more narrowly observed than if they had continued unprofessing Pagans.—And—always comprehended in the category of Pirates, and, none more dreaded,—because the nearest—than the grandson of Rollo. Nor were these anxieties without foundation.—Though temporarily kept in check by Edgar, the Northmen were preparing to renew that desperate series of attacks which enabled the Son of Blaaland to found a Danish dynasty in England.

954—957  
956—957

§ 26. Bruno attached himself more affectionately than ever to his widowed sister Gerberga. Thankfully partaking of Otho's hospitality, did they celebrate the Paschal Feast in the Eagle-crowned Pfaltz at Aix-la-Chapelle, seated at the table of marble-stone. Yet, amidst all joys, carking cares constantly gnawed the hearts of the French royal family. Hugh-le-Grand slept in his grave, but Louis d'Outremer's royal widow and Louis d'Outremer's crowned Son were not the more at rest.—Let them flit where they chose, they startled at the groaning of the wind or the creaking of the door.

959—  
3 April.  
Cordial  
meeting be-  
tween Bruno  
and Gerberga  
at Aix-la-  
Chapelle.  
Uneasiness  
of the Royal  
family.

New sources of apprehension arose — the

954—987

956—987

Dormant  
rights of the  
Lombardy-  
Vermandois  
line.

Herbert the  
Handsome.  
His eldest  
son.—His  
pretensions.

(See Vol. I.,  
p. 356.)

990—  
Robert,  
Count of  
Troyes, re-  
bels against  
the King.

Count  
Robert gains  
Dijon by the  
treachery  
of the Com-  
mander.

House of Lombardy-Vermandois had not despaired of their rehabilitation. Since Charlemagne's days the adverse possession retained by the reigning branches might be construed as having barred their dynastic rights, yet blind Bernard's descendants were legitimate descendants of Charlemagne after all. The runaway marriage of Herbert the Handsome with the Queen Dowager Ogiva, however indecorous, heightened the family splendour, and the union was not unblessed. Two children had the buxom matron borne to Herbert; who, representing, through their father, the genuine Carolingian line, were also distinguished by their alliance with the royal blood of England.

Robert Count of Troyes, Herbert the regicide's active son, raised the standard and roused the rebellion. The vituperative appellation, "the Tyrant," bestowed upon the deceased Herbert, Robert's father, and equally applied to him, indicates his power and the apprehension excited by the revolt.

Count Robert sought to render Dijon the centre of his operations against the King. Dijon gained, Burgundy would lie at his mercy. The way opened for a bloodless contest—gold substituted for steel. A young Noble, son of Count Odalric, possibly the Count of Verdun, had been placed by Lothaire as Commander of the City. This young man, whose name is not mentioned,

perhaps through very shame, consented to the suggested treason. Opening the gates, he admitted the revolvers, and, preventing the "Tyrant" became his homager. Lothaire assailed Dijon. Up and doing, vigilant Bruno was forthwith also in the field. Two thousand Lorrainers, under the Archbishop's command, attacked Troyes, and Robert submitted to the King's mercy. For him,—mercy,—but for the traitor none. Stern was Lothaire's justice or vengeance. The delinquent suffered capital punishment.—He was beheaded, and Count Odalric was compelled to endure the agony of beholding his son expire under the hands of the executioner. After this vigorous, perhaps rigorous exertion of Royal Power, Lothaire returned to Laôn.

954—967  
956—967

Lothaire, by Bruno's help, regains the City.

Rigorous punishment inflicted by Lothaire upon the traitor.

§ 27. According to popular opinion, Richard's character improved greatly after his marriage. Inspired rather by conventional gallantry than guided by correct reasoning, the Normans attributed this amelioration to the benign influence of the young Duchess. Considered under a political aspect, the union assuredly proved advantageous. Richard continued gaining in good report with the world: talent and ability enabling him to extend his authority widely, and his influence still more, thereby provoking an active revival of antient enmities. The Court of Laôn swarmed with

864—897

896—907

Thibaut  
excites Ger-  
berga and  
Lothaire  
against  
Richard.

Richard's evil-wishers. Above all others, Thibaut-le-Tricheur.—Thoroughly versed in the art of ingeniously tormenting, he was constantly working upon Gerberga and Lothaire, worrying them, teasing them, knagging at Richard's power and prosperity.—Richard, quoth Thibaut, ruled the Burgundians; guided the Aquitanians; chode the Bretons; chased the Flemings; patronized the distant English and far distant Scots; but, most of all, was the Pirate's Son to be dreaded through his firm alliance with Harold Blaaland and the Danskermen.

Richard's  
principal  
supporters in  
Normandy.

Large as these expressions may sound, even Thibaut could not have employed them, had they not been sustained by an adequate proportion of truth. The young Duke governed his own dominions firmly and prosperously. His most dangerous home opponents, silenced, or taken away: whilst, at the same time, no inconsiderable proportion of those who had been his father's trusty adherents, as well as his own early friends, men dignified by the aristocracy of age, conjoined to wealth and station, were yet living to support him.—Hugh the Archbishop of Rouen, the importance attached to his position not diminished by his clerical demerits.—Richard's veteran deliverers from Laôn dungeon, Osmund de Centvilles and Ivo de Belesme,—and Waleran de Mellent also,—still stood by his side.—Concerning Bernard the Dane, the scenes with

Hugh-le-Grand constitute his last appearance in Dudo's pages; nor has the diligent Historian of the noble House of Harcourt been able to ascertain the exact period of his death: but he had left an adequate representative in the person of his son Thorold, the Sire of Pontaudemer. In fact, the rising generations destined to supply the places of the fast disappearing, were now assembling around the Duke. In due time we shall become acquainted with them; but, for the present we can only distinguish Gautier-le-Veneur, whose office, testifying the confidence he enjoyed, also bespoke his courage and his thewes.—Well fitted and framed was Gautier to encounter the tusks and claws of the beasts of chase abounding in Normandy;—no talent so sure as the huntsman's, to win Richard's favour.

954—957  
956—967

Gautier-le-Veneur.

Richard had not taken any notice of Lothaire's accession. He ignored the existence of any mutual relations in the respective characters of Suzerain and Vassal between Louis d'Outremer's son, and the son of Guillaume Longue-épée. Had Richard owned the duties resulting from such obedience, he would have been bound to renew his Commendation and Homage when Lothaire ascended the throne. But he repudiated any such acknowledgement; Normandy's Monarch refused to recognize the French King as a legal superior. Had they met, the conference would have been conducted with

Lothaire's accession ignored by Richard.

934—937 } grim civility; Richard's courtesy might have  
 936—937 } dictated to him the decency of yielding honorary  
 precedence to an anointed Sovereign. He  
 would have made the gesture of vailing the  
 Coronet before the Crown. But, as cautious  
 Dignities are wont to act when seeking to elude  
 any annoying pressure of etiquette, which  
 might compel them to take the lower room, he  
 had saved himself from any embarrassment by  
 keeping wholly out of Lothaire's way.

Hugh-le-Grand so-  
 knewedges  
 himself  
 as a vassal of  
 the Crown.

Hugh-le-Grand, however proud and potent,  
 could not have boasted of the same independence.  
 —His pre-eminence over all other the Crown  
 vassals was universally admitted, yet he had  
 distinctly accepted his Duchies of France and  
 Burgundy, as Fiefs holden of the King. Lo-  
 thaire's parchments constituted the undeniable  
 foundations of Hugh's title. Therefore, however  
 inimical or treacherous, Hugh-le-Grand could  
 not legally release himself from his bond; and,  
 to his sons, the same duties had descended.

Was this absolute necessity of seeking the  
 King compatible with the liberties which Franco-  
 Gallia so proudly claimed? — Assuredly. —  
 To the Nations of the Gauls appertained the  
 magnificent privilege of electing their King,  
 and the power of thrusting him off the throne.  
 But the constitutional theory, construed as  
 an entirety, maintained the King, once created,  
 as Supreme Head of the Commonwealth. How-

ever shrunken the dominions obeying the King's direct authority, however light the hand he could lay upon the high territorial aristocracy, yet all the royal prerogatives were incontestable. No great Feudatory sat easy, unless he could produce his Charter, exhibiting the impress of the Royal Seal, and duly signed and counter-signed, by Arch-Chancellor and King. —The Nations of the Gauls exhausted their power by making their King: and, till unmade, their rights became dormant, and every royal prerogative existed in full vigour.

954—967

954—967  
The Royal  
prerogatives  
never con-  
tested.

Amongst the suppositions of those truly profound Archæologists who enlighten us by their research, whilst they task us by their perplexities, we shall *now* adopt the opinion which reduces the sons of Hugh-le-Grand to two:—the Capet, whose precocious prudence seems to have been elicited by the knowledge of his father's aspirations; and Otho, or Eudes. I shall not trouble the reader and myself by discussing whether there may not have been another or others; but, any how, they died so young that they do not obtain any place in history. All Hugh-le-Grand's obligations were binding upon these sons: and, after his demise, the legal wardship of the Infants, and the custody of their inheritance, appertained to Lothaire. But Hugh-le-Grand, whilst wrapping himself in his shroud, defied his Sovereign. His death-bed disposition was wholly unwarranted;

Hugh-le-  
Grand's  
children.

Hugh-le-  
Grand's ap-  
pointment of  
Richard as  
the guardian  
of his sons a  
contraven-  
tion of the  
Prerogative.



954—957  
956—957

for, in complete contravention of the Royal rights, he had placed the Minors and their dominions under the guardianship of the Norman.

We must continue the episodical narration of this very remarkable transaction until its catastrophe.—Effluxion of time would terminate the wardship; yet, in the meanwhile, the united strength which rejoiced the Houses of Robert-le-Fort and Rollo was bearing against the Crown.

Lothaire asserts his rights, and dividing the dominions of Hugh-le-Grand between his sons, they become his vassals.

A happy juncture arrived during the progress of the alliance against Richard, when Lothaire, acutely acceding to the sagacious Bruno's supplications, and supported by Bruno's power, availed himself of the law. Hugh-le-Grand's children were his mother's own nephews, sons of his revered aunt Hadwisa, own cousins, near kinsmen, who had a right to be dear.—Great must have been the stir at the Court of Laôn, when the Capet and Endes his brother were brought before their royal Protector, and, swearing the oaths and performing homage, acknowledged themselves his Vassals and Lieges.

Duchy of France and Poitou granted to the Capet.

Lothaire, thus accepted as the lawful Superior, immediately exercised his unquestionable rights of partitioning the vast inheritance. The Capet received the Duchy of France,—alone constituting a magnificent provision.—Thereunto Lothaire added Poitou, professing, as it should seem, to interpolate the Capet as Overlord of the Duchy, granting him the superiority ineffectually contested by Hugh-le-Grand,

and for which he may be said in a manner to <sup>954—957</sup>  
have died. Whether Tête-d'Etoupe would con- <sup>956—957</sup>  
sent to this humiliation was another matter;  
his consent had not been asked.

Burgundy became the lot of Eudes; but this <sup>Burgundy  
to Eudes.</sup>  
grant speedily enured to the advantage of the  
elder brother. The Capet, during his whole life,  
was pursued by good fortune. Eudes did not <sup>Early death  
of Eudes.  
Burgundy  
passes to the  
Capet.</sup>  
survive to enjoy his possessions more than three  
years, when his apanage was inherited by the  
future occupant of the throne, now the sole male  
representative of Robert-le-Fort's lineage,—so  
curiously do royal families sometimes ride at  
single anchor, if such an expression can be  
allowed.

These mutations might have affected Richard's  
interests very seriously. Deprived of the privi-  
leges and advantages which he enjoyed as guar-  
dian, Hugh-le-Grand's sons, emancipated from  
Richard's control, were brought under the im-  
mediate jurisdiction of their lawful Suzerain.  
The Duke of Normandy could no longer pre-  
tend to any legal or quasi-parental authority  
over them; and, it was within the compass of  
reasonable probabilities, that his shrewd brother-  
in-law, who, manifested the most persevering  
ambition, conjoined to the profoundest craft, might  
become a dangerous rival. What if the Capet  
had chosen to take up, or make up, a quarrel  
with Richard, on account of his conduct towards  
Emma?

954—967

956—967

Richard  
becomes the  
Vassal of  
Hugh Capet.

The next move however was Richard's.—Others remained to be made; but this, not being nullified by the cast of the die, was destined, in the long run, to decide the game, and Richard was enabled to play it out on the tables more fully than even he himself could possibly have foreseen. No longer entitled to exercise any personal control over the Duke of all the Gauls as his Ward, Richard could establish himself in a much more advantageous position, and wherefrom he could effectually outflank Lothaire. Hugh Capet had become full Duke of all the Gauls, owning no superior except the King, and holding his Duchy in a more dignified manner than any other amongst the Vassals of the Crown. Richard, therefore, simply renewed that "Commendation" to Hugh-le-Grand's successor which, by the advice of Bernard the Dane and the Normans, he had rendered to the father.—No abasement implied in this act—nay the contrary.—The "Principes Normannorum," prided himself in acknowledging the Capet, the "Principes Francorum," as his Senior, and, we doubt not, but that according to custom, he performed his homage under the oak tree between Gisors and Trie, on the border. Henceforward Hugh Capet was authorized to demand the service of Richard as his Vassal. And thus, ere the Coronal of the Duchy of France was fashioned into the Fleur-de-Lis Crown, Normandy was its brightest jewel—Normandy became the Grand Fief of the Capetian Kingdom before that Kingdom arose.

§ 28. The inspirations of the Medical Muse <sup>954—967</sup>  
 fell pre-eminently upon the renowned pathological <sup>956—967</sup>  
 Poet, Johannes de Mediolano, who, addressing  
 the “Rex Anglorum” in the name of the School  
 of Salerno, has picturesquely idealised the <sup>Sanguine  
 Tempera-  
 ment as  
 described in  
 the Precepts  
 of the School  
 of Salerno.</sup>  
 “Sanguine Temperament,” first and most gifted  
 amongst the “Four Complexions” assigned by  
 antient Physiology to mankind.

*Naturâ pingues isti sunt, atque jocantes,  
 Rumoresque novos cupiunt audire frequenter,  
 Hos Venus et Bacchus delectant, fercula, risus.  
 Et facit hos hilares, et dulcia verba loquentes.  
 Omnibus hi studiis habiles sunt, et magis apti.*

And since that King of England was Henry  
 Beauclerc, we may fancy we hear the sagacious  
 Physician, when presenting his poem to his  
 royal Patient and Patron, intoning the passage  
 with dulcet modulation and delicate emphasis,  
 inasmuch as the brightest characteristics truly  
 appertained to the Conqueror's heir.

*Largus, amans, hilaris, ridens, rubeique coloris,  
 Cantans, carnosus, satis audax, atque benignus.*

But, had Richard sat for the portrait, whether <sup>Applica-  
 bility of the  
 Portrait to  
 Henry I.</sup>  
 moral or physical, it could scarcely have been  
 more accurate, according to the accounts given  
 by his biographers. Even such as the verses  
 commemorate, was Richard. Collect the various  
 historical passages, whether directly laudatory, or  
 incidentally descriptive of his moral or physical

954—957

956—957

Richard's  
moral and  
physical  
portrait, as  
anticipated  
by Johannes  
de Mediolano

idiosyncrasies, his conduct abroad, and his conduct at home, and we obtain a full view of his character. Cheerful, handsome, debonnaire, —a well filled purse, opened by a liberal hand,—no Raoul Torta to tighten the strings,—none to compete with Richard as the gallant wooer of the coy, though yielding beauty,—troubling no one by the unpleasant example of rigorous morality,—living for enjoyment, and willing that everybody else should be equally free and easy,—agile, stalwart, bold and handsome,—stout, but graceful,—exhibiting in his person the best points of his race, divested of harshness, and his fine countenance adorned by his curly golden hair.

§ 29. Whatever Richard's political power may have been, he had avoided making any sign, that, if left alone, he would ever trouble his neighbours. Ambition was neutralized by love of pleasure: his Court at Rouen was a constant scene of merriment and jollity, crowded like a fair.

Implacability of  
Richard's  
enemies.

There was no real reason, therefore, to fear him. His foes, however, would not allow him to live a tranquil life. Quiet came at last, but not until they had worn themselves out; and, in the meantime, he had to bear with his trials, or better, to brave them.—If needs must, right willing and full ready was Richard to grasp the sword.

All the members of the Royal family, and all connected with them, yet most particularly the powerful partisans, who so repeatedly ap-

pear in action as an implacable junto, were conscientiously the deadly enemies of the Pirate. 954-957  
956-957

Conscientiously,—they knew no otherwise, could not know otherwise, no not if they laboured ever so earnestly, unless transformed by a moral miracle. The implacability which the French ascribed to the Danes was reflected back upon themselves, and returned with equal inveteracy. National  
emitties. Like mirror placed opposite to mirror, hating minds repeat hatred in endless perspective; but not like the mirrors, fainter and fainter. In all such quarrels, each man ascribes to his foeman the faults of which he possesses the full equivalent, may be the very same. Every heart, however tender, includes a stony fragment never softened into flesh; the heart of stone is never entirely taken away.—No intolerance more inveterate than that which inspires all of us the Advocates of universal toleration.—Alas for the “sacred right of private judgment,” claimed by every one, but allowed by no one.—Who permits it?—Do you? Do I?—Not you.—Not I.—My permission of “private judgment” is this—think as you please, provided you think so as to please me.—Believe what you choose of your own free choice, but choose my creed.—And if you make your own free choice, your “Choice” is my “Heresy.”—And your permission is the same—my “Choice” is your “Heresy.” There is not a page of the Tract distributor’s Tract, or the Anti-tractarian or Tractarian sermon, or a leaf

954—957

956—957

of the liberal or illiberal broad sheet, which, under favourable circumstances, and fostering influences, might not develope into a San-benito, *semé* with flames. Even the most merciful amongst human creatures are therefore oft-times the most merciless;—there is one grudge which they never forget; one affront they never forgive; one opinion they never bear with; one offence they never pardon;—the bitterness concentrated in one channel, becoming more intense than when diffused.

Gerberga's character. Its apparent, but intelligible inconsistencies.

§ 30. I do not doubt but that the reader has often accused me of inconsistency when speaking of Gerberga,—telling so much of her spite, though more of her love. Yet so it was; the noble Matron's ardent devotion to her own, being quite compatible with her one malevolence. She feared and hated the man, whom she had loathed and detested as a boy. In these sentiments Gerberga was fully encouraged by Lothaire. To the son of Louis d'Outremer, enmity against Richard might appear a filial duty. Was he not bound to efface the burning shame of the Rout of Rouen?

Baudouin-le-Jeune. His hereditary antipathy to Richard, originating from the dread of the Danes.

Baudouin-le-Jeune harmonized in similar feelings. Thoroughly had the young Prince imbibed the traditions of his family. Arnoul's heir detested the Pirate's son no less deeply than his own old father before him. Moreover, the Flemings had sufficient cause to dread the Norman power. Through the acquisition of Pon-

thieu, Flanders had become conterminous with <sup>954—957</sup>  
 Normandy, and Richard's men might cross the <sup>956—957</sup>  
 boundary river any day. But Baudouin was  
 always ready to hit—and, more than that,—to  
 strike the first blow. A “mal-voisin” of  
 Richard was he.

Archbishop Bruno was inevitably enrolled <sup>Bruno. His reasons also for fearing their power.</sup>  
 in the host of Richard's enemies. His affectionate attachment towards Gerberga would, under any circumstances, render him ready to support her cause. Bruno must have entertained a painful recollection of the Rouen discomfiture. The Edeling slaughtered,—Otho and the Germans brought to bitter shame.—Indeed the Archbishop was driven forwards by an accumulation of motives, each provoking him against Richard, and none imaginary. Bruno's comprehensive policy would have been liable to censure as defective, had he not included the Pirate in the wide orbit of fear and apprehension. Abounding in landing places and hiding places, the extended Lotharingian littoral was always open to the Dane. Harold Blaaland's savage aspect always threatening; the black sails always fancied to be looming in the horizon.

Furthermore, a new enemy had been raised up <sup>Geoffrey Grisgonnelle, Count of Anjou, the great grandson of the ploughman Torquatus. (See vol. I. p. 501.)</sup>  
 against Richard. About this time, Geoffrey Grisgonnelle having succeeded to the County of Anjou, begins to appear in French affairs. This Geoffrey (dynastically the first) was the son of Fulke-le-Bon, great grandson of the ploughman Torquatus,



<sup>994-997</sup>  
<sup>998-997</sup> the Forester of the forest so merrily called the Blackbird's Nest, the primary Plantagenet.

A few years after his accession, Geoffrey returned from Rome, whither he had pilgrimized to Saint Peter's tomb. His historical epithet was probably suggested by his long grey gown.

Noble and generous was Geoffrey, but these qualities were alloyed, or shall we say, shaded, by a certain degree of levity, and amongst his first exploits he seems to have picked a quarrel, (if we may use such expressions,) with Richard, by invading Richard's borders. He allied himself to Hugh, Count of Maine,—the father of the celebrated Herbert-rouse-the-dog, *Herbert-eveille-chien*—and the distance between Normandy and Anjou was so small, that Geoffrey was watched as the second mal-voisin.

Thibaut of  
Chartres and  
Liutgarda.

But Richard's persecuting Demon, was Thibaut-le-Tricheur. Near enough, and mal-voisin enough to Normandy was he. Thibaut and his Consort were happily congenial; as fiercely minded did Liutgarda continue against Richard, as she had been ever since his birth, or before. Heightened by jealousy, her enmity had not received any mitigation from the series of events which ensued since Guillaume Longue-épée's demise. Without affection for Guillaume Longue-épée, Liutgarda seems to have been not inexcusably provoked by Espriota's usurpation of her rights; and the jealousy of the Countess of Chartres against the Miller's wife and the Mamzer, burnt

strongly as ever. Richard, however, on his part, <sup>954—957</sup> fully reciprocated. He did all the mischief to <sup>954—957</sup> Liutgarda he could, and aggravated the wrongs she had received from his father by confiscating her dowry lands.

Thibaut was inclined to contest all Normandy up to the river Seine; or at all events a good share. His peculiar object in the first instance was the Evreçin, a territory which would so beautifully round off the "Päis Chartrain." He had been scheming with a powerful partisan at Evreux; whether burgess or knight we know not, for his name gives no intimation of his rank, and this personage had promised his aid. But the intrigues could not become successful unless supported by force. Thibaut had been beat off by Richard; and he therefore persisted in labouring to stir up Lothaire, so as to marshal all available powers against the common enemy.

Thibaut's  
particular  
views upon  
the Evreçin.

§ 31. Ultimately, no portion of France, became more truly French than Normandy.—Wherever the Frenchman extends his conquests, the domination obtained by the bold winner of hearts, commencing with violence, ends by love. It was in Normandy that French literature arose. Amongst the populations of France, none have more fully participated than the Normans in that national sentiment which, surviving through every convulsion, and shining most brightly amidst the most gloomy clouds of national misfortune, rendered Franco-Gallia "one and indivisible," ages

954—967

956—967

before the Republic was proclaimed. An affection as potent under the Drapeau blanc, as under the Tri-color—defending the Eagle, as devotedly as the Fleur-de-lis.

Hatred  
between the  
French and  
Normans  
during the  
early period  
of Norman  
history.

Yet, during the early period of Norman history, or rather so long as the Normans possessed a distinct history,—so long as they were alien to France—a bitter dislike subsisted between the two nations, for such they were. Our English hatred of the French was originally implanted by the Norman conquerors; and, at this period, the enmity was peculiarly inflamed by the apprehensions which the French entertained, and with sufficient foundation, of Richard's cater-cousins, Harold Blaaland, and the Scandinavians. The geographical denomination, "Scandinavians," must be employed, inasmuch as Richard continued to cultivate the friendship of the three great families of the Baltic and the North Sea.

The political antagonism was exaggerated by both parties into personal antipathy against the respective Sovereigns, and that antipathy fomented by contempt; a grovelling passion infinitely more degrading to those who entertain it than to the objects of their scorn. The readiness with which the Wits of Queen Anne's days chimed into the vulgar strain of ridicule cast upon the "Grand Monarque" discredits their taste and disgraces their moral dignity. Magnanimity

towards an Enemy, a feeling unknown to the savage, honoured by Heathen ethics, and constituting one of the few human virtues which can be truthfully assigned to Chivalry, may, in our civilized age, be occasionally manifested to a Prisoner after the conflict in the field—but never do we now find magnanimity, when war is envenomed by personal antipathies. If there could be such a thing as national shame, who would not lament the foul streams of scurrility with which we drenched the “Corsican” as inflicting an indelible stain upon ourselves?—

951—987  
956—988

The mutual dispathies between the Normans and the French assume a ludicrous aspect, from the caricatures of the respective Monarchs which illustrate their history. According to physiological fancies prevalent in former times, and by no means obsolete in our own, the colour which we cannot otherwise define than as the culminating tint of the “Xanthous” variety of hair, was viewed, or rather shunned, with the deepest and most incurable aversion. In France, the Trouveur spoke the popular opinions by which the feature,—termed in plain English, a carrot-poll,—was deemed the warning symbol of moral depravity—

Richard and  
Lothaire  
respectively  
ridiculed by  
the French  
and the  
Normans.

Entre rous poil et felonie  
S'entreportent grant compaignie.

A curious testimony of this uncharitable prejudice is afforded in mediæval art. The

954—957

956—958

antient painters, the Byzantine teachers of Giotto and Cimabue, were guided by the technical traditions of Hagiology, not by æsthetic precepts. Judas was always pourtrayed with this characteristic. No cast of countenance, no sinister expression would have been considered adequate to express his depravity.

Fortunately, however, or unfortunately, there is no colour more difficult to define than this odious “signalement,” yet none more easy to euphonize, inasmuch as it passes, or might pass, or ought to pass, by delicate ascending or descending gradations into various hues; one almost pleasing, some tolerable, others—but there we stop—and the artifices by which the lover discovers graces imperceptible to any other eye, nay, even interprets blemishes as charms, have always been employed in society for the purpose of eluding the inferences which are deduced from this peculiarity.

*Nominibus mollire licet mala : fusca vocetur,*

*Nigrior Illyrica cui pice sanguis erat :*

*Si pæta est, Veneri similis, si flava Minervæ.*

As for Lothaire, according to the Norman portrait, he was ill-favoured equally in body and in mind. Look at him, said they,—a fine fellow for a King; stingy and shabby, proud and fell, shambling upon his crooked shanks, his long, pale, hollow-cheeked, freckled face, encircled by

his fiery hair : whilst the golden locks which we  
admire in Richard, presented the identical repro-  
bated colour to the eyes of his French enemies.

954—967

956—960

. . . . . Mult somes tout hontous  
Richard cet Normant, cel aventis, cel rous !

It is that Richard, that Northman, exclaims  
Thibaut, that vagabond, that russet-pate, who  
puts us all to shame !

§ 32. Richard, during this era, had to struggle  
against fraud and deception, treachery and hos-  
tility, to labour against assaults so sharp, com-  
binations so potent that at first they threatened  
the very existence of the State ; yet, nevertheless,  
so overruled as to seal the independence of Nor-  
mandy, and to enable his descendant, in the  
fourth degree, to achieve the conquest of England.

Seizing the opportunity when Lothaire and  
Gerberga held their Court at Laôn, Thibaut came  
before them and warned them of their impending  
danger. He expatiated upon Richard's direct  
authority, and also upon his resulting influence,  
scarcely less threatening. Not a square toise of  
land in Normandy, would Richard own that he  
held of the King. Nay, added Thibaut, he rules  
the French as though he were their sovereign ;  
and as this expression could not extend to the  
King's dominions, it must be construed as refer-  
ring to the preponderance which he possessed in  
the Duchy of France by reason of his Capetian  
alliance.

Thibaut  
excites  
Lothaire and  
Gerberga  
to cut against  
Richard.

Concurrently with these arguments, Thibaut

954—987

956—980

kept Lothaire's apprehensions seething, by exaggerating the Pirate's military and social power.—Verily, no safety for France, otherwise than in Richard's destruction. Bold Gerberga solicited Thibaut to advise. Thibaut was plain-spoken. Open force, or sagacity,—that is to say, device or stratagem, trick or treason, were alike allowable. Whatever language the Pirate spoke, whatever garb he might put on, he was excluded from the social compact.—This doctrine was one of the *Arcana Imperii*, not to be displayed abroad, but always concealed in the breast.—The catastrophe of Picquigny was a scene for example rather than detestation.

Assistance  
against  
Richard  
sought from  
Archbishop  
Bruno.

Negotiations were opened with Bruno, reviving the recollections of the Land. Old men were living who had heard from their fathers how cleverly Archbishop Wilibert, Count Henry, and Count Everard had delivered the Carlovingian community from the Black Dane, whom no Baptism could purify, no alliance bring within the protecting pale of Carlovingian civilization. The King gladly assented. Gerberga entered readily into the scheme. Otho also, and the security of France—and through France, of Germany—silenced all the scruples which conscience might raise.

§ 33. Lothaire, Gerberga, Otho, Thibaut, Bruno,—all agreed upon the ultimate object of their confederacy. Why should they not?

It would have been out of character for any one of them to have held aloof from any mischief against Richard. Thibaut, certainly the most active, and at this juncture, perhaps the most powerful, assembled his forces at Beauvais; whilst, at the same time, a bland communication was transmitted by Bruno to Richard, speaking much of peace and amity, and his wish to protect Richard against his enemies, inviting him to an interview at Amiens. No object—as the bidding ran—did Archbishop Bruno seek more earnestly than a reconciliation between Richard and his nephew the King.

984—987  
986—990  
Bruno invites Richard to a conference at Amiens.

Richard was thrown off his guard. Without consideration, neither receiving nor seeking advice, he marched forward to the place of conference, lightly and easily, as though he were going forth for amusement or pastime.—Many were the marvels sung by the Minstrels in after times concerning the preternatural trials and perils which befel Richard-sans-Peur in the forest glades,—seductions and terrors,—encounters with fairies bright and ugly fiends,—and now, when, having entered the Beauvoisin, he was passing through the woodlands, a veritable adventure occurred, which, with due embellishment, might have figured in the lay. It was the sudden apparition of two Knights starting through the thicket, hot, and fagged, and dusty, so muffled in their mantles that their faces could not be discerned.

Mysterious warning given to Richard of his danger.



954—957

960—962

Their errand was one of very substantial reality. These friendly strangers were Thibaut's men. They had learnt the intended treason,—perpetual imprisonment, or death, had been devised. Greeting Duke Richard, he at their request turned aside; and they intimated to him, in terms obscure and emblematical, yet not unintelligible, that a great danger was imminent. They probably adopted this semblance of mystery for the purposes of relieving their conscience and also rescuing Richard, yet equivocally evading the opprobrium of directly betraying their master's counsel.—Noble Duke, said they, what choose ye to be your lot? Ruler amongst your own people, or a banished man? Shepherd, swineherd, or worse?

Richard was astounded. Richard-sans-Peur felt fear now; and when, in after times, the Knights told their own story, they related how Richard's colour rose, not from anger, but from real and actual alarm and confusion.—Silent awhile, he broke that silence:—Whose Lieges were they? What matters it, replied they, if faithful to thee. No more questions did Richard ask. His guerdons bespoke his gratitude for the warning, and also his comprehension of the snare. Richard's own golden-hilted sword did the one Knight receive. Four pounds in weight did that hilt weigh. The Companion was honoured by Richard's golden bracelet—the ensign of his ducal dignity—equi-ponderous

Richard  
accepts the  
warning and  
returns to  
Ronen.

with the splendid sword-hilt, and also fashioned of the purest gold. The Monitors vanished. Richard rejoined his Nobles and Cortege—Gantier-le-Veneur no doubt amongst them—and related the strange encounter which had befallen him. Some slight debate seems to have ensued; but they were ultimately unanimous in accepting the counsel conveyed by the enigma.—Forward would be folly;—and forthwith must Richard return to Rouen.

954—967  
960—962

§ 34. Bruno waited for Richard anxiously, fretfully, impatiently. At length, a messenger despatched from Rouen, informed him that his evil intentions were disclosed. Bitterly vexed by this revelation, uncertain by whose intervention his machinations had been thwarted, the Archbishop again assumed the character of a peace-maker. Courteously did Bruno reiterate his entreaty, seeking to conciliate Richard by meeting him on his own confines. Let Richard advance as far as the Epte, and, accompanied by Lothaire, the Archbishop would gladly undertake the journey. Richard tartly refused. The Normans were deeply incensed. The discomfited deceit only encreased the enmity of the two nations. The news spread widely. The iniquity of the proposed stratagem, condemned more sternly by reason of its failure, brought Bruno into discredit. A report circulated in Normandy, that, when the intelligence reached Italy, the Pope was inclined to fulminate a sen-

Discredit  
brought upon  
Bruno by his  
share in this  
transaction.

954—987

980—982

tence of deposition against the Archbishop. But it would have been a hard matter for the Pontiff thus to deal with a Prince of the Empire. Bruno's acts and deeds, life and conversation, should be carefully studied. In him, we begin to see the mischievous consequences resulting from the annexation of temporal sovereignty to ecclesiastical dignity. But temporal sovereignty must not be confounded with temporal authority, nor be mistaken for the position which the Bishops held as chief magistrates of their city, protecting fathers of their people, interposing between subject and sovereign.

Silence of  
the German  
chroniclers  
respecting  
Bruno's in-  
terference  
in French  
affairs.

The German Chroniclers, with one exception, seemed to have agreed to observe a careful reticence as to any circumstances which might affect Bruno's reputation. The notice of the share he took in the unnatural conspiracy against Otho was probably disclosed by accidental want of caution. They also, for some less obvious reason, have ignored his connexion with France. The important part which Bruno acted in securing Lothaire's accession is known to us only through the French authorities. With respect to Bruno's dealing with Richard, had the device succeeded, the event would perhaps have been recorded no less carefully and clearly, than the happy consummation of the plot against the Danish spouse of Gisella.

§ 35. None so mortified by Richard's escape as the participator in the plot,—possibly its originator,—Thibaut. He immediately recom-

menced his dealings with ready Lothaire, and readier Gerberga, persevering in the object of inducing them to crush the rebellious enemy. Could they bear that the red-headed Pirate should put all France to shame? He insisted upon the necessity of bringing Normandy into subjection.—*Ogni medaglia ha il suo rovescio*.—Perhaps if Thibaut of Chartres could plead his own cause, we might have been persuaded to moderate our opinions of his failings. Vying with Arnoul in length of life, the epithet of *Le Tricheur* was partly supplanted by the more kindly appellation of *Le Vieux*; and it is curious to observe that no period of history exhibited more signal instances of longevity in Royal and Princely families than the close of the tenth century. Without doubt, also, there were many who accepted Thibaut in the character of a useful and patriotic member of the state, by reason of his steady enmity against the Normans: and Arnoul being removed, first transiently, and afterwards permanently, from the field of action, Thibaut came forward as the Protector of the Carlovingian Commonwealth against the astuteness or violence of the Pagans.

The Paschal festival called the nobles to Laôn, and the festive meeting was followed by a remarkable *Cour Plenière*,—a *Placitum Regale*, at antient Soissons. The locality must be marked. This Merovingian Capital constituted the chief City in the Vermandois; and rare was it for the King of France to convene such an assembly

954—987  
954—955

Thibaut of  
Chartres,—  
his character.

961—  
Convention  
of the nobles  
at Soissons.

954—987

980—982

beyond the narrow circuit of his own Crown-land. Soissons, the place now selected, would attract a fuller appearance of his Nobles and Allies.

Lothaire had prepared for action with his usual vigour.—Accompanied by Gerberga, he had been traversing his dominions, and thus gained support. Richard's chief enemies thronged at Soissons—a Military Muster as well as a Great Council,—or perhaps we should term it a Military Council, such as appears not unfrequently in antient English history. No Prelates are noticed as having concurred, but the issue reveals that the question was debated whether it would be more expedient to declare open war against Richard, or again try to secure him by deceit;—and the latter course was adopted.

Widely spread were Richard's friends. Had not many a knight in Lothaire's service tasted the bounty of the Norman Duke?—None of the movements of the French were unknown to him. Secretly, suddenly, assembling his troops, he crossed the country, and attacked Soissons, seeking to effect the dispersion of the Convention. But the royal forces were equally on the alert: and Richard, beat off with considerable loss, retreated to Rouen. Norman and French historians are always far apart from each other. Fluent Dudo and his Norman successors avoid making the slightest allusion to Richard's bold but bootless enterprise; whilst faithful Frodoardus and discreet Richerius

Richard  
attacks  
Soissons  
and fails.

are consistently silent respecting the whole series of transactions which we are now reviewing.

951—957

960—962

§ 36. Richard's defeat encouraged Lothaire to assume a high position. A noble Ambassador appeared in the Palace of Rouen summoning Richard to perform homage.—Richard received the Envoy in his *Cour Pleniére*, surrounded by Prelates and Baronage. The proceedings of Lothaire's representative were energetic, and not uncourteous. Richard was reminded of the submissions which Sire and Grandsire had rendered to the Crown of France. To these expostulations, persuasions were conjoined. Would it be judicious to resist the King of France, and the power which the King could command? Considering the chances of war, might not even Richard be compelled to return to the country whence Rollo came, to old Denmark, beyond the sea? And something was thrown in concerning the machinations of Richard's enemies.

Lothaire's  
ambassy to  
Richard.

As to the arguments deduced from previous homages, Richard had a Plea in bar;—the release made by Louis on the banks of the Epte,—an act which terminated the question. Nevertheless, Richard was perplexed; his discomfiture before the walls of Soissons, might be the prelude of adverse fortune. Lothaire, professing to be earnestly desiring a compromise of disputes, proposed a conference.—Abandoning precedence, the King of France would meet Richard on his own Norman land, where the Duke might listen

Lothaire  
proposes a  
conference  
with Richard  
to be held  
within the  
Norman  
boundary.

954—987

960—962

to proposals leading to a thorough pacification.—  
 Smooth words, but false.—The success or failure  
 of the projected negotiations were items of  
 comparatively small importance in Lothaire's  
 calculations — matters almost indifferent. He  
 and Gerberga, and Thibaut, indeed all his chief  
 Allies had resolved to extinguish the rivalry  
 between France and Normandy by a shorter  
 process. They would rid themselves of the evil  
 fruit, by cutting down the evil tree: and the  
 trysting place was duly suggested by some skilful  
 observer, well acquainted with the country—  
 perhaps Thibaut himself—not less intelligently  
 chosen than the Isle of Picquigny, for the object  
 they all yearned to obtain.

Alterations  
 in the mari-  
 time and  
 littoral geo-  
 graphy of the  
 North Sea  
 and Channel.

In order that we may interpret the subse-  
 quent movements, we must open the map, and  
 direct our attention to the river whose name  
 furnishes the first article in every Geographical  
 dictionary. Twenty-one European streams, at the  
 very least, are severally designated as the "Aa."  
 Amongst these, the most important is that great  
 "Aa," which, during the last century, severed  
 France from the Austrian Netherlands, and still  
 continues a political boundary: the latter do-  
 mination, being replaced in our own day, by  
 the Kingdom of Belgium. Now, from that  
 same "Aa," unto the Seine, and even beyond  
 the Seine to the promontory of the Hogue,  
 we may observe how the Channel and North  
 Sea coasts are intersected by numerous streams

or streamlets, larger or smaller, which, fertilizing the soil, and ministering to the maritime interests of the land, are also more or less available as military defences. The general lines of course and outlet are not materially altered; yet manifold changes have taken place in the physical features of the chorography;—extensive tracts accumulated by alluvial deposits; here, the run widened; there, estuaries filled up and converted into lush pastures;—fresh waters commingled with the salt tide;—rivers so deepened by the up-rushing wave, that the tall oar worked by the fishermen's long arm, can no longer reach the bed; whilst, in others, so shallowed by the rising banks and shoals, that the bark cannot speed her way.

§ 37. The *Bresle*, the well-known river of Arques, severed Ponthieu from Normandy.—The defence of the island fortress by Rollo's genuine Northmen, evidences the availability of that frontier line. A stout defence could Richard have made on that border, had Lothaire there attempted hostilities.—Journeying on westward, we are next stayed by the *Yare*. Is it not interesting to find amongst the North-folk of East Anglia, the namesake of the Northman's stream?—Further, we arrive at the *Diupe*,—the *Dieppe*,—the *Deep-water*, which as my readers may recollect, or ought to recollect, first invited the erection of the now flourishing sea-port City. This same *Diupe* is formed by the confluence of the

954—957  
955—956

Rivers intersecting the littoral from the Bresle to the Seine.



954—987  
980—982

*Bethune*, and the *Eaulne*, the Celtic Allan water, where, for the present, we must stay, adverting however to the circumstance, that the same conformation of territory continues until we reach another Celtic stream, the *Durdan*, and thus onward till we meet the mouth of the Seine.

Place of  
conference  
appointed by  
Lothaire on  
the banks of  
the Eaulne.

During the earlier mediæval period, however, the Bethune had not acquired its present name, being considered emphatically the *Deep* water; and Lothaire had fixed his place of conference on the borders of the Eaulne, so that Richard might be led to take his station on the inland Delta, with the *Deep-water* in his rear.—This position would not be advantageous. Richard was fully aware, that, if possible, Lothaire would endeavour to circumvent him. Yet such was his disturbed state of mind that, knowing his danger, he could not determine to shun it. He had however employed all due precautions. The country folk had armed themselves, all ready for another Maromme *mêlée*, and he advanced with a powerful body—well picked—well chosen;—including the proudest combatants of Armorica and Normandy. All ardent for enterprise, and amongst them none more daring than Gautier-le-Veneur,—none more strenuous in fight, and Richard's companion day by day.

Lothaire advances with Baldwin, Geoffrey and Thibaut.

§ 38. With Lothaire marched proudly the three bad neighbours, Baldwin of Flanders—Geoffrey of Anjou—and, above all, Thibaut. Could you have asked them the question, there

was not one who would have shrunk from the <sup>954-957</sup>  
 "yea," that whether by foul means or fair, their <sup>950-953</sup>  
 delight would have been to send Richard to  
 Valhalla—though they would have called that  
 dark region by a different name.—In the same  
 manner as we now colloquially compute military  
 strength by sabres and bayonets, it was said that  
 the army of Lothaire numbered seven thousand  
 helmets and three thousand gilded shields. All  
 these were gathering beyond the Eaulne, whilst  
 Richard proceeded confidently and cheerily.

Reports however, somewhat alarming, were <sup>Scouts sent  
out by  
Richard.</sup>  
 spreading concerning the French forces, and  
 Richard sent forth three Espials to ascertain the  
 facts. How and in what guise was Lothaire  
 advancing? They separated, searching the coun-  
 try; and the first Scout crept so close as to ob-  
 serve the preparations of the French. No one  
 who saw them could now doubt but that as  
 enemies they were to be deemed. Lothaire was  
 holding a Council of war with the three *Mal-  
voisins*, preparing for the battle. Thibaut the  
 Tricheur in full armour, Geoffrey Grisgonnelle,  
 his grey gown doffed, and he, shining in rattling  
 steel,—young Baldwin armed and yearning for  
 the fight; all, glowing with eagerness to surprise  
 and exterminate the foe.

The sky was bright and the breeze refreshing, <sup>Richard  
prepares for  
a banquet on  
the grass.</sup>  
 the grass tender and green, the copsewood-shade  
 inviting, the cloth spread upon the turf, and  
 Richard improved the time for morning carousal.

954—987

960—982

Well loaded were the sumpters with creature-comforts, and Duke and Damoiseaux having sat down, a hundred Valets were ministering to the party.

Richard and his Companions were beginning to enjoy their banquet, when, in scurried the first Scout, shouting as he drew nigh, proclaiming how imminent was the danger.—Richard would not stir; he would complete his meal, and desired his Seneschal to bring another course, merrily telling his merry men that when they had eaten enough and drank enough, then should the banner be raised, and all go forward.

Intelligence  
brought of  
the approach  
of the  
French.

More cates were dished, more cyder brought, but there was much between the cup and the lip; for then galloped up the second Scout, screaming that the French were marching; and, close upon his heels the last Scout of the three. Such haste had the good Knight made, speeding as for life or death, that the spikes of his spurs were blooded up to his heels, so deep had he scored into his swift horse's flanks. The French were charging! Alas for the banquet!—cates and cyder left on the grass, and all prepared for the deadly stour.

The crossing  
of the  
Eaulne.

Our Narrators are as it were entangled amongst the rivers, and the tales they tell are perplexed and confused. But when was any account of any battle completely clear? We can discern that Lothaire himself had not yet crossed the Eaulne. Richard immediately hastened his march towards the ford, and there he took his stand.

He, the Preux, the bold one, followed by the flower of Normandy, preparing for the worst. But Lothaire was very vigilant. A French detachment crossed the ford, and, at their head, a single Knight, panoplied like the son of an Emperor. First and foremost did Richard assail the enemy. The French Knight, confidently expecting the attack, charged the Duke with more courage than good fortune.—He fell transfixed by the Norman lance, and his followers were cut down by the Normans.

But Lothaire was pushing forwards furiously. Seven hundred banners did he lead to the strife. To await their assault would have been a desperate venture. The keen-toned cornet sounded the retreat ; and the retreat ensued. Richard and his troops fell back upon the Deep Water, where he was supported by the rural levies, glowing the opportunity of defending their Sovereign and their honour. Geoffrey of Anjou had however partly anticipated him, occupying the vicinity. And now came up the Royal squadron. Desperate was the battle waged in the Dieppe water :—knights struck down, and struggling in the stream,—sinking into the pits of the river bed,—mixing their blood with the waves.—Many a hard blow hit ;—horses plunging in the wet gravel, or slithering and sliding on the silt and the slimy margins. Thrice did Richard raise the Norman war-cry “ *Diex aie !* ” his own folks joining him, whilst (as the excited Trouveur tells)

954—987.  
980—982

The Normans fall back on the Dieppe water.

The battle of the fords.

954—997

990—992

all the slogans attributed to the various provincial nationalities were resounding.—“*Mon joie !*” cried the Frenchman :—“*Arras !*” the Fleming :—“*Valie !*” the Angevin ;—and Thibaut himself, shouting out “*Passe avant et Chartres !*” Face to face, the two Sovereigns observed each other ; and, whenever Lothaire saw Richard lift up the sword, did not his heart, as the Normans tell us, die within him ? Lothaire was actually thrown off his horse, though not by Richard, but, unhurt, he speedily regained his seat and resumed the contest. Richard fought desperately, and Thibaut could distinguish the young Duke’s clear voice rising amidst the turmoil, vituperating him as a miscreant and a traitor.

Gautier-le-Veneur.

But who so prominent in the group as Gautier-le-Veneur ? All the interest of the battle seemed at one juncture to be concentrated upon the Huntsman, as though he had been the sole object of the conflict. Dragged off his horse—seized by the enemy—rescued and remounted by the ready Duke on the best he had—perhaps his own charger ;—and now, again for the battle.—But the strength of the French was wasting. Three hundred horses lost ;—black, dappled and grey. Lothaire was distracted ; his movement to the Fords, though judiciously planned, had become most inopportune ; he had not calculated the mischances and circumstances of the amphibious fight, the dashings and the splashings, the stumblings and the risings. And when the Trouveur chaunted the “*geste*,” at Woodstock or West-

Lothaire's exceeding vexation.

minster, how delighted were the attentive listeners when they heard the familiarly expected verses, describing Lothaire's yellow face, permeated by spite and malice, becoming ten times uglier. How he tore his own banner all to rags and tatters, and flung away his sword, raging and raving as if he were crazy.

Lothaire abandoned the battle-scene, the flood and the field, with the utmost speed: and Richard, gleefully rejoicing, exclaimed, when he saw the tails of the enemy's horses,—“Lothaire goes home; a thousand lances shall he have for his convoy!” Richard girt himself again for the fight. Another horse was brought him; his fresh and spirited Castilian steed. He donned his helmet, and prepared to start. All about him, nobles and friends, deemed him foolhardy,—blamed and rebuked him. Their words he would not hear, and had crossed his saddle when some clever courtier plucked at the reins, and led him off.—And now he returned exultingly to Rouen; not scath-free, but without having received a single wound.

Richard's  
triumphal  
return to  
Rouen.

If the Gascons were proverbially considered as vain boasters, the antient Normans were possessed by a kindred spirit. However influential Normandy was becoming, still we can scarcely believe what they tell us, that every part of Christendom, from Scandinavia to the Alps, and beyond the Alps, delighted in Lothaire's discomfiture;—East and West, North and South, re-echoing Richard's praises.

954—987

980—982

§. 39. But the home importance appertaining to the Battle of the Fords was assuredly very great. All were angered. Lothaire stung by his defeat. Richard affronted by the thwarted treachery. The French Nobles, generally troubled by the loss they had sustained, and the apprehension of further disasters.—Above all, Thibaut could not rest; and, for the third time, attempted to satisfy his ambition, and satiate his vengeance.

982—  
Thibaut  
excites  
Lothaire to  
assert his  
rights.

The older Thibaut grew, the more intensely did he become matured in enmity. State-craft, fluency of speech, energy, all encreased with age, and he continued unremittingly the provocations addressed to Richard's enemies. He reproached King Lothaire, roused his pride, excited his fears. Would he, contented to abide in disgrace, allow Richard's persistence in rebellion, holding the Norman Monarchy, without even rendering a formal homage? Was Lothaire worthy to be called King of France,—he who dared not assert his Kingdom's integrity?—Moreover, was it not probable that Richard, inviting his Danish kindred, would inflict sorer injuries upon France than even his grandsire Rollo?

And now Thibaut disclosed his schemes for Lothaire's advantage, and his own. Let Lothaire appear before Evreux, and Evreux would open her gates.—Win Evreux for me, and I will repay thee.—Evreux once won, he, Thibaut, would aid in prosecuting the warfare. Ere the approaching Pentecost all Normandy would be at Lothaire's

mercy, and Lothaire would regain all that his luckless grandsire Charles had lost. Joyed and overjoyed was Lothaire. He had fully learned to comport himself as King: and, issuing his precepts under seal, all the Lieges of France and Burgundy were convened to his *Cour Plenièr*e at Laôn. Lothaire, before the assembly, impeached Richard as a Felon; the Duke would neither obey him as a Liege Lord, nor answer him as a Liege Lord. He had summoned them to repair the wrongs of France: let them support their King and the rights of the Crown, and Normandy should be as had it been, scarce fifteen years since,—absolutely in their power.

954—987  
 980—982

Cour  
 plenièr  
 summoned  
 by Lothaire  
 at Laôn.

Ce qui à France doit servir  
 Ne li laisser issi tollir  
 Ramenez à ce les Normanz  
 Ou ils erent n'a pas quinze ans.

Commonplace arguments these,—trivial modes of persuasion,—yet valuable as testifying how appeals could be made to French national spirit, and French exertions stimulated by the enhancement of French national glory. The Nobles went entirely with their King. Lothaire took the command of the army, and, having summoned a large force of his own, he was joined by Thibaut. The opening of the war was singularly successful. A sudden assault from without, and the co-operation of disloyal Gilbert Machel, or Meschrel, from within, very speedily reduced Evreux, and the city was transferred

Evreux  
 reduced by  
 Lothaire and  
 Thibaut.



954—987  
960—982

into the possession of Thibaut. Imperfect as we know the means of intercommunication to have been in those times, it is often startling to find how each country was self-contained, and men unacquainted with the movements, whether pacific or hostile, of their near neighbours.

982—  
Richard  
invades the  
Pays Char-  
train.

Richard had not surmised any practical result from the *Cour Plenièrre* at Laôn, still less was he prepared to frustrate the expedition against Evreux. His elastic alacrity remedied the negligence. The Banner of Saint Michael raised, Normans and Bretons joined him by hundreds and thousands. Lothaire dared not face the defenders of their country, and retreated. Richard blew the counterblast. The Normans burst into Thibaut's dominions, extending themselves over the Pays Chartrain, mercilessly devastating the country, plundering and pillaging. No opposition made by the peasantry,—not even in self-defence;—dispersed, they were indiscriminately slaughtered. The active Normans were pursuing the chase for their own profit and gain: bebies of prisoners taken and bound, and more than two hundred thousand marks did they vaunt as the amount of ransom money and plunder.—Hilarious indeed was the grand settling day at Rouen, and Richard disbanded his troops, supposing that he had ended the war.

Thibaut  
retaliates by  
invading  
Normandy.

But now it was Thibaut's turn. Richard had shamed him, and he would shame Richard. The manner in which this warfare was conducted exhibits a singular contrast between the consis-

tent views of the parties, and their desultory modes of action. Richard, however, had now supplied all deficiencies. Seven hundred chosen Companions constituted the kernel of the garrison. A rumour had reached Richard that Thibaut was on his march; nay, he had entered Normandy, supported by the power of France. The rumour became a certainty, though the intelligence did not define the fulness of the danger.

Anticipating the season of enterprise, Richard had knighted a young warrior, his namesake, so young that he was fondly called Richardet—"little Richard."—And Richardet, clever and brave, was sent forward to ascertain the numbers and intentions of the enemy. The Chartrain army advanced rapidly, ruining the unprotected country in their progress, and were drawing very nigh to Rouen.

Richardet fell in with a hostile party. He was surrounded and handled so roughly that though lance and sword delivered him from the assailants, it was with difficulty that he escaped alive. However, he did escape; and when he came before Richard, the battered helmet, the broken sword, and the blood clotted on his visage told the story. But Thibaut's movements were masterly; and whilst Richardet was informing Richard of his adventure, the Chartrain forces, burning and destroying as they pressed onwards, had actually entered Hermondeville, nay, had come quite close up to the bridge of Rouen.

984—987  
980—982

Rapid advance of the Chartrain troops, who encamp at Hermondeville, opposite Rouen.

954—967

960—962

Hermondeville, afterwards the great Faubourg of Saint Sever, now studded with the tall steaming shafts which capitalize the land and stain the sky, was then a straggling hamlet; the scanty dwellings planted here and there amongst pastures, woodlands, and marshes. No defence could be made, and the Chartrains encamped in a position which gave them a commanding station upon the river bank, covering also a considerable breadth of country.

Site of  
Thibaut's  
Camp known  
by continued  
tradition.

So forcible was the impression made by this invasion upon the Normans, that the particulars of the exact locality occupied by the enemy, have been marked out to this day by continued tradition. But the ruins of the consecrated structures erected in subsequent ages upon the site, have been buried so deeply, or eradicated so thoroughly, that the diligent archæological topographer alone, can designate or dream, where they once arose, generations of buildings, so to speak, having risen and fallen upon the ground.

Within the memory of some very few survivors who remember the Cap of liberty, the Monks of famous Bonnes-nouvelles, founded by the Conqueror's bounty, and boasting the more than dubious tomb of the Empress Maude, could point out to their visitors, how and where the invaders had pitched their tents on the site of the monastery, and the adjoining grounds.

At the commencement of the present century the lofty walls surrounding the Convent and vast gardens of the Emmurés, the first recluses ever

beheld at Rouen, were still standing, and the Nuns might beguile their winter evenings by relating to the novices how in the old time Thibaut's savage soldiery had revelled within the secluded precinct, and throughout the wide extent of their Barony.

The small craftsmen, and mean burgesses, inhabiting the long-shore street, grotesquely known by the appellation of "Claque-dent," or "Chatter-grinders," fully knew that their line of timbered dwellings marked out a portion of the river frontage occupied by Thibaut's camp. Whilst "le Clos des Gallées," a Wharf upon the Seine, adjoining the bridge head, and commanding it, constituted the Leaguer's termination.

Such was the very advantageous position selected by strategic Thibaut. No impediment could be offered against his Troops, and their immediate proceedings evidenced their proud determination. They came as if they intended to colonise. In the course of the one day, they raised their bivouacs, pitched their tents and pavilions, put up their camp kitchens, cooked their food, and, when evening drew on, they were ready to settle for the night with entire comfort. And yet, whilst the business of the encampment was in progress, they had not desisted from active war, for their parties foraging and ranging, were ravaging the country and firing more and more cottages and barns.

A sad humiliation this for Richard, that the Enemy should thus be bearding him in his own

964—987  
960—982

Speed and  
cleverness of  
the Chartrain  
encampment.

954—987

960—982

Richard's  
preparations  
for offensive  
operations.

land. But the greater the insult, the more glorious must be the compensation. Nor was he altogether taken by surprise. Rouen was always in defensible condition; the strong walls and towers in good repair, the look-outs garnished, and the deep crenellations planked and pallisaded. Resolved to act upon the offensive, he made full show as though he was providing only for defence:—the beacons were flickering and flaring upon the ramparts, the Warders watching on the topmost turrets, and the Sentinels walking their constant rounds, evincing their vigilance by the incessant blasts of their bugles. — The seven hundred Knights, Richard's boon companions in the Hall, and his Capital's doughty defenders, all ready. — Abundance of craft in the pool. — Richard animating the whole meisené, addressing his men, explaining his scheme for delivering themselves from their foes. Sure might they be that the enemy would believe themselves secure, and that a sharp attack that very night would catch them off their guard. Close must be the conflict,—cut,—thrust,—stab,—let the blood spurt out after every blow, but the day of battle must commence before the dawn.—A prayer is offered up by Richard in the Cathedral, his rich mantle cast as an offering upon the altar; and then, the embarkation.

The Norman  
troops  
crossing the  
Seine.

Silently they muster on the river bank; skiff, boat, barge, and galley, put in requisition. Throughout the night the troops were crossing the water.—A brilliant night.—The splendid full moon

reflected in each ripple on the broad flowing tidal stream. But the rich moonlight was saddened by the incendiary glare,—the ruins of Hermondeville and the villages far and near, smouldering and blazing; a scene heightening Richard's anger and desire of revenge.

954—957  
950—952

Rightly had Richard speculated upon the over-weening confidence which possessed the invaders. At the conclusion of their diligent encampment day, they had retired early to rest; but when they were wrapped in their soundest sleep, just before the day was breaking, the shrill cornets were pealing, the three divisions of the Normans, shouting "*Diez aie!*" burst upon the Camp, and the desperate fray commenced.

Such was the present inequality between the contending parties, that, though the Normans gained their advantage by due diligence, and the Chartrains lost their chance by their own neglect, the dealings of the assailants appeared almost unfair. Thibaut's men were routed whilst they were rising, or before. This one found his death-bed in his heather-bed, that one, cloven down whilst buckling his armour. The battle of Hermondeville could hardly be called a fight; it was a flight and a massacre. How triumphantly do the Norman Trouveurs describe the destruction of the enemy: the Norman cavalry galloping about, hoof-crushing the fallen, the wounded, the dying, the corpses, Richard loudly inspiring them by his outcry, and they encouraging themselves by cheering Richard. Thibaut tried to rally his

Total rout of  
the Char-  
train army.

954—987  
980—992

The Count  
runs away.

men,\*—could not,—and speeded away, and escaping simply by his horse's swiftness, he directed his course to Chartres, ignorant of the sad reception there awaiting him. At that very hour, Thibaut's noble city, the inhabitants knowing nothing of the disasters then consummating on the banks of the Seine, was resounding with cries of terror and confusion, whilst the bells were slowly tolling, urging the bidding prayer for the soul of the one departing.

Few of Thibaut's troops accompanied him, more fled in his footsteps helter-skelter, but a greater number tried to save themselves by skulking in the woods and swamps. These mostly became the victims of their own terrors. Out poured the Burgesses from Rouen, wielding gisarme and battle-axe; the peasantry followed with club and scythe. Very many prisoners were taken, and magnificent was the booty grabbed by the Burghers and Clowns stripping the bloody carcasses. Six hundred and forty were counted on the field. Richard employed the day in exploring Hermondeville and the vicinities, which afforded only an insecure shelter to the fugitives. But his object was a work of mercy. He sought out all the living. Hurt and wounded were carefully conveyed in litters to Rouen, whilst to the dead he gave a Christian burial.

Richard's  
humility  
towards the  
vanquished.

Thibaut's  
accumulated  
misfortunes.

As for Thibaut, mournful was his arrival at Chartres. Little was Thibaut aware, when fleeing from the battle field, that the day was a day

of four-fold calamity.—He, disgraced—his troops slaughtered—Chartres devastated by a dreadful conflagration, his noble palace a smoking ruin,—but, deepest grief of all, his son and namesake a corpse; for on that very day had the young Thibaut died.

‡ 40. Splendid successes these for Richard, yet, inconclusive. The alliance formed against the Pirate continued undissolved, nay, it should seem that the reverses of the Confederates stimulated them to fiercer hostility. The Normans though for the most part assimilating themselves in language, manners, and religion to the French,—under which term we may include all the populations between Alps and Atlantic, Mediterranean and North Sea, Bretons only excepted,—still laboured under social excommunication. All enchorial Frenchmen, without distinction of race, hated the Danish lineage, considered them as intruding barbarians, and yearned to expel the black-blooded aliens from the land.

Disasters had neither mitigated Thibaut's enmity nor stayed his activity. We are almost compelled to respect him for his strenuousness and consistency in wrong. Grisgonnelle was seeking to enlarge his borders. Arnoul-le-Jeune inherited the domains, as well as the sentiments of father and grandfather. Lothaire contributed his contingent, and all, uniting their forces, invaded Normandy. A succession of expeditions now ensued. Grisgonnelle ravaged the Passoiz.—The Manceaux, and the other confederates,

954—987  
990—992

Perseverance  
of the Allies  
notwith-  
standing  
their  
reverses.



954—987

980—982

The three  
bad neigh-  
bours annoy  
the Norman  
Dominions.

Steadiness of  
the Bretons  
and Normans

taking their share, spoiled and despoiled Domfront and Belesme, and all as far as Rotrou.—The Count of Maine pestered Alençon and the Corbonnois, and up into the Lieuvain. The Normans were hearty in their defence, but the multiplicity of the points attacked by the French rendered it impracticable for Richard to make any decisive movement. The men of Exmes and Eu guarded their country against the Count of Perche. The men of the Avranchin did their duty, so also those of the Pays-de-Caux. The Bretons stood steadily by Richard.

Very peculiarly, however, did Richard rely on the Bessin and the Cotentin. Richard's early training at Bayeux had given him a personal hold upon that country, abounding more than any other portion of his dominions with families of pure Scandinavian blood: and, glancing at a gayer theme, we may suppose that in this region he made acquaintance with that lovely Damsel of Danish race, who became the Ancestress of the future Dynasty.

Over and above his own subjects, Richard mustered a considerable number of soldiers—soldiers in the modern or strict sense of the word. Brabanters, Hainaulters, Flemings, happy to receive their solde or pay from any hand; and in this case, from their own liege lord's enemy. They belonged to the people who afterwards assisted Richard's great grandson in effecting the Conquest of England, and even more extensively co-operated with the Scoto-Saxon Kings in the reduction of the regions north of the Tay.

Yet, notwithstanding these aids, and amidst all his prosperity, the conduct of Richard discloses the important fact which his biographers carefully conceal, that he deemed himself in great peril. On the face of the current affairs we can discover only one patent reason, justifying the anxieties thus troubling him, that is to say, the detention of Chartres, which still continued in Thibaut's power. But his own language reveals the deeply-seated root of his misgivings. He knew the truth.—Richard the child, Richard the youth, Richard the man, like the rest of his lineage, was extruded from the sphere of French civilization; always under society's outlawry,—a Coloured man on the Broadway,—an Irish Papist at Bandon during the full orange blaze of the "Glorious and Immortal Memory,"—and, to his dying day, spoken of and written about only as "*Dux Piratarum*," Chief of the Pirates.—He was perfectly cognizant of the universally accepted doctrine that, when open weapons could not prevail against the Dane, it was lawful to dig any pit into which the Wolf could fall.

954—967  
960—962  
Richard, nevertheless, feels himself to be in danger.

Under such a weight of trouble, the recollection of the fraud attempted against Richard by Archbishop Bruno justified him in assuming that the Germans participated in the feelings of the French. The fickle Celtic tribes might turn against him any day. The seeming firm land might in fact be quicksand, and except the Capetian party, and they doubtfully, there was not a soul who could really be trusted by the Chief of the Pirates. Richard had persevered in keeping

954—987

980—982

Richard culti-  
vates the  
friendship of  
the Danes.

up friendly relations with his kindred in the pristine home of Gorm and Rollo. To them, thanks to his rearing, he was still as a fellow-countryman.—The stout ruddy Danish damsel he could compliment not less intelligibly than if he had joined her in the Yule-dance. When a Danish keel came up to Rouen, Richard could greet the rough Butsekerl in his native speech, shake his hand, and ask whether “cow-smeer” sold well in the London Southwark, and how things were going on in the Baltic Islands. And, if the vessel landed her cargo, Richard, in due terms of trade, could offer good cheap for the bargain. His heart turned northwards. Harassed and depressed, he determined again to invoke the assistance of that Monarch to whom in his early days he had been indebted for the preservation of his dominions, perhaps also of his life.

Harold  
Blaaland's  
prosperity.

Supreme, or Over-King of the North, Harold Blaaland was now ruling most prosperously. Notwithstanding the multitudes which had gone forth to England and to Ireland, and to France and to Flanders, expatriated or slain, colonising or ravaging, mouldering beneath the turf, or cultivating the soil, Denmark still teemed with population. The riches and spoils acquired by the Danes during their inroads, instead of enervating their vigour, had encreased their martial efficacy. No people in Christendom better equipped with helm and hauberk, sword and shield:—and a first-rate navy. In addition to his own eager swarming subjects, crowds of

adventurers had joined Harold—Norwegians, <sup>954—987</sup>  
 Irish Danes, or Oost-men,—and those whom the <sup>960—962</sup>  
 Chroniclers designate as *Alans*, probably some <sup>Opulence and Population of Denmark.</sup>  
 of the Slavo-vendic populations. Was Harold a  
 Christian? He is claimed as such. The fact  
 must be considered as doubtful: Harold certainly  
 abstained from manifesting that hostility to the  
 Gospel which had characterized his predecessors,  
 but we do not possess any proof of his perversion  
 or conversion. Lukewarm, and taking matters  
 easily, the Missionary cause obtained no advan-  
 tage either from Harold's persecution or his fa-  
 vour, nor did he discourage the old-faith folk, who  
 adhered to Odin. Consequently the Heathens  
 were so numerous amongst the Danes, that the  
 French still considered them generally as Idola-  
 ters.—Heathens or Idolaters they might be, but  
 any such objection vanished under Richard's  
 present need. Help must be sought where help  
 could be found, and what help more trustworthy  
 than his own antient people.

Forthwith he despatched his messengers to his  
 dependable friend Harold Blaataud. He besought <sup>Richard in-  
 vokes the aid  
 of Harold  
 Blaataud.</sup>  
 Harold as his kinsman, complained of his wrongs,  
 praying him to abate the pride of France. Joy-  
 fully did Harold receive the Ambassadors, and  
 accept their message. High spirited, full armed,  
 and eager for the battle, the best and choicest of <sup>Harold as-  
 sists—fleet  
 fitted out, &c.</sup>  
 Harold's warriors mustered in the service. The  
 Keels were fitted out, and amply manned, and,

954—987

990—992

amongst the many Commanders, incidental circumstances enable us to distinguish three :—Guthrun, perhaps the brother of Harold Graafell, —Askman, whose name emphatically designates him as the Pirate,—and Eyvind Screya. The fleet sailed from the Baltic during the fine spring season : their navigation was prosperous, and they entered the familiar Seine.

Jeu-fosse, or the Fossa Givoldi, occupied by the Danes in the reign of Charles-le-Chauve (Vol. I. p. 446.) Richard selects this locality as the station of Harold's forces.

§ 41. It will be recollected that when Sidroc, the Irish Dane, accompanied by Irish Guthrun, the present Guthrun's name-sake and precursor, made their grand invasion, they established themselves at "Jeu-fosse" or "Givoldi-fossa," a most advantageous locality, which they fortified and rendered their head quarters: and Richard, having settled his own plan of operations, directed that Harold's land and sea-forces should there unite with him. No difficulty had the descendants of the earlier ravagers in reaching their destination. No need had they of chart or map, or compass in the binnacle. Experience and tradition concurred in guiding them. All the soundings from the Baltic to Paris, and far beyond Paris were known to them,—all the deeps and all the shoals, and every bight and every bend. Cheerfully was the "Heysaa" shouted by the Danes as they pulled up the stream. Intense was the panic of the French, the Pagans again covering the inland waters.

The Danes were the Cossacks of mediæval France, loathed as filthy barbarians, and dreaded for their ferocity. Would not all the horrors of

which the remembrance was perpetuated by the <sup>954-987</sup>  
 tales repeated round every hearth, recur again, <sup>980-982</sup>  
 the branches of the trees bearing the ghastly crop  
 of swinging corpses.

More than an hundred summers and an hundred winters had rolled round, since Sidroc and Godfrey first raised the Raven standard at the Fossa Givoldi. But the lofty ramparts and the precipitous dykes were ready to shelter the great-grand-children of the earlier devourers. Well chosen, and well re-chosen was this position, for fixing the Danes in the very heart of Northern France, offering them the most available means for defending themselves, and, at the same time annoying the surrounding country. To the East the station was protected by the Seine, and on the West by the Eure, for the streams of Seine and Eure, converging at Pont de l'Arche, form a species of peninsula, in which Jeu-fosse is included. Yet we must speak cautiously. The topography of this spot has been carefully investigated by those unparalleled archæologists, the French academicians; and, it should seem from their researches, that many channels have been filled up, and the face of the country otherwise changed.

Whilst the Danes were advancing, Richard, heading his Norman and Breton cavalry, marched concurrently to meet them and greet them: and, in the army's train, good store of provisions followed, such as would encourage his guests.

Richard  
 marches to  
 meet the  
 Danes at  
 the Fossa  
 Givoldi.

954—987  
 —————  
 960—982
 
 Plenty of fish, (without doubt salted,) wine and venison, and when and as soon as the Keels had anchored, Richard and his allies held a Council of war. The visions of misery which had haunted the French were speedily realized and amply fulfilled. Jeu-fosse, the key of the Danish operations, was strengthened, and thence they sallied, desolating all around with fire and flame. As heavily fell the scourge on the enemy as the Nor-  

 Devastations  
 committed  
 by the Danes.
 
 man heart could wish, or the Danish eye could see. Upland and Townland equally devastated. Chartres alone was spared. The inhabitants concealed themselves in the woods and the wilds, or fled. Cultivation ceased. For the purpose of starving out the inhabitants, all the stores of provisions which the Invaders could not consume they destroyed. The Danes staved the casks, and burnt the corn; an audacious dealing with the gifts of God, condemned even by man's natural conscience, and confessed as a sacrilege by Infidel and Pagan.

Nevertheless, the Danes proceeded methodically. They wasted, but they wanted not: fierce warriors, they were also merchant pirates; wild Buccaneers, yet prudent and provident. If abroad they scattered, they nevertheless hoarded for their own land. Their booty, such articles of value as they seized, rich robes and burly garments, cups and flagons of gold or silver, they warehoused at  

 They estab-  
 lish a trading  
 store.
 
 Jeu-fosse. The antient Camp became an emporium to which the Normans and Bretons resorted and drove their bargains; and at Jeu-fosse also the barbarians detained many a douce damsel and

uncomplaining matron whom they had captured or carried off during their forays.

954—987  
960—982

Their inroads extended far to the west. Grignonelle had full reason to repent his attacks upon Richard, which conducted the Northman into Maine and Anjou. Well might he deplore the day when he provoked the enemy. But Thibaut's dominions suffered most severely. Herbert Eveillechien would have lost his occupation there. So great was the desolation, that, as men said with doleful pleasantry, not a dog was left to bark in the Pays Chartrain.

§ 42. Upwards of twelve months did the fury of the Danish desolation continue raging. The countries thus infested, became completely disorganized. Such was the panic, that the whole of France was considered as lost;—those vile Northmen will subdue our whole realm even to the Alpine borders!

The discontent excited in France exaggerated the terror. Utterly despairing of finding the means of resistance, the French cast the whole blame upon Lothaire. The Prelates assembled in council in Melun. Thibaut appeared before them, representing himself as a martyr to his principles. Was it not by his fidelity to France, and to the King of France, that he had drawn down upon himself the Norman vengeance. It was resolved by the Synod, that an appeal should be made to Richard's clemency.—Another Convention was held at Laôn, Prelates and Nobles

Panic amongst the French.

Great Councils held by Lothaire at Melun and at Laôn.



954—987 joining. The Bishops took the lead; Lothaire  
 960—962 was compelled again to listen to their reproaches.  
 Negotiations proposed. The proposition for negotiations was entertained  
 as advisable, and Wolfaldus, recently Abbot of  
 Fleury, but now Bishop of Chartres,—firm and  
 wise,—was requested to undertake the task of  
 mediation.

Wolfaldus,  
 Bishop of  
 Chartres,  
 accepts the  
 office of  
 Mediator.

Wolfaldus, accepting the office, warily despatched a Monk to feel the way. It is probable that this same Monk belonged to the Monastery of Saint Peter at Chartres, a House specially patronized by the Norman Dukes; if so, he, an individual belonging to a friendly community, was therefore more likely to be kindly received. From the brief report, it is difficult to ascertain whether, when the clever tonsured Nuncio appeared before Richard, he addressed the Duke in dread, or in drollery. A proper escort was requested as a preliminary favour, lest the Bishop should be devoured by Richard's "wolves" and "devils;" and Richard, smilingly assented, promising that due precaution should be adopted for protecting such a good morsel as the Bishop. Wolfaldus, when he arrived at Rouen, spoke sternly and solemnly, rebuking Richard for his treason against the whole Christian Commonwealth, by inviting the Pagans to pester the land, and he earnestly supplicated Richard to arrest the torrent of evil.

Recrimination is not always an illogical mode of defence. Richard could perorate by

recapitulating his own personal history, from <sup>954—987</sup>  
 the days when he, a boy, beguiled by the <sup>990—992</sup>  
 artifices of Louis d'Outremer, had been imprisoned in the dungeon of Laôn. He vehemently burst out into complaints of the treachery and treason which had been continually employed against him. Archbishop Bruno—shame to his calling—plotting against Richard's life:—Thibaut never ceasing his devices:—Lothaire's faithless proffers, which had decoyed him to the ambuscade of the Eaulne; and now, could not Richard most truly assert, that Thibaut, insulting him up to the very walls of Rouen, had planned Normandy's complete partition and subjugation?

As befitted a loyal subject, Wolfaldus avoided concurring in any censure passed upon his own Sovereign, but insisted upon the crime which Richard had committed by inviting the Danes, and thus renewing the miseries of the Kingdom. Richard began to relax: his natural disposition inclined him peace-ward. Could he avoid feeling that he had contracted a most perilous alliance? He proposed a conference with Lothaire, and the French Prelates and Nobles. Let them meet him amicably in the genial month of May, and he would endeavour to mollify the Pagans. Lothaire concurred in the proposition. The Assembly was convened at Laôn. No Thibaut repaired thither. Some cause of distrust had arisen, and the jailor of Louis d'Outremer was excluded from King Lothaire's counsels. But the intended proceed-

Richard  
consents to  
treat.

Thibaut ex-  
cluded from  
the great  
Council at  
Laôn.

954—987

980—982

Thibaut  
treats inde-  
pendently  
with  
Richard.

ings could not be concealed; and Thibaut's anxiety betrays his apprehension, that he, so long an intriguer, might, at last, be sold by his own confederates.

He therefore began to treat independently. Again was the Monk employed as a messenger. The Heraldic office had not yet been instituted, but the clergy had a constant mission as peace-makers. Like the tabard in subsequent times, the rochet or the cowl, bespoke neutrality, and commanded respect from all. The Monk, speaking in Thibaut's name, addressed the Duke as the wielder of the Danish power.—The Count of Blois and Chartres, deceived by the French evil advice, but now repentant, was the sufferer; his country thoroughly ruined, nor could he be rescued otherwise than by Richard's aid. Thibaut would appear before him, restore Evreux, praying Richard, on his knees, to grant that he might be honoured by claiming Richard as his Lord and Suzerain. Could this exaggeration of humility be considered as sincere by Richard? But it did not offend him. Indeed, what mattered sincerity? No man of the world, when he receives the tribute of adulation, rings the money, or even grumbles, though a few base pieces be passed amongst the sterling. Richard began to be uneasy in the Danish hug, and longed to be free from their embraces, and therefore he closed at once with Thibaut's offer. Let Thibaut himself visit Rouen within three days, and proffer his submission.

Thibaut sought no guarantee, no pledge for safety. Gulping the humiliation, he repaired to Richard. Entering the City by night, he stole silently through the dark crooked streets, some few of Richard's confidential friends guiding and guarding him. Thibaut was tired out, Richard apprehensive, each equally eager for a reconciliation. When Thibaut entered the Presence chamber, they ran to meet each other, embraced and exchanged mutual kisses,—a ceremony, to both of them either a farce or a loathing.—It is however somewhat mournful to think of the “Vieux Chartrain” craving young Richard's clemency ; but he had brought himself to this pass. Not only did he engage forthwith to restore Evreux, city, and castle, but covenanted to hold all his dominions as a Benefice under Richard. Richard may, as his encomiasts tell us, have been vanquished by Thibaut's lowliness, but unquestionably far more by the concession ; and, on his part he promised a cordial peace. That self-same night did Thibaut set off for Chartres ; and the evacuation of Evreux by Thibaut's troops, and the consequent restoration of the betrayed City to the lawful owner, attested his sincerity.

§ 43. This weighty transaction concluded, now remained to Richard the equally important concern of completing his negotiations with his enemies the French, and the more difficult task of saving himself from the Danes, his dubious friends. Richard conducted the transaction characteristically, and in consistent conformity with the gay and gallant

954—987

980—982

Thibaut  
visits  
Richard  
secretly at  
Rouen.—A  
pacification  
concluded,  
and Evreux  
restored.

954—987

980—982

Joyous preparations made by Richard for the reception of the French.

character of the Norman Court:—a character which, since Guillaume Longue-épée's accession, had become traditional. Many of Richard's domestic circle must have fully recollected the merry hunting meet in the romantic "Forest of Lions;" when the courtship between Guillaume Tête-d'Etope and the Norman Emma, began so untowardly, and ended so happily. On the present occasion, the enjoyments of that sylvan festival were re-presented with increased brilliancy. By Richard's command, the trelliced lodges were raised, and the lengthened bowers prepared, astonishing the beholders equally by their size and their magnificence.—Green rushes and sweet smelling herbs overspread the hard-trodden, smooth, foot-worn, embrowned turf within: whilst the rich curtains dependent from the entwined branches composing the roof, imparted to the rustic edifice the courtly character of palatial splendour.

It was during the brightest season of the year; the Sun in Gemini, radiating upon Mother Earth from the culminating point of vernal loveliness, about to ripen into full summer scorch. As usual, or rather as inevitable, where Richard fixed his quarters, an avalanche of good cheer continued descending—man and beast equally cared for,—sacks of oats and trusses of provender,—wains laden with venison and pipes of good wine.

Lothaire absent, his Bishops, Counts, Knights,

and Nobles, appeared as petitioners before the Norman Duke, tendering their services, and entreating his mercy. Urgently did they beseech him on behalf of the French King, the French knighthood, and the French people, that Richard would restrain the ferocity of the Danes, and rescue France from their fangs. Lothaire was guiltless. Thibaut, the seducer, had been pardoned, and, as a perfect guarantee for peace, Lothaire and the Optimates of all France would by their hand-fast compact secure to Richard and his heirs the "Regnum Northmannicum" for ever.

954—967

960—962

The French implore Richard's intervention.

Fully willing was Richard,—but now came the pinch. How was Richard to free himself from his allies; now not merely needless, but dangerous?"—The mythic Richard-sans-peur, who figures in the Minstrel song or the Old wife's tale, is as reckless of bogles as Tam o'Shanter. But the flesh and blood Richard never displayed any extravagant venturesomeness when imminent peril was impending.

§ 44. Manifesting his accustomed graciousness equally inbred and acquired, Richard cordially accepted the proposition. Yet, even at this juncture he could not refrain from recapitulating his grievances, and recurring to the treasons which had been effected or contemplated against his liberty—authority—life. Bruno's machinations most of all.

Richard agrees under the pressure of danger from the Danes.

We feel that Richard was conscience stung.

954—987

980—982

In this last desperate scheme of invoking the Danes he had fully justified all the obloquy attached to the leader of the Pirates, and which, in the opinion of the French, dictated the course they had pursued, not repudiating the possibility, or rather the hope, of ending his life without judicial formality or war declared.

Richard  
meets the  
Danes, and  
proposes  
peace.

Richard, however, was now as much appalled as the French could be. There were the Danes, and they would not go. His management was skilful, and a friendly negotiation was commenced by him. He knew the Danish strength, and the Danish weakness;—the weight of the Danish battle-axe, and the fault of the Danish armour. Consorting, he addressed them conjointly and severally; Chieftains and subordinates, each had his compliment and good word. The old were venerable; the middle aged mighty; and the young so fine and brave. He had not thanks enow for the hearty friendship they had displayed in leaving their native country. But they had secured his safety, and vindicated their own renown. The King of the French, his Nobles, his people, now worn out by hostilities, earnestly sought quiet, and solicited peace. Richard therefore prayed that they would discuss the proposition, and grant at least a truce.—No, noble Duke, was the unanimous shout of the Northmen. Thou art gibing and jeering us. No.—Neither now nor ever.—No.—Not for a day! They would have their will. France was theirs, and the abandon-

They reject  
the propo-  
sition.

ment of their conquest would bring them to shame, Danishmen and Irishmen, Alans and Norskmen, before the whole Northern world. 954—967  
960—962

Go with us,—and we will win all France for ourselves, and for thee.—Keep aloof, and we shall win all France for ourselves, but not for thee.—Choose ! Richard, however, continued self-possessed. Loud was the outcry, but Richard knew that strength of lungs is not always accompanied by corresponding stoutness of heart.—Hostilities being stayed, let two days, he solicited, be allowed him for deliberation.—Two days were granted. Then two days more.—Four days ended, he then asked eight days further time, and at the end of the eight, he craved eight days again.

Much perplexed were the French Bishops and Nobles by this delay. But Richard was well acquainted with the Danish character. He had begun his manœuvres, for his qualifications as a Statesman would be unfairly appreciated, if we rejected the supposition that the proposal which he intended to make, had not been ventilated between him and the more leading men of the Danishry. Having fully matured his scheme, grounded upon his thorough knowledge of the Danish character, he explained his plans to the French. The Danish sword would slip easily into the sheath, if the full purse opened sufficiently wide. To deal successfully with the Danish Chieftains, he must select not only

Truce  
granted for  
further con-  
sideration.



954—957

960—962

those who would have most powers of persuasion, but also the most persuadable. The best tools are such as do your work, and their own.

Richard's  
secret meet-  
ing with the  
Danish  
Chiefs.

The meeting with the Danes was appointed to be held in a meadow, nigh the Seine, at that dead hour of the night when slumber falls the heaviest on the eyelids and the prescient cock heralds the unseen dawn. The full Moon was shining brightly, the breeze was lulled, and the green tints of the trees, and the green tint of the grass, were distinguishable from each other, perceptibly though obscurely, by the conjoint operation of eye and mind.

Richard had put himself in communication with the most useful men amongst the Danes, the proudest born, the boldest, and the wisest: but not many. It was essential for the success of the scheme, that the conference should be concealed from the vulgar; and the end was attained.

Richard  
preaches a  
Sermon to  
the Danes.

The proceedings are related amply. Richard opened the conference by delivering a "sermon":—a laborious and didactic exhortation, inviting them to accept Christianity. The Dean of Saint Quentin and the diligent Benoit give a full, and apparently faithful, report of the discourse, nor can any adequate arguments be raised against their general accuracy. But Master Wace, reciting his composition before Henry Plantagenet and Adelisa of Lorraine, and their gay Court, he expecting a handsome guerdon, and

also fully aware that the preachment and certain matters alluded to therein, would not be pleasant to ears polite, discreetly elides the Homily; and I shall follow his example. But the fact is, that such a proceeding was in conformity to the spirit of the age, and the address was probably composed by some of the French clergy, who sought to improve the opportunity,—say Wulfaldus.

A full assent was given by the Chieftains to Richard's promises, perhaps to his performances. The Danes, whom he had called to council, were few in number. A bracelet of gold was easily portable, and we should not be inclined to reject the supposition, that some earnest was given by Richard to their leaders pending the discussion.

The Chieftains assent to Richard's proposals.

The locality was far away from the Danish vessels, and the Danish camp. Richard's various arguments were plausibly and discreetly urged. —Were not the Danes as his own people after all?—He would suggest plans for their benefit; and those whom he consulted being really friends, or having been made so, closed with his offer. The conference was prolonged till the night had concluded, and the dew drops had begun to fall from the damp-heavy leaves.

§ 45. Stealthily they met; silently they departed; and conforming to Richard's directions, the docile Chieftains summoned a general muster of the Dansker men, which was held in a mead, adjoining the Seine. Richard appeared before

954—987

980—982

Richard  
again ad-  
dresses the  
Danish Host.

the Danish army and recommended a pacification; a proposal received, as before, by a universal burst of indignation from the multitude. They reproached Richard with his folly. No talk of peace, or concord with the Frenchmen, would they tolerate. The work they had begun they would conclude; never desisting until they had made the whole country their own. A schism immediately ensued. The Chieftains whom Richard had conciliated urged compliance with the Norman proposals. The Heathen section, for as such, we must designate the dissidents, were enraged. The dispute became more violent. Richard prudently avoided mixing himself up in the matter, whether by opposition or argument, and stole away, allowing the Danes to continue the dispute amongst themselves.

During three successive days did the discussions endure, each party vituperating the other; yet the debate was merely a hammering of words. Nothing could be gained by either side wasting its strength upon the other.

The Danes  
propose a  
compromise.

At last the dissidents proposed a very reasonable compromise. They had embarked in Richard's service, and at Richard's call; he invited them—he must pay them.—Money, or money's worth they must have.—If Richard would defray their expenses or suggest some other compensation, well and good; they would depart; if not, they would abide and compensate

themselves. Amongst the Danes, there were <sup>954-967</sup> many, who, converted to Christianity, accepted <sup>960-966</sup> the largesse, and settled in Normandy. Ample Benefices were granted to them by Richard, and they merged in the general population, yielding to that social influence, which, in the next generation obliterated all difference of origin.

§ 46. It was now needful to deal with the Heathenry. The ensuing passage becomes an incident of European interest, inasmuch as it throws much light on the subsequent extension of Norman power. The conquests of Apulia and Sicily, are inaugurated by the events to which the Jeu-fosse Armada gave rise. Richard possessed a large naval force, and he had no difficulty in supplying ships and stores sufficient for an expedition suggested by him to the Northmen: a bold adventure, which, relieving him from their alliance, promised great advantages to the greedy rovers.

Upon Richard's suggestion, a portion of the Danes agree to depart for Spain.

Harold had tacitly abandoned all claim to the Cotentin, yet, in a manner, the Pagus was a Danish dependency. The almost insular peninsula abounded with excellent Mariners: and the predecessors,—or, perhaps, we ought rather to say,—the progenitors, of Tancred de Hauteville and his companions,—were familiarized with the Atlantic navigation. Their “*Esturemenz*” (—as the word “Steersmen” was naturalized in the Anglo-Norman dialect—) were accustomed to frequent the coasts of Spain, and guided the fortune-

954—987

990—996

seekers, who were content to repay themselves for the service rendered to Richard, by the plunder of a distant nation, which these marauders anticipated would be defenceless against their power.

The Danish traditions concerning the achievements of Ogier-le-Danois, or "Holger-danske," in Charlemagne's days, have been adapted or adopted by imaginative Scandinavia in many a sweet Ballad and romantic Saga. But their own Historians, properly so called, are silent as to any more recent communications, whether hostile or pacific, with the trans-pyreneean realms, and we gain our knowledge of the present transactions wholly from Norman and Spanish sources. King Guthrun, or Guthred, figures on the deck as the most prominent personage in the armament. Three hundred keels composed the fleet, eighteen opulent Cities are said to have been destroyed by the Flibustees during their course,—and a considerable length of time elapsed ere they discerned the Galician hills.

Danish devastations on the shores of France under Guthrun.

This was a season of great national tribulation. Upon the death of Sancho el Gordo, the Kingdom of Leon had descended to his son Don Ramiro, then only five years of age. No regular regency had been appointed. The powers of government were, however, exercised by the renowned Fernan Gonzales, and, upon his death, Garci Fernandez became the successor of his Sire. The young Chieftain avoided the conflict. Sisnando, the martial Bishop of Compostella, was alone emboldened to attempt any adequate defensive

Invasion of Galicia under Guthrun.

measures, and, through his exertions, the Shrine of Saint Iago was surrounded by walls.—But the invaders stormed Compostella; the City, plundered; Sisnando, slain; and, during two years, did the descendants of the Visigoths groan under the Danish domination. The Danes, despising the Galicians, treated the country as their own: and, without doubt, the generous product of the Galician vines enhanced their enjoyments, and relaxed their discipline.

At last, the Gothic blood was up. Rallying under Count Gonzalo Sanchez, who assumed the command, the people universally took arms. It should seem that the Christians sustained a defeat in the field. The respective narratives given by the Norman and by the Spanish Chroniclers are very discordant. The boozing Danes, laden with booty, and exhilarated by victory and its accompaniments, were staggering and straggling in triumphant disorder towards their ships. Count Gonzalo suddenly attacked the enemy. His success was complete; Guthred, killed; the plunder, recovered; the captives, rescued; many of the Danish barks burnt, and neither Spain nor the Spaniards ever thereafter annoyed by this plague.

Danes  
defeated by  
Count  
Gonzalo.

France, equally fortunate, had seen the last of the Danes.—The encreasing splendour of the Anglo-Saxon Empire, incompletely veiling the rottenness of the Commonwealth, was attracting their avarice. Svend-Tveskieg, or Swein with the

954—967

960—966

Forked beard, the son of Harold Blaatand, was, ere long, to appear and obtain that supremacy which placed Canute upon the throne : and, henceforward, their energies were concentrated upon the British islands and England.

Peace  
concluded  
between  
Lothaire and  
the Normans.

§ 47. In the meanwhile, harmony was fully restored between Normandy and France. Soon after the departure of the Danes, the compact was concluded between the rival Potentates. Lothaire, —escorted by his Prelates and Nobles; Richard, —surrounded by his Warriors, they to be distinctly recognized in the next generation, as the founders of an hereditary nobility, —met on the shores of the Epte. Lothaire assured the “Regnum Northmannicum” to Richard and his descendants: covenanting also to maintain perpetual peace. This treaty was confirmed by reciprocal oaths : gifts, exchanged as further tokens of amity : and Richard returned cheerily to Rouen.

Death of  
Emma.

Not very long afterwards, the childless Emma departed. Upon her death-bed, she requested her brother the Capet to receive into his Palace those faithful companions and servants who had enjoyed her confidence and her love. Her worldly estate she divided, or more probably, had divided, amongst or between the Church and Poor. Affectionate, submissive, pious, we find no record of Emma's alms and donations. They were, we must suppose, mostly perfected during her lifetime.—Not even a sepulchral stone denoted her humble grave. All who survived her, willingly forgot her, and none more gladly than the courtly

historian Dudo. It is a plausible conjecture, that a voluntary separation had previously taken place between Emma and her husband, and that she had sought repose in a Monastery.

Richard, however, though he did not feign regard, treated her with respect; and the uninterrupted friendship between him and Hugh Capet proves that no offence had been taken at his notorious connubial infidelity. The marriage was a State-marriage, in the fullest meaning of the term, and was so viewed by all parties, from the day when the first proposals were made upon Hugh-le-Grand's overture by Bernard de Senlis and Bernard the Dane;—but rendered less uncomfortable than usual through Richard's kind temper and Emma's patient humility.

Richard, having fully released himself from all dependence upon France, he drew the closer to his Patron, the young Capet, priding himself upon the honourable subjection he was bound to render to his late Ward, now the magnificent Hugh, "Prince of the French and the Burgundians, the Bretons, and the Normans." Whatever superiorities were derived or claimed as subsisting between Normandy and France, after the accession of the Third Race, must be deduced from the relations contracted between Richard and Hugh-le-Grand. Richard clung closely to the Capetian cause; and, so efficient was his assistance, that he is reckoned as the chief amongst the partizans who established Hugh Capet on the throne.

954—987  
980—988

Continued  
cordiality  
between  
Richard and  
Hugh Capet.

Feudal re-  
lations be-  
tween  
Normandy  
and the  
Capets.



964—987

988—996

The last  
Carlovin-  
gians.

Louis d'Outremer, and Lothaire, and the last Louis of the line, and the Charles, in whose persons the Carlovingian Dynasty closes, availed themselves of all the powers and resources which remained to them: and, had their talent and courage been permitted to prosper, they might have rescued the falling Monarchy. Hoping against hope, they performed their duty, but their hope was not fulfilled.—Despised, because unfortunate,—for our harsh nature is gratified whenever we can attribute culpability to misfortune.

Is the alms ever dropped from the charitable hand, without some involuntary tendency to suppose that the suffering which the charitable heart rejoices in relieving, is either directly or indirectly the token or punishment of folly or of sin?—There is but One Benefactor, who gives without upbraiding. — The language of human mercy always tones into contempt. Commiseration renders the commiserated vile in our eyes. How intelligible and how logically consequential are the sentiments excited by the two words in apposition—“*pauvre misérable!*”

Accession of  
the Capets,  
an integral  
portion of  
Norman his-  
tory.

A complete fusion of interests ensued between the Courts of Rouen and Paris. The events which subverted the Carlovingian domination, must therefore be treated as integral portions of Norman history. It was from these early communications and dealings that the Norman Duchy acquired its peculiar character. Nor was it until Hugh Capet ascended the throne, that the ban of social exclusion pronounced against

the then fully converted Northern Pirates was removed. But the Law of Love is as inoperative between Nations as between individuals. Implacable was the mutual feud between Normandy and France, though the Normans were received, in all respects, as members of the Christian Commonwealth.

954—987  
990—996  
Normans not fully brought into the Christian Commonwealth, till the subversion of the Second Dynasty.

We must now approach the last act of the terrible Carlovingian tragedy, and witness its catastrophe: the implacable Nemesis avenging the pristine crimes—the crimes of glory: and according to the usual compensation of historical injustice, in the same proportion that Charlemagne is extravagantly extolled, even so are his descendants, in whom his proud lineage expires, equally unduly condemned.

§ 48. Vainly toil we, philosophising in Science, to evade confessing the Almighty's omnipotent universality in the material creation; substituting in our reasonings, nature's laws, for His ever-enduring active will.—He is the Source of all existence, celestial or terrestrial. He is not eternal and infinite, but Eternity and Infinity. He is the Fountain of all intelligences. He is the Foundation, the constant Efficient Cause of spirit and of matter, of body and of soul, and of all the qualities, forms, or substances which the senses or the intellect He has bestowed upon us, can perceive or conceive. The gemmation of each animalcule, and the expansion of each spore, as much the special behests of His incomprehensible Power, as the Fiat that

984—987

980—986

first called heaven and earth into being. When the sparrow falls from the bough, the earth's attraction fulfilling His word, acts as He commands in bringing that one little bird to the ground. Each bulb from which each hair of our head springs forth, was numbered before He formed the protoplast out of the dust. All mutations, all developments, all correlations, all operations of forces, all result from the Creator's enduring ordinances. But our consciousness of guilt compels us to shrink from the conception of the Living God walking personally amongst us: we seek to hide ourselves from the knowledge that He is actually accompanying us in all our paths and in all our ways. With us when we rise up, with us when we lie down, with us whether we sleep or wake, with us whether we live or die; not by metaphor or poetical imagery,—not by trope or figure of speech, but incomparably more truly than any created being.—You and I and all things exist only through Him, He the only reality.—

Are we right in accepting human history as a series of scrutable causes and calculable results, the progress of human Societies governed by universal general laws, immutable as those which permeate the Material Universe? Are we not paltering with our consciences when we merge individual responsibility in collective destiny? Do we not, theorizing according to mere human reason, always discover or conceal a residual energy for which no hypothesis can account.—Not even can the cast of the die, or the lottery

chance, the jerk of the Gamester's elbow, or the blinded boy's hand-dip into the fortune of the wheel, be disengaged from the special direction of Providence.—Whoever looks beyond the surface averages, and the classifications of the Statist or the Physician,—honourable as are these productions of diligence and acuteness and skill—and render to them every honour,—must discern that the poisonous miasms of the sewer, obeying the predetermined harmony established by the Eternal Mind, have been removed from the Prince in the Royal Palace, or brought to bear specifically upon the Proletarian in his fetid cellar, as clearly as if we beheld the destroying Angel drawing or sheathing the sword.

§ 49. Every event in each individual's life, and consequently, every event in each class, sept, tribe, or family, the aggregate of individuals; and every event in each community, state, or commonwealth, being the aggregate of classes, septs, tribes, or families; has its salient point in the consiliency of the thoughts, acts, tempers and passions of separate and single embodied souls. And thus, when reviewing French history, no circumstance becomes more prominent than the generic likeness marking the various convulsions and revolutions which the Realm has sustained; the great majority connected with the influence of some one woman in State affairs. Blanche of Castile's bland piety, and the Pompadour's brazen profligacy—Joan of Arc's rapt visions and Agnes Sorel's meretricious charms.—The diplomacy of

954—987  
990—996

Influence of women in the affairs of France, a peculiar feature in French history.

954—987

960—966

the Ruelle, guiding the Cabinet or ruling the Sovereign, planning the marriage or prompting the murder, negotiating the peace or provoking the war.

Capetian  
Dynasty  
ruined by  
the same  
causes as the  
Carlovingian.

The Capetian Dynasty obtained the Crown by contingencies bearing the closest analogy to those whereby they lost the Crown. The charges adduced against the last Carlovingian Queen were virtually re-echoed when Marie Antoinette was conducted to the Scaffold. Vice, intrigue, and treachery, ruined the Carlovingians. The like stern retribution clove to the line of Robert-le-Fort. And the hell-hounds unleashed from the *Parc aux cerfs*, hunted the progeny of Saint Louis to destruction.

The powers exercised by Woman pervade the national annals. — Deep is the lesson conveyed, by the fact, that Brantome's record of depravity is an indispensable muniment of French History.—Consider what would constitute a truthful series of tableaux dedicated to the memory of the "Father of letters."—Stand by the death-bed terminating his career.—Diane de Poitiers as gay as a lark, whilst the Duke de Guise, slowly creeping to the door with a doleful face, trills and sings as he trips away,—*il s'en va, le gallant*.

Falling off  
of historical  
information.

§ 50. At the commencement of the Carlovingian history, Franco-Gallia teeming with intellectual vigour, her literary remains supply the most abundant materials to the historian. Men of note, Men of mark, Prelates, Monks,

Divines, and Soldiers, have contributed their stores. As the Monarchy declines, the historians decrease in number, though still retaining signal value. But we must now lose the last survivor amongst our old friends — Frodoardus. — We have heard him speaking through these many years: sometimes taking part in the transactions he narrates and for the most part almost always their witness. Truth seeking, truth telling, neither expecting profit, nor courting praise, bearing testimony to the fortunes of his generation as a simple duty towards them and towards posterity, he continues working with unabated diligence; but, during the period which we are now treating, the reader may trace some diminution in his vigour.—Incidents related more briefly,—powers of observation less acute,—strength less adequate to the exertion.

Quietly and sedulously however does Frodoardus proceed, until, diverting his path for awhile from public affairs, he pauses, inscribing the approaching termination of his labours. Having attained the age of seventy years; broken by age and infirmity—his sacerdotal duties—painful labours—and not caring to drink the cup to the dregs, he, as he informs us, cast off the burden of his preferments,—Canonry and Abbey,—and retired to his Cell. The events which happened during the three subsequent years, are succinctly commemorated, and then the pen drops from his hand. He died on the Feast day of Saint Joseph of Arimathea, and, interred

954—987  
900—906

Infirmity and  
Death of  
Frodoardus,  
17th March,  
906.

954—987

960—966

Richerius—  
singular im-  
portance of  
this historian

in Saint Remy's Royal Basilica, his memory received great honour.

But the loss of Frodoardus is most satisfactorily compensated. Whilst he was declining, a successor was maturing, by whose aid we complete the melancholy epic of the Carlovingian decline and fall. This is Richerius. Hitherto Richerius has afforded an ample complement to Frodoardus: henceforward his book becomes the back-bone of the annals. Richerius alone enables us to connect the ruin of the Second Race with the rise of the Third Race: and, chasing the visions which have been evoked, he sweeps away all the cobwebs spun by imaginative talent. It may be doubted whether any parallel case can be adduced, in which the resuscitation of a single author, his work existing only in a unique exemplar, has imparted an entirely new aspect to the previous *Textus receptus* of history.

It has become the silly phrase of the day, that the paramount, nay, the only condition required for good government, whether in great things or small, is the placing the right man in the right place. But we can neither command the existence of the right man—"poeta nascitur non fit" is true in every calling—nor compel the right men to place that same right man in that same right place, so the presumptuous, nay, mischievous popular aphorism vanishes in pompous vanity. But if we, living in the nineteenth century, try to select the qualifications required for the individual who was to close the chronicle of the Carlovin-

gian Dynasty, we shall find them combined in Richer or Richerius. The son of a personage not so elevated in station as to be entangled over-much in public business, nor so inferior in rank as to be an unworthy companion of the Monarch, Richer's father became the living record of the facts and recollections which he related to his son.

964—987  
960—966  
Peculiar  
qualifications  
of Richerius  
for his task.

The son was equally competent to execute the task. Yearning for knowledge, and imbued with traditionary information which he alone could attain, he was fully fitted, both by talent and acquirement to employ the teaching; and, at that period of life when the powers of memory are most vivid, and the mind most matured, he was called upon to be the Historiographer of an expiring race, by the most pre-eminent amongst his contemporaries, one whose name stands so high in the annals of science—though so dubious as to moral desert.

When Gerbert of Aurillac, (of whom more hereafter), famed, or defamed, as Pope and Magician, had attained the Primatial Seat of the Gauls, he requested Richerius to compose a History of the Monarchy from its foundation.—Richerius declined the labour. It appeared to him that he could not make any useful addition to the works of his predecessors, and he, therefore, preferred confining himself mainly to the more recent portions, his father's times and his own. Had it not been for Richer's sagacious diligence, any approximation to the real history of this eventful period could never

Gerbert  
when Arch-  
bishop of  
Rheims  
requests  
Richer to  
compose a  
complete  
History of  
France.



954—967 } have been known.—“Tynt is tynt!”—“Verloren  
 960—966 } ist verloren!”—Lost history, like lost languages,  
 never can be recovered by any process in the  
 nature of induction.

Gerbert sup-  
 plies Richer  
 with mate-  
 rials.

The Gerber-  
 tine State  
 Papers and  
 Correspon-  
 dence. Their  
 value and  
 obscurity.

Gerbert—no one else could have done the deed—gave over his correspondence to Richerius. Gerbert was constantly involved in machinations, on behalf of others and of his own self, and it is sometimes difficult to avoid the suspicion that he occasionally betrayed one party by co-operating with another. We possess his own letters, or letters under his name, others which were dispatched or exchanged to or between the most eminent personages of his time, including the Sovereigns: but we are rarely enabled to distinguish whether he speaks in his own person, or in the person of the party whose name is prefixed; nor whether he acts as agent or as principal;—nor whether the letters were confided to him by the writers; nor whether he obtained the documents honestly or by collusion. This singular collection has been long known under the title of *Epistolæ Gerberti*, and has proved a torture to the wits of the erudite.—Crabbed—enigmatical,—the inexplicable hint,—a phrase in conventional gergo,—names in secret characters.—The obscurity has encreased their interest. Much labour has been bestowed upon their elucidation, but with indifferent success.

The one  
 manuscript  
 of Richerius;  
 autograph &  
 holograph.

The original of Richer's history exists as he left it: autograph and holograph: never used during the nine hundred and odd years which

have elapsed since his era and our own, but by 964—967  
 one scholar, famous Abbot Trithemius in the 960—966  
 fifteenth century.

It is amusingly instructive to observe how the old Monk went to work upon his task. He proceeded economically. For the most part his manuscript is a palimpsest: the membranes of various qualities, and the leaves of unequal sizes. Here, are interlineations in larger characters—and there, interpolations in the margin; some portions in exceedingly small and delicate letters, penned, perhaps, when the sun was shining brightly,—others again, in large Pica, written when the smoky lamp was burning dimly. The text has been most carefully corrected and re-corrected, enlarged and improved by the author. But, if Richer's additions are important, the subtractions are even more so, and his concealments more striking than his disclosures. Sometimes a word or a paragraph has been erased, and the scalpel employed so earnestly, that not a letter can be traced. Considerable breaks and halts are found in the narrative, assuredly not for want of knowledge. These occur wholly during the reign of Lothaire, to the extent, in the aggregate, of nearly twenty years, and, very generally, at the precise nick of time when we are peculiarly anxious to receive full information.

Peculiar character of Richer's mind disclosed by his corrections, &c. of the manuscript.

Richer's conduct as an historian was unquestionably dictated by prudence, though combined with a higher principle than prudence. Enriched with materials for composition; and fully able to

954—987  
980—988

employ them, he was endued with the rare virtue of silence. The periods omitted would have necessitated the narration of occurments which it would have grieved him to record. This is the more evident, because in one very remarkable instance, when he had commenced a chapter which must have contained matters bearing painfully upon the moral character of individuals who are amongst the most prominent in this history, and thereby enabling us to form a more correct judgment concerning the more immediate motive causes of the revolution, he baulks us by his conscientiousness, and taking up his shears, he snips off the remainder of the page. This is one of the numerous examples, when a pentimento is far more instructive than the Artist's completed composition.—No passage can be really suppressed, but by casting it in the fire.

After the death of Lothaire, the narrative expands. Richerius appears to have emboldened himself to his task, and to have worked with more confidence. Yet his reticences do not cease, and we can discern them again in connection with the scandalous subject which must have filled the chapter we have lost. Upon the accession of Gerbert to the See of Rheims, the history terminates. Infirmary probably, interrupted Richer's labours. But the parchment is not exhausted, and he still employed himself in collecting memoranda for the continuation of the useful task. He transcribes two letters from his Patron Gerbert, which the

learned editor who disintombed the manu-<sup>954-967</sup>  
script, has, in consequence of some nicety of <sup>960-962</sup>  
arrangement, withheld or postponed. Then  
follow some few miscellaneous jottings,—words  
written to try his pen,—a sketch intended for  
a letter addressed to some friend, concerning a  
medical treatise which that friend had lent him  
in the course of the year: and, amongst other  
notices, one of peculiar interest to us, which,  
whilst testifying that the affairs of Normandy  
continued to attract his attention, affords at the  
same time a grotesquely forcible testimony of  
the permanently enduring contemptuous feeling  
which the old Carlovingian Frenchmen enter-  
tained against the mongrel Pagans.

§ 51. The fragmentary character possessed  
by Carlovingian history at this era, when the  
antient fabric was crumbling into ruins, often  
necessitates a departure from chronological order.  
We must occasionally groupe our personages;  
and, amongst these personages, none requiring  
to be more distinctly individualized than the  
Prelates, who, acting very different parts, con-  
tributed, each in his position, to the Capetian  
triumph.

Shortly after that Lothaire, having reduced  
Dijon, had given so hard a blow to the Verman-  
dois family, the wearying career of Artaldus came  
to a close. The ecclesiastical Provinces of  
Rheims and Sens were forthwith synodically  
convened. The Capet, who possessed much

<sup>961</sup>  
Death of  
Artaldus,  
Archbishop  
of Rheims.

954—987  
980—982

981—2  
The See  
claimed by  
Hugh the  
Parvulus.

His disap-  
pointment,  
and death.

influence in this assembly, supported Hugh the old Parvulus, the Regicide's son. Three more Bishops were the Capet's Bishops, — Paris, Orleans, Senlis. The restoration of the expelled ex-archbishop being opposed, it was agreed that the question should be referred to the Holy See. The Pontiff's decision was adverse to the Parvulus. The hopes to which the ousted litigant had so fondly clung, were finally crushed. Having been kindly received by his brother Robert, he fell sick, and died of a broken heart at Melun.—We have had the Boy-Bishop before us ever since he was five years old, and now there is an end of him.

A vacancy in the Rhemish Primacy was a very important political crisis, setting all parties in motion. The successor of the Saint who baptized the Sicamber ranked as the first subject in the State, Arch-Chancellor of the Monarchy, and President *ex officio* in all the great national assemblies.—Invested with these powers, the Archbishop of Rheims, though he cannot be described as the King-maker, might, nevertheless, when the balance trembled, turn the scale, and become the arbiter of the kingdom's destiny.

The antient canonical right of election was vested in the Clergy and Laity; yet rarely did they recalcitrate against the recommendation given by their natural patron, the Sovereign. But France, since Lothaire's accession, had passed virtually under the German protectorate,

—a superiority neither recognised by treaty <sup>984—987</sup>  
 nor created by compact, yet not the less real. <sup>980—982</sup>  
 Bruno, filling the office of Protector, availed  
 himself of every opportunity which might knit  
 Lotharingia more closely to France; and upon  
 his solicitation, Odalric, the member of a <sup>982</sup>  
 noble Lotharingian family, obtained the dig- <sup>Odalricus</sup>  
 nity. Pious, honest, and hearty, Odalric <sup>promoted to</sup>  
 was welcomed by Lothaire, who honored his <sup>the Arch-</sup>  
 character and energy. Thibaut-le-Tricheur had <sup>bishopric of</sup>  
 usurped many of the archiepiscopal domains, <sup>Rheims.</sup>  
 including Couci. Odalric pronounced sentence of  
 excommunication against him and other intruders.  
 They all submitted. The Archbishop having vin- <sup>Thibaut-le-</sup>  
 dicated the claims of his predecessors, he mani- <sup>Tricheur—</sup>  
 fested his generosity by regranting the contested <sup>his humilia-</sup>  
 domain to Eudes, now Thibaut's eldest son and <sup>tion and</sup>  
 heir; and Eudes was well contented to hold the <sup>death.</sup>  
 lofty tower of Couci under the Archbishop's  
 suzerainty.

After this, we hear nothing more of Thibaut,  
 whom his own people called "*le Vieux.*" The  
 enterprising and active statesman and warrior,  
 who connects us continuously with the times of  
 Rollo, is laid by. The time of his death is not  
 particularized:—and thus, one more amongst our  
 few remaining acquaintances, who, dating from  
 the old times, are all going, is taken away.

Odalric, so long as his incumbency lasted, <sup>6th Nov.,</sup>  
 fully asserted his station; but he held his Pon- <sup>989. Death</sup>  
 tificate during four years only, when, to use the <sup>of Odalricus.</sup>

954—967

960—962

antient customary form of speech, the “widowhood” of the Church again excited the expectations and intrigues of various clerical and secular suitors.

970—  
Adalbero  
appointed in  
the place of  
Odalricus.

The appointment of another Lotharingian of high estate and merit, again reveals the obedience rendered to Archbishop Bruno. Adalbero's father was Godfrey, Count of the Ardennes, or Verdun, and from him also descended the “Pio Goffredo,”—alas, for the teaching of the chivalrous Muse!

Adalbero's  
knowledge of  
French His-  
tory and con-  
stitutional  
law.

Adalbero was thoroughly well taught in theology and divinity. He applied himself, with equal ardour, to the humanities, as they were then pursued. The classics, no less than all branches of knowledge which tended more or less towards the mathematics, were sedulously cultivated by him. He was deeply read in the History of France, and had carefully studied the laws and usages of the Realm and the principles of the Constitution. Adalbero adapted himself to the spirit of his age and country. Towards the close of the tenth century, Literature was cultivated in France and Germany with singular ardour:—and learned men, enjoying a degree of reputation analogous to that exhibited in Western Europe at the period usually termed the revival of letters, received solid rewards.

Rarely did Adalbero appear in public affairs, until towards the conclusion of Lothaire's reign, when he came forward, exhibiting great ability, united to much laxity of moral principle: but can

any party, Leader, or any practical Statesman or Politician, ever conform in his public life to those dictates, which render the Gospel as heavy a yoke to him as the Law.—Adalbero decided the fate of the Carlovingian Dynasty.

The ecclesiastical promotions which Adalbero's high situation enabled him to procure or bestow, deserve singular attention. The one, exercised a most baneful influence upon the reigning family—the other, became a memorable era in the history of the Papacy, and therefore of Western Christianity.

Not long after Adalbero's appointment to the Archbishoprick, we find a Diploma or Charter issued by him in his capacity of Arch-Chancellor, countersigned by a Clerk of the Chapel, holding the office of Vice-Chancellor, an active functionary, sometimes denominated Asceline, and sometimes Adalbero. No explanation is given of this somewhat singular equivalence. If this Asceline, who becomes so painfully prominent in the annals of courtly scandal and falsehood, called himself "Adalbero," out of compliment to the Archbishop, he could not have selected an *alias* more perplexing to the historian. There were five contemporary Prelates, including him of Rheims, all rejoicing in that identical appellation; and therefore, for the sake of brevity and clearness, we shall always designate him as Asceline.

The exact period of Asceline's elevation to



954—987  
960—982  
Asceline (otherwise Adalbero)—his character and promotion to the See of Laôn.

the See of Laôn is uncertain; possibly, some slight confusion may have arisen in consequence of the multiplicity of his namesakes. But his biography is consistent, and high did he stand in public favour.—No wonder, for Asceline's character was singularly attractive: nobly born, rich, ambitious, a clever lampooner, such as in society are courted and dreaded; liberal and bountiful,—his great wealth judiciously bestowed, so as to obtain general applause. Pleasant and persuasive in conversation, Asceline encouraged learned men: and, neglected as Dudo de Saint Quentin has been by modern enquirers, it is important to inform the historical student that much weight is added to the "*Acta Normannorum*" by the circumstance that the author inscribes the work to Asceline. Asceline's ability and acquirements rendered him popular in every sphere. Equally welcome, much too welcome, was the smirking Asceline, whether in the Royal Cabinet, or the Ladies' Bower. His position at Laôn enabled him to become a pestiferous intimate of the Court.—He was a base deceiver, and we have reason to fear that he was guilty of sins darker even than treachery.

Gerbert of Aurillac afterwards Pope Sylvester II.

Kings and Queens, Emperors and Empresses, concurred in rendering the highest tribute to the intellectual powers possessed by Gerbert of Aurillac.—Gerbert, the peasant's son, destined to attain the highest station in the Christian Commonwealth.—They honoured his mental en-

dowments, and at the same time, they promoted his labours; but, under their leading he diverted his great ability into the paths and ways of the world, whether crooked or straight, for their profit and advantage. The incidents of Gerbert's life offer as many difficulties as his mysterious and problematical character. When, in the days of the Plantagenets, the English pilgrim visited the shrine of Saint Peter, he heard how Gerbert the Magician had attained the Papal See by his dealing with the Powers of darkness;—how the hidden treasures of Augustus were disclosed to him, and when disclosed, withheld by the Demon;—and how the brazen head which he constructed, pronounced those oracles, at once true and false, which encouraged him to persevere until he was seated in Saint Peter's chair.

That Gerbert visited Moslem Spain, and acquired his mathematical knowledge in the schools of Seville or Cordova, can scarcely be doubted. To him, European civilization is indebted for those arithmetical numerals, which, if not the foundation, have so greatly contributed to the progress of science, and the general convenience of society. As an astronomer, Gerbert, the cotemporary of Albategnius, and Alfragan, and Thebith, and Ebenyounis, and Aboul Wefa, seems to have known all that the wisdom of Javan, expounded by Semitic acuteness, could afford. He constructed the first celestial globe which Christian Europe ever beheld. Obser-

954—987  
960—982

Gerbert's  
knowledge  
and talents.  
He intro-  
duces the so  
called Arabic  
numerals

954—987  
 960—982
 
 vation had perfected all that the book had taught. In mathematics, and the then kindred science of music, Gerbert acquired the greatest proficiency. His talent as a dialectician was unrivalled; whilst his knowledge of the antient classical writers, and his zeal for the diffusion of their study, fully equalled the ardour which he evinced in other branches of human knowledge.

An uncouth, halting hexameter, marking the progress of Gerbert, is quoted in most of his biographies :—

Scandit ab R, Girbertus in R, post Papa regens R.

Some repeat the verse as Gerbert's jocular vaunt after he had succeeded; others represent it as a vaticination of the Demon. But *Ravenna* and *Rome*, denoted by the second and the last of the thrice reiterated initials, would never have been attained, had not Adalbero's favouritism afforded him the advantages which enabled the protégé to become his patron's successor in the See of *Rheims*, indicated by the first.

Having cultivated Gerbert's acquaintance by correspondence, Adalbero solicited the young philosopher to become the Rector of the schools annexed to the Cathedral, as well as to aid in the formation of a Library. The invitation reached Gerbert about the time when he was introduced to the Emperor Otho, who received him into his confidence,—a confidence which, extended through three generations, rendered

him a thorough familiar at the German Court. 954—987  
 —Scarcely inferior was Gerbert's potency in 980—982  
 France, where he exerted the same fascination.  
 The lovely Grecian and Italian Queens, who  
 rivalled each other in beauty, and the recluses  
 of the Cloister, equally placed their trust in  
 Gerbert. Amidst all the whirl of political affairs,  
 his ardent pursuit of science and literature never  
 slackened. But we cannot discover in Gerbert's  
 character any traces of piety or conscientious-  
 ness.—We can only view in him a profound  
 philosopher, a brilliant genius, and an ambitious  
 and unprincipled intriguer.

Gerbert's  
intrigues.

§ 52. During the era of Charlemagne and  
 his immediate successors, the rich and instruc-  
 tive Capitulars, combined with the antient Bar-  
 baric Codes, declare the law of real property,  
 whilst the "Formularies" exemplify the practice.  
 Many obscurities do they offer, baffling solution :  
 yet, on the whole, we possess an adequate number  
 of texts, enabling the constitutional archæologist  
 to frame a tolerably plausible theory. But, as  
 we advance, these sources of information become  
 more scanty, and, in the most important branches,  
 wholly cease. The Lawgivers abandoned their  
 functions, nor do we possess any materials for  
 discussion or consideration, save and except a  
 scanty sprinkling of Charters,—the language  
 employed by historians,—and the facts occa-  
 sionally revealed.

Transitional  
stage of Feu-  
dality under  
the last  
Carlovin-  
gians.

"Feudality" was assuming a more systematic

954—987  
960—962

Increased  
stringency of  
Feudality.

Performance  
of adoration  
stringently  
exact.

form,—a form imparting greater stateliness to the Sovereign. More symmetry was acquired by this branch of the “Civil Hierarchy,”—we shall borrow this designation, now vernacular amongst our neighbours, though a contradiction in terms, until one more comprehensive and more accurate can be found. The species of adoration, supposed to have been imported from Byzantium, and which Rollo performed by deputy, occasioning the ludicrous scene enacted at Clair-sur-Epte, was not only insisted upon, but, as it should seem, rigidly enforced in the most humiliating guise. The Vassal was required to place his hands beneath the soles of the Sovereign’s feet; and the usage constituted a sharp, definite, and ungracious line of demarcation between the higher and the lower Nobility. No exception was made in favour of blood or race. A Frank of the Franks, a descendant of Charlemagne, if his tenure placed him in the second rank, submitted like the rest: and we may fear that the Sovereign delighted in compelling even the noble house of Vermandois to gulp the degradation.

Very few, as far as we can judge, even amongst the great Feudatories, were exempted from this marked acknowledgment of inferiority. Normandy had been freed by special compact; and we are certain that neither Louis d’Outremer nor Lothaire could dare to demand the observance from the Duke of all France and Burgundy.

Greater attention was paid to ceremony and etiquette in general.—The French Court, probably imitating the Imperial ceremonial, became more punctilious; and the Vassal, who, bearing the sword, walked after the Sovereign, was considered as thereby declaring his subjection to the Superior.

The incidents of tenure were more strictly defined, and that, to the Crown's advantage. More than once we have had occasion to point out how the Sovereign's legal power, as supreme Lord of the land, encreased proportionably with the decrement of his political power. Could the steps whereby this process was accomplished be traced, we should probably ascertain that the result arose from the silent but constant and consistent pressure of the Royal Chancery.—Say what you will—all law is judge-made law and lawyer-made law.

It may also be affirmed without hazard of error, that the practice of Commendation, as taught by that illustrious practical professor, Hugh-le-Grand, had nearly eaten out allodality. The principle exemplified in the legal phrase, "*le mort saisi le vif*," was not yet accepted as imparting an indefeasible title. The son received possession only by and through the Royal Precept or Charter. Upon parchment, seal, and signature, was the Vassal's title founded;—Lothaire, who so energetically vindicated his rights as supreme administrator

934—967

960—962

Incidents of tenure more strictly defined.

Influence of the Chancery.

Allodality extinguished by Hugh-le-Grand's doctrine of commendation.

954—967  
962—965

of the law, when Count Odalric's son lost his head before the gate of Dijon, was equally on the alert to demonstrate, that, through him, the greatest amongst his Vassals reigned.

§ 53. An excellent opportunity had offered for asserting those sovereign prerogatives, on an occasion when their enforcement redounded equally to the honour of the Crown and the Realm's stability. Upon the resignation made by Arnoul-le-Vieux in favour of his Son, Baudouin-le-Jeune, Lothaire did not take any notice of the transaction: and, when Baudouin died, Arnoul-le-Vieux reverted to his former authority, construed by Lothaire as having been merely suspended during his Son's brief reign, though exercised in the name and on behalf of the grandson. The demise of Arnoul-le-Vieux having ensued, Lothaire treated the Fief as open; and insisted, as he was fully justified in doing, that Arnoul-le-Jeune was bound to render homage:—but the ill-advised youth refused.

965—  
Upon the  
decease of  
Arnoul-le-  
Vieux, (see  
p. 697), Lo-  
thaire de-  
mands  
the homage  
of Arnoul-le-  
Jeune.

For the purpose of annoying Richard-sans-Peur, Lothaire had gladly allied himself with Flanders, yet no real friendship could subsist between the Kings of France and Lideric the Forester's formidable descendants. The connexion through Madame Judith, the daughter of Lothaire's great-grandfather, did not produce any practical affinity. Lothaire acted as Louis d'Outremer would have done, or have tried to do,—he enforced obedience by military execu-

tion. Raising a powerful army of French and Burgundians, he invaded the country, and the whole of the "Flandre Gallicante,"—that is to say, the entire territory extending as far as the river Lys,—fell into Lothaire's power. Young Arnoul was expelled.—From whom, under this distress, did he seek for aid? He appealed to the Norman Richard, and found a friend in him, who had a right to treat Arnoul as an hereditary enemy, his own father's murderer.—Some authorities assert, that Richard was co-operating with Lothaire, and had furnished a contingent as an ally; but, influenced by sentiments deserving a higher name than mere generosity, the son of Guillaume-longue-épée interfered on the suppliant's behalf. Arnoul rendered due homage, received his great Comital Marchland from Lothaire's grant, and was thoroughly re-instated as Count Marcher.

954—987  
965—968

Lothaire  
invades  
Flanders—  
Richard of  
Normandy  
mediates—  
Arnoul ren-  
ders due  
homage.

§ 54. About one year after Lothaire's death, there suddenly rises up an individual, never named in Lothaire's lifetime, and who, by his unexpected apparition, indicates a most important unrecorded passage in the then deceased Monarch's history; a chapter relating to an event which must have happened about the period with which we are dealing. This personage, the living witness of the matters left untold, and who attained to portentous eminence during the Capetian Revolution, is Arnulphus or Arnoul, a Canon of Laón, then promoted to

The  
suppressed  
chapter in  
Lothaire's  
history.



954—987

982—985

the See of Rheims, though stigmatised as Lothaire's bastard.

Lothaire's  
clandestine  
marriage  
with a Lo-  
tharingian  
Lady—  
Arnulph  
their son.

Epithets now understood as implying illegitimacy, must not, during the Middle Ages, be construed as necessarily conveying the import, that the connexion subsisting between the parents was illicit. Arnulph, as we have every reason to suppose, was not a spurious child, but the issue of a marriage lawfully and honourably contracted between Lothaire and a lady, who was a cousin of Guy, Count of Soissons, and daughter of a Lotharingian Noble, probably reckoned amongst the lower nobility. Her lineage, however, is presented with much obscurity; though the references given in the standard work, from which I collect the information, might perhaps assist those skilled in French genealogies, to remove the difficulties.

The Lady  
separated  
from Lo-  
thaire—  
marries  
Theobald de  
Monte  
Acuto, or  
Montague.

By this Consort, Lothaire had Arnulph, though not a word is breathed concerning him during his father's life-time; possibly, also, a Richard, of whom we have a transient notice. The latent Queen having then been separated from her husband, she became the wife of Theobald de Monte Acuto, or Montague. No cause for the dissolution of the marriage between her and Lothaire is hinted. The whole transaction has been designedly enveloped in obscurity. All we can conjecture is, that some one of the many allegations arising out of canonical affinity, pre-contract, or the like,

which were considered as legal grounds of nullity, helped Lothaire in slipping out of the bond when he desired to solemnize a more desirable union.

§ 55. Since Lothaire's accession, Otho had been uninterruptedly pursuing that brilliant career, which I have perfunctorily attempted to describe :—Western Christendom rescued from the Magyar pollutions.—Italy freed from anarchy :—an Anti-pope put down :—all opposition silenced :—the Lombard power extinguished ; and from the Alps to the frontier of the Byzantine territories, Apulia and Calabria, the whole Peninsula obeyed the Saxon Emperor. The subjugation of the Roman Republic to the Cæsar constituted her charter of independence. Nay, Venice, though girded by her lagunes, courted the Latin Emperor's favour.

965—  
State of  
Italy under  
Otho—he  
returns to  
Germany.

Otho's task was however only partially accomplished, clouds were rising ; but he yearned to be again present with those who loved him. Desisting for a time from his world-influential labours, he returned home. Materials exist, enabling the historian to follow him stage by stage ; but, omitting all intermediate stations, we will meet him at Cologne.

There were gathered together Otho's nearest and dearest kindred. Pious Matilda, King Henry's affectionate relict, the Dowager Empress, honoured as the Mother of the family. Queen Gerberga, followed by her two sons, Lo-

964—967

962—965

965—  
The famous  
Festival at  
Cologne.

thaire, the King of France, struggling against fate; and his brother Charles, the neglected boy, whose destitution was rendered more pitiable by his illustrious ancestry. There also Hugh Capet and Eudes, Otho's ambitious nephews, and Henry the excluded Porphyrogenitus, Otho's repentant brother, and his pleasant son Henry, so cosseted during baby-hood and boy-hood by his grandmother. All the Dukes and Banner-bearing Counts, all the great Feudatories of the Empire, hailed their Sovereign's return. And, pre-eminent amongst the mitred crowd arose Bruno, commanding universal respect and honour.

This Court so held by Otho at Cologne was admired as the grandest spectacle which men had ever witnessed in the German Empire. Long subsisting were the traditions of the festival's splendour. Particularly, as it should seem, in Saxony, where we find them recorded in the vernacular chronicles, written centuries after the Sceptre had departed from Henry the Fowler's lineage. Yet these rejoicings were uneasy, and only disguised the anxieties, whose bitterness dashed the present pleasure. However triumphant Otho had been, he apprehended danger in Italy. Rome, fermenting: the Imperial succession not yet settled in favour of the younger Otho. And Otho therefore determined to depart from Germany for the purpose of accomplishing his last Imperial progress to the Capital of the Christian world.

The Court broke up, and clouded was the close. Otho accompanied his mother to Nordhausen; and, during seven days did he linger there, dreading the parting. When the eighth gloomy morn had dawned, the Imperial Mother and the Imperial Son having attended Mass, Matilda preferred her last request.—Nordhausen, said she, is precious to me; here was thy brother Henry born, here Gerberga, here I founded this House, for the good of my children's souls. Give care to this holy place, and let it be thy Mother's memorial. Tearfully pressing him to her bosom, she accompanied him so far as the portal, where his train was ready; and they separated, bidding each other farewell.

954—967  
962—965

June 965—  
The parting  
between  
Otho and his  
Mother at  
Nordhausen.

Yet the last farewell minute had not really arrived. Matilda, returning into the Church, clave to the dust of her child's footsteps; not figuratively, but actually kneeling over them, and literally bedewing his path with her tears. Some kind-hearted attendant ran forth, and informed the Emperor, who was preparing to mount his steed, of his Mother's desolation. The mighty warrior, turning back, rushed into the Sanctuary, embraced his agonized Mother, hugged her and kissed her again and again; and, wrenching himself from his parent's arms, fled away, never to look upon that dear old face any more.

But the youngest amongst Otho's collateral kindred or ascendant relatives was the first to be

954—957

950—955

called away. Bruno's health was declining rapidly and irrecoverably. Weak in constitution, he was exerting himself beyond his powers, and sinking under premature old age. Constantly worried with state affairs; and now, it may be hoped, awakened to the feeling, that in the acts of the Politician, the Christian had too often deeply sinned, he debilitated his body by rigorous abstinence and fasting; at the same time he was wearing himself out by intense application to those studies, which recruited his soul at the expense of his corporeal frame.

The urgencies of France summoned Bruno to Compiègne. He was now utterly unfitted for such a journey.—Whether for this world or the next, he who does most, lives longest. The pages of history bring Bruno so repeatedly before us, that, unless we mark carefully the dates of events, we might imagine he was verging towards senility. But he had scarcely over-passed the *mezzo del camin di nostra vita*, his thirty-eighth year, and yet he was dying. He broke down under the fatigues of the journey ere he reached his archiepiscopal residence; and his death ensued on a noted day, the Feast of Saint Gereon, honoured at Cologne as foremost in the rank of Christian warriors.

11 Oct., 955—  
Death of  
Archbishop  
Bruno.

The German  
principle of  
*Ebenbürtig-*  
*keit* enounced  
in France.

§ 56. Connected with the vigorous expansion of feudality, which so greatly enhanced the royal authority, was the evolution of a new constitutional principle, tending to create a royal Caste; a Caste completely severed, not

merely from the main body of the nation, but even raising an impassable barrier between the royal family, and the vast majority amongst the natural aristocracy as a class or order, a very few Houses only being excepted. It was now taught and held that the daughter of a Vassal appertaining to the secondary rank, a Vassal who had kissed a Sovereign's knees and placed his hands beneath a Sovereign's feet, was disqualified by the incidents of her father's tenure, from becoming a Sovereign's legal Consort. So stringently was this doctrine construed, that, even Imperial blood became polluted, if flowing in the veins of an individual whose ancestor had submitted to such a humiliation.

We do not trace any foundation for this opinion during the earlier periods of the Monarchy. Magnanimous Charlemagne was not encumbered by any such prejudices: and, contemplating his crowd of wives, real or dubious, we can scarcely distinguish more than one,—one, equally remarkable for her virtues and her misfortunes,—who could claim a regal parentage.

This principle of "*Ebenbürtigkeit*," familiar to the German Jurists, but legally unknown in this Realm, subsists throughout the ambit of the German Confederation and Scandinavia; and it has been even recently adopted by the two newly erected and rival Kingdoms, raised upon the soil of the antient Lotharingian Duchy, Holland and Belgium; so

954—987  
980—985

Principle of  
*Ebenbürtig-*  
keit not  
known in  
early times.

954—987

960—966

that a Sovereign, whose lawful affections have been fixed upon a woman included in the excluded rank, must either abdicate as an atonement for his misalliance, or purchase domestic happiness by imposing upon her, through whom that happiness is bestowed, the brand of a Morganatic marriage.

Possible danger of injury resulting to Lothaire by the development of the principle.

Very probably the sudden development of this novel aulic doctrine, this encroachment upon the Sovereign's personal liberty, acquired greater energy, by reason of its peculiar application to Lothaire. Floating prejudices or opinions, social or conventional, religious or political, solidify by the touch of one whom we hate as an enemy, whether by reason of himself, his party, or his faith.

Reasons for supposing that his apprehensions induced him to repudiate the lady.

Subsequent events demonstrate, with sufficient clearness, that Lothaire's unscrupulous and artful enemies, the Capets, and all the Capets' adherents, cleric and lay, might, should a fitting opportunity arise, render his connection with Count Guy's sister, a pretext for depriving him of the crown. Lothaire may have become tired of his first love: perhaps he was very young when he made a hasty choice: and, all these motives concurring, he would find no difficulty in divorcing himself from the Lotharingian lady, as the preliminary step towards a more congruous union.

But where was he to seek a Princess to or for whom he could propose? Not amongst Cerdic's illustrious line; for at this period

the only Atheliza whom we can discover in <sup>954—997</sup>  
 our royal genealogy, is Edgitha, the holy <sub>960—966</sub>  
 Abbess of Wilton. No one looked over the  
 Pyrenees. Barbarous Denmark was out of  
 the question. Whether Conrad the Pacific, the  
 King of Burgundy or Arles, had a daughter,  
 we care not to enquire.

Heartily cordial was the intimacy between  
 the Empress Dowager, and the congenial Em-  
 press Regnant. The Othonian Memoirs, as they  
 may be justly termed, the special biographies of <sup>The Othonian  
biographies  
or memoirs.</sup>  
 Otho, and of Bruno, of Matilda and of Adelaide;  
 one amongst these compositions penned by Saint  
 Odilo, and another by Roswitha, the celebrated  
 poetical Abbess, whose misapplication of her  
 talents, in her imitations of the Roman dramatist,  
 should rather deserve censure than earn praise,  
 render us thoroughly familiar with the hearty  
 lovingness which pervaded the German Court; and  
 such is the spirit exhibited in the painting (so to  
 speak) of the family groupe. Grandmother and <sup>The family  
groupe—  
matrimonial  
speculations.</sup>  
 Mother, children and grand-children, present at  
 their table, or frolicking before them. The pa-  
 rents were indulging in matrimonial speculations.  
 Emma, Adelaide's daughter by her first husband,  
 the Lombard King, scarcely more than a baby,  
 when Otho rescued and espoused her, was now un-  
 der the protection, and received the bounty of her  
 liberal step-father. But the prudent mother could  
 not be otherwise than anxious to obtain a proper  
 establishment for the penniless creature; and  
 we should discredit her feminine acuteness,



954—987

980—986

were we to suppose that when she recommended her “little girl Emma,” as the future wife for one of the royal youngsters, the words were casual. The minute particularity of the anecdote shews that the conversation made a strong impression upon the family mind—and it fructified, though not exactly as Adelaide intended;—for we do not see any reason to reject the supposition, that the match between the Carolingian King Lothaire, and the Lombard Lothaire’s daughter, was made up during the Cologne festival.

966—  
Marriage  
between  
Lothaire and  
Emma.

§ 57. But we continue oppressed by the ominous shadow enveloping French history. The marriage, an event of high national interest, is recorded most drily and succinctly. We ascertain the fact from a notice contained in the very last paragraph Frodoardus penned; and he tells it as though he wished to get rid of the matter, “*Lotharius Rex uxorem accepit, Emmam filiam quondam Regis Italici.*”—In the eyes of the French the Lombards were Italians, and they loathed the alliance, not caring to know what was her father’s name;—as for Richerius, he is resolutely silent

Obscurity of  
the history  
concerning  
Lothaire’s  
children by  
Emma—  
Louis and  
Otho.

So sporadically and stingily indeed are the circumstances of this reign related, that we hear nothing concerning Louis, Lothaire’s first son by Emma, until the young Prince was called to share his father’s throne. Moreover, they had a second born, Otho, whose very existence is passed over by historians. We become acquainted with him

simply through a very curious miniature limned in Queen Emma's Prayer-book.—The tonsure testifies that the youth had received Holy Orders;—a scarlet or purple robe indicates his royal birth;—a line in the necrology of Rheims bears record that a Canonry in the Primatial Cathedral had been bestowed upon him,—probably as a provision until some better preferment, perhaps the Arch-Bishopric, should fall in: and a note at the conclusion of his mother's Psalter informs us of the day when he died, but not the year.

§ 58. Rapidly is the Royal family decaying. —Gerberga, she, whose name has hitherto been associated with every important event since the day when Louis d'Outremer won and wooed the young widow of Gilbert the bold swimmer, —so wise in counsel, so pious, so tender to her own, but so implacable,—now wholly disappears from our sight. The Bride immediately supplied the Mother's place, and Gerberga departed from the Court of Laôn. Her retirement made a considerable change in the aspect of public affairs. Gerberga had been Lothaire's guide and counsellor, ever active on his behalf, the main connecting link between France and Germany, ensuring the uncle's aid, that aid needed by the nephew under every contingency. The Matron presents herself as poor and neglected. She does not come before us as a Dowager Queen, occupying a Royal Palace, or as the cozy well-to-do secular Abbess of Notre

Gerberga  
retires from  
court with  
her youngest  
son, Charles.

954—967  
 960—966

Gerberga's  
 disappoint-  
 ments and  
 sorrows.

Dame de Laôn. The preferment was taken from her, and she retreated to some obscure unnamed abode, where she persevered in performing the duty imposed upon her by Providence. Charles, now about sixteen years of age, was her sole companion, her comfort, her sorrow.

Since his father's death we have never met Charles, otherwise than clinging to his mother's side. The poverty-stricken boy seems to have been in every body's way, except his mother's. The destitution impending upon the younger branches of the Royal Family had been fully anticipated by Lothaire and Gerberga, years ago ; though, child succeeding child, and child dropping off after child, they could not foresee upon what member in particular the lot would fall. It was unquestionably this fretting anxiety which aided in stimulating Louis d'Outremer to prosecute his frequent schemes for reintegrating France by the recovery of Lotharingia, and equally excited him to regain that noble Neustria, usurped by the Danish barbarians.—For this object, Louis d'Outremer had entrapped the rosy-cheeked confiding Richard.—With this intent, he kidnapped the noble boy, and imprisoned him in the Tower of Laôn.—It was under this temptation, that the warm-hearted, affectionate, generous, conscientious Gerberga, rejoiced when she was watching, with tip-toe eagerness, at the chamber door, for the moment when Richard, worn out by grief and duress, should expire.—But her sin had now come home to her ;—and

she was enduring the chastisement she had earned.

964—967

966—972

Gerberga died about three years after Lothaire's marriage. We miss her much when we lose her,—she has been so long before us, in joy and in sorrow, that we part from her as an old and intimate friend. And, upon his mother's decease, the young Charles was received, but not welcomed, in his Brother's palace, where, wearily and joylessly his young life wore away.

Gerberga's death—  
Charles received in his brother's palace.

§ 59. During six years, running into the seventh, was Otho enforced to absent himself from his native land. Occasionally, though rarely, could Adelaide comfort and support him by her presence and her love. In all its length and in all its breadth did Otho traverse his Transalpine Realm, from the Marches of Verona to the Gulph of Naples, and from the Adriatic to the Great Sea. The diplomas bearing Otho's signature and seal, and the laws he promulgated, enable us to track his diligent visitations. Yet, amongst these singularly interesting and instructive documents, the historical enquirer, if he attempts to verify a theory at once popular and baseless, will vainly seek for a solitary instance of any grant, bestowing any constitutional franchises upon the Italian municipalities.—The charter must be sought upon the same parchment which enrolls King Alfred's enactment establishing jury trial.

966—972  
Otho's absence in Italy.

Realising in his own person, the authority

954—987  
 966—972

Severity of  
 Otho's  
 government.

of his Imperial predecessors, Otho acted upon the full consciousness that all their autocratic powers had descended to him. The fasces, whenever he gave the word, were unbound, and the axe upraised; and the satellites who, by Otho's command, swung and wielded the instruments of punishment, had no more feeling for the sufferers than the scourge and steel.

State of  
 Italy.—Its  
 consolidation  
 with Ger-  
 many.

Otho could now devote himself to his Italian administration with undivided attention. So ably had he organised those dominions, so completely had domestic or foreign foes been conciliated or subdued, that Germany continued as tranquil as if he had been present. Italy appeared thoroughly consolidated with the Teutonic Empire. Teutschland might despise Welschland, and Welschland might spit at Teutschland: but the dispathies between the Italian races and communities encreased the strength of the rivets which held them together under the paramount Sovereign. The Clergy seemed contented to forego all local privileges,—merging all distinctions of country in their common Catholicity. Thus, the extent of the province appertaining to the newly erected Archiepiscopal See of Magdeburgh, was settled at Ravenna in a Lombard Church Council, where Hatto of Mayence, Hildebrand of Halberstadt, Landwart of Minden, Reginhart of Reichstadt, and Wichfeld of Verdun, and many other German Prelates attended, undeterred by the lengthened journey.

Important were the objects which induced or

compelled Otho thus to continue abiding in Italy. The Lombard Princes were ever and anon giving trouble. But the most perplexing causes of uneasiness were always nestling at Rome,—such as they had been, such as they have been, such as they always will be. Gerbert spoke the general opinion prevailing beyond the Alps, that all Italy was as bad as Rome, and Rome, the horror of the world. But the Bark of Saint Peter, though tossed by the tempest, and so oft driven toward the shoal by her own pilot's incompetence, or worse, rights herself, and, casting anchor beneath the sheltering rock, rides buoyantly upon the waves.

At this era, the Papacy had become the opprobrium of Christendom; the Lateran Palace, a Lupanar; fornication, minor amongst the fouler sins by which John XII. was defiled. In this our task, we are dispensed from dwelling upon his delinquencies: but, as a characteristic trait, we may notice, that he was a desperate gambler, infected by that vice which includes the germs of every crime. When the bones turned against him, he was accustomed to break out in paroxysms of insane anger, cursing and swearing, invoking the aid of Jupiter and Venus. Nor are these oaths to be considered as unmeaning or semi-profane ejaculations, in the manner according to which the like, "*per Bacco*," for example, are now employed in the vulgar vernacular; but, according to the teaching of Scrip-

954—967  
966—973  
Troubles at Rome—John XII., his depravity.

<sup>954—987</sup>  
<sup>966—972</sup> ture, not repudiated in the mediæval period, were highly sinful, if not real appeals to the Demon.

The frequently recurring schisms in the Papacy, heightened the evils resulting from the turpitude of individual Pontiffs. During the miserable contest which raged between Leo VIII. and Benedict V., it was scarcely possible to define who was Pope and who was Anti-pope.—In fact, the lawless violence of the Roman Nobles, and the depravity pervading the Roman people, rendered the Pontiff either their tool or their victim:—a state of things which their descendants have unintermittingly endeavoured to perpetuate even to the present day.

Otho effected a partial reformation of these abuses;—the stiff-necked citizens were severely chastised; good laws enacted; some stability was restored to the Pontifical Chair;—his own supremacy, though occasionally insulted, was never questioned; and, consequent upon these qualified successes, he accomplished his second object, for which the first was the needful introduction,—the association of his only son and namesake, Adelaide's child, young Otho, the crowned King of Germany and of Italy, to the Imperial dignity. The father's nomination could scarcely be resisted; but the merits of the youth recommended him to the people; and the Supreme Pontiff's special invitation graced the latter's obedience to an irresistible command.

The junior Otho crossed the Alps, and held

his Court at Verona. A great Council or <sup>954-967</sup>  
Diet of the Italian Nobles had been convened <sup>966-972</sup>  
there. It is a sign of the times, that in this as-  
sembly, the elder Otho thought fit to publish  
his famous chivalrous decree, giving a further  
and mischievous extension to trial by battle. <sup>967--  
Diet at  
Verona.—  
Extension of  
trial by  
Battle.</sup>  
Thence to Rome. Senators and people, Priests  
and Pontiff, hailed the Emperor regnant and the  
Emperor designate. The young Sovereign's  
appearance was exceedingly prepossessing. He  
fully inherited his father's spirit, whilst his mo-  
ther's beauty predominated in his outward form.  
Small in stature, sweet the expression of his  
countenance, smiling lips, fresh coloured cheeks,  
and truly golden-tinted hair : and, on the Feast  
of the Nativity, the second Otho, amidst the  
applause of the Roman people, received the  
Imperial Crown from the Pontiff's hands.

25 Dec., 967.

But, according to Otho's political theory, a  
third element was indispensable for the purpose  
of imparting to the young Otho the pre-eminence  
needed to satisfy the father's aspirations. None  
but an Emperor's daughter—none but the  
Eastern Emperor's daughter,—could become the  
fitting Consort of Imperial Otho's Imperial son.

§ 60. In the course of the last twenty years, or <sup>953-978</sup>  
thereabouts, reckoning retrospectively, of Otho's <sup>Byzantine  
Emperors—  
Constantine  
Porphyro-  
genitus—  
Romanus II.  
—Nicepho-  
rus Phocas—  
John  
Zimiskes.</sup>  
reign, four Sovereigns had successively governed  
or were governing, the Eastern Empire. Three  
amongst these four Sovereigns had espoused the  
unhappily celebrated Theophania, and three of  
the four Sovereigns were successively relieved



954—967

953—973

Theophania  
the elder,  
thrice Em-  
press—Her  
crimes.

Constantine  
poisoned by  
Theophania.

from all earthly troubles by that same fatal charmer. Her origin was ignoble, nay vile; but the low born damsel redeemed her degradation by her beauty and her talent. Yielding to kindness or infirmity of judgment, the celebrated Constantine Porphyrogenitus, permitted his son and heir, Romanus, to select the fascinating girl as his consort. She repaid the affectionate concession which sanctioned her marriage, by poisoning her husband's confiding father: and Romanus, prematurely raised to the throne through the atrocious act, is more than suspected of complicity.

Romanus reaped as he had sown,—the wicked daughter-in-law consistently became the wicked wife. Yet they lived happily together. The wily Theophania's pleasant manner and conversation, her adroitness, and her handsome face, enabled her to mask her wickedness, and to retain an encresing dominion over her husband's affections. Their nuptials were fruitful. Theophania brought forth four children. Two daughters: the eldest, bearing her mother's name, destined to become very prominent in the history of Germany and of France, gifted like her mother, though unstained by that mother's depravity. Two sons also, Basil and Constantine. And, when Romanus, sinking under the effects of the venom scientifically administered by his treacherous partner, anticipated his death, totally ignorant of its

Romanus  
poisoned by  
Theophania.

cause, he, fully depending upon her fidelity and love, nominated her to be the guardian of their sons, and, during their minority, Regentess of the Empire.

964—967  
963—973

Chief amongst the Imperial Generals, Nicephorus Phokas was honoured and trusted by Romanus as the pillar of the throne. Hideously ugly, but endued with equal valour and ability, he had attracted the love of Theophania, or rather provoked her lust. She was constantly gnawed by that direful appetite for crime, so frequently the consequence as well as the punishment of the first misdeed. Romanus, being on his death-bed, Theophania gave birth to an infant, the second daughter, who, like her sister, is rendered memorable in history by her marriage; for Anne became the wife of Vladimir the Great: and this alliance is quoted by the Czars of Russia, as one of the proofs qualifying them to serve themselves heirs to the Eastern Empire. Nicephorus ascended the throne, and Theophania's indecent acceptance of the usurper as her husband, deepened, if possible, the disgrace which her reputation had sustained.

963—969  
Nicephorus  
Phokas.—  
Theophania,  
having  
poisoned  
Romanus for  
his sake,  
instigates  
John  
Zimiskes to  
assassinate  
Nicephorus.

But Theophania had surrendered her soul to the Evil-concupiscence, and she exaggerated her sins. She was captivated by John Zimiskes, the nephew of Nicephorus, a warrior no less valiant than his uncle. John Zimiskes assembled a band of the Emperor's personal enemies. They rowed their boat to the

Theophania's  
co-operation.

954—987

953—973

969—973

John  
Zimiskes  
appointed  
Emperor.

foot of the lofty palace wall. Theophania and her tender-hearted maids of honour and sympathising ladies were ready. The basket descended, and the fair and zealous labourers hauled the pleasant freight—burly Zimiskes and his confederates—up to the window. The assassins burst into the sleeping Emperor's apartment. He was cruelly butchered, John Zimiskes insulting his uncle's dying agonies by kicks and vituperations.—As for Theophania, Zimiskes profited by experience. During the remainder of her life, secluded in a monastery, she was abandoned to the tortures of craving passions and unsatisfied vengeance.

Undeterred by the turpitude of the Byzantine Court, Otho, his mind wholly occupied by his magnificent vision of restoring the Roman Empire to its pristine glory, persevered in his schemes for winning an Imperial Princess as the partner of his son, the young Emperor.

Otho continues persevering in endeavouring to procure a Grecian Princess for his Son.

Constantine Porphyrogenitus had most emphatically warned his successors against the self-degradation, resulting from an alliance with a Western Barbarian. This aversion, — closely paralleled by our European assumption of social superiority over the Orientals, — is generally known through the terse summary of fact and doctrine which we owe to the most popular amongst our standard historians. Yet the progress of society has practically furnished us with a clearer exposition than could be given by a writer who

Gibbon's Decline and Fall, c. 53.

did not live to witness more than the incipient development of the ideas, bound together according to each individual man's views, yet not connoted, by the undefinable term, Civilization. And, for a clearer exposition of the inward feeling entertained by Nicephorus, when a matrimonial connection with the younger Theophania was sought by a Teutscher Emperor, let us imagine the Envoy who represents his Majesty, *Faustin le premier*, seeking to obtain for the Crown Prince of Hayti—whom shall we say?—Not a British Princess; for, in such a contingency, the offer, however unsuitable, would be declined politely and delicately, without any expression of contemptuous horror: but, picture to yourself that same Envoy soliciting the fair daughter of a Senatorial free-soiler, to share the future diadem and throne of his swarthy master's son.

954—987  
954—973

Otho probably expected that Nicephorus would feel fewer scruples than a real Porphyrogenitus, in conceding a Despoena appertaining to the family he had deposed. But though Nicephorus did not acquire the imperial dignity by descent—yea, though he was a usurper,—he had adopted as heir-looms all the principles and practices of his predecessors; and denied assent. Otho, rendered the more eager by opposition, determined to employ military force in aid of amatory persuasion. Had not he wooed and won Adelaide by the sword? Advancing as far as Capua, he menaced the Greek possessions. Nicephorus sought to open negotiations,—

Nicephorus refuses to grant the younger Theophania to Otho II.

Otho attempts to compel assent by attacking the Grecian possessions.

<sup>954—967</sup>  
<sup>954—973</sup> Otho refused, probably expecting some more decided advantage; and his conquests in Apulia, widening and expanding, Byzantine pride condescended to make another overture for peace.

Otho accepted the message, and having raised the siege of Bari, he selected as his Envoy the celebrated Liutprand, Bishop of Cremona. A Lombard, a Paduan, a son of that City, where the love of learning seems to have become adherent to the soil, Liutprand was not unworthy of his birth-place;—a good scholar,—versed in the classics,—possessing a very fair knowledge of the Greek tongue; perhaps, acquired colloquially, for at this period, the vernacular language of the Byzantine Greeks had scarcely departed from their ancestral standard.

<sup>968—</sup>  
 Liutprand's  
 embassy to  
 Constanti-  
 nople.

A previous Legation to Constantine Porphyrogenitus, had made Liutprand well acquainted with his sphere of operations—but the learned Bishop's qualifications for diplomatic agency were more than counterbalanced by his faults of temper; nay, by his talents. Liutprand was a keen observer of character: and, yielding to the temptation so frequently conjoined to the useful gift, he was an uncharitable observer. Proud of his penetration, delighting in discovering the faults and the weaknesses, and the pretences and the sillinesses of all with whom he had to deal, enjoying when he could uncover the nakedness of his neighbours; a lick-spittle, catering for the supply of scandal to please the appetites of others, and, at the same time, gratifying his own.

Liutprand, accompanied by the Papal Legate, proceeded to Byzantium, prepared and ready to bully and ridicule the Court and the Nation, where and amongst whom he was to appear as his Sovereign's Representative. We have a very full account of his Embassy in the form of a journal, addressed to the two Emperors—Otho the father, Otho the son, and also to the Dowager Empress Adelaide.—“Cremona to Constantinople,” ought to figure as the title of the production.—It reads like a Book of the Season.

854—987  
854—973

Liutprand's  
report of  
his Legation.

Much curious information however is contained in this “Libellus.” It conveys the general idea, that the differences between Eastern and Western Europe were no less marked than at the present day, and the sentiments of each party, ignorance, contempt and vanity, counterparted on either side. Liutprand is incessantly groaning at the absence of creature comforts; his miseries deplored in every tone of objurgation and growl. He was starved by the naked splendour of the marble palaces of the Grecian Cæsars. Beds not fit for a dog, if the members of the Legation were so happy as to find any, they being frequently compelled to wrap themselves in their mantles, and bundle themselves up, shivering on the precious tessellated pavement, so splendid and so cold. Sour wine, defiled by tar and gypsum. Disgusting food dished with more disgusting sauce; the main foundation of the feast, however, being generally leeks and garlic and onions, which Nicephorus was wont

Liutprand's  
contem-  
plations—  
views of the  
Greeks.

954—967  
 970—973

to devour. Allowing for a portion of truth in these complaints, arising from differences of custom and taste, it is evident that the greater sobriety and simplicity of living amongst the Greeks, was one of the main causes of offence which the jovial Bishop received.

Vices of the  
 Greeks.

The mission, with which Liutprand was charged, demanded the highest degree of tact, good sense, and good manners. Whatever may have been the corruption, the vileness, and the depravity of the Greeks, they certainly constituted the most refined society of the age, delighting in the literary treasures of their ancestors. Unable to imitate the works of Hellenic art, yet fully competent to appreciate their æsthetic excellence, they also inherited a gift long denied to Western Christendom—the whole of the Scriptures in their own mother tongue. Hence they prided themselves upon their superiority over the Teutonic Barbarians. The remote chance of a favourable result, was frustrated by Bishop Liutprand's pragmatic sneering, and arrogant bearing; and the demand which he made for Theophania, on behalf of the young Emperor, though supported by the Papal Legate, was treated as on the previous occasion. But Nicephorus sustained the dignity of his station, and his negative was conveyed in the most courteous and respectful form.

Nicephorus  
 refuses.

After the  
 death of  
 Nicephorus,  
 11 Dec., 969,  
 Otho treats  
 with  
 Zimiskes,  
 who assents.

After allowing an interval of about a year to elapse, Otho resumed the war in Apulia vigorously, but he sustained many reverses, and the military skill and valour of Nicephorus might

lead him to anticipate formidable resistance. The swords of Zimiskes and his confederates delivered Otho from this perplexity, and revived his hopes. The younger Theophania was an Imperial Princess, but the intrusive Zimiskes, unlike the fellow intruder whom he expelled, did not cling to etiquette : and Theophania's mother, condemned to a life of penance but not of penitence, cast an ugly shadow upon her lovely daughter. Otho was again in the field : he recommenced hostilities, whilst, at the same time, Gero, the Archbishop of Cologne, a better man and better principled than the clever Bishop of Cremona, was despatched, amicably and in due form, with a noble and reverend cortege to Byzantium.

964—987

970—973

Otho's perseverance succeeded. Zimiskes consented ; and, after a decorous delay, the Porphyrogenita started upon her Bridal journey, accompanied by a brilliant escort, bearing rich gifts, such as Byzantine taste and opulence could alone supply. The peace, between the two powers, negotiated at Constantinople, was ratified, and Theophania was welcomed by Otho and the Bridegroom at Rome.

973—  
Peace be-  
tween  
Zimiskes  
and Otho.

The marriage was solemnized by the Pope himself, and the Supreme Pontiff performed the coronation. According to the good old German custom, the "Morning-gift" followed the bridal eve. The Diploma was produced securing to Theophania a fitting dowry ; Istria and Pescara in the South, and an ample provision

973—  
14 April—  
Marriage  
of Otho II.  
and  
Theophania.



969—987  
970—973  
Autumn 973

of domains in the North though singularly dispersed, including, amongst other territories, Walcheren, not yet an Island, and Nivelles, and Boppard on the Rhine.

§ 58. After his long continued trials and triumphs, Otho had attained the highest degree of worldly prosperity. All the objects for which he had striven, won; a heavy yoke imposed upon the Wends of the Marchlands; Germany loyal; Italy, secured and tranquilized; his son, by Adelaide, his darling son, King of Germany, King of Italy, and his fellow Emperor; that alliance concluded, which, according to Otho's long indulged theory, would sustain his pre-eminence, and perpetuate his dominion: and, having made the circuit of Lombardy, he returned to his German home.

Spring 973—  
Otho re-  
turns to  
Germany.

973—  
March—  
Otho at  
Quedlinburg  
—His  
splendid  
court there.

He opened his Court at Quedlinburg with ominous and, to him, afflicting splendour:—The representatives of Rome and Apulia, Magyars and Slavonians, Bulgarians and Russians were there, tendering their tributes of friendship or tokens of subjection. Yet, heavy and sad was Otho at heart; for, whilst hastening homewards to meet that dear old mother, she had been taken away. His friends, fast dropping off. None present in the Hall save Herman the Saxon, oldest and most valued amongst them, and he, being awfully stricken by sudden death during the festival, the meeting was immediately dissolved.

Otho departed from Quedlinburg for the purpose of visiting the newly founded Cathedral of

Merseburg, and thither he was followed by a Saracen deputation; so widely extended was his renown. He then went on to Memleben, a place hallowed by the recollections of the lost parent. On the day of his arrival, the feast of Saint John Port Latin, Otho felt himself fatigued, but he would not desist from any exertion or duty, which, during his long life, he had been accustomed to make or use.

959—987  
970—978  
798—  
6 May—  
Otho arrives  
at Memleben.

On the morrow, he, quitting his couch at midnight, assisted in the service appointed for that solemn hour, when the nocturnal hymn was sung. And again he was roused at the next watch, when the glorious hymn of praise and thanksgiving saluted the renewed day.

Fulgentis Auctor ætheris  
Qui lunam lumen noctibus,  
Solem dierum cursibus  
Certo fundasti tramite.

Laudes sonare jam tuas  
Dies relatus admonet,  
Vultusque cœli blandior  
Nostra serenat pectora.

Otho then again sought rest, but brief were his slumbers, for he rose and heard Mass, and, before he broke his fast, he greeted the Beggars who had assembled, waiting for the alms, always expected—always bestowed.—The Divine commandment, that the Christian shall never turn away his face from the poor man, was not obsolete during the dark ages; for, in guiding the way to all the works of mercy, Gospel-light shone undimmed. If righteousness exalts

978—7 May.  
The course of  
Otho's dying  
day.

969—967

970—973

a people, the Monk might **have asked** through his cowl, whether, in the **long run**, the Mendicant may not contribute more **to the real wealth** of nations than the Millionaire. **In those times**, when simple faith contended earnestly **against sin**, they realized the blessing given **to the blind**, the lame, the halt, who thronged the **pool of Bethesda** and the Beautiful gate of the Temple ; **whilst the** precepts, no less than the examples, of Him and Those who became poor, or blessed **the poor**, forbade their hoiking away the **unsavoury crowd**, encumbering the Church door, **whom** we now should loathe as standing between **the wind** and our gentility.

Otho, tired out, returned to his couch, slept soundly, and awoke refreshed. At the **mid-day** meal, he was cheerful, and enjoyed the repast. He then attended Vespers in that Sanctuary where he had last embraced his Mother ; **and**, it must be borne in mind, that the Congregation continued standing throughout the whole of the Office, a usage then universal throughout Christendom, and still retained by the Greek and all other Anatolian Churches.—Weakness, **and** feverish heat came on, the Nobles around him brought a chair and compelled him to sit down. Fainting, he spake his last words in a request for the Holy Communion, which, having received, he bowed his head and breathed his last breath.

973  
9 May—  
Accession of  
Otho II.

Never was any accession accomplished more tranquilly and under happier auspices than the second Otho's. Otho Fitz-Otho, did not need

election, or unction, or coronation. Full King, full Emperor, on the following morning the people crowded in, tendering their homages, and he entered upon the full exercise of his power.

956—967  
970—973

As the general state of political affairs should be viewed by us with peculiar reference to France and Normandy, we must direct our attention to the fact, that all the mutations and changes in the Court party, affected Lothaire disadvantageously.

Detriment  
resulting to  
the French  
interest by  
the changes  
ensuing in  
the German  
Court.

Since the death of Louis d'Outremer, the two Realms, Germany and France, had been governed virtually as one family. Otho the elder, Gerberga's brother, had always acted faithfully in protecting his nephew, and with as much unselfishness as could be reasonably demanded.—Like proverbial charity, a Monarch's patriotism must begin at home. Lothaire had been already deprived of Gerberga's benign companionship. But, at first, the whole weight of the blow was not felt. So long as Matilda lived, her age, her ability, her earnest affection towards her children, and children's children, that affection, pervaded by her humble piety, imparted an influence which all obeyed, smoothing any asperities which might arise.

Undisturbed, unalloyed harmony, had always subsisted between Matilda and Adelaide. The dispathy between the Mother-in-law and the Daughter-in-law is a catholic proverb, and such proverbs are melancholy, though veracious, exponents of human nature. The mutual love and

969-987

970-973

Jealousies  
between  
Adelaide and  
Theophania.

concord uniting the two Empresses offered a rare exception to the general rule, an exception probably based upon their cognate virtues. But, when Matilda died, then Adelaide and Theophania followed the normal principle of opposition. Theophania's modes of thought and action were thoroughly national; thoroughly a Greek, thoroughly a daughter of Hellas, light, cheerful, ready, witty, enjoying the elegancies to which she had been born, and very proud of the intellectuality and the cultivation, and the valour of her compatriots and native land. Adelaide, sad, sober-minded, prayerful, and devout. Therefore the characters of the Empress Mother and the Empress Consort heightened their mutual aversions.

For a brief while, Adelaide was called into council by Otho, but Theophania very soon acquired that ascendancy over her fond husband which she retained during the whole of his life. Adelaide quitted her son's Palace, and found a temporary home in the dominions of her kinsman, Conrad the Pacific, King of Burgundy and of Arles. Ere long, a reconciliation ensued: Otho was attached to his mother, and his wife conquered her inimical feelings, or made believe. But there are kindships whose contact produces combustion, and the flames broke out again.

Theophania  
and Emma  
mutually  
alienated.

When the pacification had been effected between Theophania and Adelaide, then Otho's half-sister, Adelaide's daughter, Lothaire's Queen, the Italian Emma, became the object of Theophania's inveterate dislike. Both the witty

Ladies had sharp tongues, and it is possible, <sup>959—967</sup>  
 though not certain, that Theophania, whose repu- <sup>950—973</sup>  
 tation as a woman was spotless, may not have  
 been satisfied with Emma's moral character, and  
 therefore excusably, if her suspicions were true,  
 became more alienated from the half-sister-  
 in-law.

§ 62. But now, a new and far more energetic  
 agency began to operate; emanating from a planet  
 sometimes unseen, sometimes very evident, often  
 scarcely discernible, yet felt to be constantly  
 attracting and repelling; accelerating and re-  
 tarding the course of the orbs; now invisible,  
 and now bursting out with portentous effulgency.  
 This was Gerbert, who, having returned from  
 the Saracen lands,—his fame always proclaiming  
 him, became most conspicuous in Germany and  
 the Gauls.

Gerbert of  
 Aurillac—  
 his influence  
 in the Ger-  
 man and  
 French  
 Courts.

Some say that Otho, who warmly encouraged  
 scientific knowledge, had been previously placed  
 under Gerbert's tuition. Any how, this renowned  
 Teacher was much patronized by the Monarch,  
 through whose gift or influence he obtained the  
 important Abbey of Bobbio. Gerbert had na-  
 turally many enemies amongst his compeers.  
 Ottric the Scholasticus of Magdeburgh stood  
 pre-eminent. He contested Gerbert's estimate  
 of the relations between Physics and Mathe-  
 matics. The Saxon challenged the Frenchman  
 to a disputation. The literary Tournament was  
 fought before Otho; but the growing bulk of this  
 volume warns me to delete the interesting inci-

Gerbert pa-  
 tronized by  
 Otho II.

969—987

977—980

dent. In consequence of the opposition thus raised against Gerbert, his reputation naturally spread more and more. Otho's favour encreased. Theophania's friendship was also gained. Such was Gerbert's adroitness, that he wormed himself into connection with Emma, and yet escaped committing himself to her party. We trace him in the pestilent character of a house-friend, a married woman's confidential adviser, whilst at the same time he enlisted himself silently and secretly as a powerful partisan on the Capetian side, and thus in his heart—if figuratively Gerbert can be said to have had any—he was almost equally opposed to the Carolingian interest; as will more fully appear.

967 to 978  
Chasm in all  
primary  
authorities  
of French  
history.

§ 63. After Lothaire's marriage with Emma, we are stayed in our work by a yawning chasm in French history. An interval of about eleven years comes before us, during which, Frodoardus, dead, Richerius maintains an obstinate silence, and we are enabled to resume our narrative, only by turning out of our way, till we find a footing beyond. All the information we possess during this period concerning the events and fortunes, personal or national, of the French King and the French Commonwealth, are collected from casual notices in a few meagre annalists.

969—  
Death of  
Odalricus,  
Archbishop  
of Rheims.  
971—  
Adalbero  
promoted in  
his place.

Upon the death of Odalricus, Adalbero was raised to the See of Rheims, and Asceline promoted to Laôn. Hugh Capet was steadily advancing in his career; his followers and adherents multiplying, and his station during the

rapid progress of the feudality which his father had created, was defined. The confederacy between Hugh and Richard became firmer; and, at length, the third Dynasty was really founded through Hugh's espousals. It is somewhat unaccountable that Hugh Capet, so consistently and sagaciously ambitious, had not, long previously, resolved upon this step, by which alone his destiny, as the founder of a new Dynasty, could be satisfactorily fulfilled: until then, his weird was only inchoate.

969—987  
977—980

The circumstances attending this match, exemplify the collapse of historical evidence during this perplexed era. A letter from Gerbert is extant, probably written from Bobbio, in which he enquires whether the "Abbacomes" had yet taken a wife. Whether or no the wedding had been actually solemnized we cannot ascertain; but the Count-Abbot of Saint Denys had found, or did find, a proper consort—one fit to become a Queen,—much about the time when the matter had excited Gerbert's curiosity.

969—970—  
Marriage of  
Hugh Capet  
with  
"Adelaide,"  
or Adela,  
probably  
either the  
daughter or  
the grand-  
daughter of  
Guillaume  
Tête-  
d'Etope.

Again, however, we labour under strange difficulties. Unquestionably the Lady was of illustrious birth, yet no certain information can be discovered identifying her lineage; at least none which genealogists admit to be certain. On the whole, we incline to the conjecture, that Adelaide, for so we must call her, was the daughter either of our old acquaintance Guillaume Tête-d'Etope, or of Guillaume Fier-à-bras, his son; and, therefore, niece or grand-niece of the



959—967

977—980

Capet's firm friend, the Norman Richard; either the daughter or grand-daughter of his sister Adela, whose wooing by Tête-d'Etope we may remember in the Forest of Lions. According to the one supposition, she must have been rather aged, according to the alternative, rather youthful: but, be that as it may, Robert, afterwards King of France, was the only son born of the marriage.

Unhappy  
situation of  
Charles, the  
brother of  
Lothaire.

§ 64. So long as Lothaire was destitute of any lawful issue, or issue acknowledged as lawful, Charles, his only brother, was a personage of importance in the Community: but the births of Louis and the forgotten Otho having taken place, as far as we can calculate, about two years previously to Gerberga's death, Charles then lost his political value. Placed in a very difficult and invidious position, worse off in the world than the meanest vassal, not being master of a Mansus which he could call his own; he was literally without the means of subsistence. Charles was therefore taken into the Palace, an act of ambiguous kindness, adopted as the performance of duty under compulsion,—a case in which the fulfilment of the obligation, often occasions more pain than the refusal.

Flesh and blood could not be otherwise than discontented. The younger, dissatisfied; the elder, suspicious. That, upon the death of Louis d'Outremer, the Kingdom, according to antient constitutional principles, ought to have

been divided between the brothers, was decided by a comparatively recent precedent—the con-  
 joint reigns of Louis and Carloman. Probably,  
 on account of extreme youth, no reservation was  
 made in favour of the infant Charles, when  
 Lothaire became King. If not admitted to the  
 share of the Kingdom, then an apanage was his  
 right. This claim may have been conceded theo-  
 retically; but small good could be got by such an  
 acknowledgment,—there were no assets. Why  
 should not Charles have received an adequate  
 provision as the Lay-incumbent of some well-  
 endowed monastery?—Alas there were now none  
 in the King's gift.—The Abbacomes, Hugh  
 Capet occupied them all.

959—987  
 977—980

Extreme  
 destitution  
 of Charles.

Throughout the whole of these most in-  
 structive but deplorable annals, we have seen,  
 generation after generation—how the worm at  
 the root was working the decay and dissolution  
 of Charlemagne's doomed Empire.—Much censure  
 has been passed upon the young Prince by his ill-  
 wishers whilst living, and these exaggerations  
 have been subsequently heightened by the con-  
 tempt of the unfortunate, natural to all mankind.  
 All the Chroniclers after the accession of the  
 Capets, conjoin in defaming Charles. It was then  
 of no consequence, he was quiet in his grave. In  
 Capetian times he was recollected only as a rebel  
 against authority, unlegitimated by success;—  
 unpopularity is a crime in popular history. He  
 is represented as rude, boorish, disregarding the  
 needful courtesies of society. The only example

Charles  
 unfairly  
 depreciated.

959—967

970—973

adduced of his roughness, though great stress is laid upon it, does not possess much relevancy. Possibly, however, there may have been some foundation for the charge. Adversity is rarely so profitable a teacher as represented in our great Dramatist's fallacious verse; rather the contrary. Misfortune often hardens the heart more than prosperity.—When the cold blast falls upon the youthful branch, the fruit is usually soured.

Charles  
faithful to  
Lothaire  
until pro-  
voked by  
Emma.

In after life, Charles could appeal to the fidelity with which he had served Lothaire, when his aid was required; and if Lothaire failed, or perhaps was forced by want of means to fail, in rendering justice to his younger brother, yet he never shewed any ill-will against him.

Not so, malapert Emma. She fully manifested the disgust which the poor relation gave her. Humiliated, even stinted in food, Charles was drenched with the bitterness of dependence and poverty. Life became a burden to him, and truly did the future Pretender to a lawful inheritance, —Pretender because unlucky,—feel the crushing weight of another's roof, giving grudging shelter. Emma's insolence became intolerable. Charles delivered himself from his persecutrix by breaking away and seeking his fortune. Charles's history has descended to us only in fragments, but, though unable to track him distinctly in his career, we can sufficiently appreciate his courage, activity, versatility, and adventurous spirit.

Charles  
quits the  
Palace and  
seeks his  
fortune.

He gained influence. Some may have joined

him from sympathy; others impelled by enmity against the Carlovingians, vassals of Hugh Capet for example: Eudes also, the son of Herbert of Vermandois. The times were promising to the Adventurer. Germany and Italy much disturbed. An insurrection broke out in Lorraine. Renier, the expelled Count of Hainault, assisted by his brother Lambert, endeavoured to recover Mons, otherwise Bergen. Charles seized the opportunity. No apanage had been reserved for Charles. He determined to win one.

Lorraine was an antient Carlovingian inheritance. Lothaire had lost the "Regnum Lotharii," and Charles planned to acquire a compensation in that Realm, so influential from its position between Germany and France. After various evolutions, he became the staunch adherent of the Emperor. He now stood in his proper place. Charles and Theophania were united by their common antipathy against Emma. Good haters keep together more steadily than fond lovers. To earn Theophania's favour, was to command Otho's; and Charles was encouraged by a brief dawn of prosperity.

Cutting our way through a most obscure, perplexed, and litigious passage, we will arrive at the results. Otho distinguished the one Cousin by an act the most offensive to the other. He granted to Charles the "Duchy of Lorraine." The nature and extent of this same grant has been the subject of elaborate critical

Lorraine granted to Charles by Otho, as a fief of the Empire.

959—987

970—973

enquiry ; but, for our purposes, it is sufficient to know, that Charles is accepted by all the historical disputants as first amongst the hereditary Dukes of the “Basse-Lorraine;” and, having received investiture, he became a Vassal of the Emperor.

Charles had already encreased his authority by matrimony, for he obtained the hand of Bona, who, (here again turning away from a thorny field of genealogical controversy,) we believe to have been the daughter of Godfrey the elder, Count of the Ardennes, and sister of the second Godfrey, the latter appointed by Otho as Duke, or rather Governor, of Brabant. Three children were born to Charles, of this, his first marriage. A second union was contracted with the affectionate Adela, the daughter of the Vermandois Count Herbert, who piously shared in, and comforted her husband's misfortunes.

977—  
Bishop  
Asceline  
and Queen  
Emma  
accused of  
adultery  
by common  
report.

§ 65. And now, we are suddenly startled by the fearful though dim apparition of Emma and Asceline shrouded in guilt. Whether really culpable or not, no human being will ever be able to tell. A popular excitement arose, founded either upon foul depravity or fouler calumny, such, as in France, has so repeatedly sounded the tocsin of civil war and revolution. It was universally believed that Asceline and Emma had committed adultery. None but the Husband could touch the Queen. The Husband moved not.—No Accuser stood forward.—No specific

charge had been made.—The reports, nevertheless, were spread loudly and universally : and the Bishops of the Province felt it their duty that so grave an imputation against a Prelate, should become the subject of judicial investigation.

959—987  
970—973

Archbishop Adalbero convened a Provincial Synod, to be held in the Abbey Church of Sainte Macre, at Fismes. Many important affairs having been discussed,—“ *et postquam Metropolitanus*”

Synod  
convened to  
enquire into  
the accusation.

\* \* \* \* \* and then ! What then ? We know not—we never shall know : Richerius,—roused from his long silence, commences the record, but, in the midst of the paragraph, he cuts the parchment away.

§ 66. The proposition that affection descends from the elder to the younger,—from parent to offspring—is fairly certain. The ascent, from offspring to parent,—more doubtful.—Between kindred on the same level, that is to say, between brothers and sisters, reasonably probable, though not to be predicted confidently,—between collaterals in the next remove,—a mere chance—what you please.

Otho the Uncle entertained much regard for Lothaire. Otho fitz-Otho and Lothaire, the Cousins, envied and hated each other. Lothaire was enraged by the Emperor's assumption of the superiority over Lorraine : and, if Lothaire did not include Theophania in his enmity, he assuredly neglected the consideration due to her sex and dignity. Otho had openly called and proclaimed a

959—987

978—980

Diet at Aix-la-Chapelle, the meeting to eventuate in the pleasant summer season—Midsummer bright,—St. John the Baptist's day. And he stationed himself there, and Theophania accompanied him. She was in a condition which might have excused her journey. But Otho clung closely to the lovely woman.

978—  
Lothaire  
prepares to  
insult Otho  
and  
Theophania.

Convention  
of the  
nobles at  
Laôn.

Lothaire determined upon hostilities. The Duke of the Franks, Hugh Capet, was, in the first instance, summoned specially.—Lacking his assistance could Lothaire expect to succeed? The Capet and all the other Nobles of the Kingdom, were convened at Laôn.

Hugh Capet  
agrees to join  
Lothaire  
against Otho.

Lothaire came to a full agreement with the Duke, a most important, nay indispensable preliminary—King and Duke, (or we may almost say, Duke and King,) ratified an alliance. It was agreed that Otho should be treated as their common enemy. Otherwise than by joint assent, neither of the contracting parties was to make peace with him.

978—  
Lothaire  
marches  
against  
Aix-la-  
Chapelle.

This private conference concluded, the Nobles were introduced. Not merely (as Lothaire addressed them) had the Saxon Emperors usurped a large portion of the Kingdom, but Otho had now insulted France, menacing the frontier. Lothaire appealed for support to their sense of national honour. They expressed their patriotism by acclamation. A very large army speedily assembled. Skilfully organized, each Battalion mustered under its peculiar banner, each Century

headed by a Centurion. Their line of march was towards the Meuse.

859—897  
978—980

The French army crossed without opposition. Rumours of the intended invasion had reached Otho. He would not believe the intelligence, but comforted himself by the persuasion, that Lothaire would never dare. A reconnaissance convinced him of the truth, and he determined to abandon Aix-la-Chapelle. But the enemy's advance was so rapid, and Otho's forces so scanty, that he could not hazard the collision; and, with the burdened Theophania weeping and wailing, fled from Aix-la-Chapelle to Cologne.—Sharp work.—But a few hours later, and had not Lothaire been impeded by the baggage, the Emperor and the Empress would have surely been captured.

Flight of  
Otho and  
Theophania.

They evaded in the evening:—early the following morning Lothaire was in possession of Aix-la-Chapelle. The Halls of Charlemagne swarmed with the soldiers. The banquet tables, overturned; provisions and good cheer, rejoicing the rascallions of the army; the royal jewel-house, plundered. Having thus humiliated his adversary, some unexplained motive induced Lothaire to sound a retreat, and he evacuated the hallowed Pfaltz without any benefit from the enterprise, unless we construe as such the fancy that he had avenged an insult, which the French supposed they had received by the position of the Eagle, crowning the structure.

The Pfaltz  
plundered  
and abandoned  
by  
Lothaire.



959—987

978—980

Charle-  
magne's  
Eagle.

This Imperial bird, planted according to tradition, had been placed on the summit by Charlemagne, looked Westward, and was construed to be an hieroglyphical token signifying that Germany claimed the Continent as far as the land extended; or that the Germans would always drive the French before them. In all probability, Charlemagne never dreamt of any such allegorical meaning; and the aspect assigned to the antient symbol, was either accidental, or suggested by the direction of the building whose axis necessitated an entrance at the Western end. An imaginary offence was effaced by an equivalent reparation. The French whirled the Eagle round, pointing his beak eastward, as an omen that, by France, Germany should be ruled. Lothaire and his troops occupied the city during three days. No advantages had been gained, save and except the practical refutation of an hypothetical practical joke and the vexation given to Otho and his consort: yet, so highly did the inglorious victor exult in this silly triumph, that he dated the Charters he issued during the then current year, as of the year in which he had chased away the Emperor.

The Raid of Aix-la-Chapelle wears almost a ludicrous aspect, but the instigating causes were deep seated. A bitter, because contemptuous rivalry existed between Germany and France, and the national dispathies were becoming personal enmities on the part of the two kings. Possibly Lothaire expected co-operation from

the party opposed to Theophania, and was disappointed.

959—967  
973—980

If, however, he intended to anger his Compeer, he obtained his end. Otho invited the Lieges to assist him in revenging the degradation brought upon them by Lothaire. The German Nobles responded unanimously, rivaling the French in zeal. Thirty thousand Saxons and Bavarians and Suabians obeyed their Emperor's call. But, before commencing hostilities, he despatched a Herald, authorized to make the declaration of war.—Otho, as the message imported, had been perfidiously attacked in the midst of peace, yet he would not retaliate. He gave warning to Lothaire that on the first day of the then next month of October, he would encounter the son of Charlemagne face to face, and put an end to his government: or, in other words, depose him from the throne. In this attitude of the Challenger, we may discern the dawning spirit of conventional honour gilding the ockamy shield of Chivalry: but neither then, nor at any time, did Chivalry actually and conscientiously forbid any tortuous conduct which the *ragione di stato* might dictate. The manifesto did not exclude, or rather was intended to conceal, the secret machinations between Otho and Lothaire's subjects. The invasion may not have been directly instigated by the profound politician, Archbishop Adalbero, but the course

Otho's  
chivalrous  
challenge to  
Lothaire.

959—997

was pursued according to the information he gave.

978—980

978—  
Lothaire  
retreats be-  
yond the  
Seine.—  
Hugh Capet  
occupies  
Paris.

The ardour which Lothaire evinced whilst he was Otho's assailant, cooled. His retreat was simultaneous with the progress of Otho's invasion. Disregarding the recreancy, and, taking refuge at as great a distance as he could, Lothaire passed over the Seine, seeking assistance from the only supporter who could really aid him, Hugh Capet. They met at Estampes, and the Duke acted cautiously but resolutely.

Otho, on his part, advancing, proceeded vigorously. It was for Lothaire to take up the gauntlet or not: if not, upon him, the disgrace of faint-heartedness would fall.

Otho's line of  
march.

In the first instance, Otho directed his march towards Rheims, which he occupied. His gifts testified his veneration for Saint Remigius, and his gratitude to Adalbero. Churches and Monasteries were mostly spared. But the royal domains and demesnes fared otherwise. Compiègne, which had recovered some portion of her antient splendour, was pillaged again: and how Otho enjoyed the blaze, whilst famous Attigny was flaming!

Otho en-  
camps before  
Paris.—Lo-  
thaire disap-  
pears.—The  
Capet raises  
his standard.

The German troops expanded themselves over the country all around.—Otho came up to the Seine, and encamped before Paris. Lothaire disappears.—Hugh Capet had continued for a short time beyond the river, but, collecting his forces, he then shut himself

up in Paris, where he unfurled his standard. Paris becomes henceforth more and more prominent in French history. The island, protected by the walls and the water, seems to have been viewed by Otho as impregnable, and he therefore determined to draw Hugh Capet out of his stronghold:—more easily said than done.—The Capet never leapt his horse till he came to the hedge. Careful consideration and astuteness characterised the Capet; he never exposed himself to any danger he could avoid; never disdained any expedient by which he could steal away from peril, but worked out his plans by brain and tongue.

969—987

978—990

Otho was perplexed by this calmness, and sought to give such a provocation as the Capet could not tolerate. Lothaire had proved craven, but the challenge stood. The Germans, teased by the delay, and agreeing with their Sovereign, determined to test the enemy's pluck in right chivalrous fashion. A full armed Ritter rode forth forward alone, and affronting the well-known gate of the Châtelet Bridge, so strongly secured by bars and chains, he defied the enemy.

The Parisian  
garrison  
challenged  
by a German  
Knight.

He hooted and hallooed, bullying the garrison. The Edeling scene was enacted again. Hugh and his captains were stung to the quick. The shame must be effaced: but the steady senior knights sagely avoided exposing themselves to danger, and exhorted the younger Bachelors to vindicate their honour. Ivo ac-

Ivo accepts  
the chal-  
lenge.

959—987

978—980

cepted the challenge. Who Ivo was, or whence Ivo came, we know not, and, if Richerius, besides marking his sense of Ivo's prowess by writing the young hero's name in capitals, had given some information which would identify the Warrior, we should have been more satisfied.

The bolts were drawn, the chains clattered, the draw-bridge dropt, the portal opened, and out galloped the Champion. The contest was carried on unhandsomely. The Combatants abused and vituperated each other. The German fell. Ivo stripped the corpse, and presented the dead man's weapons and armour to the Duke as a trophy. The draw-bridge drew up, the gates closed, the bolts shot, the keys turned, and matters remained as before.

978—  
Oct.—Nov.  
The Halle-  
lujah of  
Mont Martre  
—The pre-  
lude to  
Otho's  
retreat.

§ 67. Winter drew on: Saint Martin's brief snatch of autumnal summer had faded away:—Paris, provokingly silent. No overtures from the French. Otho, therefore, inspired by that odd combination of bravado and jocularly, not unfrequently displayed during the florid and renaissance periods of Gothic Chivalry, resolved, if possible, to incense the impassive Hugh, taunting him with the threat, that Paris Streets should ring with the German Hallelujah; implying that the chaunt would celebrate the City's subjugation. Hugh, however, moved not, and why should he? Otho made and continued making preparations for retreat, but, in the meanwhile, a bevy of Clerks and Priests congregated upon

Mont Martre, as leaders of the chorus. They were accompanied by a very numerous vocal band of soldiers, and they raised the solemn Hallelujah hymn, so sonorously, so bravely, that, as the story goes, their rich full-toned German voices were distinctly heard within Paris walls. Having thus indulged his humour, Otho carried his determination into effect. No blood had been shed, except that of the unfortunate Champion. The season was lowering. Sickness had broken out. But, before the imperfect blockade was actually abandoned, Otho took leave of Paris, and most characteristically galloped up to the Châtelet and pinned his quivering lance in the door-valve as a remembrance of the bootless enterprise; and about the third week in November, he began his retrograde movement through the Rhemois towards the Aisne, the weather becoming coarser and coarser.

958—987  
978—980

Lothaire of whom we have heard so little, had, nevertheless, been doing much. Satisfied that Hugh Capet was sufficiently able to defend Paris, he had re-assembled his army for the purpose of surprising Otho in the rear, exactly following the enemies' route. In order to understand an important passage of this narrative, it must be noticed that Geoffrey Grigonnelle, Count of Anjou, had joined the King, and they reached the Aisne at the very end of dismal November, Saint Andrew's day. When

978—  
30 Nov.—  
1 Dec.—  
The battle  
of the Aisne.

959—967

978—980

Otho came up, the water was spreading and rising, and the transit threatened difficulties. Count Godfrey of Verdun, chief in the German army, Archbishop Adalbero's brother, therefore advised Otho to cross the yet fordable river, as speedily as possible: but it became needful to leave, on the other side, a portion of the troops and all the baggage.

Well as Otho might have become acquainted with the country, Lothaire knew it better. He had caught up to the enemy by availing himself of short cuts and bye-ways; and the larger number of the Germans, left with the baggage and surprised by Lothaire, and trying to escape by swimming, were drowned. Otho was exceedingly mortified and enraged by the difficulty of encountering his opponents. Soon as the water could be navigated, he again sent forward his Heralds in a tiny boat, inviting the French King to a fair battle in open field.—Let the war be decided by that one combat. Unto whom God shall give the Land, to him shall the Land belong.—By all means, shouted Geoffrey Grisgonnelle, repudiating any pretensions to loyalty or military glory. Why should so many of us be exposed to danger, for the sake of those two men? The Kings must fight it out with their own swords; we will look on. Whichever of them may be vanquished, we will follow the victor.

Tepidity of  
Geoffrey of  
Anjou con-  
trasted with  
Godfrey of  
Verdun's  
chivalry.

Had Lothaire proposed the duel, there cannot be any doubt but that Otho would gladly have

accepted the defiance: but this cool cowardice excited the indignation of the Germans, and the Verdun Count Godfrey returned a contemptuous answer. We have always heard, quoth he, how vilely you Frenchmen despise your King, now we know it. Never will we allow our Emperor thus to peril himself whilst we can serve him by our own blood, though your own King would assuredly fall.

959—967  
978—980

Neither party attempted any further military operations. Each consoled himself by shaping the intelligence so as to look best. Lothaire, according to the French authorities, chased Otho until he found shelter in the shades of the Ardennes. The Germans recount how Otho returned victoriously to his dominions; but the Sovereigns were so evenly matched, that neither party risked the conflict again.

§ 68. We are now opening the last scenes of the tremendous drama.—The intentions of Hugh Capet were as well known as if he had claimed the throne by manifesto, though the extreme caution of the Chieftain restrained him from committing himself either by word or deed until the appointed time.—A strange story had been floating in the Gauls, that Saint Valery, appearing in a vision to the Capet, had promised the kingdom of France to him and his heirs until the seventh generation. The condition annexed to the gift was easy enough.—The Duke must cause the Saint's relics and those of his companion,

979—980—  
Approaching  
catastrophe  
of the Carlo-  
vingian race  
—anticipa-  
tions of the  
Capetian  
revolution.



969—987

978—980

Saint Riquier, to be translated from Flanders into France, and the Realm shall be his reward.

This, amongst idle legends the idlest, deserves to be quoted only as shewing that the acquisition of the Crown by the Capet was distinctly anticipated. We have a confused report that Arnoul the younger, now governing Flanders, refused to surrender the relics until compelled by force, whereupon the Capet attacked Montreuil.

General  
anxiety pre-  
vailing in  
France.

Throughout the Realm, much discontent was prevailing. Emma, who appeared fully justified in her husband's opinion, was becoming more and more unpopular. The mephitic mists which blasted her reputation, were curling and rising densely from the ground. Hugh Capet's partizans were multiplying; numerous, powerful, ready at a moment's call.

Adalbero the Archbishop of Rheims, he, whose vote might determine the succession, was wholly alienated from the Carlovingian line. In the secular Estate, Hugh possessed one adherent, not less influential in his position than the Archbishop—Richard of Normandy,—Hugh-le-Grand's liege-man, Hugh Capet's liege-man, whose antipathy to the freckled Lothaire was connected with the boy's earliest recollections, aggravated by the inveterate enmity which he had experienced from him as a man.

Theophania's jealousy against Emma continued unabated. She, therefore, held with the Capet; and, in the background we may discern mys-

terious Gerbert, soon to rejoice in diffusing the intelligence that Lothaire reigned only in name. Lothaire's situation was truly perilous. Hugh Capet continued in nominal alliance with him; but though no one talked about the future, every one felt what that future threatened. Clear-sighted Otho could not be outwitted; powerful Otho could not be beaten. Hugh Capet might be bought or won over to the Imperial party; and, difficult as the process of obtaining Otho's amity might be, on account of Theophania's adverse influence, yet Lothaire's main chance of safety was by gaining his cousin over. Circumstances facilitated the measure. Rome, as usual, was in a state of chronic rebellion. Lothaire acted prudently, consulting those whom he could trust. They advised him to resume his connection with the Emperor. Could Otho's co-operation be secured, not only might it be possible to put down the Capet, but all the other dissatisfied Nobles, brought into due subjection.

Lothaire therefore despatched able ambassadors to Otho. They represented on his behalf, that the quarrel had been fomented by fraudulent advisers. Otho and Lothaire, kinsmen, ought to unite in mutual defence: Lothaire would watch Otho's interests, whilst the latter should defend the more distant Provinces of his Realm.

Otho met Lothaire at La Marlée on the Cher, the frontier station common to France and Lorraine. The French King was supported by a

958—987

978—980

Lothaire's  
precarious  
situation.

980—

Conference  
between Lo-  
thaire and  
Otho at La  
Marlée.

959—987  
 978—981

Lothaire  
 cedes all his  
 rights over  
 Lorraine.

numerous assemblage of Abbots and Prelates, Princes and Nobles, just as when he met Richard of Normandy at the Fosse-Givolde. Otho was accompanied in like manner. The two Sovereigns exchanged their promises of enduring peace, embraces ensued, and hand joined hand. The particulars of the pacification are imperfectly known: their general tenor, unquestionable. Lothaire, King of the Gauls, abandoning all his rights and pretensions over Lorraine, openly and solemnly renounced the dominions, and granted the same to be held without let or interference from the French, and be subjected for ever to the German Empire. The oaths of the French Prelates and Nobles, confirmed the cession. —These transactions relating to Lorraine constitute one of the most vexed questions in early French History, and were not without diplomatic importance in the age of good Queen Anne and Louis Quatorze.

980—  
 June—July.  
 Otho and  
 Theophania  
 at Nimeguen.

Lothaire returned to Laôn, carefully watching the adverse parties, for he fully expected that some movement would soon be made. Otho departed with Theophania to Aix-la-Chapelle. He was preparing for a Roemer-zug, but an anxious, though joyous, expectation delayed him. From Aix-la-Chapelle, he and Theophania, proceeded to Nimeguen, where the then celebrated sanctuary probably rivalled the world-renowned Aix-la-Chapelle, in architectural symmetry, though not equally magnificent.

Nigh Nimeguen there was a fine forest. The forest lodge afforded a pleasant residence to the Imperial family, and here its number was increased. Theophania brought forth her only son,—the third and last Otho. Hence the happy father journeyed to distracted Italy; and, during four years did various most urgent affairs detain Otho beyond the Alps. Otho entered Rome without opposition, and, if the narrative be veracious, a fearful punishment was inflicted upon those who had rebelled against him,—tremendous yet not politically useless, as he thereby consolidated his power.

959—987  
978—981

§ 69. Meanwhile, France was all in a ferment. The terms of the compact between Lothaire and Otho became speedily known. It is a proof of Lothaire's political vitality, that his combination with Otho excited great alarm amongst the Capetian party. They loudly expressed their anger. Not so, their sedate Chief. Hugh did not hurry himself, and the measures which he adopted were decided by solemn deliberation. He summoned his Vassals. All who had taken the oaths of allegiance to him and had placed their hands between his hands, attended. We have heard, long since, how clearly and cogently Hugh-le-Grand had expounded the advantages of "Commenation." It was, according to his elucidation of social doctrine, a duty which every Landowner owed to himself, and to the State. The Capet adopted his father's traditions, and worked them out most successfully.

981—  
Agitation in  
France,—the  
Capetian  
party  
alarmed.

Hugh Capet  
assembles his  
Vassals.

959—987

978—981

A very large and influential body of Feudatories acknowledged him as their Suzerain. So widely had the Capetian interest extended, that Burchard of Montmorency, the nephew or grand nephew of the Anglo-Saxon King Edred, was necessarily entered upon the roll. Richard of Normandy who, in his Charters, so carefully quotes the consent given by the "Princeps Francorum" his Suzerain, was assuredly present. It was the boast of the Normans that he was Hugh Capet's most useful and powerful ally, counsellor, and adviser.

Par le conseil del grant Barnage  
 E par la force de Richart,  
 Par son conseil et son art  
 Fu Hugon Chapes recéu,  
 Et en France pour Rei tenu.  
 Par Richart e par sa valor ;  
 Ki eu avait sa seror  
 Par son conseil e par s'amur  
 Fu de France, Huon Seignur.

981—  
 Hugh-le-Grand consults his Vassals, who advise him to detach Otho from Lothaire.

Hugh, in this memorable assembly, preferred grievous charges against Lothaire, intimating that his life was endangered. He inveighed bitterly against Otho's duplicity and treachery, and urged the Lieges to afford council and aid. A cautious and well considered answer was returned. Sympathizing with the Capet, they nevertheless felt their own responsibilities. However greatly the monarchy power had waned, the regal prerogatives were still respected and dreaded. They were reluctant to appear in the character of rebels against the King. That ghastly head which rolled round the block, before the

gates of Dijon, had made a forcible impression <sup>950—987</sup>  
 upon the national mind. A war against the united <sup>978—981</sup>  
 Monarchs would be perilous. Lothaire, supported by Otho's Germans, might desolate the country. They therefore suggested that subtlety should be opposed to craft; and, it would be more advisable to detach the Emperor from his new-formed alliance, by quiet means.

An embassy dispatched to Otho was very favourably received. Otho entertained the overture joyfully, and replied that he was most ready to re-accept the Capet as a friend. But Otho's courtesy did not exclude the proud assertion of his Imperial dignity.—Such a treaty could not be properly concluded, otherwise than by the contracting parties in person, but if the Capet repaired to Rome, due honour should be rendered to him. — “*Tutte le strade vanno a Roma*,” was the adage of the Empire.

The Capet proceeded accordingly on his southward road, accompanied by the eloquent and energetic Arnoul, Bishop of Orleans. Otho received his illustrious visitant in the Palace of the Cæsars: but when Hugh and the Bishop were introduced to the Imperial presence, the attendants quitted them at the portal, and they, entering the vaulted Hall, found Otho alone. There sat he in solitary magnificence. By his side, a curule chair, such as was afterwards treasured in the Abbey of Saint Denis, and reputed to be famous King Dagobert's antient

981—  
 Hugh Capet  
 repairs to  
 Otho at  
 Rome.

959—987

978—981

Interview  
between  
Otho and the  
Capet.

throne; and, lying, upon that chair, the Sword of state. Otho, according to the etiquette of the Imperial Court, addressed the Bishop in Latin, the language of Church and State, and also of diplomatic intercourse, until almost recent times.

Otho was very gracious.—No recrimination, not a complaining word,—and he kissed the Duke, welcoming him in the character of a friend. After a lengthened conversation, Otho rose, as about to quit the chamber; and, whilst rising, his eye glancing at the sword, Hugh Capet, thrown off his guard by the awfulness of the Imperial dignity, stepped back with the intention of taking up the ensign of power, so that he might be distinguished by bearing the consecrated blade. Now this was the very reason why Otho had left the Sword upon the chair, expecting that when he went forth to join his Courtiers, Hugh would, by the force of habit, go after him as an inferior; exhibiting himself in the character of a vassal, comparatively of low degree.

But Bishop Arnoul, a man of ready wit,—perceived the artifice: and, snatching the sword from the Duke's hand; he reverently followed the Emperor. Though baulked by the Bishop's prudence and acuteness, yet Otho admired his cleverness exceedingly, and was accustomed, when he told the story, to praise him highly, for his wariness in preserving his own Sovereign's honour. And the negotiations having

Otho agrees  
to become  
Hugh's ally  
against  
Lothaire.

been thus happily concluded, Otho caused the Capet to be conducted with great worship to the Alpine Passes. 980—987  
978—981

§ 70. In the meanwhile, during the absence of Hugh, his intent being easily conjectured, Lothaire and Emma were equally on the alert. Each discerned the threatening danger; and Emma, in the restoration of friendship between Otho and Hugh, could not fail to trace her rival Theophania's influence, and they planned accordingly. Conrad's Transjurane kingdom, that kingdom of rocks and forests and torrents, green pastures and glaciers and perpetual snow, afforded the only available exit from Italy. Though Conrad could not be called a kinsman, yet he was a close connexion of the French royal family. Conrad helping, Hugh could be easily caught. Hugh Capet's  
Alpine  
Journey.

A Burgundian King might entertain some jealousy against any Duke of Burgundy. But, whether or no, Lothaire put himself into correspondence with the Court of Arles. In the epistle addressed to Conrad by Lothaire, he presents himself as a confidential friend, and urgently prayed him to exert himself for the purpose of intercepting the threatening and potent enemy on his route to France. All the practicable Alpine Passes were included within Conrad's picturesque realm. Emma communicated concurrently with her Imperial Mother, then at Pavia. Her vehement epistle is singularly remarkable. Dolefully



959—967

978—981

Emma and  
Lothaire  
invite King  
Conrad to  
intercept  
the Capet.

did she inveigh against the Capet's treachery, and his endeavour to turn her brother Otho against them. She therefore earnestly entreats Adelaide to unite in the efforts which would be made for arresting their enemy.—And in order that the crafty traitor might not evade by his wiles, Emma transmits a full description of his person; his eyes, and his ears, and his lips, and his teeth, and his nose, and whatever particulars were observable in his limbs and stature, nay even his mode of speech.—A veritable police posting bill of Hue and Cry.

Hugh was really in great jeopardy. Emma spake more openly than Lothaire. Had Hugh Capet been captured he would have been chained and fettered and dropped into the pit;—may be, blinded;—hatchet or halter would then put him completely out of the way, and out of misery. Under any circumstances, the Duke of France bearing within himself the strongest testimony against himself, could scarcely pursue his journey without apprehensions of danger.

It is more than probable, that the Capet had obtained knowledge of these important letters, before they were received by the royal correspondents to whom they had been respectively addressed. The copies are included amongst Gerbert's documents, and the extent of his wiles is incalculable. Hugh therefore hastened his departure, and, when he approached the hills, he put off the Duke, and put on the groom.

Hugh escapes  
in disguise.

Hugh attired himself in the varlet's garb ;— <sup>959—967</sup>  
 Hugh handled the curry comb,—Hugh loaded the <sup>981—986</sup>  
 baggage,—Hugh cracked his whip at the horses,  
 —Hugh appeared as the meanest of the train,  
 obedient to everybody's bidding, kick and call.

Emissaries and agents were watching for their prey in the defiles ; but his good fortune guided him safely through ; although when the party halted for the night in the rough Alpine hostelry, his precautions nearly failed him. The travellers had retired to the rest-chamber. Soon as they were alone, or thought themselves alone, the scrubby hind stood forth as Lord and Master. The Capet's attendants vied with each other in performing their duties ; they knelt before their Sovereign, drew off his boots, chafed his chilled feet, changed his coarse garments, and spread his bed with the utmost care. But, either the suspicions of the Host had been roused, or perhaps simply yielding to professional inquisitiveness, he had crept close up to the door ; and, his eye at the chink, watched the proceedings. The ear was sharper than the eye. The Duke's servants had heard his movements. Dashing out, they hauled the fellow in ; and, unsheathing their swords, threatened him with instant death, if he cried for rescue. Straitly they bound him neck and heels, and so secured him in store until the earliest twilight illuminated the mountain summits, when they started : and, having corded the

959—987

981—986

curious-impertinent upon a horse, they kept him tight till they had advanced beyond the risk of immediate pursuit, when they dropped the moaning bundle on the road. Yet Hugh was not entirely safe. Conrad had zealously entered into Lothaire's views. Spies and emissaries were stationed to dodge him, but Hugh Capet successfully eluded their vigilance, and arrived safely home.

981—  
Great dis-  
turbances  
consequent  
upon Hugh's  
return.

§ 71. Neither Lothaire nor Hugh had gained any advantage by their respective negotiations. The arduous task of governing Italy, the troubles in Germany, and the well deserved hostility of the oppressed Sclavonian nations, prevented Otho from taking any share in French affairs. Not merely were the dealings with Otho profitless, but they made matters worse. Lothaire had affronted Hugh Capet, by the breach of the alliance: and Lothaire's dread of the Capet, and consequently his antipathy against the Capet, acquired greater intensity. On Hugh's return, a state of complete anarchy ensued.—No bloodshed, no fighting, but so many dissensions amongst the nobles and great men, such plots and counterplots, that all the powers of government were paralysed. Great oppressions were inflicted upon the common people. And, many of the clergy, the class who usually maintained good order during civil dissensions, peace-makers, where no magistrate could reach, were unfortunately implicated in the troubles, particularly Adalbero

and Asceline. Political doctrines inspired the lofty minded Primate in favour of the Capets. The base Asceline was stimulated against the Carlovingsians by profligacy and personal antipathy.—Hugh's time was coming. But the time had not come. Men feared to wield the sword against the sceptre: and Hugh concurred in a step apparently detrimental to his own interest; but Hugh knew better.

959—987  
981—986

§ 72. Save and except when describing the young Prince's portraiture limned in his Mother's Psalter, we have never found the means of mentioning Louis, Lothaire's only surviving legitimate son. Hitherto, wholly unnoticed by all historians, he now suddenly becomes very prominent in the character of a youth, as yet untaught by experience, but shrewd, observant, and fully possessing the qualifications which might render him an efficient Sovereign. His father therefore became anxious that the succession should be forthwith secured to Charlemagne's descendant. Two opponents, however, threatened to thwart the parent's reasonable desires. Charles had never waived his reversionary claims to the sovereignty; and that all but declared rival, the Capet, was still more to be dreaded.

Louis, the  
Son and Heir  
of Lothaire,  
his character.

Hugh however entered with apparent cordiality into Lothaire's schemes. The Nobles were convened at Compiègne, the Palace assigned to the *Fils de France* as his residence. The proposition, that Louis should be elevated to

989—987

981—986

981—  
He is pro-  
claimed as  
King.

the royal dignity, was accepted by acclamation.

On the following Pentecost, he was proclaimed by Bishop Adalbero, but though he received the royal title, the rite of consecration was withheld.

How were the Father and the Son to govern ? Were they to be coparceners ?—May be, rivals ? It was therefore judged expedient, that, according to the antient Carlovingian precedents, (the first examples having been given by the great Emperor himself,) each should reign over a separate Realm. But where could an adequate territory be found ? Lothaire had assuredly none to spare.—Complicated intrigues followed.—It was hinted by the procurers who haunted the Court, that a wealthy widow was waiting for a wooer ; and Emma yielded to the suggestion, that the readiest mode of advancing her son, would be managed by his marriage with the relict of Raymond Pons, Count of Toulouse, (long since deceased,) who had been the first to acknowledge the authority of Louis d'Outremer.

Circumstances attending the Marriage of Louis.

No clue has been found conducting the genealogical enquirer to the ancestors of this Dowager Countess, and four names are ascribed to her. — Constance, Blanche, Blandina, and Adela. The first name, not uncommon in the Langue d'oc, was probably the babe's Baptismal designation ;—the second and third, were, we apprehend, derived from the once tender damsel's fair complexion :—the last, seems to be the epithet so often assumed or bestowed as a token

of dignity. Constance Adela was very opulent; could the young King obtain her hand and her possessions, which extended into Auvergne, such an establishment might enable Lothaire to follow Charlemagne's example, and bestow upon his son the Aquitanian Kingdom.

969—987  
981—986

The scheme promised great political advantages. It was argued that the Capet, shut up, between France on the north and Aquitaine on the south, would be effectually restrained by these Carolingian positions. Hugh's vexation, when the speculation came to his knowledge, testified that these reasonings were not groundless: but he held his tongue; and, indeed, a wise man, an old statesman, and an old soldier, could easily anticipate that such a union of Spring and Autumn, January and October, was not likely to produce either fruit or flowers.

Full royally did the two Kings, the senior and the junior, proceed to Brioude on the Allier, where Constance resided; bearing with them from Charlemagne's Treasure House, the Aquitanian Diadem. The parties were strangers to each other, but the marriage came off without difficulty and without thought. There may have been traditions of the Queen's beauty, though reckoning according to the data deduced from what we know concerning her first husband's death, more than half-a-century must have elapsed, since she was rocked in her cradle; nor had her advancing age sweetened her temper, or

Unfortunate  
result of the  
marriage.

958—987

981—986

Misconduct  
of Louis—  
His quarrels  
with his  
Wife.

matured her principles. As for Louis, the exuberant stripling ran riot.

At this era, the Aquitanians constituted a distinct nation, much richer, and consequently more profligate, than the comparatively sober inhabitants of the Langue d'oc. The vile immorality of the Troubadour age was already in course of developement; Lothaire's Louis yielded to the contagion, like Louis-le-Debonnaire's unhappy Pepin. Seduced by the example and society of his merry rampant subjects, and following unhappy Pepin's precedent, he adopted the Aquitanian costume, much to the offence of the French, who considered this compliance as derogating from the dignity of his antient lineage.

During the Honeymoon—alas! occasionally the lamentable introduction to the wasp's nest,—the faded Queen fondled her young husband. But desperate quarrels broke out between them. After very brief cohabitation, they divorced themselves *a mensa et thoro*, without troubling Pope, Archbishop or Bishop. One house could not hold the two. They would not even meet under the same roof: and, when it became needful that they should confer with one another on public affairs, their interviews were held in the open air.

Louis wasted the royal revenues. His Household broke up. His troops did not wait to be disbanded. Lothaire re-called the young King. Louis would not hear the call. His father therefore advanced to Aquitaine, supported by a large

body of cavalry, and brought the turbulent young Prince away. Louis was sent back to Compiègne. Here, recovering from the intoxication of youth, his sagacious conduct showed that he had become an acute observer of the world. He learnt to appreciate his advantages, and still more his dangers : and he fully qualified himself to escape, when the time should arrive, from the tantalising situation of a nominal King. As for Constance, still worth having, she separated herself effectually from her second husband, by taking a third, Guillaume Count of Arles.

959—967  
961—966

961—982  
Within the  
year Louis  
and his wife  
separate.

§ 73. About this period, Otho's fortune turned. Greeks and Saracens defeated him before Squillace, and by a most humiliating flight, he saved his life, but forfeited his honour. A vile affront given by Teutonic protervity to the noble Mistewoi, the King of the Wends, lost Otho the Sclavonian Marches ; and, at least two centuries elapsed, ere that frontier bulwark was reunited to the Empire.

The young Emperor's strength yielded to bodily fatigue, and troubles of mind. Mental and corporeal diseases, aggravated by his own rashness, terminated his earthly career. When on his death-bed, the Pontiff the Bishops and the Priests entered the chamber, and he, raising his voice, repeated the Creeds in the Latin tongue, and expired. They erected his tomb within Saint Peter's Atrium. The superstructure has perished, but his sarcophagus was pre-

983—Dec. 7.  
Death of  
Otho II. at  
Rome.



959—987

981—986

served, and you may see it in the crypt below.—  
Thus has the second Otho departed; **and the**  
third and last, a boy who had scarcely emerged  
from infancy, appears on the throne.

988—  
Accession of  
Otho. Trou-  
bles in Ger-  
many.

Pursuant to his father's testament the **Corona-**  
tion of the child was effected without opposition at  
Aix-la-Chapelle. This tranquil accession **how-**  
ever, only preluded great troubles and distur-  
bances throughout the Realm. The Archbishop  
of Cologne was empowered to act as Guardian by  
the late Emperor, until Adelaide and Theophania  
could return from Italy. But Theophania was  
very unpopular: her foreign manners had always  
displeased the Germans; and still more offensive  
were the bitter words which, after the massacre  
of Squillace, escaped her in depreciation of  
Teutonic valour.

Henry the  
Quarreller  
Regent.

Moreover, the people were wearied out by  
the long continuance of female influence. The  
worthy Teutscher, like John Knox, could not  
abide the "regiment of women," and, according to  
popular opinion, that opinion supplementing the  
law, the civil state of the female sex in Germany  
approximated to perpetual pupillage. Henry  
the Quarreller assumed the Regency; but, other  
parties arose, and the Empire was involved in  
great confusion.

Lothaire immediately availed himself of the  
opportunity offered by these dissensions; and  
Henry was not unwilling to purchase Lothaire's  
alliance, or at least his forbearance, by surren-

dering the superiority of Lorraine. But he <sup>930—937</sup>  
 either retracted his promise, or could not dare <sup>981—986</sup>  
 to perform it. Lothaire commenced hostilities.  
 The Lotharingian Nobles, Godfrey Count of the  
 Ardennes at their head, raised the country <sup>983—985</sup>  
 against him. The Lotharingians responded <sup>Lothaire's unsuccessful attempt to regain Lorraine.</sup>  
 heartily.—Lothaire advanced with his forces  
 as far as the Vosges. But the boors and  
 peasantry sturdily defended the land,—trees  
 felled,—dykes cut,—fields flooded,—roads  
 blocked up,—detachments hurrying and scurry-  
 ing amongst the rocks and hills,—ambushments  
 stationed,—bolts and arrows darted incessantly,  
 —but the assailants invisible;—never could the  
 French get sight of the enemy.

Lothaire returned home, baffled but not dis-  
 heartened,—not even by the distressing rumours  
 resounding throughout France. All the former  
 charges against the profligacy of the Court were  
 revived; and, again people jeered or groaned at  
 the names of Queen Emma and Bishop Asceline. <sup>Emma's ill fame.</sup>  
 But Lothaire, whether acting cunningly; or con-  
 fiding in Emma's innocence; or fascinated by her  
 charms, never altered his conduct towards her.  
 She however was much troubled, and another  
 passionate letter addressed to her mother, speaks  
 the language of calumniated innocence.

Lothaire steadily adhered to his plans of  
 regaining the invaluable border-land of Lorraine.  
 He bought over the Vermandois family, Eudes  
 and Herbert, by granting to them the lands of

985—987

981—986

an Uncle, who had lately died childless ; a transaction shewing how stiffly the King held the royal fiefs ; and they, advising with Lothaire, it was agreed that another Lorraine expedition should be commenced by attempting Verdun.

985—  
Continuance  
of the war in  
Lorraine.  
Verdun  
taken by  
Lothaire.

Verdun, though a place advantageously situated for defence, and well fortified, held out only for eight days: and, the City thus gained, Lothaire gave a singular proof either of deserved confidence or absolute dotage. He left Emma in command until he could resume operations. But a transient reverse ensued. Emma was driven out, and we soon find Godfrey of the Ardennes holding the City against the King ; Lothaire immediately re-assembled his army, and, furnished with a large train of artillery, stormed the place, and Verdun became entirely his own. Winter compelled the cessation of warlike movements ; but the season of activity would come round, and he prepared for the active spring-tide, collecting troops, and considering plans and measures for extending his realm, and encreasing his power. Such was his energy, that even the Capet might fear him, and wish to be rid of him.

Spring broke out early ; the weather genial, perhaps prematurely so. Lothaire, who hitherto we have never met otherwise than in fairly good health, suddenly fell ill. Some said the weather was unhealthy. Richerius who had studied medicine, minutely describes the symptoms of

the complaint. Lothaire sent for Louis, who came to him without delay ; and, receiving his father's advice and counsel, returned to Compiègne. The disease was attended with great distress and suffering; and on the feast of Saint Sulpitius, Lothaire died in the fifty-fourth year of his age.

936—937  
931—936

936—  
Lothaire's  
strange ill-  
ness and  
death,  
2nd March.

A very awful impression was created by this event; loud the lamentations, much grief, much horror. A universal belief prevailed that Lothaire had been poisoned.—Who, the Murderers ? —Two were publicly charged with the crime.

Unprecedentedly solemn, nay almost ostentatious was the funeral. Clad in the royal robes, the corpse was covered or concealed by a purple pall, richly embroidered with gems and orfray. The chiefest Nobles bore the bier; Prelates and Clergy led the procession, bearing the Gospel books and Crosses, and intoning the dirge. The Crown and other royal Insignia followed the deceased Monarch, and very lengthened was the lugubrious train.

His remark-  
able funeral.

Upon his death-bed, the child of Louis and of Gerberga, had directed that he should be interred by the side of his father and his mother, and the cortege proceeded slowly to Rheims. He was deposited in the Abbey Church of Saint Remigius, according to his desire. But where was Lothaire's wife ? and where Lothaire's son ? Did Emma nurse him during his last sickness ? or was she present

<sup>959—987</sup>  
<sup>981—986</sup> when he died?—No—Nor was Louis in his place at the interment, ready to join as Chief mourner, when the corpse was lowered into the grave, and perhaps receive the *hinted* congratulations given under the breath. Louis, however, could exonerate himself from all charges of dishonouring his father's memory. He had obeyed the call of his dying parent, and had received his advice; and we shall find him at his proper post.—As for Emma, we meet the miserable woman but once again.

<sup>987—</sup>  
 The accession of Louis.

Affairs had now reached that point, when Hugh Capet might, without farther difficulty, have ascended the throne. But he abstained from any violent usurpation, and concurred with the other Nobles in proclaiming the young Louis as his father's successor. Louis was universally recognized. The Lieges flocked in, tendering their fealty: and now, the two Parties which divided the aristocracy, surrounding the King, perplexed him by discordant suggestions. The Legitimists urged him to exercise all his royal rights, reside in his own Palace, seek no Protector, and present himself as an independent Sovereign. The Revolutionists attempted to shake the young man's confidence in himself. Their language verged upon disrespect. He must accept the Capet's tutelage. He would profit by this submission. Unless supported by the Capet, the Moderator of the Realm, could he stand?

Louis listened attentively to these advisers, needing none. He had fully resolved upon his course: and rendering all due honour to Duke Hugh, displayed equal courage and activity. Having first consulted privately with the Capet, he then publicly summoned the Duke of France and a select number of the Nobles, and required them to co-operate with him. He unhesitatingly and boldly accused the Archbishop of Rheims, as his father's worst enemy. It was Adalbero who had aided the Germans in their designs.—It was Adalbero who had conducted boastful Otho to the gates of Paris.—It was Adalbero who had afforded him the means of a safe retreat.—And Adalbero must be punished for his misdeeds.

989—987  
981—986  
Louis acts resolutely—throws off the Protectorate of Hugh, and accuses Archbishop Adalbero of High Treason.

Hugh and his party remonstrated against the King's determination, but none dared disobey. Powerful as they were, they cowered beneath the royal authority, and dreaded the penalties of treason.

Had Gerberga been living, she might have rejoiced in her grand-child's vigour.—Louis having been enabled to raise a large army, invested Rheims. Hugh conjoined his forces, probably comforting himself with the persuasion, that, by protesting against the impeachment of the Archbishop, he had exonerated himself from complicity with the King. Messengers were despatched to the Prelate. If Adalbero would answer the charges preferred

Adalbero being contumacious, Louis besieges Rheims

959—967  
981—986  
—The Archbishop gives ball for his appearance to answer the charge.

against him, and clear himself, giving mainpernors in the meanwhile to secure his appearance before the Court, the King would accept his submission. Otherwise, he must expect to be treated with the utmost rigour.

The Archbishop behaved proudly, paraded his loyalty ; rebuked Louis as one who gave credit to accusations which were neither proved nor susceptible of proof. If Louis required a judicial examination, was it decorous that his obedience should be extorted. Why should his attendance be enforced by menaces ? But the bail was produced and a day appointed at Senlis for the Session of the Tribunal,—the third week in May.

987—  
Assembly of  
the King and  
Nobles at  
Senlis for the  
Archbishop's  
trial.

Adalbero duly repaired to Senlis, for the purpose of making his defence. The Nobles composing the Court, in which the successor of Clovis was to arraign the successor of Saint Remy, thronged the City. But, during that third week in May, the trial before the King and Nobles being close at hand, Louis went forth to hunt. His foot slipped.—How and where, and in what manner, we know not.—This trivial accident is said to have occasioned a severe internal injury. But Louis sickened also, a raging fever attacked him, and, just when the Archbishop was about to be brought to the bar, he, the King, expired in great agony.

Strange  
death of  
Louis, 22  
May.

It was immediately reported that Louis had been poisoned ; and the murder was strangely imputed to an individual who had neither any reason for the crime, nor any opportunity of

perpetrating it; Constance,—his divorced wife, <sup>959—967</sup>  
 —the Countess of Arles. Suspicions engender <sup>981—986</sup>  
 suspicions. In all cases where our powers of  
 investigation are completely at fault, it is very  
 difficult to avoid indulging in counter-conjectures  
 which cannot be strengthened by any evidence.  
 Yet we might be inclined to suppose that Con-  
 stance was named in order to divert public  
 attention from some other prominent personage.

§ 74. Hugh and the Nobles who assumed <sup>Louis hastily</sup>  
 the powers of Government, conducted themselves <sup>buried, con-</sup>  
 with indecent haste. During his last agonies, <sup>trary to his</sup>  
 Louis had expressed the wish that he should <sup>directions at</sup>  
 rest by his Father's side at Rheims. But the <sup>Compiègne.</sup>  
 Capetian Managers would not separate, until  
 they had fully settled their course of proceed-  
 ings: and, Archbishop Adalbero officiating, Louis  
 was interred at Compiègne.

A strange mutation of positions now ensued.  
 The Throne being vacant, the powers of election  
 devolved on the States of the Realm, but, Adal-  
 bero, their lawful President, laboured under a  
 charge scarcely distinguishable from high trea-  
 son. It was in order to stand his trial as a  
 criminal, that he had taken up his residence  
 at Senlis, nor could he be rehabilitated in the  
 exercise of his constitutional functions, until  
 cleared from the impending accusation. The  
 Nobles also, had been specially summoned for  
 the peculiar occasion of Adalbero's Trial, and  
 not as a constituent assembly.

Hugh Capet, taking the lead, explained the



959—987  
 981—986

Adalbero  
 is put, *pro*  
*forma*, upon  
 his trial.

No Appel-  
 lant appear-  
 ing, Adalbero  
 is discharged  
 from accusa-  
 tion.

Convention  
 adjourned  
 upon the  
 proposition  
 of Adalbero.

situations of the respective parties. Louis was dead: but the suit had been instituted, and it must be terminated in legal form. Notwithstanding the demise of the late King, the Court was open to any Prosecutor: Let such a one come forward fearlessly: yet, bearing in mind, that should a false charge be preferred, the calumny would be visited with condign punishment.—This merciful warning of the danger which might befall an accuser, produced due effect. Proclamation was made. The Appellant was called once;—no answer.—Twice;—no answer.—Thrice;—no answer.—Hugh Capet accordingly gave judgment forthwith, that the suit had abated: and the Archbishop having thus received a plenary absolution in the eye of the law, asserted his constitutional pre-eminence as President, and addressed the Convention.

Without any great strain of principle or palpable unfairness, circumstances enabled Adalbero to give Hugh great advantages. The attendance of members was scanty: he therefore intimated the propriety of postponement, until a proper *Cour Plenièrè* could be held. But, at the same time, he moved that they should pledge themselves to abstain from any proceedings in the nature of an election, until re-convened. They entered into the required engagement, and separated, appointing a day for the meeting of the Prelates and Nobles, the national representatives. This was a needful precau-

tion for the prevention of cabals: nor, considering Hugh's acknowledged pre-eminence, could it be considered as very unfair that the oath of obedience should be given to Adalbero and to Hugh Capet?

989—987  
981—986

Charles, virtually disinherited, conducted himself prudently. Under this great strait, appearing before the Archbishop, whom he acknowledged in the capacity of President, he presented his claims as grounded upon his lawful rights, whilst, at the same time, he tried to interest the Prelate's feelings. Adalbero's language was scurrilous. He was insolently obstinate. Charles did not waste any further time in discussion, but hastened to Lotharingia, where his strength was principally to be found. The sympathies of the Nobles were generally with him. Many adherents joined him; the ball encreased as it rolled on, and no small proportion of those now quiescent, were waiting to favour his cause as soon as fortune should favour him.

Charles rebuffed by Adalbero, retreats to Lorraine.

But, in the meanwhile, the Throne was filled. The Estates assembled at Senlis, and all who acknowledged fealty to Hugh, or espoused his cause, were there.

May 987—  
Assembly of  
the States at  
Senlis.

First and foremost, the most powerful, the most obedient, the most affectionate amongst his liegemen, Richard, Duke of Normandy, so emphatically recorded as pre-eminently aiding his brother-in-law to ascend the Throne. Archbishop Adalbero addressed the Assembly.

959—967

981—987

Sixty years since, the constitutional theory of the French Monarchy assumed that the supreme authority, though not strictly grounded upon hereditary right, was nevertheless vested in the Carolingian family. But public opinion was now modified. The absolute necessity of Monarchical government was maintained as firmly as ever; though the principle of infeasible right was repudiated.

987—  
Assembly of  
the States at  
Senlis. Adal-  
bero asserts  
the rights of  
the people.

Adalbero substantially preached the doctrine of the "*gros vilain*," adopting as a fundamental principle that the people's voice is the real source of power. But he argued soberly. The privilege of the Nation was to be exercised judicially, and not arbitrarily, nor called into action otherwise than for just cause. The Chief of the Commonwealth should be qualified by bodily vigour, superadded to nobility of the soul.—Bold, wise, faithful, magnanimous.—What were the lessons taught by the history of the World's Masters? How many Emperors of illustrious race forfeited their power by their unworthiness, and had been succeeded, sometimes by their inferiors in rank, sometimes by their equals?—nor did this latter circumstance impugn the popular franchise. Birth and blood, though accidents, are important accidents: nay, needful for the benefit of the Commonwealth. And thus was Adalbero employing the accustomed political device, of applying the general argument to the special case you advocate; and he turned his

reasonings at once in favour of Hugh, who, though he might depend upon his personal merits, was, as Adalbero insisted, singularly distinguished by his descent and nobility.

959—991  
996—998

Compare, continued the Archbishop, the wise and active representative of Robert-le-Fort with Charles, the contemptible Pretender. Slothful, untrustworthy, so dull and fatuous, that he had unreluctantly disgraced himself by becoming the vassal of a foreign king, nay worse, espoused a subordinate vassal's daughter. Could Hugh Capet endure that a woman of such low birth should become a Queen; and, as Queen, rule over him?—Could the Duke of France and Burgundy condescend to walk in the train of one whose father had kissed a Sovereign's knees, and placed his hands beneath the soles of a Sovereign's feet?—The rejection of Charles was a punishment earned by his offences and follies. If they sought the ruin of the Commonwealth, let them choose Charles, if the Commonwealth's prosperity—Hugh Capet.

Archbishop  
Adalbero's  
address in  
favour of  
Hugh.

Hugh was accepted by acclamation; and, on the first day of June, his Coronation, the Archbishop officiating, was solemnized at Noyon. A great Council was convened, those whom we may call Peers, received a regular writ of summons, and representatives attended from all the Southern and Eastern provinces of the kingdom. French, Armoricans, Danes, Goths and Gascons, nay, from the Spanish marches. But the rites

987—1st June  
Hugh  
crowned at  
Noyon.

959—987  
 986—988

June, July,  
 987—  
 Hugh re-  
 quires that  
 his son Ro-  
 bert shall be  
 raised also to  
 the throne.

were maimed. Some say that a second coronation took place at Rheims. It is doubtful where Hugh received the royal unction, or even whether the Crown was ever placed upon his brows. The oaths constituting the compact between the king and the people were omitted. We are told by modern writers that the Capet, peculiarly courting the Clergy's favour, granted to them a special confirmation of their privileges. But the statement is unsupported by evidence: the documents from which this inference is drawn, being the usual declarations in favour of particular monasteries. But he who had been raised to the throne by the disclaimer of hereditary right, now peremptorily demanded, that by virtue of that very right, the succession should be secured to Robert, his only son and heir.—The King must be the father of a King.

The Nobles assented to Hugh's instant request,—not so, Adalbero, who demurred. He hesitated upon the ground, that, according to an antient constitutional rule, two Kings could not be created within one and the same year.

If such a rule really existed, it may have been motived with the intent of securing a distinct precedence to the senior, thus obviating the difficulties which might arise, were an entire parity of title claimed by or for the occupants of the throne. But Hugh was prepared to give a ready answer. He produced a letter from Borell, Count of Barcelona, whilom Gerbert's

patron, supplicating aid against the Saracens. 987—991  
 These Miscreants were extending their ravages 987—989  
 throughout Spain: and, unless sufficient help  
 were speedily given, the whole Peninsula would  
 pass under the Mahometan yoke.

Hugh intimated that France was bound to take her share in this defensive war; and he therefore represented that the urgencies of the State required a departure from the constitutional rule quoted by Adalbero. Robert must be associated to his father, in order that if either fell in the fight, a Commander-in-chief should remain to the Army. Moreover, were Hugh slain, dissensions and disturbances might arise, and desolation fall upon the entire kingdom.

Yielding to these arguments, the Metropolitan assented, but not immediately. During the following winter, a Convention of the Nobles assembled at Orleans. On the Feast of the Nativity, Robert appeared in the Cathedral, clad in purple; and was proclaimed as King from the Meuse to the Ocean; or in other words, from Eastern Lorraine to Western Normandy and the dependent Armorica:—an unusual style, but very significant of the pretensions raised by the Capet. The Crown was placed upon Robert's head. The cheers of the people ratified his accession. And now, the chimes of the Nine, the Eight, and the Seven had completely run out.—*HIC DEFECERUNT REGES DE STIRPE KAROLI.*

25th Dec. 987  
 Robert pro-  
 claimed, and  
 crowned.

988—989  
 988—991

Charles  
 prepares  
 vigorously  
 for the  
 contest

AND THUS was the third Dynasty founded, destined to reign until their domination should be subverted by the operation of the doctrines, the principles, nay the very vices, out of which their power arose. But the strife had not concluded. Charles forthwith appealed to his friends and connexions, the Vermandois princes, not merely for his own sake, but for the sake of his children. The new Carlovingian party increased; high and low joined him, probably from his Belgic dominions, where the military and the industrial arts were already flourishing, doughty warriors and skilful artillerymen, bowyers and fletchers, and trained arbalisters. And, in this last convulsive struggle, the Duke of Lorraine, displaying a spirit worthy of his ancestry, resumed the contest with unbroken energy.

Asceline in  
 possession of  
 Laôn.

Emma lives  
 with Asce-  
 line.

As yet, the Capets had not advanced beyond their Duchy, they were Kings of Paris and of Orleans, but no more. Charles determined to be King of Laôn. The antient seat of royalty was in the possession of the Count-Bishop Asceline, who, dwelling in the Tower, assumed the state appertaining to his episcopal and temporal authority: and should we, or should we not, marvel to learn, that he had for his companion the dowager Queen of France, the Widow of Lothaire, Emma?—Was she displaying the undaunted confidence of innocence? or, did she brazen out her infamy?

Laôn defied assault, but an easier way of

entry was opened by the dissensions prevailing between Asceline and his flock. He had infringed the rights of the Citizens, seizing their communal property, or demanding rents and services for the same. Charles, felt his way among the malcontents. Through his agents, he promised, not merely to remedy their wrongs, but to enlarge their possessions; and the compact being confirmed by oath, Charles prepared to act like his father before him, and win the place by stratagem.

987—991  
988—989

When the autumnal season had fully turned, the grapes ripening, and the twilight shortening, Charles and his detachment paced slowly up the rock, and approached the City, morn'g light having come on. But the Sentinels were on the alert, they heard the neighing of the horses, and the rustling of the armour. They challenged the advancing party, and, no answer being made, they began to send their missiles in that direction. But the Carlovingian partisans were ready, and, opening the gate, Charles and his forces rushed in, galloping furiously, doing their best to heighten the confusion, clashing their weapons, shouting, hooting, pealing their horns.

988—  
Sept. Oct.  
Charles takes  
Laon by sur-  
prise.

The inhabitants unknowing of the plot, were scared out of their wits, fled to the Churches, hid themselves in the holes, and the nooks, and the corners.—Many leapt from the walls, and amongst them Bishop Asceline, who, dropping to the ground lightly, scampered down the rock and



987—991

988—989

Asceline  
escapes, but  
is caught  
again.

made for the vineyards, leaving Emma to her fate. But the fox was tracked out by his trail. Caught,—brought before Charles,—and clapped into confinement. If any one ever deserved to be bucketted into the pit, and not drawn up again speedily, it was he. But his tonsure was respected, and, though locked up in the royal Tower, he did not sustain any other duress.

988—  
Charles in  
possession of  
Laôn.

As for Emma, confined to her chamber, severe was the treatment bestowed by Charles upon his wretched sister-in-law;—a close prisoner, deprived of her attendants, guards placed at the door.—She made lamentable appeals to Theophania's generosity; equally did she seek help from her mother's compassion, earnestly entreating Adelaide to intercede on her behalf; but, after a time, she was not worth the trouble of keeping, and she utterly disappears from history.

Charles now had Laôn.—What he had he would hold; and he prepared for defence.—Ample store of provisions collected, stone and timber brought in, the battlements heightened, fosses dug, and palisadoes planted. The smiths set to work upon the ordnance: much reliance, placed upon the arbalisters: their sight so sharp, and their aim so steady, that, as men parabled, the bolt they shot would thread through two opposite loop-holes, or bring down the bird on the wing.

Charles having attained a position which gave him a right to speak with confidence, he at-

tempted a negotiation with the Capets, probably for a share in the kingdom. Amongst Gerbert's enigmatical correspondence, we find a note addressed to Charles by Archbishop Adalbero. We collect, though very obscurely, from this document, partly written in cypher, that some such proposal had emanated from him: and Adalbero, after disclaiming any hostility against the Carlovingian race, intimated that, if an important personage, designated by certain capital letters which baffle interpretation, would repair to Rheims, the matter should be fairly considered. But the overture came to nought.

987—991  
988—989  
Ineffectual negotiations between Charles and the Capet kings.

Exceedingly troubled were the Capets, and with sufficient cause. In such a contest, not to advance is to recede. But they acted resolutely. Hugh Capet summoned his lieges from the Marne to the Garonne. A Council was then held;—a Council of State and also a Council of War. Some were inclined, if Charles would sue for peace, to confirm him in all the territories he occupied. The greater number of the Lieges, however, urged active measures. The Pretender's success provoked them, and they were determined on vengeance. Hugh Capet was heartily supported; his cavalry mustered to the amount of six thousand; and with these forces he invested the City. But the brumal season had advanced, winter approached, the troops uncomfortable, and particularly distressed by the long night

989—Nov.  
Hugh Capet having summoned his army, lays siege to Laon.

987—991

988—989

Hugh Capet  
and Robert  
retreat—end  
of the first  
campaign.

watches. Apprehending a sortie, the Capetians retreated: the two Kings, with all the power of France at their command, were shamed by the Pretender. Thus ended the first year's campaign.

Upon the departure of the enemy, Charles prepared to give them a warm reception, should they visit him again. He, himself, surveyed the City, searched out all the deficiencies and weak points, walled up the posterns, explored the holes and the corners and the venelles, erected further outworks, and restored the old ramparts.

Escape of  
Bishop Asce-  
line.

Carefully as the Prince had made his examinations, and secured all the entries, there was one way out of the Tower, which remained unguarded. Bishop Asceline's chamber looked down upon the pleasant country; that prospect which no one can forget who has been at Laôn. The window was neither closed nor grated. An accomplice was always to be found for any body, when engaged in any plot or intrigue. A rope had been furnished for him, by which he swarmed down. A horse was ready. He rode away: and, seeking Hugh Capet's protection, was received into high favour.

989—  
Hugh and  
Robert open  
the second  
campaign.

§ 75. The second campaign being opened, Hugh Capet re-commenced operations with great shew of vigour, such as implied that he would never desist until Laôn should be won. The wide-spread royal Camp was encircled with ram-

parts and fosses : and two thousand Cavalry had been added to the last year's army ; eight thousand in all. It was determined to win the City by assault and storm, and, according to the Capet's directions, a piece of ordnance was constructed, such as the Masters boasted could vie, and more than vie, with the machines of Charles.—The stupendous battering-ram, slung between four very tall and massy beams, connected at the top by four spars of corresponding strength, was the pride of the Capetian camp. The battering-beam required a great number of soldiers to work him : and the whole erection was fixed upon a triangular base, furnished with three wheels, cunningly contrived for the purpose of ascending the steep zig-zag narrow rock-path.

But, in their calculations, the engineers had forgotten to take proper account of their favourite's ponderosity. When they tried to put Aries in motion, he could not be persuaded to mount ; so he remained below, the laughing stock of the enemy. The Capetian troops became sluggish, maintaining only a slovenly and tedious blockade. Many skirmishes, but no conflicts of any importance. Archbishop Adalbero continued in the Camp with the other Nobles, he probably also sent his contingent ; but no encrease of activity appears. The Dog days came on : then, in due time, followed the vintage. The Capetian troops enjoyed the liquor, and when

987—991

988—989

The Carlo-  
vingians  
break up  
the Capetian  
camp. Close  
of the second  
Campaign.

the jolly fellows retired for the night, they were usually dead drunk. The knowledge of this circumstance encouraged the besieged; and Citizens and Soldiers concerted a sortie. They surprised the Camp whilst the sentinels were sleeping, and fired the bivouacs. The infantry cheered and hallooed; the cavalry sounded their trumpets;—Hugh Capet and his troops, panic struck,—fled away.—Thus did the second Campaign close.

990—  
Illness and  
death of  
Adalbero.  
(23 January.)

Charles, probably aided by the Vermandois Princes, now prospered most encouragingly. He acquired Montaigne, and much honoured Soissons. But a little more, and who would dare to call him a Pretender. Adalbero was compelled to return home. Fatigue and anxiety had brought on a fever. During his illness, the ruling passion manifested itself. He sent his imperfect copy of Boethius to Abbot Thietmar, at Mayence, in order that the portions deficient might be supplied by transcription. His malady was incurable: some say he became insane for want of sleep; and he died about the beginning of the new year.

At Rheims, the canonical right of election subsisted in full vigour. The modes of exercising this right, which will hereafter require examination, were diversified, yet these varieties were always consistent in the main principle, which, when contested, invariably degenerated into a quarrel, more or less angry,

between Church and State. We usually consider the matter as being purely an ecclesiastical concern, but, at Rheims the question possessed high temporal importance, for the Archbishop may be termed a spiritual Lord elected by the Community; a Pontiff Peer; a Municipal Magistrate; and a popular Representative, at one and the same time. According to the antient usages of Rheims, the elective franchises were vested in three Orders, that is to say, the Bishops, Prelates, and Clergy of the Arch-diocese;—the “Milites” who perhaps replaced the “Curiales” of the Roman era;—and the Citizens at large.—Two candidates presented themselves. Gerbert, designated as successor by his late Patron, the deceased Adalbero; and Arnoul, then a Canon in the Cathedral, the son of Lothaire by the repudiated Lotharingian Lady. Papal authority had legally removed the disqualification consequent upon Arnoul’s dubious legitimacy. Popular opinion, more efficacious than any judicial absolution, had wholly effaced whatever stain might have been supposed to attach to him.

987—991  
993—999

Candidates  
for the See  
of Rheims,  
Gerbert, and  
Arnoul, Lo-  
thaire’s son.

King Hugh was perplexed. Gerbert, under some aspects, appeared favourable to the Capetians, but Hugh seems to have distrusted, nay, dreaded this most serpentine intriguer. Gerbert’s influence was magnified by imagination; and his attachment to the German Court, notorious. But, to place Arnoul, the son of

997—991  
998—999

Prelates,  
Clergy, and  
Knights of  
the Diocese,  
support  
Gerbert.

Lothaire, in the highest station which a subject could hold, might seem to be a dangerous venture. Arnoul had friends at Court; and, through them, he sued for the great preferment. Professing his devotion to the new Dynasty, he, as he declared, wholly abandoned the cause of his Uncle Charles.—Laôn,—he promised, should speedily fall into the Capet's power. Gerbert's interest however was very potent: the Prelates and Clergy advocated the pretensions of the late Archbishop's right-hand man; very many of the Knights or Curiales also;—but the Citizens had not, as yet, declared themselves in favour of either party.

Great as might be the Sovereign's influence, the Capet had not fully gained the good-will of the antient Merovingian Arch-metropolitan Capital, nor could he deal with the Electors off-hand, like less powerful Communities. We have seen how closely the Rhemish Citizens stuck to the Parvulus; how sturdily they adhered to him as the object of their choice.

Subtle caution was Hugh Capet's inherent qualification, never losing any opportunity, never displaying any haste; calm and imperturbable, the smoothest of the deep waters. Immediately upon the death of Adalbero he visited Rheims: the Citizens swore fealty, and he, granting to the latter a *Congé d'Elire*, retired to Paris.

They therefore had ample opportunity for discussion: and, when they had deliberated,

then Hugh returned; and, either feeling confidence, or seeking to inspire confidence by a demonstration of confidence, he, not consulting either Clergy or Curiales, submitted the whole question to the Citizens. Their answer was guarded; sincerity and artifice combined. They fenced against their examiner.—If, said they, the words of Canon Arnoul were to be trusted, he, albeit Lothaire's son and the Pretender's nephew, might prove a faithful Pastor, and a loyal subject.—Yet they arrived only at an inconclusive resolution.—Let the King on his part,—they continued, advise with his Ministers, and the Citizens would respectfully weigh and consider such counsel as they should receive.

987—991  
988—990

Hugh Capet's dealings with the Citizens.

Hugh directed them to hold a Communal meeting. Again was the subject diligently debated; again the resolve ambiguous. “If Arnoul kept his promises,—then he would be worthy of the Mitre.” Arnoul was called before the King, and interrogated closely.—Would he really and truly be faithful to the Capet?—Arnoul responded meekly, and gave the promise. But Hugh would not rely upon his own judgment, and he removed his Court to Saint Remy, beyond the City walls. Hugh then consulted his Nobles, and desired them to give their opinions severally. On the whole, the answers were favourable to Arnoul, and yet, like those of the citizens, they were perplexed and hedged in by imperfect reasonings.—Arnoul must engage to act as a true

Equivocal answer of the Citizens.

Hugh consults with the Nobles.



987—991  
 988—989

Arnoul's  
 special  
 covenant of  
 allegiance.

man, defend Rheims, and repudiate all connexion with the enemy. Hugh assented, but insisted upon a mode of obtaining security for Arnoul's good conduct, by a process in which the technicalities of feudal law are curiously united with the devotional spirit of the age. Arnoul was to become Hugh's liegeman. He must enter into a chirograph-covenant, and the instrument was also to contain a terrific imprecation. The document, which was prepared in duplicate, is presented before us textually, and we can scarcely doubt but that it was drawn by the Royal Feudalist. Clear and pertinent, containing the normal form of homage, but with especial additions, intended to bind the Vassal's conscience.—If Arnoul failed to keep his promise, let his days be cut off, every blessing turn to a curse, and every friend become his foe. Hugh also executed the deed, to the intent that the "parts" might be exchanged; just as would be practised in a Solicitor's office at the present day.

Decree of  
 election by  
 the Bishops  
 and Clergy.

We furthermore possess the "Decree of election," whereby the Bishops and Clergy of the Province, elected Arnoul as Archbishop, the people acclaiming. This wording is worthy of remark, because it conveys the idea, that the multitude concurred only by their cheers, whereas in truth, the Citizens were real, though not sole, electors. But the Bishops doubted whether the parchment covenant, or the obligation of the oath, would suffice to ensure Arnoul's fidelity. With pitiable

inconsistency, they imposed a further religious sanction; but, in the form of an ordeal, strictly prohibited by Ecclesiastical authority. A custom prevailed, (not obsolete even now in England,) that a person whose mere declaration on oath was not thought sufficiently credible, (such as the case of a married woman charged with adultery,) should, to use our vulgar or popular expression, "take the Sacrament upon it."—Such a profane abuse, was, and is, strongly condemned by the Church. Yet the Bishops did demand that Arnoul should submit to this test, imprecating that the bread of life might work the condemnation of his soul, should he violate his promise.—The act was exceedingly reprobated throughout France; but the deed was done.

Arnoul was duly installed; and, not long afterwards, the Pope transmitted to him the Pallium, the confirmation of his Archiepiscopal dignity. But Carlovingian France was a Luegenfeld to the very last.—Whilst Arnoul's lips were pronouncing the Oath; whilst his hand was signing his name; and, above all, whilst receiving the oblation of the Altar, his mind was occupied with schemes for effecting the violation of his vow. Affectionately attached to his Uncle Charles, he deeply lamented the wrong perpetrated against his father's brother. During the whole time, since he started in labouring for the Archbishoprick, he had been organizing his schemes for fulfilling the duties which he con-

987—991  
988—989  
Arnoul receives the Sacrament of the Altar in confirmation of his engagement.

Arnoul's secret understanding with Charles.

987—991  
 989—991

sidered as imperatively claimed by consanguinity and loyalty, though not to be brought about otherwise than through fraud and perjury.

Having settled the plot with Charles, Arnoul convened an assembly of the Diocesan Baronage and Clergy, to be held in the Palatial Castle, the ostensible cause being the consideration of important affairs. Only one coadjutor had Arnoul, whether in concerting the scheme with Charles, or in carrying it out, a dignified Priest, Adalger.

The convention took place upon the appointed day: and, at the appointed hour in the night, Charles had stationed his forces before the Castle gate. Archbishop Arnoul, as was the custom, kept the Castle's big keys beneath his pillow. These keys he transferred to Adalger, who crept down and unlocked the doors, and Charles, heading his troops, galloped in.

Arnoul surrenders the Town of Rhelms by treachery.

Extreme was the consternation. None apparently more terrified than the Archbishop. Upon his suggestion, the Nobles took refuge with him in the Dungeon tower.—The Tower was very defensible, but the Archbishop had taken good care that there should be no means of holding out,—no provisions in store, no arms in the guard-room.—The Governor of the fortress having thus disqualified his garrison from resisting the pressure which he had invoked, was compelled to a voluntary surrender. In order to conceal the collusion, a sham altercation ensued.

Charles vituperated Arnoul as a traitor, and Arnoul upbraided Charles as a usurper. But it was not worth while to continue the farce. Arnoul swore fealty to Charles, who triumphantly occupied the City: and a period of about three years ensued, during which the brother of Lothaire, Lord of Rheims and of Soissons and of Laôn, and supported by numerous enthusiastic adherents, might be considered as scarcely inferior, if at all inferior, to the Capet.

§ 76. Hugh now deemed himself brought to utter shame. But his courage rose with the provocation. He determined, for the third time, to renew his attempts upon Laôn, who had hitherto refused him. But the wooing was not pursued strenuously. He did not make any impression. The antient Carlovingian stronghold was a teasing locality to the Capets. Hugh's huge Aries stood meek as a lamb. The troops dared not file up the rock, and thus expose themselves to the heavy bolts showering from the arbalests, and the Capet limited his operations to the desolation and plunder of the surrounding country. This portion of his work, Hugh performed completely; and the Historian sums up by lamenting or exulting in the fact, that there was not a hut left, which could house a bed-ridden old woman.

At length Charles marched out, but when the armies faced each other, both halted. Neither dared further. The forces of Charles

987—991  
989—991

991—  
Hugh Capet  
lays siege to  
Laôn, but  
without  
effect.

987—991

989—991

Triumphant  
position of  
Charles.

were out-numbered by the Capetians.—Hugh, perhaps, for the first time, absolutely lost heart, and the elated Charles returned to Laôn.

Decrease of  
the Capetian  
influence.

The Capet endeavoured to enlist additional allies, and applied to Eudes of Chartres. Eudes named his price;—Dreux, town and castle. But the contest began to languish. Every day, and month, and year, detracted from Hugh's influence. Doubting whether he could succeed by force, he felt his way about, and, under his auspices, a plot was organized for quieting Charles and his pretensions, through an agency of exquisite villany.

991—  
Archbishop  
Arnoul and  
Bishop Asceline  
offer  
themselves as  
mediators  
between  
Charles and  
the King.

Asceline, though at liberty, was practically ejected from his Bishoprick. We know not where he was working, but he put himself in communication with Archbishop Arnoul, professing his earnest desire to accomplish a reconciliation with Charles, and at the same time he offered his mediation between the last Carlovingian Prince, and the first Capetian King. Perhaps it was not until the vile conspiracy was matured, that Asceline sought the countenance of Hugh. However, the whole contexture of the transaction leaves little, if any doubt, but that Hugh, from the first commencement, was art and part in the perfidy. All the parties concerned in the conspiracy, had abjured every principle of faith or truth. Negotiations were opened by Charles, through Asceline and Arnoul, with Hugh Capet. Arnoul was received with favour

and placed at the Banquet on the King's right hand, whilst Asceline was seated on the Queen's left; and Hugh promised that Charles should retain antient Laôn, provided he would acknowledge the City to be held of the King.

987—991  
989—991

Charles having permitted Asceline's return to Laôn, there seemed to be a crazy revulsion of feeling on the Bishop's behalf. The fugitive, the rebel, the stigmatized adulterer, was greeted by Clergy and by Laity, welcomed by Charles, and received into a degree of intimacy scarcely to be distinguished from high favour. Asceline, as ordered by Charles, took the oath of fealty, and the Bishop was created Count of Laôn. The oath was sworn upon the shrine, filled with relics of Saints and Martyrs: but a fancy now fell upon Charles, that the breach of this oath might not sufficiently alarm the Bishop's callous conscience, and he, therefore, required that Asceline should submit to some adjuration of even greater stringency. There was no difficulty in the matter:—every form of oath was alike to Asceline,—he would swear to anything which was asked.

Asceline returns to Laôn, where he is received with great favour.

It was now the holy season of Lent. On the evening (not the eve) of Passion Sunday, Charles and Asceline supped together, and the Prince, addressing the Bishop solemnly, reminded him that on that same day, he, Asceline, after bestowing his benediction upon the people, had administered the Communion to Charles.

18th April, 989—  
The Sacramental Supper at Laôn.

987—991 Charles then having filled the golden cup with  
 bread and wine, presented it to Asceline.—  
 989—991 Drink, said he, the contents, as a token of  
 fidelity, but if you cannot be assured that you  
 will keep your promise, abstain, lest you should  
 prove another Judas. Willingly, replied Asceline,  
 will I receive the cup. Then continued Charles,  
 repeat the words, and say,—“I will observe my  
 plighted faith, and if I do not, may I die the  
 death of Judas.”—And Asceline repeated the  
 words accordingly.

Night came on. Charles and Archbishop  
 Arnoul and Asceline, all retired to the one  
 long dormitory. All wore their swords during  
 the day. They unbuckled their weapons and  
 retired to rest. Charles, according to custom,  
 deposited the big keys of the City gates under  
 his pillow. An Usher watched the door. As-  
 celine sent him away on a fool's errand, and  
 secured the swords. His accomplices rushed  
 in. Charles and Arnoul who were sleeping  
 heavily, startled up dismayed, they searched  
 about for their blades; but vainly.—Asceline,  
 grinning with spite, shouted his vituperations  
 against his victim.—You drove me out, now it is  
 my turn! You shall be served after a worse  
 guise! I became my own master. You shall fall  
 into servitude!—Charles infuriated, threw him-  
 self upon Asceline, but the soldiers grappled  
 him, flung him on his bed, kept him down by  
 main force, and carried him off into the dungeon.

991—  
 Charles en-  
 trapped by  
 Asceline's  
 treachery.

The women shrieked, the children screamed, the noise of the turmoil alarmed the vicinity, and the disturbance spread throughout the City. Adela and the children were detained in prison with the unfortunate father: and the intelligence of the happy success being dispatched to King Hugh at Senlis, he entered Laôn, and, having demanded the oath of fealty from the Citizens, returned to Senlis with his prisoners.

987—991

991—1030

Charles, his wife and children delivered over to the King.

He assembled his Council. In the opinions given by the Nobles, we trace the abiding fear of falling into danger of treason. Many advised, that the children being detained as hostages, Charles should become the King's liegeman—swear that he never would attempt the kingdom,—and, by a solemn instrument, exclude his descendants from the succession. This done, they suggested that Charles should be liberated. But others, grounding their advice upon the same premises, to wit, the illustrious origin of Charles, opined that he should not be immediately released, but kept in captivity until it appeared whether his partisans were sufficiently numerous, sufficiently important, and sufficiently united, to deserve to be dreaded really as adversaries of the King. Should they prove few and in small number, then let the prisoner be abandoned by the Nation. But, if numerous and powerful, then it would be expedient to yield to circumstances and set him free.

King Hugh advises with his Nobles as to the disposal of Charles.



987—991  
 991—1030  
 Charles im-  
 prisoned.

1001—  
 Death of  
 Charles.

Establish-  
 ment of  
 the chil-  
 dren of  
 Charles.

1001—  
 Otho, Duke  
 of Lorraine  
 and Brabant,  
 his death.

Charles, therefore, and his wife Adela, and his sons, and his daughters, (the latter were infants,) became prisoners at Orleans. Demonstrations were made beyond the Loire in favour of Charles, and testifying against the Capet's usurpation; but they evaporated in words: and Charles,—his faithful Adela being his companion,—breathed his last as a captive: but, some say, that having renounced all rights to the Crown, he was removed from Orleans to die at Maestricht.

The twins, Charles and Louis, were received and educated by Guillaume Fier-à-bras Count of Poitiers, who, though the brother-in-law of King Hugh, had refused to acknowledge him. Guillaume protested against the Capetian Dynasty, by conferring the title of Kings of Aquitain on these two young Princes: they probably died very young, for we hear nothing more concerning them. But Charles's children prospered. Otho, his eldest son by Bona, was re-instated in the Imperial Duchy of Lorraine, or rather Lorraine and Brabant. Charles had made Brussels his capital, and Otho followed his father's example. He died without male issue. The Duchy was bestowed upon Godfrey the First, Count of the Ardennes and Verdun; but the ample allodial property was divided between the sisters, Gerberga and Ermengarda, the daughters of Bona. They married as befitted their station. Gerberga espoused

Lambert, Count of Hainault, who, having received his dignity from Charles, became the stem of a new Dynasty; and she received for her portion Brussels, and the very field of Waterloo. Ermengarda was espoused to Albert of Namur. Both were the ancestresses of subsequent branches of the Capetian Line; and, such was the honour still rendered to the name of Charlemagne, that this very distant and scarcely noticeable connexion, is spoken of with pride by the courtly Capetian Chroniclers.

§ 77. We must now bid farewell to the three sad Prelates, who stand forth so prominently in the latter portion of this history. There was a moment when it seemed as if the share which Archbishop Arnoul had taken in the surrender of Rheims, might have escaped detection; but his clever and villainous competitor, Gerbert, turning informer, became the most energetic supporter of the Capetian kings.

Hugh appealed to Rome, then distracted by a schism between the Emperor Otho's Pope, and the Nobility's Pope, the latter patronized and supported by the great leader of the aristocracy, Crescentius. Hugh Capet therefore resorted to a domestic tribunal. A Provincial Council was held in the Abbey of Saint Baseul, not far from Rheims, and Gerbert appears in the triple character of Informer,—Manager of the Impeachment,—and Secretary or Scribe of the Tribunal. It was he who noted and compiled the voluminous and detailed Acts

987—991  
991—1030

991—  
Council of  
Saint Baseul.

987—991

991—1030

of the Council. Although it cannot be affirmed that he reported them unfaithfully, yet his taking this position against a rival was singularly indecent.

The “Libel” (this proceeding, in the ecclesiastical Courts, answers to a Bill in Chancery, or the like,) was grounded upon the Canons of the Council of Toledo, promulgated for the punishment of Prelates who had violated their allegiance to their Sovereign.

Arnoul’s guilt was clearly proved by witnesses. Adalger’s equally so, despite of his hard swearing.—Although the sinners—whether accusers or accused, have passed away,—yet it is still very painful to read of their baseness and degradation.—The Primate Arnoul confessed his guilt in private before the Bishops: but the public surrender of his dignity was extorted from him. The two Kings, Hugh and Robert, entered the Council. Arnoul prostrated himself on the ground, “*ad modum crucis*,” the attitude of the greatest humility, earnestly imploring that life and limb might be spared. The latter supplication, not made as a matter of form, for in the course of the proceedings his accusers threatened to pluck out his eyes.

Arnoul  
resigns and  
his election  
annulled.

991—995.  
Gerbert  
Archbishop  
of Rheims.

To obviate all doubts concerning Arnoul’s resignation, his title was formally annulled. It was declared in the Act, that though Arnoul had been elected by acclamation, yet “*vox populi*,” was not always “*vox Dei*,” and Gerbert was chosen by the Kings, Hugh and

Robert, and the better-most part of the Clergy and Citizens. The various accounts of these scandalous proceedings are confused and contradictory. But, at every turn, we are brought in face of further reasons for compelling us to doubt Gerbert's truth and honesty.

Gerbert had now scrambled up the first step, noticed in his uncouth self-laudatory verse; but he was soon toppled down, though to be forthwith pitched upon the second. His promotion was challenged. Complicated proceedings ensued. Pope John the Fifteenth revoked Arnoul's deposition as well as Gerbert's election. Gerbert was in full activity, moving heaven and earth to maintain his position. The Pope threatened an interdict. Gerbert, self-convicted, resigned Rheims, and Otho forthwith appointed him to Ravenna.

987—991  
991—1030

On the death of Pope Gregory the Fifth, Otho, exercising his paramount authority, nominated Gerbert to the Popedom, and directed him to assume the name of Silvester the Second, evidently that he, Otho, might figure as another Constantine. The Imperial diploma of creation is motived. Otho appoints him, *propter summam philosophiam*, a singularly inadequate qualification (if standing solely and taken in the human sense) for the universal Pontificate, and thus, the third and highest step was attained. Gerbert's brief Popedom was chiefly employed in political intrigues: and, after filling the Papal See four years, one month, and ten days, the Demon's bruited prognostication was fulfilled.

Gerbert resigns Rheims, and is appointed by Otho to Ravenna.

999—1008.  
Otho appoints Gerbert Pope, and directs him to assume the name of Silvester II.

1108—  
Gerbert's death.

987—991  
 991—1030  
 993—1030  
 Continuation  
 and con-  
 clusion of  
 Asceline's  
 career.

Asceline brazened through all the ignominy attached to his name. His versatile talent, wealth, and unshaken self-confidence, effaced all his stains in the eyes of the world. Political pamphlets, so to speak, had long since become popular in France, as we have instanced in the earlier time of Charles-le-Chauve. The fashion became national. One of Asceline's squibs is extant, a poem in Latin Hexameters, addressed to King Robert, in which he scourges his enemies, and, possibly, his friends. Gerbert is designated as Neptanabus; whilst an Opponent retorts in a counter-satire, by bestowing upon Asceline the appropriate name of Achitophel. But those may laugh who win. Asceline, despite of all his misdeeds and batterings, held his See, during three and fifty years, and then died in great honour;—his epitaph testifying in due form to his sanctity, munificence and liberality.

1030—  
 Death of  
 Asceline.

Deaths of  
 Theophania  
 and of  
 Adelaide.

§ 78. Ere closing this most varied Epos, we must review the fate of Henry the Fowler's Dynasty. The youngest Otho's authority having been restored, Theophania governed as her Son's coadjutrix, displaying great worth, talent, and resolution: with all her faults, true to her trusts, undefiled before the world despite of her mother's example; and her own charms. But she died when Otho was about fourteen years of age, in the place where she had given birth to him,—Nimeguen.

Adelaide, soon after, followed her step-

daughter to the grave, leaving the third Otho without any adviser or comforter, who could support him in his troubles, or encourage him in his high anticipations. Otho combined the most thorough and sincere conviction of the vanity of human wishes, with the highest worldly aspirations. He was contemplating the full restoration of the Roman Empire, not to gratify his own ambition, but for the Divine honour and glory. Hard were his conflicts at Rome, where the Patrician Crescentius, for a brief occasion, usurped the Imperial purple. The rebel perished on the scaffold; and Otho, dwelling in the Palatine, persevered with encreasing energy and constancy. Assuming the title of Augustus Cæsar, his graven portraiture appears on his seal, encircled with the laurel Crown, whilst the inscription on the reverse, "*Roma renovata*," fully spake the sentiments by which he was inspired.

987—991  
991—1030  
Otho's  
aspirations  
and trouble.

His bodily powers were, however, yielding to the influence of the climate in which he delighted: the air of Rome being most deleterious to his health. His strength sunk, and he revisited Aix-la-Chapelle. A strange thought occupied his mind. He would see with his own eyes his great Predecessor. The pavement was broken up, he descended into the sepulchral chamber. As the vault was opening, a strong and suffocating aromatic odour arose. Otho entered, and entering, beheld the dead Emperor sitting upright on his throne, and clad in his Imperial robes.

He opens the  
tomb of  
Charle-  
magne.

987—991

991—1030

As a relic, Otho reverentially removed a portion of the garment. Certainly no profanation was intended. Yet the act was much censured. He was warned in a dream, as men reported, that his days should be soon cut off. He returned to Rome and died. It was reported that he had been poisoned by Stephania, the widow of Crescentius; but this supposition appears to have been unfounded. There were adequate natural causes to account for his death, without invoking crime. One son he had by Theophania, an only child, but that son was dead.—Henry, Saint Henry as he is termed, the grandson of Henry the Porphyrogenitus, succeeded his Uncle; but he also died issueless. The noble Saxon line became extinct, and Conrad the Salic ascended the throne.

1030—  
Otho dies at  
Rome, extinction of  
the Saxon  
Line.

996—  
King Hugh  
dies of the  
Small-pox.

§ 79. There are two more graves which we must visit.—The remainder of King Hugh's tranquil reign is enveloped in obscurity: and he died of the variolous contagion, so destructive at this era,—his body entirely covered with pustules. He was attended, like his predecessors, by Jewish physicians—and Richerius, (who had taken up the study of medicine) therefore says as usual, that they poisoned him.

987—996.  
Summary of  
the conclusion of  
Richard-  
sans-Peur's  
reign.

With the Capetian Revolution, in which he had been the most efficient mover, Richardsans-Peur's external political life may be said to have ended. Richard had fought his fight.

The remaining period of his long reign discloses few facts except the tranquil incidents of personal and domestic history. Ethelred perhaps troubled Normandy, but I must reserve the discussion of this passage till the next reign, there being some uncertainty as to its era. One public event, however, is recorded, in which Richard presents himself as a peace-maker. Albert, Count of Vermandois, became very obnoxious to the Capetians by reason of the support he had given to Charles the Pretender. Hugh Capet marched against him, determined upon revenge, and Albert, unable to resist the royal power, implored the aid of the Norman Richard.

987—991  
991—1030

Richard  
mediates be-  
tween King  
Hugh and  
Albert of  
Vermandois.

The Ambassador, whom he despatched, was the Herodotus of Normandy, Dudo, Dean of Saint Quentin. Duke Richard received the Clerk respectfully and kindly. Accepting the mediatorial office, the Duke, repairing to Hugh Capet, executed the business in person. Richard's supplication stayed the impending warfare; Vermandois was spared, and Dudo, having won Richard's favour and his family's, was received in the Court of Rouen. Dudo was a diligent enquirer: he had a fluent gift of versification, and was absolutely overwhelmed with scholastic learning. He, upon the solicitation of Richard-sans-Peur, and of Richard's son and successor, Richard-le-Bon, collected the Danish traditions, from the first incursions under Hastings, as



987—991

991—1030

Dudo of  
Saint  
Quentin—  
his *Acta  
Normanno-  
rum*.

introductory to the history of Rollo and Rollo's progeny. Had Dudo not preserved these recollections, the whole personal history of the three first Norman Dukes would have been completely lost.

Such was the origin of the *Acta Normannorum*, our primary authentic source of information concerning Carlovingian Normandy. Dudo dedicated the production, as we have already noticed, to Asceline of Laôn, soliciting his corrections; but he, nevertheless, composed the narrative under the special inspection of Raoul, Count of Ivri, Richard's half-brother. The work exhibits so much originality, that we may be certain we possess it unaltered; but this does not exclude the supposition, that some portions may have been expunged by the corrector.

Richard's  
children.

Emma, as we have before noticed, died childless. But Richard nevertheless had a very numerous progeny. Eight (including our English Queen Emma and Richard, his first-born) were the issue of Guenora, a concubine of Danish blood whom, after a lengthened cohabitation, he espoused: and others by various sweethearts; and from these children—of whom I hope to render a full account—and the nieces and nephews of Guenora, descended the most illustrious amongst the Norman nobility. Richard's character, as I shall have to tell, softened and improved with age. Richard and

King Hugh died in the same year, and he was buried after a strange fashion under the roof, and yet not under the roof, of Fécamp Abbey. The scanty French authorities, avoid or evade any notice of Richard or of Normandy as much as possible. The Duchy of Normandy arose under the Capetian domination, and though bitter political jealousies prevailed, yet the dispathy of race was forgotten. But no community of language or religion, no sentiment of friendship or feeling could conceal from the Carlovingian eye, the stain of the black Danish blood. Living or dead, the Dane stunk in their nostrils. And when Richerius was employing himself on the last unfinished page of his imperfect autograph volume, the last words he utters are the demonstrations of invincible antipathy,—*Richardus Piratarum Dux, apoplexia minore periit.*

987—991  
991—1030

996—  
Richard-  
sans-Peur  
dies of  
apoplexy.



# AUTHORITIES.



## AUTHORITIES.

---

FRODOARDUS REMENSIS and Richerius (see Vol. I. p. 748, 749) furnish the main staple of French history, during the period which this volume comprehends. An account of the remarkable recovery of the last-mentioned work, has already been given (Vol. I. p. 749), and he and his ingenious father, from whom he receives his traditions, have been repeatedly introduced in the text of the preceding pages. Both these Annalists were either actors in the transactions to which they bear record, or witnesses thereof: consequently, they are historical personages, and as such the reader has already made full acquaintance with them. Frodoardus departs at the commencement of a very eventful era, the year 966, when Lothaire espoused the Italian Emma. But Richerius, or Richer, the survivor, continues with us to the end—you hear his dying words.—My concluding chapter closes with the line extracted from the last passage Richerius penned.

Richerius alone discloses the complication of fraud, and treachery, and misfortune, which established the third dynasty upon the throne. He completely dispels the theory rendered so popular by Thierry's talent, and countenanced by another imaginative investigator. I allude to the hypothesis representing the Capetian Revolution as resulting from a resuscitation of the Celtic races, against the descendants of their Teutonic Conquerors, instigated by the antagonism between German and Gaul, which has now become the orthodox dogma—and (unless a total change has recently ensued) is preached as such in all the Manuals and Epitomes which form the opinions of the rising generation.

From these two texts, that is to say, from Frodoardus and Richerius, I have mainly told the story throughout the volume. Their chronology is substantially adopted, save and except as to Norman affairs, concerning which their information is grudging, scanty, and inaccurate. Nor can it be doubted, but that very much matter concerning Normandy was slurred over by them, as opposed to French national feeling. Any reader desiring to test my narrative, may compare, page by page, my text with these Annalists as he proceeds. Nevertheless, it must be recollected that the writers do not impose upon themselves the necessity of arranging the transactions governed by each Calendar date, in strict sequence of time under that date. Moreover, years occasionally overlap each other, and we encounter many anachronisms, especially with respect to foreign transactions. Bouquet's chronological tables will give a ready reference to any passage quoted from the French historians by me. This same table affords the only compensation for the excellent Benedictine's elaborately defective plan, upon which subject I have enlarged elsewhere (*Ed. Rev.* April 1847).

Amongst the minor, though important, sources of French history, as it advances, we must include Aimar or Adhemar de Chabannes. He was born at the commencement of the Capetian era (in the year 988), and belonged to a very distinguished family. His father, Count Raimond, was illustrious amongst the nobles of his era—and not less so his maternal uncle, after whom he was named. His *Historia Francorum* contains some curious reminiscences of the last Carovingian times: and he is the only writer who records the diffidations of Charles-le-Simple, by the casting of the hawlm; but it is principally for Aquitaine that Adhemar, whose work was never printed in entirety until included by Pertz in his collection, is very valuable.

Another subordinate writer who, though principally concerned for Germany, gives us much matter for the history of France, is Baldericus Cameracensis, identified by his first Editor with Balderic, Bishop of Tournay, who flourished in the concluding era of the Carovingian monarchy. We learn much from his *Chronicon Cameracense et Atrebatense*, concerning the warfare in Lorraine, between Lothaire and Otho II., as also concerning the fortunes of Charles in that country. Balderic is not by any means favourable to the Pretender.

Antient Norman history, that is to say, from the youth of Rollo to the death of Richard-sans-Peur, rests entirely upon Dudo of Saint Quentin's *Acta Normannorum*. You may abandon the history of Normandy if you choose, but if you attempt the task, you must accept Dudo, or let the work alone. I have completely incorporated Dudo with the French and German authorities:—they absent, we should not have any dates;—Dudo deserted, we are destitute of facts. Dudo's personal history becomes an important incident in the general history, and as such I have treated it in the body of my text. The work is supposed by his first editor to have been completed between 1015 and 1026. The extent of the "corrections" made by Asceline cannot be ascertained, but any how, the *Gesta* passed through at least two recensions, there being a manuscript in the Cottonian collection, which does not contain the poetry constituting so conspicuous a feature in the published text. Duchesne's edition (Rouen, 1619) is the only one, and very rare; and the liberality of the French government would be well employed, were the *Ministre de l'Instruction publique* (who, we believe, directs the "*Monumens Inédits*") to reprint the same.

From Dudo originated the *Historia Normannorum*, composed by Guilielmus Calculus, commonly quoted as Guillaume de Jumièges. He dedicates his work to the Conqueror, a fact which tells the era in which he flourished, and the influences under which he composed.

A Monk of Jumièges, and unquestionably profiting from the traditions of the House, Guillaume grounded his work upon Dudo. His text of the *Acta Normannorum* was probably somewhat more ample than that published by Duchesne: and in the same manner that Dudo is in fact our only authority for the biography or history of the three first Dukes, to wit, Rollo, Guillaume-Longue-Épée, and Richard-sans-Peur, so is Guillaume de Jumièges, our only, or almost our only guide for the history of the three next, Richard-le-Bon; Richard the Third, distinguished by not having any epithet; and

Robert-le-Magnifique, or le-Diable, the Father of William the Mamzer, or the Conqueror.

The first four books of Guillaume de Jumièges' work, which contain the history of the first three Norman Dukes, are mere abridgments from Dudo's text.

Guillaume de Jumièges speaks with great respect of Dudo as his predecessor; and singularly enough, he completes his fourth book by a Colophon which he has transcribed literally from Dudo's Colophon, at the termination of his work, though such Dudonian Colophon is not found in Duchesne's text, the same being to the following effect,—“Hucusque digesta, prout a “Rodulpho Comite hujus Ducis fratre magno et honesto viro, narrata sunt “collegi, quæ scholastico dictamine scripta, relinquo posteris.”

This same brief compendium has practically superseded the *Acta Normannorum* of Dudo, amongst all modern historians without exception. None of them meet Dudo except to scold at him. And the judgments passed upon both these victims of prudish criticism, may best be answered in Guizot's words as prefixed to the version of Guillaume de Jumièges published under his auspices:—

“Les érudits ont amèrement reproché à Guillaume, moine de l'abbaye de “Jumièges, d'avoir reproduit dans les premiers livres de son ‘Histoire des “Normands,’ la plupart des fables dont son prédécesseur Dudon, doyen de “Saint-Quentin, avait déjà rempli la sienne. Si Guillaume n'eut ainsi fini, “cette portion de son ouvrage n'existerait pas, car il n'aurait rien eu à y “mettre; il a recueilli les traditions de son temps sur l'origine, les exploits, “les aventures des anciens Normands et de leurs chefs; aucun peuple n'en “sait davantage, et n'a des historiens plus exact sur le premier âge de sa vie. “A voir la colère de dom Rivet et de ses doctes confrères, il semblerait que “Dudon et Guillaume aient eu le choix de nous raconter des miracles ou des “faits, une série de victoires romanesques ou une suite d'événemens réguliers, “et que leur préférence pour la fable soit une insulte à notre raison, comme si “elle était obligée d'y croire. Il y a à quereller de la sorte les vieux chroni- “queurs une ridicule pédanterie; ils ont fait ce qu'ils pouvaient faire; ils nous “ont transmis ce qu'on disait, ce qu'on croyait autour d'eux: vaudrait-il “mieux qu'ils n'eussent point écrit, qu'aucun souvenir des temps fabuleux ou “héroïques de la vie des nations ne fût parvenu jusqu'à nous, et que l'histoire “n'eût commencé qu'au moment où la société aurait possédé des érudits capable “de la soumettre à leur critique pour en assurer l'exactitude? A mon avis, “il y a souvent plus de vérités historiques à recueillir dans ces récits où se “déploie l'imagination populaire que dans beaucoup de savantes disserta- “tions.”

Out of these two prose Chroniclers, Dudo and Guillaume de Jumièges, arose two poetical, or at least, rhythmical chronicles, which are as important as their originals; both nearly coevals, and both encouraged by the first Plantagenet's munificence. The earliest of these compositions bears the following title:—

“Ci commence l'estoire e la genealogie,  
Des Dux qui unt este par ordre en Normandie.”



Benoit, the writer, thus names himself at the conclusion of the "*Fitte*" containing the History of Guillaume-Longue-Épée, and thus he is denominated by his imitator and successor, Robert Wace. The worthy Abbé de la Rue first disinterred this very valuable composition. The work exists only in a single manuscript till then slumbering in the British Museum, which, after he had described it, was again left to enjoy repose until roused by the French government, 1836. The Abbé de la Rue has identified Benoit with his namesake, the author of the *Roman de Troye*, one of the best poems amongst the productions of the Trouvères.

But this is a mere conjecture. We know nothing of Benoit, except what he himself discloses. He, like Guillaume de Jumièges, experienced the liberal patronage of Henry the Second, as we learn from his own words. So far as Dudo extends, Benoit's poem is with few exceptions based upon the *Acta Normannorum*; though there are many passages showing that the text upon which he worked was somewhat more extensive than that which has been rendered accessible by Duchesne's industry. Benoit abounds with vivid descriptive passages. Local knowledge and local traditions also assisted him. But Benoit rarely departs from the substantial narrative of his original, and for all historical purposes, that original and the version should be treated as one; and this I have done, amalgamating the texts.

Robert Wace, or Wacce, or Waice, or Waze, or Gasse, or Guace,—I shall spare the other variations of his name,—a cotemporary, a disciple, a translator, a successor, and to some degree a rival of Benoit, but also in many respects an original writer, runs nearly parallel with his teacher.

He lived under three Henrys, Dukes of Normandy and Kings of England. Henry Beauclerc, the junior Henry, and Henry Plantagenet, his peculiar patron. All we know of him is derived from his own report. He was a Royal "*Clerc lisant*," an expression which has led to the conjecture that he was a Clerk, or as we now should say, a Master in Chancery. He devoted his talents and researches almost exclusively to poetical history; and the *Brut*, a free paraphrase of Geoffrey of Monmouth, constitutes the introduction to his metrical chronicle of Normandy and Anglo-Norman England.

This poem consists of two books. The first book contains the history of the Northmen anterior to Rollo, very brief, and written in the eight syllable measure. The second book commences with the peculiar history of Rollo,—"*Ci commence à parler de Rou*," and this epigraph is the title given by the author. He adopts Alexandrine assonant verses in this portion. This metre extends till the reign of Richard-sans-Puer, when the narrative breaks off with the transactions at the Fosse Givolde. This portion is mainly taken from Dudo. But here again we find very many facts collected either from a text somewhat differing from Dudo's printed text, or from local or other traditions. Such is the case with respect to the battle of the Fords, and Thibaut's invasion of Normandy. Subsequently, Wace depends mainly upon Guillaume de Jumièges, but also upon his own personal or traditional knowledge. It is sufficient to observe that his narrative gains exceedingly in value, as it approaches to the conclusion, the whole being quoted as the *Roman du Rou*.

So much with respect to the primary sources of French and Norman history. It is now needful to indicate the aids and collections which may lighten the student's labour. As in my first volume, p. 735, I must make a general reference to the Benedictine and other historians of the French Provinces. For the present section of this work, those by Lobineau, and Morice, and Talandre, are peculiarly valuable, inasmuch as they contain the Breton Chronicles, properly so called, in *extenso*. Whenever Armorica is mentioned in my text, the reader will find in these works the warranty of my narrative. Daru (*Histoire de Bretagne*, Paris, 1826) may be convenient for those who wish to gain a cursory knowledge of Breton affairs.

With respect to the antient geography of Normandy, of which a knowledge is most essential, in consequence of the prominence of the numerous individuals who are localized by their possessions, I have found the best general aid in the late Mr. Stapleton's *Introductions to the Norman Exchequer Rolls*. These invaluable records, preserved amongst our own Archives, were published by the Society of Antiquaries (London, 1840—1842), and republished by the "Société des Antiquaires de Normandie." Mr. Stapleton's map of antient Normandy is peculiarly useful—and the historical topography of the Pay de Caux and the Vexin—the Pagi of Normandy to the North and East of the Seine, is laboriously and clearly elucidated in an anonymous work of the last century, *Description Geographique et Historique de la Haute Normandie* (Paris, 1740).

Many special Histories concerning Normandy are very serviceable. A successor of Dudo, though separated from that dignitary by many centuries, has supplied an ample Chronicle of the Vermandois. I allude to M. Louis Paul Collette, Dean of St. Quentin, who in his three quarto volumes, *Mémoires pour servir à l'Histoire Ecclésiastique, Civile, et Militaire de la Province du Vermandois*, (Cambrai, 1771,) has employed not merely the written authorities, but local traditions, such *e.g.* as the account of Mont-Herbert.

For the County of Ponthieu we have much assistance in the work of M. Louandre (*Histoire d'Abbeville et du Comté de Ponthieu*, Paris, 1844). Amongst other local historians, we have good histories of *Evreux*, City, County, and Diocese, by Le Brasseur, (Paris, 1722,) and of *Laón*, by Don Nicolas le Long, (Charente, 1783). But amongst all local historians, the Abbé de la Rue stands pre-eminent—*Essai Historique sur la ville de Caen*, 1820. Besides much minute information concerning that most interesting city, we obtain from him many data relating to the alterations which the shores of Normandy have sustained.

The Forests of Normandy, equally important in connection with the constitutional History of Normandy as with her topography, are minutely described in the *Etudes sur la Condition de la Classe Agricole et de l'Etat de l'Agriculture en Normandie au Moyen Age*, by M. Delisle (Evreux, 1821), a work exhibiting much industry.

Amongst the numerous special biographies of individuals eminent in France and Normandy, two, not generally known, may be noticed, as bearing upon

this work; and both relating to a personage whose merits and failings require that which they never can now receive, a satisfactory elucidation,—Gerbert of Aurillac. The character of Gerbert, in all its aspects, whether as a political adventurer, or as a man of science, or Pontiff, is very ably elucidated by Dr. O. F. Hoek—*Gerbert oder Papst Sylvester II. und sein Jahrhundert* (Vienna, 1837). Very much information concerning Gerbert is given in this work, but as usual the biographer ascribes over-much merit to his hero. Gerbert's letters, translated into French, with a very ample commentary, have been published in his own country by a compatriotic enthusiast, Louis Varse (Riom, 1847). Holding the station which Gerbert does in the history of mediæval science, it is to be regretted that so little attention has been paid in this country to his unquestionable talent.

I have elsewhere (Vol. i, p. 723) noticed the many excellent works which the French Archæologists have contributed for the elucidation of that branch of knowledge furnishing the most important aid to the historian, or rather being history itself in a most profitable form—Genealogies.—To those before quoted (Vol. i, p. 725) I must add the valuable *History and Records of the House of Gurney*, which Mr. Daniel Gurney has compiled from original documents, mostly printed by him as vouchers for his text.

On a former occasion I omitted to call attention to the great assistance which every historical enquirer will receive from the *Gallia Sacra*, one of the many works, which, so far as unwearied diligence, judgment, and accuracy are concerned, put us to shame. Here the historical student or enquirer will find every particular which he may require for the succession of the Prelates, and Heads of Houses of Religion throughout the ecclesiastical provinces of France, and put together in the most usable form.

For the archiepiscopal see of Rheims, we have, moreover, the excellent history of *Marlot* (Lisle, 1666). This work contains many original documents, which I have employed.

The Benedictine Houses of Normandy are copiously illustrated by Mabillon (*Annales Benedictini*). Whilst Mabillon's attention is never diverted from the main object of his work, this most diligent and conscientious writer furnishes numerous historical and biographical notices illustrating civil history. I am not aware that any particulars are known concerning Otto or Otho, Lothaire's son, except those given by Mabillon (Tome iv, p. 83), who adds an engraving of the miniature in Queen Emma's psalter.

For Normandy we have in addition to *Gallia Sacra*, the *Neustria Fia* (Rouen, 1668), in which will be found all the details which are necessarily excluded from a work concerning the whole kingdom; and also the *Concilia Rotomagensis Provinciæ* (Rouen, 1717), a work which gives us the outline of Norman ecclesiastical history.

Monumental Archæology, as such, is beyond the legitimate sphere of history, but it is always useful to refresh the imagination by visible objects. The student would do well to turn over Cottman's *Views in Normandy*, which, together with Mr. Dawson Turner's *Letters from Normandy*, 1820, include engravings of large numbers of antient buildings demolished within

the last thirty years. Nearly two-thirds of the structures engraved in these works have been demolished. Amongst others, the Hall at Lislebonne, where the Conqueror assembled his barons previous to the embarkation at Saint Valery.

For the history of Flanders, the principal source which I have employed is the *Chronicle of Saint Bertin*, compiled by Johannes Iperius, the Abbot of the Monastery. It is professedly the chronicle of the House, but inasmuch as the Abbey was held in commendam by Arnoul and other Counts, the work becomes a chronicle of Flanders. It is Iperius who gives that remarkable statement of the death of Count Baldwin from the small-pox, calling the disease by its modern name. In the next place I have used Lesbroussart's edition of *D'Oudegherst's Annales de Flandre* (Ghent, 1779) as to language. It is a pleasant specimen of the vieux Gaulois, and his numerous chronological mistakes are corrected by his editor; and having requested a very competent authority to point out to me the best standard work on Flemish history, he recommended this to me. Oudegherst carries his history down to Philippe-le-Bon. Furthermore, I have employed Gheldorf's translation of *Warnkenig's Histoire de la Flandre* (Brussels, 1836), in which the original is enlarged and improved. Curious and interesting also is the anonymous *Chronyke van Vlaendraen*, printed at Bruges without a date, but printed, as may be collected from the preface, about the beginning of the last century. It is an illustrated work, and the illustrations are amusing, if not authentic.

For German history, I have as before, profited by availing myself of Luden's guidance: but in this volume I have been aided to a far greater extent, by working much in the wake of the *Jahrbucher des Deutschen Reichs*, now in course of publication, under the direction of Ranke. The plan of the work is singular; it is composed under Ranke's direction, by his pupils or disciples; each writing independently. The volumes or parts of volumes which I have consulted, are respectively composed by Koepke, (936, 951,) Doenniges, (951, 973,) Griesbrecht, (973, 983,) and Wilmans, (983, 1002.) They are accompanied by various dissertations, and give an accurate and specific reference to the sources—mostly to the older editions which preceded the *Scriptores Rerum Germanicarum* of Pertz; also to some not included in that valuable collection, e.g., the *Scriptores Rerum Brunswicensium* of Leibnitz.

The German Chroniclers concern themselves to no inconsiderable extent with the affairs of France and of Normandy, and much more so with Italy. —At their head stands Widukind, or Wittikind, of Corbey, who affords us an ample and authentic history of the Saxon line, from its foundation to the death of Otho I. He is a writer of the highest importance. Honest, able, spirited—Wittikind's account of the battle of the Lech, terminating with the salutation of Otho as "Imperator" after the victory, may be quoted as a magnificent poetical picture.

Thietmar, or Dietmar, of Merseburgh, whose work embraces the same period, abounds with anecdotes which we do not find elsewhere, at least, not

so fully—such, for example, as concern Liutgarda's persecutions, and the notice of her silver spindle.

From Liutprand, whose name has been rendered familiar by Gibbon's notice of him, we have a very valuable history of the Othonian period, in which his Embassy holds so conspicuous a station; but, perhaps, the historical pride of the period consists of the compositions which I have termed the Othonian memoirs.

To a Clerk of the Palace, probably a Clerk of the Chancery, we owe the very interesting *Vita Mathildæ Reginæ*, written at the request of the canonized emperor, Henry the Second, Matilda's great grandson, and with whom the Saxon line closed. The line began with a Henry and ended with a Henry. Henry the Second was the son of Henry the Quarreller, the son of Henry the Porphyrogenitus, the son of Henry the Fowler, or Henry the First. The anonymous author is an able writer, displaying a thorough acquaintance with the best models, and a pleasant narrator. It is he who has presented us with that agreeable family picture,—the account of the conversation between Matilda and Adelaide (when the latter tried to make up the match between her little Emma and some one of the young princes, who were playing about the room). One of the boys was Henry the Quarreller, who clambered up and begged a kiss of his grandmother; and this anecdote affords a clue to the manner in which the family traditions were communicated to the writer, as well as a general voucher for the accuracy of the narration.

The *Gesta Othonis Imperatoris* are commemorated in the elegant verses of Roswitha, whose imitations of Terence, however creditable to her talents, are as discreditable to her sex and her calling. The work seems to have proceeded slowly. Prefixed is an epistolary dedication to Gerberga. It exhibits all the authorial courtesy of modern times. This is followed by a dedication in verse to the great Otho, and a third dedication to the second Otho. Otho's deeds in Italy are carefully recorded, but there is a passing touch of compassion for Liudolph.

Odilo, the canonized Abbot of Clugni, has given us the *Epitaphium Adelheidæ Imperatricis*, a quaint though not unprecedented application of the term, epitaph. It follows the Epitaphium (in the popular sense) of Otho the great. The writer notices, with some bitterness, the inimical influence exercised by Theophania.

The last of these biographies possesses the same character of authenticity as the others. It is the *Vita Sancti Brunonis Archiepiscopi*, composed by a Clerk of Cologne, Ruotger, Bruno's peculiar friend. He was charged by Folkmar, Bruno's successor in the see, with the task of commemorating their common friend. The work is highly important, whether for Bruno's political history, or his personal character.

The principal Magyar chronicles are collected by Schwaradtner, *Scriptores Rerum Hungaricum Veteres ac Genuini* (Vienna, 1746). But the only one whom I have had occasion to consult is the very singular history ascribed

to the Notary or Chancellor of King Bela. He gives us all the traditions about the Hetumogors.

With respect to the subject of German chivalry and German heraldry, into which I have digressed, the account given of the *Turnier-Buch* is extracted from Panzer (*Annalen der alteren Deutscher literature*, 1788), a most useful and consultable work, as far as it extends, but left imperfect by the author. Græsse (Vol. III, p. I, p. 153,) has furnished a very full and complete list of the works in which the *Turnier-Buch* is discussed.

The statutes ascribed to Henry the Fowler are printed by Goldastus in his *Constitutiones Imperiales*, (Vol. I, p. 211). That these statutes are un-authentic, in the strict sense of the term, there can be no doubt. At the same time there can be as little doubt but that the published constitutions overlay a reality, like the restoration of an antient church by a pupil of Batty Langley.

The influence of the German ethos in England, during the reigns of Edward the Third and Richard the Second, is clearly discernible. Possibly Richard, Earl of Cornwall, and King of the Romans, may have first introduced the feeling. It appears from the handwriting of some of this nominal Sovereign's charters, that he employed German clerks in his *Kanzlei*. The architecture of the choir of his church at Oppenheim, bears a strong affinity to the nave of York. And in York alone, of all the English churches now existing, have we examples of the double window tracery so often found in Germany.

It appears from the books and accounts of the royal wardrobe, amongst our Exchequer records, that Edward the Third had many Germans amongst his musicians; and German mottoes were embroidered on his robes.—It is only a Cambro-Britain who can deny that *Ich Dien* is German. The Black Prince employed his motto, *Hoch Muth*, as a signature to his letters instead of his name, and both the German mottoes are upon his sepulchre.

Moreover, amongst the royal manuscripts in the British Museum, is a work upon Geomancy, which belonged to the third Edward's unfortunate successor, exhibiting the playful interlacement which converts the motto of the Prince of Wales into a token of conjugal love.—The whole subject of German heraldry is full of interest, and as yet has not received sufficient examination. The heraldry of the Teutonised Slavonian tribes is peculiarly singular. The very strange and queer Italian blazonry is for the most part German, and derived from Imperial concessions, in the same manner as most, if not all, the titles of the higher nobility. Count Litta's *Famiglie nobili d'Italia*, a work which has but one defect—its magnificence—which puts it quite out of the reach of ordinary purchasers, shews this fact clearly.

With respect to the absence of any States-general in Normandy, during any period when Normandy was under her Norman or Anglo-Norman Dukes, we possess the strongest negative evidence. How the Channel Islands obtained their semi-Anglo-Saxon organisation is a perplexing problem.

